The Indo-European Family of Languages

Latin belongs to a language family known as Indo-European. Discussing Indo-European is like talking about the grandfather of a family on the basis of the character of his sons and grandsons. Scholars know little about this single parent language, except that its descendants—Indo-Iranian, Armenian, Albanian, Balto-Slavonic, Hellenic,1 Italic,2 Celtic, and Teutonic3—share common features that clearly show their mutual relationship. They have a similar system of base or root words, of morphology (the way in which the language changes in its development), and of syntax. The hypothetical parent language is supposed to have been spoken by a people or peoples dwelling in prehistory somewhere between the Baltic and the Black or Caspian seas. By a series of migrations they spread westward into Europe, southeast into Asia to meet Semitic languages already present, and into Russia. Since no Indo-European writing has ever been recovered, it is difficult to postulate absolute rules for the language, but on the basis of the structure and vocabulary of the subsequent descendant “family,” the theory of an Indo-European ancestry is widely accepted. Compare, for instance, these basic, common words in several Indo-European languages, which are called cognate because they spring from the same stock.

---

1 Greek, the main Hellenic language, existed in Aeolic, Ionic, Doric, and Attic dialects, depending on the geographical location.
2 Latin was one of several Italic dialects, which also included Umbrian and Oscan, but Latin eventually prevailed as the dominant language of the Italian peninsula.
3 Or Germanic.
Cognate or Related Languages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Greek</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Iranian(^3)</th>
<th>Anglo-Saxon</th>
<th>Russian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>māter</td>
<td>mētēr</td>
<td>matar</td>
<td>moder</td>
<td>mat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
<td>frāter</td>
<td>phrāter</td>
<td>bratar</td>
<td>brothor</td>
<td>brat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>esti</td>
<td>asti</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>est'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>deca</td>
<td>daca</td>
<td>tien</td>
<td>desjat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>menja</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A similar growth of distinct but related languages from a common parent is clear in the development of the Romance (from Roman) languages from the parent Latin. In each of the geographical areas of Europe where Latin spread, through Roman conquest and migration, it was first a dialect and later became a separate language. It developed regionally through a process of dropping or changing inflectional endings and adding and intensifying local style, vocabulary, and color. These cognate Romance languages—Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French, and Romanian—have all derived from the Classical Latin of Ancient Rome.

Cognate Romance Languages

**Source**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Portuguese</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Romanian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre (to love)</td>
<td>amare</td>
<td>amar</td>
<td>amar</td>
<td>aimer</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casa (house)</td>
<td>casa</td>
<td>casa</td>
<td>casa</td>
<td>casé(^4)</td>
<td>casá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōscere (to know)</td>
<td>conoscrer</td>
<td>conoscrer</td>
<td>conoscrer</td>
<td>connaître</td>
<td>a cunoaşte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn (not)</td>
<td>non</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>nāo</td>
<td>non</td>
<td>nu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mille (thousand)</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mil</td>
<td>mil</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>mie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomen (name)</td>
<td>nome</td>
<td>nombre</td>
<td>nome</td>
<td>nom</td>
<td>nume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>templum (temple)</td>
<td>templo</td>
<td>templo</td>
<td>templo</td>
<td>temple</td>
<td>templu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenere (to keep)</td>
<td>tener</td>
<td>tener</td>
<td>ter</td>
<td>tenir</td>
<td>a ține</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trèès (three)</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>trèès</td>
<td>trois</td>
<td>trei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timidus (timid)</td>
<td>timido</td>
<td>timido</td>
<td>timido</td>
<td>timide</td>
<td>timid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritās (truth)</td>
<td>veritā</td>
<td>verdad</td>
<td>verdade</td>
<td>vérité</td>
<td>adevăr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^3\)As in the older I.E. Avestan or Old Persian language. Modern Farsi (Persian) equivalents are: mādar, bārdar, ast, dāh, ma.

\(^4\)Cabin; maison is the more familiar French word for house. Also, cf. chez, related to casa.
English is not a Romance language; its base is Teutonic, another branch of the Indo-European family tree. Most of the vocabulary for familial relationships and daily life in England came from Teutonic sources: mother, father, man, wife, son, daughter, brother, sister, home, house, bread, hay, harvest, cow, calf, grass, plow, barn, farm, moon, sun, storm, sea, ice, snow, thunder, summer, winter—short words that say easily what they mean; descriptive words like good, bad, old, young; verbs for daily human activities: eat, drink, talk, laugh, sing, love, hate, buy and sell—these are all of Teutonic origin. Frequently a Latin word came to dwell alongside the Teutonic word: tempest for storm, domicile for house, marine life for sea life, lunatic for moonstruck, bovine for cowlike, fraternal for brotherly, vendor for seller. Notice always the more erudite level of communication in the Latin word. Teutonic words did originally have inflection: declension for nouns and conjugation for verbs, as in Latin; but over the years the endings deteriorated and disappeared, except for tense change in verbs and the third person singular present ending of -s (I, you, we, and they love, but he, she, or it loves).\(^5\) English still inflects in the change of singular to plural for nouns, but not for adjectives, and not for syntactical relationships within the sentence; word order indicates whether a noun is subject, direct object, possessive,\(^6\) indirect object, or object of prepositions.

Latin and its descendants, the Romance languages, being highly inflected, can express distinctions such as number and gender (for nouns) and tense, person, number, voice, and mood (for verbs) simply by changing the endings of words. Termed “synthetic” by linguistic scholars, Latin may employ a verb consisting of a base or root, carrying the dictionary definition, to which prefixes, tense signs, and personal endings may be affixed; these all “put together” add up to a complex concept of combining many ideas in a single word: e.g., abripuerat, he had carried off (ab-, off; -ripu, carried; -era-, had; -t, he). In contrast, English, termed “analytic” by linguists, expresses the same idea by means of independent units with a minimum of grammatical inflection: he/had/carried/off, all single words comprising a phrase separable into component parts. If the words Taurus, bull (as subject) and Europam, Europa (as object) are added to the statement: Taurus Europam abripuerat, The bull had carried off Europa, the word order in Latin would be relatively unimportant. Taurus usually precedes, but could follow either Europam or the verb with only a slight change of emphasis, but with no change in syntax. In English, however, the word order is crucial in understanding who had carried off whom; whether Europa is subject or object depends entirely upon the word order.

\(^5\) We are still familiar with archaic English, kept alive in the King James Bible and in Shakespeare’s plays: thou loves and he loveth for second and third person singular of the verb.

\(^6\) The book of George (uninflected) or George’s book.
The influence of Latin on English vocabulary is extremely important, the paths from which Latin flowed into English being many and wide. The Roman invasion of England (43–410 A.D.) had left behind a legacy of place names and about eight hundred words referring to housing, clothing, food, education, religion, and the military. The Teutonic language of the Germanic invaders, the Angles and Saxons who settled in England, had borrowed some Latin words from its long pre-invasion contact with Rome. Of much greater influence, however, was the coming of Latin with Saint Augustine,\(^7\) who was sent by Pope Gregory to introduce Christianity into Britain (597). Old English, the language of the Angles and Saxons, was spoken by the common man; Latin was the language of the Church and of learning, since the schools developed within the framework of the Church. Educated people usually were bilingual. After William the Conqueror successfully invaded England from Norman France, French became the official language of the court with a resultant influx of French words, many of Latin origin. Middle English still remained the basic language fabric of everyday life, while French embroidered it from the world of polite and court society, and Latin metered and patterned it from the Church and the Academy. Even during the period of French dominance, however, English was always the language of the people, the vehicle for basic communication in daily life and also the basis for a flourishing literature in the native tongue. By the fourteenth century Chaucer (1340–1400), who has been called the father of English poetry, had available to him a composite English, enriched in vocabulary and subtlety of expression by its long contact with Latin and French. Latin, therefore, tremendously influenced cultural, literary, artistic, religious, and academic English both directly from the Church and the classroom, and indirectly through French.

Added to these influences was the direct absorption of Latin words into the language during the Renaissance with its rediscovering of ancient Greek and Roman literature and during periods of scientific investigation, when Latin words provided the basis for an international science. Thus Latin continually enriched the developing English language; each successive wave of Latin, sweeping over the shore of England, left a rich residue of vocabulary.

This English language transplanted to America has again been enriched with words from all the countries whose emigrants brought their own language traditions with them. Words of Latin origin, through Italian, through Spanish, and again through French entered the language; and Americans also resorted to Latin for the terminology of their science—for chemistry, physics, biology, botany, astronomy, and the new space programs. The process is still going on with Atlas, Apollo, and Jupiter spacecraft; and a Gemini space station whose orbiting rivals that of the planets.

\(^7\)This is not the famous patristic Saint Augustine (354–430), but a later missionary.
The Latin Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English alphabet, except that there are no j and no w in Latin. The v represented the w sound and served as a sign for the vowel u. The vowels, a, e, i, o, u, are similar to English vowels. The consonant k rarely appears, since in classical Latin the c is always hard; y and z were introduced to represent their sounds in words of Greek origin. The long marks, called “macrons,” which are placed over the vowels, indicate a lengthening in the quantity and a deepening of the quality (intensity) of the sound.

A brief review of the development of writing may help us better to appreciate the great antiquity of the English alphabetic system of writing. The Egyptians initially employed hieroglyphs or ideographs (picture symbols) to represent each word; eventually they learned to use both syllabic and alphabetic signs in addition to hieroglyphs, but they did not develop a system of pure alphabetism. The schools of Ugarit in Canaan (n. Syria), however, during the fifteenth century B.C., employed an abecedarium after which our own ABC’s are patterned. The Phoenicians passed on the alphabetic system to the Greeks; the Phoenicians also may have been the source of the Minoan syllabary of Linear A, which preceded the Greek syllabary of Linear B used on the Greek mainland and at Knossos on Crete c. 1500 to 1200 B.C. Merchant Greeks residing on the Syrian coast probably introduced the North Semitic alphabet to various regions of Greece around the eighth century B.C.

The Romans adopted the Greek alphabet employed by the Greek colonies in southern Italy, such as Cumae; some scholars believe, however, that the Etruscan alphabet supplied the link between the Greek and Roman letters. In addition to engraving on stone, lead pipes, etc., the Romans wrote with reed pens and styli on wax and papyrus at first, then later on parchment and vellum; papyri “books” were on rolls, but the other materials were generally in tablet form.

---

8 Consonant i is written as j in many elementary Latin texts. W is really a double u, the letter originally being pointed at the bottom.

9 Linear A refers to an ancient syllabary writing used on Crete c. 1700 B.C., as found in clay tablet fragments from the various palace sites on the island. It consists of a cursive system of about seventy-five syllabic signs written from left to right. Linear B is a later Minoan syllabary form of writing, discovered by Sir Arthur Evans in over 3,000 clay tablets and other fragments at Knossos. Deciphered by the British cryptographer-architect Michael Ventris in 1953, Linear B proved that the Minoans of Knossos wrote and spoke an early form of Greek closely related to the language of Mycenae and Pylos on the Greek mainland in the Peloponnesus, where similar finds show that Linear B was also used.


12 Ibid., pp. 6-9.
### English | Latin | Greek | Phoenician
--- | --- | --- | ---
A a | A a | A α alpha | åleph Χ
B b | B b | B β beta | bêth ב
C c | C c [Κ κ] | Δ δ delta | dâleth Δ
D d | D d | ε ε epsilon (short e) | hê Η
E e | E e | Η η eta (long e) | chêth χ
F f | F f | | |
G g | G g | Γ γ gamma | gimel ג
H h | H h | | |
I i | I i | I i iota | yôd י
J j | | (consonant) | |
K k | K k | Κ κ kappa | kaph י
L l | L l | Λ λ lambda | lâmed א
M m | M m | Μ μ mû | mêm ר
N n | N n | Ν ν nû | nûn נ
O o | O o | Ο ω omega (short o) | ayin א
P p | P p | Π π pi | pê פ
Q q | Qu qu | Ρ ρ rho | qôph ρ
R r | R r | | |
S s | S s | Σ σ sigma | shin ש
T t | T t | Τ τ tau | taw ض
U u | U u | Υ υ upsilon | |
V v | V v [W w] | (digamma) | wâw ϒ
W w | | | |
X x | X x | Ξ ξ xi | sämekh ס
Y y | Y y | Υ υ upsilon | |
Z z | Z z | Z ζ zêta | zayin ז

#### Other Greek and Phoenician Letters

| | | thêta | têth | |
| th | Θ θ | | |
| ph | Φ φ | phi | |
| ch | Χ χ | chi | |
| ps | Ψ ψ | psi | |

---

The debt of the English (and Latin) alphabet to earlier abecedaria can be observed in the table on the opposite page. Since the order of the English and Latin alphabets is the same, a few letters of the Greek and Phoenician alphabets have been removed from their regular order. Although most of the 22 Phoenician letters were employed in the 24-letter Greek abecedarium, a few were eliminated and a few new ones were added. Similarly, a few Greek letters have no direct equivalent in the Latin and English alphabets, and some new letters have been added to the Latin alphabet. The Phoenician alphabet was written from right to left, but the Greek alphabet evolved through *boustrophedon* writing (lit., *ox-turning*, i.e., right-to-left and left-to-right in alternation, like the turning of the Greek oxen when plowing a field) to a strict left-to-right pattern.

**Guide to Pronunciation**

**VOWELS**

The following rules are invariable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Vowels</th>
<th>Long Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a as in <em>cart</em></td>
<td>charta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e as in <em>bed</em></td>
<td>est, sed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i as in <em>pin</em></td>
<td>timida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o as in <em>domain</em></td>
<td>novus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u as in <em>put</em></td>
<td>nunc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[y^{14}\] as in French *tu cygnus*

**DIPHTHONGS**

| ae as in *aisle* | terrae | eu e + u in one syllable | Europā |
| oe as in *oil* | Phoenicia | ui u + i in one syllable | cui |
| au as in *out* | laudat | ei as in *vein* | deinde |

**CONSONANTS**

Latin and English consonants are pronounced alike with the following reservations:

- **c** is always hard as in *can*  
  Cicerō
- **g** is always hard as in *give*  
  argentum

\[14\] Both long and short; especially used in borrowed words of Greek origin. Also sounded as Latin *u* to approximate the Greek upsilon.
i can be a consonant, sounded as y in year when it occurs in a consonant position
r is tongue-trilled
s is always hissed as a voiceless consonant, sea, never voiced as z in was
t is always sounded t as in tin, never sh as in oration
v has the sound of w
x has the sound of ks
bs, bt are sounded ps and pt
ch is related to Greek chi and is close to kh in blockhouse
ph is related to Greek phi and is close to ph in uphill
th is related to Greek theta and is close to th in pothook

Double consonants: ss, tt, ll, etc., are sounded twice the length of time given to the single consonant.

SYLLABLES

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. The vowel alone or the consonant and vowel together can make the syllable. Divide words according to the following rules:

1. A consonant is pronounced with the vowel that follows it: a.mā.mus.
2. When two vowels (or a vowel and a diphthong) occur together, pronounce them separately: fi.li.a, e.ōs, vi.ae.
3. When two consonants occur together, pronounce them separately: por.tō, pu.el.la, ma.gis.ter. A stop consonant (b, p, d, t, c, g) followed by a liquid (l or r) counts as a single consonant: ma.tris, fra.tris, ne.glec.tus.
4. When more than two consonants occur together, the first generally is pronounced with the preceding vowel and the others with the following: mōn.strum, cas.tra, ex.em.plum.
5. Separate compound words into the original parts: trāns.portō, ab.rogō, ex.animō, com.es, in.eō, sub.īre.

LONG AND SHORT SYLLABLES

1. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. Such a syllable is said to be long by nature: in.su.la, fā.bu.la, Phoe.ni.ci.a, a.moe.na.

15 Either at the beginning of a word followed by a vowel, or between two vowels.
2. A syllable is long if it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants (except a stop followed by a liquid).\textsuperscript{16} Such a syllable is said to be long by position: \textit{ma.gis.ter}, \textit{Mi.ner.va}.

3. All other syllables are short.

**ACCENT**

1. In words of two syllables, accent the first syllable (the penult).

\begin{verbatim}
á.mant pú.e r cá.r.ta nó.vus
\end{verbatim}

The last syllable is called the \textit{ultima}, from the Latin \textit{ultimus}, meaning “last.” The next to the last syllable is called the \textit{penult}, from the Latin \textit{paene}, meaning “almost” and \textit{ultimus}. The syllable before the \textit{penult} is called the \textit{antepenult}, from the words \textit{ante}, meaning “before,” and \textit{penult}.

2. In words of more than two syllables, accent the penult \textit{if it is long}: \textit{habitáre}, \textit{docére}, \textit{amoénas}, \textit{magíster}. It may be long by nature or by position. Otherwise accent the antepenult: \textit{ínsula}, \textit{fábula}, \textit{fília}. This rule for determining accent is called the \textit{antepenultimate rule}, and it never varies.

**Examples**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Antepenult</th>
<th>Penult</th>
<th>Ultima</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textit{portáre}</td>
<td>por</td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{rēgina}</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>gi</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{spectāte}</td>
<td>spec</td>
<td>tā</td>
<td>te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{amoena}</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>moe</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{taurus}</td>
<td></td>
<td>tau</td>
<td>rus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{terra}</td>
<td></td>
<td>ter</td>
<td>ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{puella}</td>
<td>pu</td>
<td>el</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{magíster}</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>gis</td>
<td>ter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{fábula}</td>
<td>fā</td>
<td>bu</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{ínsula}</td>
<td>īn</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{fília}</td>
<td>fī</td>
<td>li</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{incola}</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>co</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{agricola}</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>gri</td>
<td>la</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On what basis do present-day grammarians state the rules for the pronunciation of a language which was never verbally recorded and which is pronounced so differently in various parts of the world? Certainly, Latin

\textsuperscript{16}The second of these consonants begins the following syllable (\textit{in.su.la}). A syllable containing a short vowel followed by a stop and a liquid may be either long or short. See p. 76 for a discussion of hidden quantity of vowels.
pronounced by an Englishman and by a German and by an Italian (and by the Church which historically grew within the Italian framework of pronunciation) is quite different from that which we teach as Classical Latin. The sources for our reconstruction of how Latin must have sounded in classical times are many: first, the direct evidence in the writings of ancient grammarians; second, poetry properly scanned to indicate the length of vowels; third, ancient puns and approximations of animal cries; fourth, the spellings on inscriptions; fifth, the spellings in Latin for words borrowed from other languages and the spellings in other languages for Latin words (e.g., kaisar in Greek assures us that the c was hard); sixth, the pronunciation of the dialects of Latin and of Vulgar Latin; and last, comparative grammar. On these bases, scientific scholarship has reconstructed a pronunciation of Latin which was adopted decades ago in the United States and which tries to reproduce the way Latin was spoken in Classical Rome, c. 200 B.C. to c. 200 A.D.

Publius Ovidius Naso (43 B.C.-17 A.D.): A Biographical Note

The Roman poet Ovid was born at Sulmo, north of Rome, of a family of knights (Equites). He went to Rome for his education and there studied rhetoric to prepare for law, which he soon abandoned to become a popular poet. His education included a trip to Athens, much as a modern student might go to Paris or Rome to study. He first wrote love poetry: Amores, Ars Amatoria, Remedia Amoris, poems about love affairs and the men and women involved in them. He also wrote the Heroides, a series of twenty-one letters written ostensibly by women to their famous hero lovers; for example, Penelope to Ulysses, Dido to Aeneas, Ariadne to Theseus, Medea to Jason. His interest often focuses on an injured female whose situation he is able to recreate and with whose injury he is able to empathize. However, he is best known for his encyclopedic work compiling Greek and Roman mythological themes, Metamorphoses, a long series of stories about the gods and humans, and about changes or transformations in the appearance of all forms of life. He seemed fascinated by the mythological background for the holidays of Rome and became engaged in an ambitious project, the Fasti, a long almanac calendar with each book devoted to a month of the year, explaining the days which were holidays, how they come into existence, and the ritual associated with them. He had already completed the first six books (through June) at the time of his exile. In 8 A.D. he incurred the displeasure of the Emperor Augustus and was banished to Tomis on the western shore of the Black Sea,

where he spent the rest of his life in gloomy exile. His poetry and his letters from this exile period reflect his mood in this cold, barbaric land, separated from all the culture and elegance he had known at Rome (Tristia and Pontic Epistles). Although privately he may have been reconciled to his exile and may have come to terms with new concepts of deity which he found at Tomis, in his letters and poems he constantly begs for restoration to his former life at Rome and for pardon from Augustus and, later, from the Emperor Tiberius, a boon never granted by either Emperor. Whether or not he believed in the theology he compiled in the Metamorphoses is a problem for the literary historian, but certainly he has given an immortality to these anthropomorphic gods of the “changes.” From this magnificent body of poetry the stories in our text have been adapted or excerpted.

The choice of Ovid as the author of our abridged tales has made possible the use of the book both as a reader and as a mythology text. Ovid’s delight in a well-told tale has made him unexcelled as an elaborate story-teller; this skill, coupled with his psychological penetration into his characters both divine and human, has opened doors to the treasures of the rich mythology of the Greeks now adapted to the Roman scene. These glimpses of a Roman Olympus with its fragmented pantheon of the male and female godhead split into numina of specialized powers for particular activities provide an excellent background for study of the literary, musical, and visual artistic creations of western civilization, which have embraced mythological themes. The alert teacher can easily arrange a performance in class of sections from Shakespeare’s A Midsummer Night’s Dream after the story of Pyramus and Thisbe has been translated, and the fine novel by Mary Renault, The King Must Die, or Michael Ayrton’s The Maze Maker might be the subsequent reading after the Theseus episodes. The Trojan War materials should stimulate reading Homer’s original epics, as well as the Aeneid of Virgil, while The Voyage of the Argo by Apollonius of Rhodes would make a fine complement to the

18 See the novel God Was Born in Exile, by Vintila Horvia, for a fictionalized account of how Ovid may have adjusted to his life in Tomis, at the very edge of the civilized world.

19 The cause of Ovid’s exile has never been satisfactorily explained and remains an intriguing mystery. The fact that Augustus’ granddaughter Julia was exiled about the same time indicates that Ovid may have known some secret indiscretion involving the Emperor’s family. In his poetry Ovid refers to two causes for his unhappy situation: a carmen, which biographers assume to be the Ars Amatoria, the poem on love-making, and an error which could have been any kind of indiscreet act. Since Ovid himself was most respectably married and probably was not directly involved in the error, it may be that his sympathetic view of the female psyche made him the recipient of knowledge dangerous to the newly reformed Empire of Augustus and the Empress Livia, and dangerous to himself. Or it may be that the moral tone of the earlier poetry did not fit in with the “new morality” in the reforms instituted by the Emperor and Livia. The situation is detailed in The Mystery of Ovid’s Exile by J. C. Thibault (1964).
Jason episodes. It would also be helpful for the student to read a translation of the full Ovidian story from which the initial stories in this text have been excerpted and extensively adapted or abridged.

In response to requests for further exercises, Practice! Practice!: A Latin via Ovid Workbook is now available from Wayne State University Press, 4809 Woodward Avenue, Detroit, MI 48201; Tel 1-800-WSU-READ; Fax (313) 577-6131. Written and revised from experimental use in Latin classes, the additional exercises supplement each chapter of Latin via Ovid. Exercises consist of fill-ins, sentence completion, translations into and from Latin, drills in grammatical forms, and even a few crossword puzzles. A key is supplied at the end of the Workbook to aid students in self-directed study.

Several teaching tools have been added to Latin via Ovid to make the text more effective and user-friendly. A free Teacher’s Guide is available to all teachers who request it from the Wayne State University Press.

The authors strongly urge the use of the audio tapes for the language laboratory or classroom to enhance skill in reading Latin aloud. The original twenty half-hour tapes have been expanded to thirty-six tapes so that the first thirty chapters and six of the alternate chapters of the poetry in the last ten chapters are now available at a charge of $150.00 for the entire set. Sample tapes will be sent on request for a charge of $10.00, which will be credited toward the later purchase of the tapes. Requests should be sent to Latin via Ovid Tapes, Media Center, Van Wylen Library, Hope College, P.O. Box 9000, Holland, MI 49422-9000.

Two sets of computer programs are also available. The first is Latin Skills from Falcon Software, P.O. Box 200, Wentworth, NH 03282. This is the program originally designed by Gerry Culley from university of Delaware, upgraded with a program entitled Lector. There are five separate programs to challenge the user-student in forms and content using Latin via Ovid vocabulary and mythological subject matter. The program includes an imaginative “Verb Factory,” which puts out the component elements in Latin verb construction. The software runs on either Apple II or IBM; Tel (603) 764-5788; Fax (603) 764-9051.

A second set of expanded computer exercises giving further practice has been designed by Rob Latousek of Centaur Systems. Innovative games challenge students in vocabulary, grammatical forms, and translation of ideas. The Latousek program containing disk, manual, and site license (for legal duplication) is available from Centaur Systems, 407 North Brearly Street, Madison, WI 53703; Tel (608) 255-6979; Fax (608) 255-6949.

Practice! Practice!, the Teacher’s Guide, the audio tapes, and the instructional computer software make Latin via Ovid a complete tool for teaching and learning Latin.
Chapter I
CHARTA GEOGRAPHICA


Spectāte Āfricām. Spectāte terrās in Āfricā: Mauritaniam, Numidiam, Libyam, Aethiopiām, Aegyptum.4 Carthāgō est in Āfricā. In Āfricā Dīdō, rēgina Phoenissa,5 habitat et rēgnat.


---

1 Continentes.
2 In the Mediterranean Sea.
3 The Peloponnesus, the lower part of the Greek peninsula.
4 Egypt.
5 The Phoenician queen.
6 Tyre was an island off the Phoenician coast until Alexander the Great connected it to the mainland. It was famous for its crimson dye (Tyrian purple).
Verba

**NOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>charta</td>
<td>paper, map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europā</td>
<td>Europa (the maiden); also Europe, the continent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabula</td>
<td>story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insula</td>
<td>island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paeninsula</td>
<td>peninsula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puella</td>
<td>girl, maiden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgīna</td>
<td>queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terra</td>
<td>land, country, earth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Place names are easily recognized from their English equivalents and from the map, except for Gallia (Gaul) and Hispania (Spain); also see Etymology. Chapters XXIII and XXIV.

**VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habitat</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgnat</td>
<td>rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectāte</td>
<td>look at (a command)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADJECTIVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bona</td>
<td>good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographica</td>
<td>geographical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magna</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parva</td>
<td>small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prīma</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>beautiful, pretty, fair</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OTHER WORDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>et</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hic</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>(with abl. case) in, on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ita</td>
<td>yes, thus, so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne,</td>
<td><em>enclitic (attached to first word in the sentence)</em>: asks a question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn</td>
<td>not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paene</td>
<td>almost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sed</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Structure

1. Omission of the article. There is no word for *a* (*an*) or *the* in Latin. Supply whichever article is needed to express in English the idea most suitable for the context.

   **Hic est charta.**  
   Here is a map. (preferable here)  
   Here is the map. (also possible)

2. Word order. The adjective generally follows the noun it modifies.

   **Terra pulchra est in Eurōpā.**  
   The beautiful country is in Europe.

   The first and last positions are the most important in the Latin sentence. The subject usually occupies the first portion and the verb stands last because of its importance.\(^7\) *Est* and *sunt*, however, do not follow the above rule, but occur in the sentence wherever emphasis demands.

   **Puella in Phoenicā habitat.**  
   The girl lives in Phoenicia.

   **Terra est pulchra.**  
   The land is beautiful.

3. Omission of pronoun subject. The pronoun subject equivalents for *he, she, it, they*, are implied in the verb ending and are not expressed except for emphasis.

   **Est charta parva.**  
   It is a small map.

   **Eurōpa est puella. In Phoenicā habitat.**  
   Europa is a girl. She lives in Phoenicia.

   **Insulae sunt pulchrae. Sunt in mari Mediterranēō.**  
   The islands are beautiful. They are in the Mediterranean Sea.

   The verb contains the pronoun idea within itself in the final letter or letters:

   - *t*: he, she, it
   - *nt*: they

4. Number: singular and plural. The ending of a Latin noun changes to indicate singular (one) or plural (more than one). English-speaking students are familiar with such a change in nouns: *girl-girls, boy-boys, island-islands, church-churches*. In Latin, nouns in -a change to -ae to indicate the plural: *terra, a land, becomes terrae, the lands*.

\(^7\)Word order is not crucial to the meaning of the sentence, however, since inflected endings indicate the relationship of words. Words or phrases may be shifted for emphasis: *In Phoenicā puella habitat*. The girl lives in Phoenicia (not elsewhere).
4 Latin via Ovid

Terra pulchra est magna. The beautiful land is large.
Terrae pulchrae sunt magnae. The beautiful lands are large.

Note that the verb becomes plural to agree with the plural subject and that the adjective modifying a plural noun must also be plural to agree with its noun, even when the adjective stands in the predicate.

5. Case: nominative, accusative, ablative. The ending of a Latin noun also changes to indicate the noun’s relationship to other words in the sentence. Names which identify the changes for nouns and pronouns and their modifiers are called cases.

Subject words are in the nominative case.
Direct object words are in the accusative case.
Many object-of-preposition words are in the ablative case.
Predicate words following a linking verb (est, sunt) and referring back to the subject are in the nominative case. The case endings are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>-a terra</td>
<td>-ae terraae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>-am terram</td>
<td>-ās terrās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>-ā terrā</td>
<td>-īs terrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Memorize these endings. Note their use in the reading. This change of ending in nouns is called declension.

Nominative: Terra est magna. The land is large.
Terrae sunt magnae. The lands are large.

Accusative: Spectāte terram. Look at the land.
Spectāte terrās. Look at the lands.

Ablative: Rōma est in Italīa. Rome is in Italy.
Puellae pulchrae sunt in insulis. The beautiful girls are on the islands.

Predicate
Nominative: Insulae sunt terrae. The islands are countries.

6. The expletive: there is, there are. The word for “there” is omitted when “there” does not refer to a place, but merely indicates existence. This use of “there” is called expletive.

Sunt terrae pulchrae in Europā. There are beautiful countries in Europe.
Est insula in Phoenicā. There is an island in Phoenicia.
7. Questions and answers. Interrogative words can ask questions:

**Ubi est insula?** Where is the island?

The syllable ending (*enclitic*) -ne, attached to the first word in the sentence, can also be used to ask a question. Usually the verb becomes the first word in a question, because of its importance, but there is no rule, except that the most important elements stand first or last for emphasis.

**Suntne insulae magnae?** Are the islands large?

The answers may be affirmative or negative. If affirmative, the idea is reaffirmed by repeating the words of the sentence:

**Insulae sunt magnae.** The islands are large.

The affirmation may be stressed by *ita* (*thus, so*) with *est* understood (*it is so*); *ita* has come to mean "yes."

**Ita, insulae sunt magnae.** Yes, the islands are large.

If negative, the sentence is negated by *nōn* placed before the verb.

**Insulae nōn sunt magnae.** The islands are *not* large.

**Rēgīna in īnūlā nōn habitat.** The queen does *not* live on the island.

8. Apposition. A noun standing next to another noun to explain it is called an *appositive*. It is *in apposition* to its noun and is in the same case as the noun it explains.

**Est fābula dē puellā Eurōpā.** There is a story about the girl *Europa*.

**Terra Italia est in Eurōpā.** The country of *Italy* is in Europe.

**Pronunciation**

Listen carefully to the teacher reading the lesson. Imitate the sounds of the vowels and consonants. A good ear is your best guide for now. The rules will be studied in successive lessons. Note, however, that some vowels are marked with a sign (*macron*) indicating they are long vowels. The others, if unmarked, are short.

- Long i is pronounced like the *i* in *machine*.
- The diphthong ae is pronounced like *ai* in *aisle*.
- The v is pronounced like *w*.
- C and g are always hard, as in *cat* and *go*.
- The insula
terraeparvaSicilia, Germānia
Exercises

I. Questions. Answer the following in complete Latin sentences, as in Example 1.

2. Estne charta magna?
3. Suntne terrae parvae?
4. Ubi sunt Italia et Graecia?
5. Suntne Italia et Graecia insulae?
6. Estne Sicilia paeninsula?
7. Ubi est Carthāgō?
8. Estne Āfrica magna?
9. Ubi est Phoenīca?
10. Ubi habitat Eurōpa, puella in fābula prīmā?

II. Change each singular word to plural:

1. Terra est parva. 1. Terrae sunt parvae.
2. Charta est bona.
3. Insula est pulchra.
4. Paeninsula est magna.
5. Puella est parva.
6. Rēgina est pulchra.
7. Terra est magna.
8. Fābula est pulchra.
10. Insula est magna.

III. Change each nominative form to the corresponding accusative, object of spectāte. Make the predicate adjective into a direct modifier.

1. Terra est pulchra. 1. Spectāte terram pulchram.
2. Insula est magna.
3. Puella est parva.
4. Rēginae sunt pulchrae.
5. Paeninsulae sunt parvae.
6. Phoenīca est pulchra.
7. Graecia est magna.
8. Charta est magna.
9. Insulae sunt parvae.

IV. Supply the correct ablative form in these prepositional phrases:

1. Italia est in _______Eurōpā_____.
2. Rōma est in ________________.
3. Carthāgō est in _____________.
4. Phoenīca est in _____________.
5. Graecia est in _____________.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. The island is small.
2. Italy is large.
3. The small island is beautiful.
4. Sicily is a large island.
5. Are the islands small? They are not small.

Etymology

Etymology is the study of the true or original meanings of words or a tracing of the history of a specific word. The word *etymology* itself is derived from two Greek words: *etymon*, the true sense of a word (from *etymos*, true), and *logos*, speech, word, reason (hence, -logy came to mean the science, theory, or study of something). Etymology is also a branch of linguistics which studies the derivation of words.

In this section of each lesson you will examine word origins for selected vocabulary items. The goal of each etymology section is to suggest patterns of development, to stimulate you to apply the principles of etymology to other vocabulary items, and to assist you in the process of acquiring a broader vocabulary in English.

The names of continents, countries, seas, and rivers which have come into English through their Latin equivalents are endless. In this chapter Asia, Asia Minor, Europe, Germany, Britain, Gaul, Italy, Corsica, Sardinia, Sicily, Greece, Crete, Cyprus, Syria, Mesopotamia, Africa, Numidia, Mauritania, Libya, Ægypt, Æthiopia and Arabia all appear as equivalents or nearly so. Note, however, Hispania (Spain).

In the following paragraph there are many English words which are derived from their Latin cognates. See how many of them you can recognize. Do any English derivatives have different meanings?

The fable about the girl of great pulchritude who lived on the peninsula which extended into the sea which was sailed only by those who had a chart of the area is not familiar to everyone. The land is devoid of habitation and only a few spectators from the ships are able to look through glasses which magnify the land and allow the passengers to see the primate creatures of the area.

The Romans did not use the word charta (carta)

8 for map or chart. Instead they used *tabula*, which originally meant plank of wood or board, but later was extended to include any purpose for which the board was subsequently used: a table or a tablet on which writing was put (usually onto a waxed surface), a voting list, a will, a record, a painting, or a map. The word

8Classical Latin *charta* developed into Late Latin *carta*. 
came to mean any writing of a permanent nature, e.g., the *Law of the Twelve Tables*. Even today we refer to the *multiplication table* or to a *table of statistics*. The Romans also used the word *forma* (plan) for *map*.

Coming from the equivalent word in Greek, *charta* meant *a piece of papyrus, a paper, a writing material, a page, a roll of a literary work*. Later the word came to mean *a deed or a document* and by the late Middle Ages it came to mean *a map*. Actually, the *itineraries* (*itinera*) as maps were more used by travellers and by the army in the ancient world, since scouts and voyagers reported information of a descriptive nature that would enable people to make a trip (*iter*). These itineraries functioned much as an AAA Triptik does, supplying distances along routes, identifying markers, and descriptive details. Copies were kept in libraries, and sections were even exhibited on stone.
Europa and the Bull

Europa, a Phoenician princess, was carried off by Zeus (Jupiter) in the form of a bull from her home in Tyre and taken to the island of Crete where she gave birth to Minos, a name which became the family designation for the subsequent dynasty of this island. The name Minoan was then applied to the civilization long considered the cradle of Greek culture (c. 3000-1450 B.C.) when the great palaces such as the one at Knossos flourished. The carrying off of the Near Eastern princess by Zeus, the Greek sky god (later identified with the Deus-pater, Jupiter, god-the-father of the Romans) can possibly be considered a most symbolic transplanting and merging of the culture of the Near East, through the subsequent Minoan and Mycenean civilizations, with the culture of Europe and Western civilization; thus her name Europa indicates the eventual spread of the ideas of the Near East and Greece to the continent which eventually bears her name. Symbolic also is the form which Zeus assumed to accomplish this act, that of the powerful bull, whose horns decorate the palaces of Crete and whose form appears again in the Minotaur, the half-man, half-bull creature housed in the labyrinth beneath the palace at Knossos.

Europa and Minos are eponyms for the lands bearing their names, an eponym being the name of the person from whom a family, race, city or nation is supposed to have taken its name.
Chapter II
EUROPA ET TAURUS


Poēta Ovidius fābulam dē Eurōpā et taurō nārrat.

\(^1\) Agenor [English pronunciation A.jē.nor], a king of Phoenicia.
\(^2\) On Mount Olympus.
\(^3\) On his back.
\(^4\) Is called.
Verba

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amica</td>
<td>friend (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amicus</td>
<td>friend (masc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deus</td>
<td>god</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filia</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
<td>Jupiter (king of gods and men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovidius</td>
<td>Ovid (the poet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poëta</td>
<td>poet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx</td>
<td>king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taurus</td>
<td>bull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrus</td>
<td>Tyre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>loves, likes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>désiderat</td>
<td>desires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugitât</td>
<td>flee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūdit</td>
<td>plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrat</td>
<td>tells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portat</td>
<td>carries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectat</td>
<td>watches, looks at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfôrmat</td>
<td>transforms, changes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVES</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>novus, -a</td>
<td>strange, new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timidus, -a</td>
<td>shy, timid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenicius,-ia</td>
<td>Phoenician, or of Phoenicia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyrius, -a</td>
<td>Tyrian, or of Tyre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OTHER WORDS</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad + acc.</td>
<td>to, toward, near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum + abl.</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē + abl.</td>
<td>about, concerning, down from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diū</td>
<td>for a long time, a long while, long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nunc</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōlim</td>
<td>once, once upon a time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quis?</td>
<td>Who?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sé</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Structure

9. Omission of possessive adjective. Though the possessive adjective exists in Latin, the words for his, her, its, their are often omitted when the meaning is clear from the context. Supply the possessive adjective needed in translating into English.

Agenor est rēx Phoenicius et Europā est filia.

Agenor is the king of Phoenicia and Europa is his daughter.

10. Word order in transitive sentences. A transitive sentence contains a verb which expresses action carried from the subject to an object: The poet tells a story. The word order for a transitive sentence is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Direct Object</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deus</td>
<td>Europam</td>
<td>amat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The god</td>
<td>Europa</td>
<td>loves.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this sentence, the verb stands last because of its importance in the sentence. Note, however, the following alternatives:

Europam deus amat. The god loves Europa. (not someone else)

Amat deus Europam. The god loves Europa.

A change in the word order would make no change in the basic meaning of the sentence, but would change the emphasis, depending on which words stand first and last, the most important positions in the Latin sentence. The word order does not give the meaning; the endings give the meaning.

11. The verb: present tense meanings, simple, progressive, emphatic. Each of the verbs in the lesson can have three possible meanings, all contained in the one Latin form:

Poēta fābulam nārrat. The poet tells a story. (simple)

The poet is telling a story. (progressive)

The poet does tell a story. (emphatic)

Taurus puellam portat. The bull carries the maiden. (simple)

The bull is carrying the maiden. (progressive)

The bull does carry the maiden. (emphatic)
All present tense verbs, except est and sunt, can have these three possible English translations.

12. The verb: person and number. You have already learned that final -t as a verb ending can mean he, she, it. The plural they is contained in the Latin ending -nt. For all verbs in the lessons so far, except est and sunt, change the final -t to -nt to form the plural. These forms are called third person, the person spoken of. You will meet the forms for first person (I-we), the person speaking, and for second person (you-you), the person spoken to, in subsequent lessons.

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>he, she, it loves, is loving, does love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portat</td>
<td>he, she, it carries, is carrying, does carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgnat</td>
<td>he, she, it rules, is ruling, does rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>he, she, it is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūdit</td>
<td>he, she, it plays, is playing, does play</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amant</td>
<td>they love, are loving, do love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portant</td>
<td>they carry, are carrying, do carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgnant</td>
<td>they rule, are ruling, do rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>they are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūdunt</td>
<td>they play, are playing, do play</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. Genitive case. Possession is shown in Latin by the genitive case. There is no word for of. The of idea is incorporated into the noun with its genitive endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Ending</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>puellārum</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the girl’s or</td>
<td>the girls’ or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the girl</td>
<td>of the girls</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amīca Eurōpae est timida. The friend of Europa is shy. Europa’s friend is shy.

Amīcae poëtae fābulās amant. The poet’s friends like his stories. The friends of the poet like his stories.

---

5 Note that the genitive case can express more than possession. Often its function is to limit or describe another noun; in other words, it also has an adjectival function: John’s train was late (i.e., the train he was to board, not his personally owned train). Est dea sapientiae. She is the goddess of wisdom.

Nymphae silvae sunt pulchrae. The nymphs of the forest are beautiful.
The daughters of friends are shy. The poetess of the islands is the woman Sappho.


   Taurus novus est Iuppiter.
   Puella taurum novum spectat.
   Cum taurō lūdit.

   The strange bull is Jupiter.
   The girl looks at the strange bull.
   She is playing with the bull.

   Note that the adjective agrees with the noun it modifies.

15. Preposition in with the accusative. The preposition in can be followed by either the ablative or the accusative case. If the ablative follows, the meaning is in or on.

   Tyrus est in Phoenicā.
   Tyre is in Phoenicia.

   If the accusative follows, the meaning is into.

   Taurus puellam in terram novam portat.
   The bull carries the maid into a strange land.

16. Historical present. Many times the present tense is used to tell a story vividly in past time: “Europa lives in Tyre. Jupiter sees the maiden and falls in love with her. He changes himself into a bull and carries off the maiden on his back.” Although these events are conceived of as happening long ago, the present tense makes the story more immediate.

Pronunciation Review

The following letters are most likely to cause difficulties in pronunciation. Therefore review the Guide to Pronunciation, pp. xxiii–xxvi, paying particular attention to the following sounds:

VOWELS

ē   fēmina, woman
ī   insula, island
ae  terrae, lands

CONSONANTS

c is always hard as in can amicus, friend
    g is always hard as in go rēgina, queen
Latin via Ovid

i is also a consonant pronounced as y in yet\(^6\)  
Iuppiter, Jupiter; iam, now  
r is trilled  
narrat, he tells  
s is always hissed as in sea  
sunt, they are  
t is always as in tin, never sh as in oration  
portat, he carries  
v is always w  
parva, small  
Phoenicā, Phoenicia;  
charta, paper, map  
theatrum, theater

**Exercises**

I. Answer the following questions in complete Latin sentences, as in Example 1:

1. Quis est puella pulchra?  
   1. Eurōpa est puella pulchra.
2. Ubi habitat Eurōpa?  
3. Quis est Iuppiter?  
4. Ubi habitat Iuppiter?  
5. Quis Eurōpam désiderat?  
6. Quis sē in taurum pulchrum trānsfōrmat?  
7. Quis cum puellīs lūdit?  
8. Estne taurus timidus?  
9. Ubi habitant deus et puella?  
10. Quis fābulam dē Eurōpā et taurō nārrat?

II. Changē each singular to plural:

1. Amīca est pulchra.  
   1. Amīcae sunt pulchrae.
2. Tabula est nova.  
3. Filia est timida.  
4. Fābula est nova.  
5. Rēgīna nōn est timida.

III. Change the verbs to plural and translate:

1. Puella taurum spectat.  
   1. Puellae taurum ________________.
2. Amīca puellam amat.  
   2. Amīcae puellam ________________.
3. Poēta fābulam nārrat.  
   3. Poētae fābulam ________________.
4. Amīca fugitat.  
   4. Amīcae ________________.
5. Amīca est timida.  
   5. Amīcae ________________ timidae.
6. Rēgīna in Graeciā rēgnat.  
   6. Rēgīnae in Graeciā ________________.
7. Deus in Olympō habitat.  
   7. Deus et puella in Eurōpā ________________.
   8. Puellae fābulam ________________.
   9. Filiae in īnsulā ________________.
10. Terra nova est pulchra.  
   10. Terrae novae ________________ pulchrae.

\(^6\)Many texts write i consonant as j, but the j did not exist in the ancient Roman alphabet.
IV. Supply the correct form of the genitive case for the noun in the parenthesis:

1. Amica (of the queen) est pulchra. 1. Amīca rēgīnae est pulchra.
2. Filia (of the poet) est parva.
3. Amicus (of the girl) est magnus.
4. Tabula (of the island) est parva.
5. Deus (of the land) est Iuppiter.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Once upon a time there was (est) a beautiful girl.
2. Europa lives in Phoenicia.
3. Jupiter desires the beautiful maiden.
4. The god changes himself into a bull.
5. The bull flees with Europa.

VI. Reread the third paragraph of the story aloud, giving the sounds of the long and short vowels carefully.

Etymology

In the following phrases you will find underlined words related to Latin words in the lesson. Find the Latin cognate or source word and give the meanings both of the Latin word and the English derivative; e.g., Jupiter, the Roman sky deity—deus, god—any concept of god is called deity.

filial love for a father ____________________________________________
a poet’s fancy ___________________________________________________
amatory poetry _________________________________________________
desire for the best _____________________________________________
fugitive dreams __________________________________________________
to delude oneself _______________________________________________
a simple narration _________________________________________________
a portable television ________________________________________________
making a spectacle of yourself ____________________________________
transform the scene _____________________________________________
a timid animal __________________________________________________
a novel experience ________________________________________________

The addition of prepositions as prefixes created many new words from the root or stem -port-, both in English and in Latin. We can import (carry in), export (carry out), deport (carry away or down) or report (carry back) and transport (carry across) goods or ideas.
Minerva and Arachne

Minerva (Athena), goddess of wisdom and war, is also the household deity of spinning and weaving, skills which every Greek maiden and wife once learned and practiced in the home. Ovid’s tale of her anger when a mortal, Arachne, rivals her skill, is an example of an aetiological myth, that is one that explains the cause (aitia) of a natural phenomenon, the skill of the spider.

Indeed, the Lydian maiden Arachne is a fine weaver, so skillful that she claims that she can weave better than Minerva, the goddess herself. Minerva assumes the form of an old woman and tries to warn the foolish girl against such a display of immoderate false pride (hubris), but Arachne, far from acknowledging the goddess as the source of her powers, challenges the goddess to a weaving contest.

Minerva throws off her disguise and orders the looms set up. The goddess weaves into her tapestries the stories about proud mortals who were punished because of their hubris. Impudent Arachne weaves tales about the scandalous behavior of the male gods, another affront. In anger Minerva beats the girl with the shuttle, and Arachne hangs herself on her thread. She becomes smaller and smaller and turns into a spider, weaving eternally.

In zoology the term for spider is arachnid.
Dialogue
Salvēte, discipuli!  Greetings, students!
Salvē, magister (magistra)!  Greetings, teacher! (female teacher)
Valēte!  Farewell! (addressing more than one)
Valē!  Farewell! (addressing one)

Chapter III
MINERVA ET ARACHNĒ
(Part 1)


---

1 Beautiful pictures in weaving, woven tapestries.
2 On Mount Olympus.
3 Your teacher (lit., teacher to you).
### NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agricola, -ae; m.</td>
<td>farmer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arachnē, f.</td>
<td>Arachne (a maiden)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dea, -ae, f.</td>
<td>goddess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discipuli, -ōrum, m.*</td>
<td>students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incola, -ae, common (c.)</td>
<td>inhabitant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lāna, -ae, f.</td>
<td>wool, spinning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lydia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Lydia (a country in Asia Minor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magister, -tri, m.†</td>
<td>teacher (masc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magistra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>teacher (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerva, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Minerva (a goddess)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nympha, -ae, f.</td>
<td>nymph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pictūra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapientia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silva, -ae, f.</td>
<td>forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vīta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>life</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clāmat, clāmant</td>
<td>shout, exclaim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat, dant</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docet, docent</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrmat, fōrmant</td>
<td>make, shape, fashion, form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glomerat, glomerant</td>
<td>wind into a ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labōrat, labōrant</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat, laudant</td>
<td>praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salvē, salvēte</td>
<td>greetings, hello, Hail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valē, valēte</td>
<td>farewell, goodbye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perīta</td>
<td>skilled, skillful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superba</td>
<td>proud</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OTHER WORDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certē</td>
<td>surely, certainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dum + present indicative</td>
<td>while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē</td>
<td>me, myself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Genitive plural, masculine.  
†The -e drops in the genitive.
quid  what  quod  because  quoque  also  saepe  often  tē (acc. or abl.)  you  tibi (dat.)  to you, you

Structure

17. Parts of speech. The parts of speech in Latin are as follows: noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection. English employs the same parts of speech (see p. 418).

18. Inflection. You have seen how nouns, adjectives, and verbs in Latin change their endings to indicate their use in the sentence.

Puella superba Minervam nōn laudat.  The proud girl does not praise Minerva.
Puellae superbae Minervam nōn laudant.  The proud girls do not praise Minerva.

Puella becomes puellae to indicate the plural of the noun. Superba becomes superbae to agree with its noun. Laudat becomes laudant in the plural, since the verb must always agree with its subject in number. Minerva ends in -am to show that it is the direct object. The stem of the word is clearly recognizable to give the meaning of the word, and the ending indicates its use in the sentence. This change of ending is called inflection. The inflection of nouns is called declension; the inflection of verbs is called conjugation.

19. Nouns. As in English, nouns are name words. In Latin they are inflected to show (a) number, (b) gender, and (c) case.

(a) Number (singular or plural) has already been discussed (Sec. 4).

puella (girl) becomes puellae (girls) to show plural

(b) Gender (masculine, feminine, or neuter). As in English, nouns are either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Nouns in Latin have both natural and grammatical gender.4 Natural gender means that nouns referring to males are masculine (deus, amicus, agricola), and nouns

4We can understand puella (girl) being feminine, but what logic justifies fibula (story) or silva (forest) being feminine? The only parallel in English occurs when we refer to a car or a boat as “she,” and thus we can understand the principle of grammatical gender. Learn the gender of each word as it occurs in the vocabulary.
referring to females are feminine (dea, amīca, nympha). Grammatical gender means that many nouns which are neuter in English are either masculine or feminine in Latin. Puella (girl) is, of course, feminine, but so also are silva (forest), fābula (story), and almost all of the nouns ending in -a. The only exceptions are a few masculine nouns ending in -a which demonstrate natural gender (agricola, poēta, nauta).

(c) Case (use in the sentence). The names of the cases and their uses follow with the declension of puella (Sec. 21), the presentation of all the inflected forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Subject or Predicate Word</td>
<td>The girl is Arachne.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Possession</td>
<td>The girl’s house is small.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Indirect Object</td>
<td>Minerva gives the girl pictures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Direct Object</td>
<td>The nymphs watch the girl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Object of Preposition</td>
<td>The bull plays with the girl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. Declension of nouns. There are five declension patterns for nouns in Latin, each with a characteristic vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
<th>Fifth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns ending in -a belong to the first declension (fābula, puella). They are all feminine, except for a few masculines like agricola. Most nouns ending in -us in the nominative are masculine (taurus, amicus, deus) and belong to the second declension.7

21. First declension or -a declension.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endings</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>puella</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>puellārum</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>puellīs</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>puellam</td>
<td>puellās</td>
<td>-am</td>
<td>-ās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>puellā</td>
<td>puellīs</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Henceforth in the vocabulary the nouns will be listed in the nominative

---

5 Or, the house of the girl is small.

6 Or, Minerva gives pictures to the girl. The dative case tells the person to or for whom something is done. In English the idea can be expressed by a prepositional phrase or by the indirect object preceding the direct, as in the example in the text (see Sec. 27).

7 Later you will meet some nouns in -us which belong to the fourth declension.
singular and the genitive singular followed by the gender and the meaning:

**silva, silvae, f.** forest

Practice forming the declension of five nouns from this lesson's vocabulary.

22. Agreement of noun and adjective. The adjective always agrees with the noun which it modifies in case, number, and gender.

Est *silva magna* in ûnsulà pulchrà. There is a great *forest* on the beautiful island.

23. Commands. In the previous lesson *spectáte* (*look at*) was used to express a command. In the dialogue of this lesson appear two more commands, *salvête* and *valête*, both ending in -te, which is the plural form used in addressing more than one person. Drop the -te to form the singular command to address only one individual.

- **Salvē** *Greetings!* (addressing one) (lit., *be well*)
- **Salvēte** *Greetings!* (addressing more than one)
- **Amā** *Love!*
- **Amāte (pl.)** *Love!*
- **Labŏrā** *Work!*
- **Labŏrāte (pl.)** *Work!*

**Exercises**

I. Answer in Latin using complete sentences:

2. Quis est Arachnē?
3. Ubi habitat Minerva?
4. Ubi habitat Arachnē?
5. Spectantne deae dum Arachnē pictūrās fōrmat?
6. Spectantne agricolae dum Arachnē pictūrās fōrmat?
7. Estne Arachnē superba?
8. Fōrmatne Arachnē pictūrās dē vītā incolārum?
9. Amantne nymphae pictūrās puellae?
10. Quid clāmant nymphae?

II. A. Make the following sentences negative:

1. Arachnē est superba. 1. Arachnē nōn est superba.
2. Minerva est dea sapientiae.
3. Arachnē in casā parvā habitat.
4. Arachné pictūrās pulchrās fōrmāt.
5. Nymphae pictūrās spectant.
6. Agricolae pictūrās pulchrās amant.
7. Incolae deam amant.
8. Arachné fābulās nārrat.
10. Arachné deam laudat.

B. Change the number of the subject (and verb) in 5, 6, 7 and 9 in IIA, above.

III. Change the nouns to plural and make the verbs agree.
1. Hīc est magistra.
2. Hīc est fabula.
3. Hīc est casa parva.
4. Hīc est puella superba.
5. Hīc est silva pulchra.
6. Hīc est nympha perita.
7. Hīc est magistra perita.
8. Hīc est pictūra puellae.
9. Hīc est filia deae.

IV. Change each nominative noun and adjective of the first group of sentences into the accusative case, direct object of spectat.
2. Pictūra est pulchra. 2. Agriculto ______ ______ spectat.
3. Dea est perita. 4. Casa est parva.
5. Magistra est perita.
6. Nympha est pulchra.
7. Lydia est pulchra.
8. Silva est magna.
10. Lana est parva.

V. Translate into Latin:
1. Arachne is making beautiful pictures.
2. She is telling stories about the farmers.
3. The nymphs love the stories about Minerva.
4. The stories tell about the life of the inhabitants of Lydia.
5. Minerva is your teacher (magistra tibi). She teaches you well.
Etymology

Identify the Latin source for the underlined words, as in the example: agriculture in the economy—agricola, -ae, m., farmer, one who cultivates the fields—field cultivation.

Arachnids are friends!
Christ’s disciples
magistrate of the court
a sapient ruler
a sylvan landscape
vital statistics
the docent program at the Museum
a docile animal
formation of rocks
conglomerate of all things (con is from cum, with)
conglomerate stone
laudatory remarks
the chemistry laboratory
the class valedictorian (from vale, farewell, and dictum, speech)
extert advice (Note that the prepositional prefix ex, out, combines with peritus, skilled or tried out: the real source of this word is expertus, a form of the verb meaning tried out or tested.)
Dialogue
Quid est nōmen tibi?  
Mihi nōmen est Dominus _______.  
Domina _______.  
Scribite nōmina híc, quaesō.  
What is your name?  
My name is Mr. _______.  
Miss _______.  
Write (your) names here, please.

Chapter IV
MINERVA ET ARACHNĒ
(Part 2)


---

1 Mēcum—cum mē. The preposition cum with a pronoun object is attached to the pronoun with the order reversed.
Verba

domina, -ae, f.
dominus, -i, m.
experimenta, -ae, f.
fēmina, -ae, f.
forma, -ae, f.
nōmen (nōmina, pl.)
superbia, -ae, f.
tēla, -ae, f.

NOUNS
lady, mistress of the household
lord, master, mister
experience
woman
form, shape
name
pride
loom

VERBS
affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītum
dīxī
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum
esse
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītum
mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
quaesō
respondeō, -ēre, respondī, -sum
scribīte (pl.)
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
temptō, -ēre, -āvī, -ātum
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

affirm
walk
contend, vie with, struggle
ought, owe, should
he, she, it said
teach
to be
have, hold
show
deny, say that . . . not
please (lit., I ask)
reply, respond, answer
write (command)
imitate, copy, pretend, take the form of
try, attempt
call, summon

ADJECTIVES
irāta
mea
periculōsa
stulta
sua
temerāria

angry, irate
my
dangerous
stupid, foolish
his own, her own, its own, their own
rash
OTHER WORDS

etiam still, yet
húc to this place, here
iterum again
melius quam better than
mihi (dat.) to me
nēmō no one
-que (attached to last of two correlative words) and

Structure

24. Infinitive. The infinitive of most verbs ends in -re. The meaning is usually to do something: to carry, to love, to praise.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amāre</th>
<th>to love</th>
<th>Débere</th>
<th>to owe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laudāre</td>
<td>to praise</td>
<td>Docēre</td>
<td>to teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocāre</td>
<td>to call</td>
<td>Habēre</td>
<td>to have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs which end in -āre belong to the First Conjugation.2
These verbs which end in -ēre belong to the Second Conjugation.2

A. Complementary infinitive. One of the most common uses of the infinitive is to complete the meaning of a verb of desire or obligation, a use called “complementary.”

Ambulāre désiderō. I desire to walk.
Deam vocāre débeō. I ought to call the goddess.

B. Stem. The stem of the verb is formed by dropping the -re of the infinitive.

First Conjugation
vocā-re a REMEMBER THIS VOWEL ē

Second Conjugation
docē-re

The personal endings are added to this stem.

25. Personal endings. Present tense indicative. The indicative mood is used to state a fact or to inquire whether something is a fact.

---

2There are four conjugations in Latin, each characterized by a different vowel preceding the re ending: First -ā-, Second -ē-, Third -e-, and Fourth -ī-. We are here concerned only with the first two conjugations.
### Person First Conjugation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Second Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 vocō³</td>
<td>I call, am calling, do call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 vocās</td>
<td>you call, are calling, do call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 vocat</td>
<td>he, she, it calls, is calling, does call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocāmus</th>
<th>Docēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vocātis</td>
<td>Docētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocant</td>
<td>Docent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERSONAL ENDINGS

| 1st person is the person speaking | I -ō | we -mus |
| 2nd person is the person spoken to | you -s | you -tis |
| 3rd person is the person spoken of | he, she, it -t | they -nt |

Memorize these endings. They are added to each verb stem to indicate person and number. Note that the vowel is short before final -t and -nt.

Conjugate amō, amāre (love); spectō, spectāre (watch); respondeō, respondēre (reply). Give three possible English translations—simple, progressive, and emphatic—for each form.

26. The linking verb *sum*, esse. The intransitive (having no object) verb *to be* is irregular in most languages, and Latin is no exception.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sum</th>
<th>I am</th>
<th>sumus</th>
<th>we are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>you are</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>he, she, it is</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The infinitive of *sum* is *esse*, to be.

Do not confuse *sum*, meaning *I am*, with the progressive form of the verb: vocō can mean *I am calling*.

27. Indirect object, dative case. The indirect object of the verb is the person to whom or for whom something is done. The indirect object is in the dative case.

---

³In the first conjugation the two vowels -aō merge into -ō. In the second conjugation both the vowels appear—-eō.
Minerva puellae sapientiam dat. Minerva gives the girl wisdom. (or) Minerva gives wisdom to the girl.

Nymphis pictūrās meās mōnstrāre debeō. I ought to show the nymphs my pictures. (or) I ought to show my pictures to the nymphs.

In English we can expand the indirect object into a prepositional phrase introduced by to. In Latin the dative case alone indicates indirect object, and a prepositional phrase is never used.

28. Ablative case. The ablative case is used as object of certain prepositions. The vocabulary will always tell which case the preposition governs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Preposition</th>
<th>English Preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in Lydiā</td>
<td>in Lydia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē vitā</td>
<td>about the life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum puellā</td>
<td>with the girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but: mēcum</td>
<td>with me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cum with a pronoun object is often reversed in order and the two words are joined together (tēcum).

29. Imperative mood. Mood in grammar means manner of expression. So far all of the statements in the book have been in the general, indicative mood, but commands are given in a different tone, in the imperative mood.⁴

You are already familiar with the forms spectāte, salvēte, and valēte. These are imperative plural forms. The singular imperative looks like the stem of the verb. The plural imperative adds -ste (See Sec. 23).

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portā telās.</td>
<td>Carry the looms. (addressing one)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docē mē.</td>
<td>Teach me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portāte telās.</td>
<td>Carry the looms (addressing more than one)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docēte mē.</td>
<td>Teach me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

30. Vocative case. The person addressed is in the vocative⁵ case. The vocative looks just like the nominative and therefore is not listed separately. It usually stands after the first word in the sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Preposition</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tē, puella temerāria, docēre temptō.</td>
<td>Rash girl, I am trying to teach you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portāte, nymphae, tēlās hūc.</td>
<td>Nymphs, carry the looms here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvēte, discipuli.</td>
<td>Greetings, students.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⁴ From imperāre, to command.
⁵ From vocāre, to call; N.B. irregular vocative p. 55, Sec. 43.
31. Enclitic -que. The enclitic -que is another means of expressing and. It is attached to the end of the second of two correlative words: nouns, verbs, or adjectives.

Nymphae puellaeque pictūrās spectant.  
The nympha and the maidens look at the pictures.
Puella sē laudat clāmatque, "Mē doceō."  
The girl praises herself and cries, "I teach myself."
Dea pulchra superbaque, in terrā ambulat.  
The goddess, beautiful and proud, walks on earth.

32. Principal parts of verbs. The vocabulary will now list four principal parts for most verbs: the first person singular of the present tense, the infinitive, and two other forms that you will eventually need for later reading (the first person singular of the perfect tense and the perfect passive participle). Learning all the forms now will save having to retrace your steps later:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Passive Part</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Conjugation</td>
<td>portō</td>
<td>portāre</td>
<td>portāvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Conjugation</td>
<td>habeō</td>
<td>habēre</td>
<td>habui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Almost all first conjugation verbs follow the pattern of portō. Many second conjugation verbs follow the pattern of habeō, but some differ slightly.

Exercises

I. Answer the following questions in complete Latin sentences:

1. Habetne Arachnē sapientiam?
2. Laudatne Arachnē deam?
3. Quid Arachnē clāmat?
4. Simulatne Minerva fōrmam fēminae?
5. Ubi Minerva ambulat?
6. Temptatne Minerva puellam docēre?
7. Estne experientia magistra bona?
8. Quid dixit Arachnē Minervae?
9. Estne Minerva ōrāta?
10. Quid dixit Minerva nymphis?

II A. Conjugate habitāre, portāre, dare,² spectāre, habēre and dēbēre in the present tense.

B. Give the principal parts for vocō, habitō, clāmō, dēbeō, respondeō.

⁶The fourth principal part is given in the neuter (-um) to avoid limiting the participle to either masculine or feminine gender. It is identical to the supine (Sec. 187).
²The present plural of dare has short -a throughout: dō, dās, dat, damus, datis, dant.
III A. Translate into English, giving all three translations—simple, progressive, and emphatic—wherever possible:

1. Portamus, portas, porto, portant.
2. Laudat, laudant, laudō, laudāmus.
3. Format, fōrmāmus, fōrmātis, fōrmās.
4. Sumus, estis, est, sum, sunt, es.
5. Amās, amant, amat, amāmus, amātis.
6. Datis, dant, damus, das, dō, dat.
7. Habeō, habēmus, habent, habēs.
10. Docet, docent, docēo, docētis.

B. Supply the correct form of the complementary infinitive and translate:

1. (To teach) desiderō.
2. Dea fōrmam fēminaē (to take) temptat.
3. Arachnē cum deā (to contend) nōn dēbet.
4. (To reply) dēbēmus.
5. Dea Minerva puellam superbam (to teach) dēbet.

This infinitive is called complementary because it completes the meaning of the verb.

C. Translate into Latin:

1. They love, he is carrying, we are praising, we are, you (sing.) do teach.
2. They are, they are carrying, you (pl.) have, you (pl.) are having.
3. He is, he is shouting, I have, I am having, I am, they are giving.
4. She does love, we are teaching, we are having, do they love, we ought.
5. You (sing.) deny, they are working, we praise, he is forming, it is.

IV A. Supply the correct form of the dative case for each indirect object and translate the sentence:

1. Minerva (to the girl) sapientiam dat.
2. Puella (to the goddess) pictūram dat.
4. Quis est magistra (to you)?
5. Agricola (to the woman) terram dat.
6. Dea (to the farmers) terram dat.
7. Nympha (to the women) fābulam nārrat.
8. Agricolae (to the land) nōmen dant.
9. Dea (to the inhabitants) Lydiae casās dat.
10. Magistra (to the girl) lānam dat.
IV B. Supply the correct form of the ablative case after each preposition and translate the phrase:

1. in (the house)  
   in casā  
   in the house
2. de (the life)  
3. cum (Minerva)  
4. in (Lydia)  
5. de (the pictures)  
6. de (the farmers)  
7. in (the shape)  
8. de (the earth)  
9. cum (the nymph)  
10. in (earth)

V. Translate into Latin:

1. The house is small, but it is pretty.
2. The girls are angry about the story.
3. The stories are new.
4. We are telling tales to the little girls.
5. Minerva walks on earth in the form of a woman.
6. “No one is my teacher; I teach myself,” said Arachne.
7. The goddess is trying to teach the rash girl.
8. Experience teaches.
9. The goddess ought to show her pictures to me.
10. Minerva ought to teach the girl.
11. We ought to give houses to the inhabitants of Lydia.
12. Give me wisdom, goddess.
13. What is your name, little girl?
14. Work with me, farmers.

VI. Referring to the “Guide to Pronunciation,” found in the Introduction, pronounce the following words giving the long and short vowels their accurate sounds:

casa vocāre  
est fēmina  
incola vita  
agricola nōn  
ambulō pictūra

Practice these words with diphthongs:

laudat  
quaesō  
paene
Etymology

Latin is the basis for the later Romance (from Roman) languages which developed in Italy, Spain, Portugal, France and Romania. Latin has also contributed thousands of words to English, both directly and through French influence (See Introduction, concerning the history of the English language). Study the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Romanian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deus</td>
<td>dio</td>
<td>dieu</td>
<td>dios</td>
<td>dumnezeu</td>
<td>deity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filius</td>
<td>figlio</td>
<td>fils</td>
<td>hijo</td>
<td>fiu</td>
<td>filial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magister</td>
<td>maestro</td>
<td>maître</td>
<td>maestro</td>
<td>maestru</td>
<td>master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experientia</td>
<td>experiencia</td>
<td>experience</td>
<td>experiencia</td>
<td>experienţa</td>
<td>experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fémina</td>
<td>femmina</td>
<td>femme</td>
<td>hembra</td>
<td>femeia</td>
<td>female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casa</td>
<td>casa</td>
<td>case</td>
<td>casa</td>
<td>casa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amicus</td>
<td>amico</td>
<td>ami</td>
<td>amigo</td>
<td>amicul</td>
<td>amicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vita</td>
<td>vita</td>
<td>vie</td>
<td>vida</td>
<td>viaţa</td>
<td>vital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomen</td>
<td>nome</td>
<td>nom</td>
<td>nombre</td>
<td>nume</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>villa</td>
<td>villa</td>
<td>villa</td>
<td>villa</td>
<td>villa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the column of English words, notice that the cognate is usually a literary word, sometimes a different part of speech, while the familiar, colloquial word is one derived from Germanic: God is related to Gott, friend to Freund, house to Haus, but deity comes from deus, and amicable comes from amicus.

Monstrance, monster, and demonstrate all come from the basic meaning of show or point out in the verb mōstrō, mōnstrāre. The monstrance in the Catholic Church is the shown sacred image; the monster is the oddity in nature which is pointed out; and to demonstrate is to point out or show.

The student of Latin can automatically enlarge his or her English vocabulary by becoming aware of the manner in which both languages form words from a root by adding a prefix and/or a suffix:

Prefix      Root      Suffix
  in          vocā      tion
    (in)       (call)     (a noun)

---

8Portuguese equivalents: deus, filho, maestro, experiência, fêmea, casa, amigo, vida, nome, vila.
The root gives the basic meaning, usually from a verb stem, and its meaning remains constant. The prefix alters or varies the meaning while the suffix generally indicates the part of speech. By learning the meanings of the prefixes, roots, and suffixes, one can add innumerable words to his vocabulary:

\textbf{voc- (call)}

\begin{align*}
\text{advocate} &\quad \text{to call to someone's attention} \\
\text{avocation} &\quad \text{something that calls one from his vocation or job (calling)} \\
\text{convocation} &\quad \text{a calling together} \\
\text{evoke} &\quad \text{to call forth} \\
\text{evocation} &\quad \text{the act of calling forth} \\
\text{evocable} &\quad \text{able to be called forth} \\
\text{invoke} &\quad \text{to call on someone} \\
\text{invocation} &\quad \text{the act of calling on someone} \\
\text{provoke} &\quad \text{to call forth, summon, excite, incite, stir up} \\
\text{provocation} &\quad \text{act of inciting} \\
\text{provocative} &\quad \text{tending to provoke or stimulate} \\
\text{revoke} &\quad \text{to call back} \\
\text{vocal} &\quad \text{sounded (from vōx, vōcis, voice)} \\
\text{vocabulary} &\quad \text{from vocabulārium, a collection of names, from vocabulum, a name, from vocāre, to call} \\
\text{vocalist} &\quad \text{a singer (from vōx, vōcis)} \\
\text{vocation} &\quad \text{a calling, a job} \\
\text{vocative} &\quad \text{the case of the person called or addressed}
\end{align*}

The basic meanings of the prefixes will be studied in subsequent lessons, but for now note the following:

\begin{align*}
\text{ad-} &\quad \text{to, toward} \\
\text{a-(ab)} &\quad \text{away, away from} \\
\text{e-(ex)} &\quad \text{out of or merely intensifying} \\
\text{de-} &\quad \text{down from or merely intensifying} \\
\text{in-} &\quad \text{in, on, into} \\
\text{con-/co-/com- (from cum)} &\quad \text{with} \\
\text{pro-} &\quad \text{forth, in front of} \\
\text{re-} &\quad \text{back, again} \\
\text{sub-} &\quad \text{under} \\
\text{trans-} &\quad \text{across}
\end{align*}

The suffix \textit{-ion} (invocation) indicates a noun; the suffix \textit{-ive} (provocative) usually indicates an adjective. The suffixes \textit{-or} and \textit{-ist} generally indicate the person performing an act.

\footnote{Consult the drawings in Chapter XX, Etymology, for a helpful memory chart.}
Chapter V
MINERVA ET ARACHNĒ
(Part 3)


Agricolae et nymphae et incolae Lydiae spectābant dum puella et dea labōrant. Nymphae pictūrās et fābulās puellae amābant; maximē amābant fābulam longam dē rapīnā Eurōpae ā Iovē.2 Sed Minerva erat maximē irāta neque amābat fābulās dē factīs malīs deōrum.


Poēta Ovidius fābulam dē puellā superbā narrat.

---

1 Of the gods.
2 Iovē is the ablative of Iūpiter. What English expression comes from ā Iovē?
3 On a string or cord.
Verba

NOUNS

arāneā, -ae, f.  spider
factis (abl. pl.)  deeds
lūppiter, love (abl.)  Jupiter, Jove
misericordia, -ae, f.  pity
rapina, -ae, f.  carrying off, robbery

VERBS

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum  change
 necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum  kill
pendeō, -ère, pependi, pensum  hang
prohibeō, -ère, -hibui, -hibitum  prevent, stop, prohibit

ADJECTIVES

bona  good
longa  long
mala  evil, bad
minima  very small, very little
minor  smaller
optima  very good, excellent
suō  its

OTHER WORDS

ā (ab, before a vowel) + abl.  from, away from; by (Sec. 99)
aeternō  eternally, forever
delinde4  then
dēnique4  and then, finally
itaque  and so, and thus, therefore
Latinē  in Latin
maximē  very, exceedingly; yes indeed, especially
minimē  least; not in the least, not at all
neque  and not
optimē  very good, excellent
prīmō (prīmum)  first, at first, first in a series

4Prīmō, delinde, and dēnique (delinde, + -que, and) constitute transition words to signal stages in narration. They will help you to understand the plot as a story develops.
Structure

33. Imperfect tense, first and second conjugations. The imperfect tense, expressing past time, is formed by inserting the tense sign -ba between the stem and the personal endings of the verb. The only exception is the first person singular in -m instead of -ō. This -m appears also in sum.⁵

First Conjugation

| vocābam | I called, was calling, did call, used to call |
| vocābās | you called, were calling, did call, used to call |
| vocābat | he, she, it called, was calling, did call, used to call |
| vocābāmus | we called, were calling, did call, used to call |
| vocābātis | you (pl.) called, were calling, did call, used to call |
| vocābant | they called, were calling, did call, used to call |

Second Conjugation

| docēbam | I taught, was teaching, did teach, used to teach |
| docēbās | you taught, were teaching, did teach, used to teach |
| docēbat | he, she, it taught, was teaching, did teach, used to teach |
| docēbāmus | we taught, were teaching, did teach, used to teach |
| docēbātis | you (pl.) taught, were teaching, did teach, used to teach |
| docēbant | they taught, were teaching, did teach, used to teach |

Notice that the long vowel is shortened before final -m, -t, and -nt. The further English translations for the imperfect tense serve to show the incomplete (hence "imperfect") or repeated or customary action of the verb in past time: "I used to call, I kept on calling, I would call (daily), I was accustomed to call." The imperfect tense is also used for simple descriptions in a narrative in past time—"The girl was rash; the house was small; she lived in Lydia; the goddess was angry." The action continues from past tense and is incomplete (still true) from the perspective of the storyteller. The emphatic did call translation is necessary for phrasing questions:

Vocabatne Arachnē Minervam? Did Arachne call Minerva?

34. Maximē and minimē. A statement may be intensified by maximē, very much so, or minimē, not in the least. Sometimes the adverbs alone or with only the verb constitute an affirmative or negative reply, especially in questions, conversation, or in dialogue in a play.

---

⁵This is the same -m that appears in eram and in other tenses that you will learn later.
Nymphae fabulam longam maxime amabant.

Habetne Arachnē sapientiam?

Sapientiam minime habet. (or) Minimē.

The nymphs liked the long story very much indeed.

Has Arachne wisdom? (Is she wise?)

She has very little wisdom. (or) Not in the least.

35. Imperfect tense of sum, esse. The stem for the imperfect tense of sum is era-. The personal endings are added to this stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eram</td>
<td>I was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erās</td>
<td>you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>he, she, it was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erimus</td>
<td>we were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erant</td>
<td>they were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36. Further uses of the dative case.

A. Dative of possession. The dative is used to indicate the owner or possessor of someone or something. This use is restricted to sentences employing a form of the linking verb sum:

- Sapientia est tibi. You have wisdom. (lit., Wisdom is to you.) You are wise.
- Mihi sunt plūs quam tibi. I have more than you have. (lit., To me are more than to you.)

B. Dative of interest. The dative is also used to indicate the person interested in or affected by the action or event described in the rest of the sentence:

- Mihi filius est Marcus. My son is Mark. (lit., The son to me is Mark.)
- Quid est nōmen tibi? What is your name? (lit., What is the name to you?)
- Nēmō mihi magistra est. No one is my teacher.
- Mihi nōmen est Marcus. My name is Mark.

Exercises

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō. (Answer in Latin, please.)

1. Quis lānam glomerābat prīmō?
2. Fōrmābatne Minerva pictūrās dē factīs malīs deōrum?
3. Suntne pictūrae pulchrae?
4. Quis deinde lānam glomerābat?

6 This use of the dative is sometimes called dative of reference.
5. Förmäbatne Arachnē pictūrās dē factīs malīs deōrum?
6. Amābantne nymphae fābulam dē Europā et Iove?
7. Amābatne Minerva fābulam et pictūrās dē Europā et Iove?
8. Mōnstratne Arachnē nymphis pictūrās suās?
9. Quid Arachnē temptat?
10. Quis fābulam dē Minervā et puellā superbā narrat?

II A. Complete each verb form in the present tense and translate:
1. (I) monstrā- mōnstrō I show, am showing, do show
2. (we) fōrmā-
3. (she) nārrā-
4. (you, pl.) doce-
5. (they) da-
6. (you, sing) temptā-
7. (he) spectā-
8. (you, pl.) es-
9. (they) portā-
10. (we) dēbē-

B. Change each verb above to the imperfect tense and translate:
1. mōnstrābam I was showing, showed, did show

C. Make each verb above into a question: e.g., mōnstrābamne? Was I showing?

III. Change each imperative singular to imperative plural. Remember to make the vocative (person addressed) plural also.
1. Portā, puella, telam huc, quaesō. 1. Portāte, puellae, 
2. Nārrā, poēta, fābulam, quaesō.
3. Respondē, magistra, Latinē, quaesō.
4. Salvē, dea!
5. Valē, nympha pulchra!

IV. Change each noun to the case required as object of spectābam and make any other necessary changes to make the predicate word agree with the noun it modifies:
2. Dea erat pulchra. 2. Spectābam 
3. Pictūra erat magna.
4. Amica erat bona.
5. Nymphae silvae erant pulchrae. (Cavē!?)
7. Casa erat parva.

7Cavē is the imperative singular of caveō, cavēre, beware.
8. Puellae erant bonae.
10. Magistra erat perita.

V. Translate into Latin:
1. The pictures about the goddess were beautiful.
2. The girls love beautiful stories.
3. The poet Ovid tells about the goddess and the maiden.
4. Arachne also tells stories about the goddess.
5. The rash girl was proud.
6. Minerva was angry because Arachne told stories about the wicked deeds of the gods.
7. The stories of the poet were long.
8. "I am trying to teach you," said Minerva.
9. Minerva changes the form of the proud girl.
10. Arachne is now a spider and hangs on her thread forever.

VI. Referring to the Guide to Pronunciation, divide each word into syllables. Where does the accent or stress in all two syllable words fall?

- casa
- laudant
- parva
- dīxit
- bona
- spectant
- vocant
- portō
- longa
- silva
- fōrna
- stulta
- minor
- nympha
- terra
- love
- mūtō
- pulchra
- mea
- primō

What is the name of the last syllable? It comes from the Latin word ultimus meaning last.
What is the name of the next to the last syllable? It comes from paene, meaning almost, and ultimus.

Etymology

Explain the meaning of the underlined words in the following phrases by indicating the Latin source word or words:

- mutation of genes
- impending doom (in- changes to im- for euphony. Euphony is a word of Greek origin: eu, good, well; phony, sound)
- prohibit smoking
- internecine war (inter means between)
- an optimistic view
- malicious gossip
- malpractice is dangerous
- malevolent person (volent is from volens, wishing)
minimum requirements
sent to the minor league
eternal fire from heaven
put forth maximum effort
prime beef, prime rib

* * * * *

Notice that many first declension nouns in -ia appear in English with a -y ending:

| Germania | Germany | familia | family |
| Italia   | Italy   | gloria  | glory  |
| Sicilia  | Sicily  | memoria | memory |
| Britannia| Britainy| victoria| victory|

Many nouns merely drop the final -a: poet(a); form(a); nymph(a); music(a); urn(a).

Some nouns change the final -a to an unsounded -e in English:

| fama      | fame    | Europa | Europe |
| fortuna   | fortune | causa  | cause  |
| pictura   | picture | statua | statue |
| natura    | nature  |        |        |
Latona and Niobe

Another tale of false pride and boasting (the Greek hubris) that causes much grief to a mortal is the story of Niobe, who brags of her good fortune in having seven sons and seven daughters whereas the goddess Latona (whose worship Niobe disparages) has only two offspring, the twin gods of the sun and moon, Apollo and Diana. As in the tale of Arachne, the offended deity, in the form of an old woman, gives a warning, but the foolish mortal only continues her boasting and mocks the goddess, who then reveals herself and her power. Latona summons her two children and instructs each to kill the offspring of Niobe. With deadly arrows, Apollo slays the seven sons and Diana the seven daughters, even though the now humbled Niobe pleads for the life of her smallest daughter. Weeping, the once obdurate Niobe turns to stone—a transformation appropriate to her “hard” line. Even today, tears trickle from the stone.

The dying agonies of the children of Niobe (Niobid) provided ancient artists with challenging subject matter. Perhaps the most famous example was the sculpture at Pergamum.
Learning Numbers

Cardinal Numbers

| 1 | ūnus | 4 | quattuor | 7 | septem | 10 | decem |
| 2 | duo  | 5 | quinque  | 8 | octō   | 11 | undecim |
| 3 | trēs | 6 | sex       | 9 | novem  | 12 | duodecim |

How many English derivatives can you make from these words?

Chapter VI

LĀTŌNA ET NIOBĒ
(Part 1)


Itaque fēminae Thēbārum dōna rēgīnae superbae, nōn Lātōnēs dabant.

1 Classical Latin normally uses the partitive genitive, multum sapientiae, much (of) wisdom (see Sec. 68).
2 And to the goddesses. Fīlia and dea have irregular forms in the dative and ablative plural: filiābus and deābus, to differentiate them from filiīs and deīs, the masculine equivalents.
3 Incense, frankincense.
4 With proud eyes.
5 Of famous grandfathers. Niobe’s grandfathers were Atlas and Jupiter.
6 Cadmus was the founder of Thebes, capital of Boeotia in Greece. Thus he was the builder of the palace.
Verba

**NOUNS**

āra, -ae, f.
alter

causa, -ae, f.
cause, reason

Diāna, -ae, f.
Diana (goddess of moon, hunt)

dōnum, -i, n.
gift

fāma, -ae, f.
reputation, report, fame

familia, -ae, f.
family

filius, -i, m.
son

flamma, -ae, f.
flame

fortūna, -ae, f.
fortune

Græcia, -ae, f.
Greece

Lātōna, -ae, f.
Latona (mother of Apollo and Diana)

liberi, -ōrum, m. pl.
children

Mantō, f.
Manto (a wise woman)

Niobē, f.
Niobe (a queen)

oculus, -i, m.
eye

oppidum, -i, n.
town

Phoebus, -i, m.
Phoebus Apollo

potentia, -ae, f.
power

puer, -erī, m.
boy

rēgia, -ae, f.
palace

superbia, -ae, f.
p pride

templum, -i, n.
temple

Thēbae, -ārum, f. pl.
Thebes (the city)

via, -ae, f.
street, road

**VERBS**

circumspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
look about, cast a glance

moneō, -āre, -uli, -itum
warn, advise

dōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
decorate, adorn

ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
beg for, ask for, pray to, implore

praestō, -āre, -stītī,
stand before, surpass

-stītum + dat.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
ask

stō, -āre, stetī, statum
stand

**ADJECTIVES**

beātus, -a, -um
happy, blessed

clārus, -a, -um
famous, illustrious, bright, shining, clear
Structure

37. Second declension of nouns. The second declension contains masculine nouns in -us and -er, and neuter nouns in -um. Study the following declension patterns:

Masculine -us:  Neuter -um:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endings</th>
<th></th>
<th>Endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amicus -us (er)</td>
<td>puer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amici -i</td>
<td>pueri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amicō -ō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amicum -um</td>
<td>puerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amicō -ō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amici -i</td>
<td>pueri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amicorum -orum</td>
<td>puerorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amicis -is</td>
<td>pueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amīcos -ōs</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amicīs -īs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the neuter nominative and accusative are alike in the singular (-um) and in the plural (-a).

38. Agreement of adjectives. You remember that the adjective agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender. The regular second declension adjective endings are just like the noun endings of the
masculine amīcus and the neuter templum. Note the following combinations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. amīcus bonus</td>
<td>amīci bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. amīcum bonum</td>
<td>amīcōs bonōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. amīca bona</td>
<td>amīcae bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. amīcam bonam</td>
<td>amīcās bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. dōnum bonum</td>
<td>dōna bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dōnum bonum</td>
<td>dōna bona</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note, however, the combination: puer bonus pueri boni

The adjective must agree with its noun in case, number and gender, but does not always have the same ending, as in puer bonus.

39. Cardinal numbers. The cardinal numbers are as follows:

ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem, undecim, duodecim.

They are indeclinable except for ūnus, one, duo, two, and trēs, three, and they precede the words they modify: ūnam filiam, septem filiōs.

The most familiar Roman numerals are:

|  |  |  |  |  |  | M |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | V | X | L | C | D |
| 1 | 5 | 10 | 50 | 100 | 500 | 1000 |

Subtracted elements precede and added elements follow the letter:

XL (40), LX (60), LXXIX (79), MCMLXXV (1975)

40. Adjectives with masculine nouns in the first declension. There are only a few nouns in the first (or -a) declension which are masculine by natural gender: agricolā (farmer), nauta (sailor), pirāta (pirate), and poēta (poet). All other first declension nouns are feminine. These masculine nouns in an otherwise feminine declension are a source of confusion only when they are modified by adjectives, for if the rule about the agreement of adjectives holds (and it does), the adjectives modifying these masculine -a nouns must have masculine -us endings, as in these examples:

poēta clārus pirāta malus agricolae multi
a famous poet a bad pirate many farmers

Advena (stranger) and incola (inhabitant) are common (c.) in gender; poēta may be common.
Exercises

I. Respondete Latīnē, quaesō.

1. Habetne Niobē septem filiōs?
2. Habetne Lātōna septem filiōs? duōs filiōs? ūnum filium?
3. Habetne Lātōna septem filiās? duās filiās? ūnam filiam?
4. Quid est nōmen filiae Lātōnae? (What case is filiae?)
5. Quid est nōmen filiō Lātōnae?
6. Eratne Niobē superba?
7. Cūr erat Niobē superba?
8. Dantne feminae dōna Lātōnae?
9. Ubi ambulābat Niobē?

II. Decline the following nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Case</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>via</td>
<td>flamma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oculus</td>
<td>filius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>dōnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>templum</td>
<td>filia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III A. Change each third person singular into third person plural and translate:

1. temptat 11. circumspectat
2. ambulat 12. habet
3. mutat 13. docet
4. dat 14. ōrnat
5. glomerat 15. stat
6. est 16. negat
7. dēbet 17. ōrat
8. certat 18. praestat
9. mōnstrat 19. clāmat
10. simulat 20. habitat

B. Change each verb above to imperfect tense, third person singular and translate:

1. temptābat—he tried, was trying, did try

C. Translate into Latin:

1. I was carrying 5. you (sing.) are
2. he changed 6. they gave
3. we told 7. we are living
4. they were 8. you (pl.) walked

---

*The genitive singular of second declension nouns in -ius and -ium keeps both l’s: filii, although originally Latin combined the two into one: fili.*
9. I am having  
10. they are decorating  
11. do we pray?  
12. he was changing  
13. she is looking about  
14. they were having

15. did we show?  
16. he ought to decorate  
17. we ought to give  
18. I taught  
19. they tried to walk  
20. it was

IV A. Drill in declensions. Translate: Niobē habēbat:

1. one son
2. two sons (duōs fīliōs)
3. three sons (třēs fīliōs)
4. four sons
5. five sons
6. six sons
7. seven sons

1. one daughter
2. two daughters (duās fīliās)
3. three daughters (třēs fīliās)
4. four daughters
5. five daughters
6. six daughters
7. seven daughters

B. Decline: fīlius bonus fortūna bona templum magnum

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Diana was the daughter of Latona.
2. Niobe had seven daughters.
3. Niobe also had seven sons.
4. Phoebus was the son of Latona.
5. Niobe was proud because she had seven sons and seven daughters.
6. Latona had only one son and one daughter.
7. Latona was irate because Niobe refused (negāre) to give gifts to Phoebus and Diana.
8. Niobe said, “Women of Thebes, worship me; give gifts to me, not to Latona.”
9. Niobe said, “Fortune is good to me.”
10. Behold, Niobe is queen in the palace of Cadmus.

VI. Divide the following words into syllables:

amicus rēgina Lātōna
potentia fortūna superbia

What is the name of the syllable before the penult? It comes from the word ante (before) and penult.

Etymology

From which words in the lesson do the underlined words derive their meaning? Give the Latin word, its meaning and the meaning of the English word:
working for a good cause
a generous donation
a famous ballplayer
an infamous wretch (*in-* has a meaning of *not* in both English and Latin)
a familiar quotation
flammable material
inflammable; inflammatory language (the *in-* here merely intensifies the meaning)
the arrival of a foreign potentate
regal splendor
Do not deviate from the rule!
puerile behavior
an examination by a competent oculist

* * * * *

From the Latin *via*, many English words originate: *via*, itself meaning “by the road of . . .”—We came *via* Niagara Falls; *viaduct*, the road that leads from one place to another; *deviate*, to go from the general path (*de-*viation, the noun and *devious*, an adjective which means both winding from the straight path and going astray, erring); *voyage* (derived from French); *previous*, going before (*pre-*means *before*); *impervious*, not going through (*im-* is *in-* meaning *not*, changed for euphony, and *per* means *through*).

Many verbs come into English almost identical in form to the Latin verb with the personal ending dropped or changed to a mute -*e*. Give the English verb for each of the words below and give the noun meaning the “act of . . .” by adding -*ion* or -*tion*, except for *respondeō*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Verb</th>
<th>English Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accūsō</td>
<td>accusatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adōrō</td>
<td>adoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnfirmō</td>
<td>confirmation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(in) habitō</td>
<td>habit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exspectō</td>
<td>expectation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td>prohibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respondeō</td>
<td>response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occupō</td>
<td>occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labōrō</td>
<td>labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temptō</td>
<td>temptation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrmō</td>
<td>form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some first declension nouns in -ntia appear in English ending in -*ce* meaning the *state of* or the *quality of* or *result of*. What are the English equivalents of: *experientia*, *potentia*, *patientia*, *scientia*, *violentia*?

---

9 The viaduct is a bridge, usually resting on high arches, carrying the road over an obstruction.
Dialogue
Quot discipuli sunt in schola Latina hodie?
Sunt triginta tres discipuli in schola Latina hodie.

How many students are in Latin class today?
There are thirty-three students in Latin class today.

---

Chapter VII
LĀTŌNA ET NIΩBĒ (Part 2)


Deinde Phoebus dixit: “Satis! Longa querella est mora poenae.” Tum celeriter Diānā et Phoebus per aēra ad régiam réginae volant.


---

1 Profānum comes from pro, before, outside of, and fānum, temple; therefore, not of the temple, not sacred, and hence, wicked, profane.
2 I have (lit., there are to me).
3 Flow, from mānō, -āre; not to be confused with maneō, -ēre, stay, remain.
### Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>âëra, m. (Greek acc. sing.)</td>
<td>air</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campus, -î, m.</td>
<td>field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equus, -î, m.</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funera, n. pl.</td>
<td>funerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lacrima, -ae, f.</td>
<td>tear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>măter, f.</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moenia, -ium, * n. pl.</td>
<td>walls, fortifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mora, -ae, f.</td>
<td>delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poena, -ae, f.</td>
<td>punishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>populus, -î, m.</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>querella, -ae, f.</td>
<td>complaint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruina, -ae, f.</td>
<td>ruin, disaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sagitta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>schola, -ae, f.</td>
<td>school, class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statua, -ae, f.</td>
<td>statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbum, -î, n.</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>congelo, -ärē, -āvī, -ātum</td>
<td>freeze, stiffen, congeal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convoco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</td>
<td>call together, summon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercēō, -ēre, -ūi, -ītum</td>
<td>train, exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</td>
<td>honor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum</td>
<td>help, aid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</td>
<td>cry, weep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum</td>
<td>leave, leave behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</td>
<td>ask, beg for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</td>
<td>fly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meus, -a, -um</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>planus, -a, -um</td>
<td>equal, level, even, flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profānus, -a, -um</td>
<td>wicked, evil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ultimus, -a, -um</td>
<td>last</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Other Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad + acc.</td>
<td>to, toward, near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeriter</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Genitive plural in -lum.
hodie  today
magis  more
ō  o, oh
per + acc.  through
plús  more
prope + acc.  near, close to
quot, indecl.  how many, how much
quam  than
satis  enough
tum  then
ubi  when, while, where

Structure

41. First and second declension adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>boni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since the adjective agrees with its noun in any gender, number, or case, all of the above forms must be memorized.

42. Ablative of means. The ablative case is used not only as the object of certain prepositions (in viā, de puellā), but it is used also without a preposition to indicate the means or instrument by which something is done.

Phoebus filiōs sagittīs necat. Phoebus kills the sons with (his) arrows. (by means of)
Niobē lacrimīs vitam filiāe rogat. Niobe begs for the life of (her) daughter with tears. (by means of)

43. Vocative in -e. Almost all vocative forms are made exactly as the nominative forms, and are not listed separately. The only exception occurs in the masculine singular of second declension nouns ending in -us. Here the form ends in -e, instead of -us.*

Ō Phoebe, ō Dīna, iuvāte mē. Oh Phoebus, oh Diana, help me.

44. Accusative case with prepositions. Some prepositions govern the accusative case; that is, the object of the preposition is in the accusative.

*Also irregular is the vocative form for words ending in -lus, which ends in -i: Vergillīus becomes Vereīli (see o. 403).
ad régiam to the palace
per aëra through the air
prope moenia near the walls
in silvam into the forest

45. Verb compounds. Many verbs are formed from a single base root with various prefixes, usually prepositions, e.g., from vocō (call):

- advocō call to, summon, invite
- convocō call together, convocate, assemble
- dēvocō call off, call away, call down
- ēvocō call out, evoke
- invocō call upon, invoke
- prōvocō call forth, summon

Once you recognize the process by which compound verbs are formed, you can add many new words to your vocabulary in both Latin and English. When you meet the combination of prefix and root verb in a single word, attempt to work out a meaning with the best idiomatic English equivalent to fit the context; e.g., præstat, stands before, surpasses, outranks, and circumspectat, looks around.

Exercises

I. Respondēte Latīnē, quaesō.
   2. Habēsne vitam bonam?
   3. Habēsne equum bonum? currum automatum (automobile) bonum?
   4. Habēsne amicum bonum?
   5. Habēmusne oppidum pulchrum?
   6. Habetne Phoebus sagittās?
   7. Habēsne sagittās?
   8. Habēsne experientiam bonam in scholā?
   9. Habēsne lacrimās?
  10. Habēsne septem filiās?

II. Decline the following adjectives like bonus, bona, bonum:
   1. parvus 3. meus 5. primus
   2. longus 4. ëltimus 6. multus (What does the plural mean?)

4 Note that in (in, on) also governs the ablative case, indicating place where (see Sec. 15).
### III A. Change the singular forms of each case to the plural:

1. **Nom.** vita bona—vitae  
2. amicus famōsus  
3. dōnum sacrum bonae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>vitae bonae</td>
<td>amici famōsī</td>
<td>dōni sacri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>vitae bonae</td>
<td>amicō famōsō</td>
<td>dōnō sacrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vitam bonam</td>
<td>amicum famōsum</td>
<td>dōnum sacrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vitā bonā</td>
<td>amicō famōsō</td>
<td>dōnō sacrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. Supply the correct case of the noun required and translate (omitting the possessive adjective):

1. Phoebus et Diāna liberōs (*by means of their arrows*) necabant.
2. Lātōna fēminis (*with proud words*) dixit.
4. (*By her tears*) Lātōna poenam fēminae superfiae rogat.
5. (*With her eyes*) Niobē vitam ultimae filiae orat.

### C. Supply the correct form of the vocative case:

1. Vocāte, (*women*), filiōs.
2. Exercēte, (*boys*), equōs in campō.
3. Iuvā mē, Ō (*Phoebus*)!
4. Ō (*people*), spectā ruinam meam.
5. Honōrā, (*my daughter*), deōs.

### IV. Change each imperative singular to the corresponding plural and make the vocative nouns plural also. Then translate:

1. Ōrā deōs, puella superba.  
2. Dā, fēmina superba, dōna deis. (*The imperative plural of dā has a short vowel in the stem.*)
4. Rogā, agricola, vitam longam.
5. Ōrā, popule, dōnum sapientiae.
6. Dā, régina, equōs incolis Thēbārum.
7. Stā hic, nympha pulchra, mēcum.

### V. Translate into Latin, omitting the possessive adjectives:

1. Latōna summoned (called together) her children, Phoebus and Diana.
2. He said (dixit), "You ought to kill the sons and daughters of the proud woman."
3. Phoebus killed the seven sons with his arrows.
4. Diana killed six daughters with her arrows.
5. Niobe begged for the life of her last daughter.
6. She tried to prevent the evil deed.
7. But Latona was still irate.
8. Diana killed the last daughter.
9. While Niobe weeps, she stiffens (congelat).
10. Even now she is weeping.

VI. Divide the following words into syllables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antepenult</th>
<th>Penult</th>
<th>Ultima</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>famōsus</td>
<td>fā</td>
<td>mō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pictūrā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puellā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudārē</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portātis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lātōna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where does the accent fall in each of these words, as you have heard them pronounced?

Etymology

From the word *verbūm* (*word*) English derives *verb*, the word which gives the important meaning of the sentence, and *verbal*, meaning communicating by means of words, the spoken language. Also related are *verbiage*, the use of many words, wordiness; *verbose*, abounding in words; *adverb*, the part of speech that stands near (ad) the verb; *verbatim*, word for word; *proverb* (from *proverbium*, a word spoken beforehand), a wise saying; and *verbalize*, to put into words.

What is an *equestrian* statue? What is a *lacrimose* farewell?

From *mater* and *pater* English derives its words *maternity* and *paternity*. What is a *paternity* suit? The adjectives *maternal* and *paternal* identify grandparents. In the same manner *matrilineal* and *patrilineal* identify genealogical lines. But there is only one *alma mater*! (*Alma* means loving or fostering.)

What is a *moratorium*?

What is a *subpoena* to appear in court? (*sub* means under)

What is a *querulous* old man

What happens to blood when it *congeals*?

What are *lacrimal* glands?

How can one *relinquish* animosity?

Do you approve of the way in which police *interrogate* suspects? (*Inter* means *between* or *among*.)

What are *ultimate* rites? What syllable is the *ultima*?
The infinitive of the verb *volāre* gives its name to a very popular Italian song, "Volare," which became a favorite American song also. The opening lines are directly from Latin:

**Volāre** *(to fly)—oh—oh
Cantāre *(to sing)—oh, oh, oh, oh—

* * * * *

Roman numerals began as ideograms with the fingers (*digitus*, -ī, *m.*) used as counters. One held up one finger for one, two fingers for two, three fingers for three, four fingers for four, and the thumb crossing over perhaps was an early form of five (ויויוי). Then the V made by the thumb and little finger when the hand is fully extended wide probably is the source for V meaning five. There is a theory that the X for ten is two V's, one on top of the other upside down. The C for one hundred stands for the indeclinable *centum*, and M for one thousand stands for *mīle*, *mīlia*. Until the second century A.D., however, one thousand was written CIĆ (D for 500 represents the right half of this symbol).

The cardinal numbers (*ēnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, *quattuor*, *quinque*, *sex*, *septem*, *octō*, *novem*, *decem*) are so called because they are the important form of the numbers on which the other forms pivot, and the word *cardinal* comes from *cardō*, *cardinis*, a hinge. The Roman Catholic cardinal is so called because of the importance of his office, but the bird of the same name is so called because of the color of his feathers, the same as that of the garb of the ecclesiastical official.
Pan and Syrinx

The story of the Pipes of Pan is another aetiological myth explaining the musical instrument from the transformation of the nymph Syrinx into reeds by her companion nymphs when the embrace of the satyr Pan became too ardent. The story is one of many involving the pursuit of the female by the male, in this instance the sexually aroused male Pan, whose goat heels identify him with Kinsey's "prancing, leering" animal. The tale is made more dramatic by Pan's further use of the maiden whom he cannot embrace in her human form. He binds together the reeds of unequal length, when, as he breathes over them, he finds that they give off the sound of a complaint. Using wax as the adhesive material, he forms the fistula or the pipes of Pan which later evolved into the shepherd's pipe, a single or double shaft with holes to provide the corresponding notes of the scale made by the "unequal" length of the reeds.
Chapter VIII
PĀN ET SYRINGA


Syringa dixit, “Dīānæ vitam meam dēvovēbō. Nūllus vir, nūllus deōs mē habēbit.”


1 Ūnus, duo, and trēs in compound numbers may be declined.
2 But Pan thinks that he holds (is holding) Syrinx in his arms.
3 He joins together.
4 Accusative, the name Syrinx.
Verba

NOUNS

ager, agrī, m. field
auxilium, -ii, n. aid, help
brāchium, -ii, n. arm, limb
cēra, -ae, f. wax
concilium, -ii, n. union
fistula, -ae, f. reed pipe, pipes of Pan
fuga, -ae, f. flight
Pān, m. Pan (a forest divinity, satyr)
papyrus, -i, f. papyrus, reed
ripa, -ae, f. bank (of a river)
satyrus, -i, m. satyr
sonus, -i, m. sound
Syringa, -ae, f. Syrinx (a nymph)
unda, -ae, f. wave, water, stream
vir, virī, m. man

VERBS

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum hide, conceal
dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvi, -vōtum devote
errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum wander
fugītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum flee, avoid, shun
maneō, -ēre, mansī, mansum remain, stay
putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum think
suspirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum breathe
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum hold, keep, possess, have
videō, -ēre, vidī, visum see

ADJECTIVES

benignus, -a, -um kind
cēterus, -a, -um other, rest of
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense
miser, -era, -erum wretched, unhappy, miserable
nōllus, -a, -um no, none
(st see Sec. 131)
umbrōsus, -a, -um shady

OTHER WORDS

aeternum forever
autem (postpositive⁵) but, however
dōnec until, up to the time when
eam (acc.) her
eōs (acc.) them
ōlim once, once upon a time, formerly
quamquam although
sic thus
statim immediately
tamen nevertheless
trāns + acc. across

Structure

46. Future tense, indicative. The future tense is formed by inserting the tense sign -bi between the stem and the personal endings of the verb. The characteristic -ā of the stem is retained before the tense sign in the first conjugation, the -e in the second conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Conjugation</th>
<th>Second Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocābō</td>
<td>I shall call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābis</td>
<td>you will call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābit</td>
<td>he, she, it will call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābimus</td>
<td>we shall call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābitis</td>
<td>you will call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocābunt</td>
<td>they will call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docēbō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docēbis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docēbit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>docēbunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I shall teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he, she, it will teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we shall teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they will teach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B. In the first person singular the -bi becomes -bō.
In the third person plural the -bi becomes -bu.

47. Two adjectives modifying a single noun. Two adjectives modifying a single noun are usually translated without the “and” conjunction, although et connects them in Latin.

in silvā dēnsā et umbrōsā in a dense, shady forest

48. Tēcum, mēcum. When the preposition cum (with) is used with pronoun objects tē and mē (you, me), the preposition is attached to the end of the pronoun.

Note also the plurals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>single</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tēcum</td>
<td>nōbiscum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēcum</td>
<td>vōbiscum⁶</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⁵ Postpositive means that a word cannot stand first in its clause; these words usually stand second (in an “after” position).
⁶ Dominus vōbiscum. The Lord be with you.
49. Second declension nouns in -er and -ir. You have already learned that there are a few masculine nouns in the second declension which end in -er in the nominative singular. Some like *puer* keep the -e throughout the declension; some, however, like *ager* drop the -e after the nominative form. The endings are regular in all other cases. *Vir* is the only noun in -ir.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>puer</th>
<th>ager</th>
<th>vir</th>
<th>pueri</th>
<th>agri</th>
<th>viri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pueri</td>
<td>agri</td>
<td>viri</td>
<td>puerorum</td>
<td>agrorum</td>
<td>virorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>pueris</td>
<td>agris</td>
<td>viris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puerum</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>virum</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>pueris</td>
<td>agris</td>
<td>viris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. Adjectives in -er: *miser* and *pulcher*. The adjective *miser*, *misera*, *miserum* differs from adjectives like *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum* in that *miser* keeps the -e in the stem while *pulcher* drops it after the nominative singular masculine. Both declensions are regular thereafter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miseram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>misera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both plurals are regular

The adjective *miser* is declined like the noun *puer*. The adjective *pulcher* is declined like the noun *ager*. Retain the -e Drop the -e

51. Future tense of *sum*. The stem for the future is *eri-*

| erō | I shall be | erimus | we shall be |
| eris | you will be | eritis | you will be |
| erit | he, she, it will be | erunt | they will be |

52. Word order, adjectives. Adjectives denoting size, quantity and number generally precede the nouns they modify.

*Rēgina in magnā rēgiā habitat.* The queen lives in a large palace.
*Quīnque equōs in campō vidēbat.* He saw five horses on the plain.
Exercises

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō.
   1. Quis erat Syringa?
   2. Amābatne Syringa virōs et deōs?
   3. Ubi Syringa sē celat?
   4. Quis maximē Syringam amābat?
   5. Quid Syringae dixit Pān?
   6. Quid fugam Syringae prohibēbat?
   7. Quid formam Syringae mūtāt?
   8. Quid Pān in bracchiis habēbat?
   9. Quid Pān ita formāt?
  10. Quid est nōmen septem papyris?

II. Decline these nouns with their adjectives:
   1. ager planus 3. vir bonus 5. puer parvus
   2. nympha pulchra 4. deus miser

III A. Conjugate in the future tense:
   1. vocāre 3. esse 5. dare (stem vowel is short) 7. vidēre
   2. habēre 4. laudāre 6. stāre

   B. Change each verb to the corresponding plural and translate:
   1. fugitābit fugitābunt they will flee
   2. eris
   3. manēbit
   4. habēbō
   5. dabit
   6. amābit
   7. celābis
   8. mūtābis
   9. dēvovēbō
   10. videbō

IV. Count by tens to one hundred. Count backwards by tens. Supply the accusative plural form of the noun in parentheses to be the direct object of videō, as in Example 1:
   1. Videō vigintī (equus).
   2. Videō trīgintā (puer).
   3. Videō quadrāgintā (papyrus).
   4. Videō quinquāgintā (ager).
   5. Videō sexāgintā (satyrus).
   6. Videō octōgintā (nympha).
7. Videō nonāginā (casa).
8. Videō centum (liberi).\(^7\)
9. Videō decem (magistra).
10. Videō septuāginā\(^8\) (vir).

V. Translate the following sentences:
1. Syrinx, a beautiful nymph, lived in Arcadia.
2. She did not love the gods and satyrs; she loved only the other nymphs and the goddess Diana.
3. “No man shall have me,” she said. “I shall love only Diana.”
4. Pan loved Syrinx and said, “I shall love you forever.”
5. Syrinx flees through the woods and the fields.
6. Pan holds the reeds in his arms.
7. While he breathes over the reeds, the papyri give (off) the sound of a complaint.
8. Pan binds together (coniungit) the reeds with wax.
9. Thus he will have Syrinx forever.
10. Pan forms the pipes and gives to the pipes the name Syrinx.

VI. Divide into syllables and mark the accent on the following words of more than two syllables:

- amābat
- vidēbant
- Dīāna

- umbrōsa
- fugitābit
- habēbō

Notice that in each word the penult contains a long vowel. The accent always falls on the penult if its vowel is long.

Etymology

The words *culture* and *cultivate* come from a form of the verb *colo*, -ere, *colui*, *cultum* which means *cultivate, till the soil, or worship*. Compounded with *agri* (*field*), the word gives us *agricola* (*farmer*) in Latin and *agriculture* in English. Sociologically the word is very interesting for what it tells us about the mystery and importance of the fertility of the soil, a matter of life and death to a farming community whose goddesses of fertility (Juno, Ceres, Proserpina, Diana) all were worshipped and cultivated. How fascinating that the verb for “cultivate or till a field” is the same as the verb for “worship”! Our English word *cult*, the worship of a god or hero, is derived from this same root.

---

\(^7\) Who had a hundred children?

\(^8\) What does “Septuagint” refer to as a Biblical term?
Identify the Latin word in the lesson from which the underlined words in the following phrases are derived. Give the Latin word, the meaning in English and the meaning of the English word, as in the example:

an auxiliary verb—auxilium, -ii, n. (help, aid)—a helping verb in a verb phrase (have seen)
reconciliation with my wife
a virile person
tender devotion
error in one's ways
the video on my television
a benign tumour
a miserable existence

* * * * *

The ending -ösus in Latin means full of and was often attached to a noun: periculum (danger) became periculösus (dangerous); umbra (shade) became umbrosus (shady); lacrima (tear) became lacrimösus (full of tears); herba (grass) became herbösus (grassy); forma (shape) became formösus (shapely, beautiful). Formosa in China has this name. What is umbrage in English? What is umbra in astronomy? What is the penumbra?

Some Latin nouns of the second declension come into English with the -us ending dropped—e.g., satyr(us) and digit(us)—but many come directly into English intact: alumnus, campus, locus, circus, papyrus, terminus, mucus (mucous in English), radius, tumulus, stimulus, virus. Some of these words form their plurals from their plurals in Latin: alumni, papyri, stimuli; but the more common plural is the plural ending in -es: campuses, circuses, viruses.
Callisto

Of all the myths, the story of Callisto seems the most unfair: the mortal suffering for the indiscretion of the god. The final metamorphosis, however, raising the nymph to a place of honor in the sky along with her son, does compensate for the suffering on earth. This aetiological myth accounting for the Big and Little Dipper is the story of the lovely nymph Callisto whom Jupiter loved and approached in the form of Diana, so as not to alarm the maiden. When the embrace became rather ardent, the poor nymph realized that her companion was not her goddess leader but a male. Months later when her pregnant condition became known, poor Callisto was driven from the band of Diana’s nymphs; and after the birth of a son, Arcas, Juno, jealous of her rival, determined to change the beautiful features that had attracted her husband. She cast the nymph to the ground and caused shaggy black hair to grow all over her and gave her a growl for a voice. Now poor Callisto wanders in the woods afraid of the wild beasts, herself a wild animal.

Arcas grown to young manhood and now a hunter comes upon the bear one day in the woods and the mother tries to communicate with her son, but to no avail. Arcas is about to shoot the ursa when Jupiter, moved by the impending tragedy, changes Arcas also into a bear and flings both mother and son into the heavens, the two constellations Ursa Major and Ursa Minor.
**Chapter IX**

**CALLISTŌ (Part 1)**

Saepe poētae Mūsās¹ invocant dum fābulās nārrant. "Nārrā, ō Mūsa, fābulam dē nymphā Callistō et de filiō eius, Arcade."


---

¹The Muses were nine goddesses of poetry, music and the liberal arts. For their names see the Appendix.

²A band held back her careless locks (lit., neglected hair). capillus, -l, m., hair.
Verba

NOUNS

Arcadia, -ae, f.
Arcadia (a region of the Peloponnesus, dear to Jupiter)

Arcas, Arcadis, m.
Arcas (son of Callisto)

ciaelum, -i, n.
sky, the heavens

Callistō, f.
Callisto (a nymph)
dēlectāmentum, -i, n.
delight

fibula, -ae, f.
pin

iaculum, -i, n.
javelin

īra, -ae, f.
wrath

lūnō, f.
Juno (queen of the gods)

Mūsa, -ae, f.
Muse

pretium, -ii, n.
price, reward

somnus, -i, m.
sleep

in somnō
asleep

stella, -ae, f.
star

ursa, -ae, f.
bear

Ursa Maior
Greater Bear

Ursa Minor
Smaller Bear

vestimentum, -i, n.
garment, clothes

victor, victōris, m.
victor

vitta, -ae, f.
fillet, band

VERBS

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
approach

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
care for

ēvitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
avoid, shun

iaceō, -ēre, -ui
lie (at rest)

invocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum
invoke

retineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum
keep, hold back, restrain

ADJECTIVES

alius, -a, -ud; aliī . . . aliī
other; some . . . others

cārus, -a, -um + dat.
dear (to)

formōsus, -a, -um
beautiful, shapely

grātus, -a, -um + dat.
pleasing (to)

herbōsus, -a, -um
grassy

neglectus, -a, -um
neglected

nōtus, -a, -um
familiar, well-known

pretiōsus, -a, -um
costly

sōlus, -a, -um (see Sec. 131)
alone, lone, only
OTHER WORDS

aut or
cuius whose (sing.)
eius3 his, her, its
propter on account of, because of
secreto secretly
si if

Structure

53. Perfect tense: indicative forms. To form the perfect tense, you must use the third principal part of the verb, the perfect, first person singular. This third principal part appears with each verb listed in the vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1st Per. Sing.)</td>
<td>(1st Per. Sing.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocō</td>
<td>vocāre</td>
<td>vocāvi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the perfect form (vocāvi), drop the -i to obtain the perfect stem and add these personal endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>-imīs we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-isti you</td>
<td>-istīs you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-it he, she, it</td>
<td>-erunt they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect Tense of vocāre

vocāvi I called, have called, did call
vocāvīstī you called, have called, did call
vocāvīt he, she, it called, has called, did call
vocāvīmus we called, have called, did call
vocāvīstīs you called, have called, did call
vocāvērunt they called, have called, did call

Observe the following pattern for first conjugation verbs:

laudō, laudāre, laudāvi
nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvi
amō, amāre, amāvi

Almost all first conjugation verbs follow this pattern.4
Memorize the principal parts, the endings, and the meanings in English.

---

3See Sec. 58 and 88.
4Three important exceptions are:
do, dare, dedī, datum, give
stō, stāre, stetī, stand
iuvo, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, help, aid.
54. Perfect tense: meanings. The perfect tense refers to time already past, not to continuing action. It often refers to a single, completed action—brief, done once, not a continuous or habitual act. See the difference between the continuous, habitual action of the imperfect tense and the completed action of the perfect in the following sentences:

**Imperfect:**
- Callistō in silvā *errābat.*
  - Callisto was wandering in the woods. (*continuous action*)
- Callistō in somnō *iacēbat.*
  - Callisto was lying asleep. (*continuous action*)

**Perfect:**
- Iuppiter eam *vidit et statim amāvit.*
  - Jupiter saw her and immediately loved her. (*completed action*)

The following story in English has been annotated to illustrate the tense which would be required in a Latin version.

I was sitting (*Impf.*) at home one evening. I was relaxing (*Impf.*) in my favorite chair. The television was playing (*Impf.*) softly. My son was sleeping (*Impf.*) upstairs while the dog was sleeping (*Impf.*) beside me. Suddenly the dog growled (*Perf.*) He rose (*Perf.*) and ran (*Perf.*) to the window. The moon was shining (*Impf.*) brightly and I tried (*Perf.*) to peer into the yard. I saw (*Perf.*) a form as it fled (*Impf.*) into the night. I was frightened (*Impf./Perf.*) and I called (*Perf.*) the police. But I felt (*Perf./Impf.*) secure because the dog was (*Impf.*) with me.

The perfect tense can also be translated with the auxiliaries *has/have* or *did*:

- Poēta fābulam *nārāvit.*
  - The poet *has told* his story.
- Mutāvitne deus *fōrnam nymphae?*
  - *Did* the god *change* the form of the nymph?

55. Perfect tense, second conjugation verbs. Second conjugation verbs have several patterns for the perfect. The most common pattern is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dēbēō</td>
<td>dēbēre</td>
<td>dēbui</td>
<td>docui</td>
<td>I have taught, taught, did teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doceō</td>
<td>doceō</td>
<td>docui</td>
<td>dociu</td>
<td>you have taught, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habēō</td>
<td>habēre</td>
<td>habui</td>
<td>docuistī</td>
<td>he, she, it has taught, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prohibēō</td>
<td>prohibēre</td>
<td>prohibuī</td>
<td>docuit</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teneō</td>
<td>tenēre</td>
<td>tenui</td>
<td>docuimus</td>
<td>we have taught, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>docuistis</td>
<td>you have taught, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>docuērunt</td>
<td>they have taught, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
56. Dative with certain adjectives. A few adjectives in Latin are followed by a noun in the dative case to complete the idea. Since the dative noun depends on the adjective, this dative is sometimes called a dependent dative. The “to” idea is usually implied in the adjective:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cārus, -a, -um} & \quad \text{dear (to)} \\
\text{grātus, -a, -um} & \quad \text{pleasing (to)} \\
\text{Arcadia est deō cāra.} & \quad \text{Arcadia is dear to the god.} \\
\text{Callistō est deō grāta.} & \quad \text{Callisto is pleasing to the god.}
\end{align*}
\]

57. Subordinate clauses: conditions. A subordinate clause introduced by si (if) expresses the condition under which the main clause is enacted. Such possible or “real” conditions may occur in all tenses, present, imperfect, or future.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Si Iūnō mē videt, dēlectāmenta sunt pretiōsa et digna pretii.} & \quad \text{If Juno sees me, the delights are costly but (and) worth the price.} \\
\text{Si Iūnō mē vidēbit, dēlectāmenta erunt pretiōsa et digna pretii.} & \quad \text{If Juno sees (will see) me, the delights will be costly but (and) worth the price.} \\
\text{Si poēta Mūsam invocābat, fābula erat populō grāta.} & \quad \text{If the poet invoked the Muse, his story was pleasing to the people.}
\end{align*}
\]

58. Suus and eius. Both suus, -a, -um and eius mean his, her, its. Both are possessives: suus, -a, -um is an adjective declined like bonus, -a, -um, agreeing with a noun which it modifies; eius is a pronoun, the genitive singular of the demonstrative pronoun is, ea, id (he, she, it). The possessive adjective is generally unexpressed in Latin if it is clear from the context who is the possessor. It is usually not expressed with parts of the body.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Fībula vestimentum retinēbat et vitta neglectōs capillōs retinēbat.} & \quad \text{A pin held back her garment, and a band held back her careless locks.}
\end{align*}
\]

When the third person singular possessive is stressed, however, for emphasis or contrast, suus, -a, -um is used to indicate a reflexive possessive, one in which the subject of the clause is the possessor, and eius is used if the subject is not the possessor. Eius does not change to agree with its noun, since it is itself a pronoun in the genitive case, meaning literally, of him, of her, of it.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Minerva pictūrās suās mōnstrāvit, et Arachnē pictūrās suās mōnstrāvit.} & \quad \text{Minerva showed her pictures, and Arachne showed her pictures.}
\end{align*}
\]
Iuppiter nympham et filium eius  
Jupiter transformed the nymph  
in stellās in caelō  
and her son into stars in the  
trānsfōrmāvit.  

(Arcas was also the son of Jupiter, and therefore the possessive could  
be reflexive. Note the difference in meaning between the following  
sentence and the one above.)

Iuppiter nympham et filium suum  
Jupiter transformed the nymph  
in stellās in caelō  
and his (own) son into stars in  
trānsfōrmāvit.

If the word or idea own can be added after the possessive, then the reflexive  
suus, -a, -um must be used.

**Exercises**

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō.

1. Quis est Callistō?
2. Quis est Ursa Minor?
3. Ćūr Iuppiter nympham in stellās trānsfōrmāvit?
4. Estne Callistō fōrmōsa?
5. Quid vestimentum nymphae retinēbat?
6. Quid capillōs neglectōs retinēbat?
7. Quid Callistō in silvīs portābat?
8. Ubi iacēbat Callistō in somnō?
9. Quis spectābat nympham in somnō in terrā herbōsā?
10. Quis erat victor?

II A. Conjugate in the perfect tense: cūrāre, ēvitāre, tenēre, habēre.

B. Change the singular form to the corresponding plural:

1. docuit  
docuērunt
2. exercui  
3. habuit  
4. iacuisti  
5. prohibui  
6. retinuit  
7. portāvi  
8. appropinquāvit  
9. tenuisti  
10. dēbuit

III. Fill in the correct form of eius or suus, -a, -um, depending on whether  
the possessive is reflexive, that is whether the "own" idea is included in  
the possession:
1. Callistō iaculum (eius, suum) in silvā portābat.
2. Poēta fābulam (eius, suam) nārrāvit.
3. Arcas est filius (eius, suus).
4. Arachnē pictūrās pulchrās fōrmāvit, sed Minerva pictūrās (eius, suās) nōn amāvit.
5. Vitta capillōs (eius, suōs) retinēbat. (Possessive may be omitted)

IV. Translate each adverb:

õlim statim ita maximē certē etiam
deinde iterum nōn minimē hīc quoque
dēnique saepe sic aeternum bene ibi

V. Translate into Latin:

1. “Look at the stars,” said the Muse.
2. The Greater Bear (the Big Dipper) is Callisto, once a beautiful nymph.
3. The Smaller Bear is Arcas, her son.
4. Jupiter changed the nymph and her son into stars because of the wrath of the queen of the gods.
5. Callisto lived in Arcadia, a land dear to the god.
6. Jupiter saw the beautiful nymph and loved her immediately.
7. A pin held back her garment and a fillet bound her careless locks.
8. Jupiter sees the nymph while she is lying asleep, and Callisto is pleasing to the god.
9. Jupiter took on the shape of the goddess Diana and approached the nymph.
10. Callisto avoided her friends and the well-known forests.

VI. Divide the following words into syllables and mark the accent of each.

Note that in each case the penult contains either a diphthong or a short vowel followed by two consonants.

neglectus triginta
appropinquō Callistō
vestimentum causa
ciaelum dēlectāmentum
amoena

You are already familiar with the accent falling on the penult if it contains a long vowel:

transfōrmō ēvītō
suspirō pictūra

5 A stop (p, b, t, d, c, g) plus a liquid (l, r) count as a single consonant and go with the following vowel (see Guide to Pronunciation).
There are, therefore, three ways in which the penult may be long:

1) if it contains a long vowel (pictūra);
2) if it contains a diphthong (amoena);
3) if it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants (neglectus, Callistō).

HIDDEN QUANTITY

The Romans in antiquity did not generally distinguish between short and long vowels in their spelling, except for a short period during the late Republic (ca. 135 to 75 B.C.). Our knowledge of vowel length therefore depends on a variety of sources. For example, poetic meter usually reveals the length of a vowel in an open syllable, but it is difficult to determine the length of a vowel in a closed syllable, since a vowel followed by two or more consonants usually produces a long syllable. The “hidden quantity” of a long vowel in a closed syllable therefore must be based on other evidence. Sometimes grammarians or other writers reveal the length of a vowel; at other times the evidence comes from a Greek transcription of a Latin word. Linguists also rely on developments in Romance languages for clues. This kind of detective work has produced a number of rules governing hidden quantity which are given in simplified and abbreviated form below:

1. Vowels are always long before the following consonants: ns and nf; nct and nx;
2. Vowels are usually long before the following consonants: x and ps (flexī, conspexī and contempsī are exceptions in this textbook); sc (except, perhaps, in poscō, discō and miscō);
3. Vowels are probably short before gn in all but the following words: rēgnūm, stāgnūm, sēgnis and abīgnus;
4. Vowels before r + a consonant are generally short, with exceptions such as these: fōrmā, ōrdō, ērnāre, Mārs, Mārcus, quārtus, rūrsus;
5. Vowels in certain past participles are long, according to “Lachmann’s Law” (revised by Maniet), such as the following: āctus, lēctus, tēctus, rēctus, tāctus, frāctus, and pāctus (from āgō, legō, tegō, regō, tangō, frangō, pangō).

For further elaboration on these rules, see W. Sidney Allen, Vox Latina (Cambridge, 1965), pp. 64–77, which has been summarized above.

Except for a few miscellaneous instances of hidden quantity, these long vowels are generally not marked in this textbook, in keeping with general practice.

---

A closed syllable ends in a consonant; an open syllable ends in a vowel.
Etymology

THE ZODIAC

Like many other myth systems, the signs of the Zodiac were early man’s attempts to explain natural phenomena, and they remind us that observance of the order in the sky and star-gazing were part of the science and pseudo-science of ancient man. Actually in both astronomy and astrology, the Zodiac is a zone or belt of the heavens through which the moon and the principal planets travel about the sun. It lies eight degrees on either side of the elliptical path the sun *seems* to travel around the earth. From very early times, the observer from the earth watched the celestial bodies moving in this path (as early as 3100 B.C. in Mesopotamia), and groups of stars called constellations were given names of animals (serpent, goat, bull, etc.). Because the constellations which were crossed by the path of the planets were thought to symbolize animals, the Greeks gave the name *zodiakos kyklos* to the circle or *ta zodia* (the little animals).

Just before the Hellenistic period (about 2300 years ago), mathematical astronomy in Mesopotamia had developed and divided the path into twelve fixed parts of thirty degrees each.
Learning Numbers

Cardinal Numbers 13–19

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td><em>tredecim</em></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td><em>quattuordecim</em></td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td><em>quīndecim</em></td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Tredecim equōs habeō.* (casās, iacula)  
*I have thirteen horses.* (houses, javelins)

Remember that the numbers are undelined.

Chapter X
CALLISTŌ (Part 2)


Dīxit et capillōs nymphae tenuit et eam prōnam in terram strāvit.2 Cum misera Callistō supplex braccia tendēbat, braccia villīs horrescēbant. Nūlla verba in nymphā mansērunt; sōlum vox rauca. Callistō nunc est ursa fera, sed sēnsa hūmāna in ursā manent. A! Quotiēns in agrīs ōlim suīs3 errāvit! A! Quotiēns ea, territa, virōs et animalia fera in silvīs fugitāvit, ipsa4 animal.


---

1 *Was born to the nymph.*
2 *Threw her down (prone) on the ground.*
3 *Once (formerly) her own.*
4 *Herself.*
5 *While he is hunting . . .*
6 *She recognizes . . .*
7 *Omnipotent.*
Verba

NOUNS

adulterae, -ae, f. adulteress
animal, (pl. -alia), n. animal
brachium, -ii, n. arm, branch
causa, -ae, f. cause, reason
figūra, -ae, f. form, shape, figure
iniuria, -ae, f. injury, hurt, wrong
mātricidium, -ii, n. matricide
poena, -ae, f. punishment
sēnsa, -ōrum, n. pl. sense, feeling
temps, -oris, n. time, times
vēnātor, m. hunter
verbum, -i, n. word
villus, -i, m. shaggy hair
vōx, vōcis, f. voice

VERBS

absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrum be absent, be away
adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrum be present, be near
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum await, wait for
fugitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum flee, avoid, shun
horrescō, -ere, horruī grow rough
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum save, protect
tendō, -ere, tendēi, tentum or -sum stretch out, extend
trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum transport, carry

ADJECTIVES

benignus, -a, -um + dat. kind (to)
ferus, -a, -um wild
hūmānus, -a, -um human
idōneus, -a, -um suitable (for)
immōtus, -a, -um unmoving
nātus, -a, -um born
prōnus, -a, -um bent over, prone
raucus, -a, -um hoarse
supplex, -icis, m., f., n. as a suppliant, pleading
(See Sec. 119)
territus, -a, -um terrified
tuus, -a, -um your (sing.)
vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring
OTHER WORDS

a (interjection) ah!
cum (conj.) when
ea she
post + acc. after
quindecim fifteen
quotiens how often
ter three times, thrice
ter quinque fifteen (3 × 5)

Structure

59. Cardinal numbers 13 to 19. The cardinal numbers, tredecim, quattuordecim, quindecim, sedecim, septendecim, duodeviginti, and undeviginti are undeclined. Tredecim through septendecim are obviously compounds of the numbers three through seven and ten, corresponding to English thirteen through seventeen. Eighteen and nineteen, however, are usually expressed by subtracting one and two from twenty. Post-Classical Latin, however, did allow octodecim.

60. Special forms in perfect tense, first conjugation. The first conjugation is regular in all tenses, following the pattern for vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum. The following three verbs are exceptions:

- dō, dare,8 dedī, datum (dedisti, dedit, dedimus, dedistis, dedērunt)
- stō, stāre, stetī (stetisti, stetit, stetimus, stetistis, stetērunt)
- iuvō, iuāre, iūvī, iūtum (iūvisti, iūvit, iūvīmus, iūvistis, iūvērunt)

61. Special perfect stems, second conjugation. Although many of the second conjugation verbs follow the pattern for doceō, docēre, docuī, there are many which do not. Note the third principal part of the following verbs:

- videō vidēre vidī I saw
- manēō manēre mansi I remained
- respondeō respondēre respondi I replied

The perfect stem in the third principal part of the verb must be learned with each verb as it appears in the vocabulary. To this stem are added the perfect personal endings:

8Dō, dare is also irregular in that the stem vowel is short throughout the present system, except for the form dās: dō, dās, dat, damus, datis, dant; Imperfect: dabam, dabās, dabat, dabāmus, dabātis, dabant; Future: dabō, dabis, etc.
mansī | I have remained, remained, did remain
mansisti | you have remained, remained, did remain
mansit | he, she, it has remained, remained, did remain
mansimus | we have remained, remained, did remain
mansistis | you have remained, remained, did remain
mansērunt | they have remained, remained, did remain

62. Perfect tense of sum, esse, fui, futūrum. Esse is irregular in the perfect tense, changing stem completely to fui. Based on this stem, however, the perfect is regular:

fui | I have been, I was
fuisti | you have been, you were
fuit | he, she, it has been, was
fuimus | we have been, were
fuistis | you have been, were
fuērunt | they have been, were

63. Adsum and absum. The verb sum can be made into compound verbs by the prefixes ad- and ab-. Adesse means “to be near” or “to be present”; abesse means “to be away, to be absent, to be lacking.” Both verbs are conjugated like sum, but note that the -b- is dropped in the perfect stem of absum—āfui.

adsum, ades, adest, etc. | absum, abes, abest, etc.
aderam, aderās, aderat, etc. | aberam, aberās, aberat, etc.
aderō, aderis, aderit, etc. | aberō, aberis, aberit, etc.
adfui, adfuisti, adfuit, etc. | āfui, āfuisti, āfuit, etc.

Exercises

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō.
1. Quis erat maximē irāta?
2. Quis nymphae nātus est?
3. Quis abest et nympham nōn servābit?
4. Verbane in nymphā mansērunt?
5. Estne vox ursae grāta aut rauca?
6. Suntne sēnsa hūmāna in ursā? in ursīs?
7. Eratne ursa Callistō beāta cum in silvis errābat?
8. Quis ursam necāre temptāvit?
9. Quot annōs (how many years) Arcas habēbat? (How old was Arcas?)
10. Quis mātricidium prohibuit?

II. Conjugate in the perfect tense: dare, stāre, iuvāre, respondēre, manēre, vidēre.
III. Decline the plural after each singular form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pretium időneum</td>
<td>pretia időnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pretii időnei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pretio időneō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pretium időneum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pretio időneō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. Supply the correct form of the dependent dative and translate.

1. Arcadia est (to the god) cāra.
2. Iuppiter est (to his son) benignus.
3. Callistō est (to the god) grāta.
4. Arcas est (to the nymph) cārus.
5. Fābulae sunt (to children) grātae.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. "I shall change your beautiful form," said Juno.
2. When Arcas was born, Juno changed the form of the nymph.
3. Only a hoarse voice and her human feelings remained.
4. Callisto stretched out her arms as a suppliant.
5. The terrified Callisto, now a wild animal, avoided men and beasts (animals).
6. Arcas is now fifteen years old. (lit., has fifteen years)
7. He is almost a man.
8. He tried to kill the bear with his javelin.
9. Arcas is a hunter in the woods of Arcadia.
10. Jupiter prevented the matricide and transported the bear and her son into the sky (as) neighboring stars.

VI. Divide the following words into syllables and mark the accent. Note that in each case the penult is short, that is,

1) it does not contain a long vowel;
2) it does not contain a diphthong;
3) it does not contain a short vowel followed by two consonants.⁹
(except the liquids, / and r)

Therefore the penult is short and the accent goes back to the antepenult.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Syllables</th>
<th>Accent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>animal</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>retineō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brachium</td>
<td>brachium</td>
<td>tempora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniūria</td>
<td>iniūria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mátircidium</td>
<td>mátircidium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>territus</td>
<td>territus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Etymology

What is a persona grata? A pleasing person who is welcome.
What is a persona non grata? A displeasing person who is unwelcome.

⁹A stop consonant (p, b, d, t, c, g) followed by a liquid (/ or r) is considered a single consonant, and the syllable may be either long or short.
The word *person* comes from the Latin *persona*, a mask or a character in a play who spoke his lines through a mask which identified the stock character. Even today the characters in a play often are listed as *personae*.

Many adjectives have come directly into English from Latin with the -us dropped—*arid(us)*, *timid(us)*, *benign(us)*—or replaced with a silent -e: *dens(us)*, *plan(us)*, *profan(us)*, *irat(us)*.

Many nouns have come into English from neuters of the second declension or from the neuter form of adjectives:

- maximum
- minimum
- praemium (premium)
- forum
- asylum
- vacuum

Some neuters of the second declension replace the -um with a silent -e: *templum*—temple; *mirāculum*—miracle, *mātricīdium*—matricide, *collegium*—college. Some drop the -um completely: *verb* (um); *monument* (um), *vestiment* (um); *sacrament* (um); *ornament* (um).

*Injury* comes of course from the Latin *iniuria* which itself is a combination of the negative in- and iūris, iūris, n. meaning right or law. Something that is in-iūris is not right and hence the compound word *iniūria*. From this word iūris comes English judge, jurisprudence, jurist, juror, jury, etc. Remember that the letter j did not exist in Roman times and was the i-consonant.

*Bracchium* meaning arm comes into English as brach- and appears in many words such as brachial, brachiate (having widely spread branches) and many scientific words all referring to arms. *Embrace* and *bracelet* both are related to this original source word.
Philemon and Baucis

The myth of Philemon and Baucis is a story of piety rewarded. Jupiter and Mercury come to earth as mortals to test the humanity of men. As strangers they are driven out of a village when they seek refuge, but they are kindly received by an old couple, Philemon and Baucis, who share their humble cottage and all their food with the strangers. Old Philemon tries to level the table, as Baucis prepares a hearty meal. The two old folks even try to catch their goose to serve to the guests. In return for such kindness, the gods reveal their “numen,” changing the cottage to a grand temple and complying with the request of the two pious old people to be temple guardians as long as they live. Granting also a request that they die at the same time, Jupiter eventually changed the two into trees which flanked the doors to the temple.

In a punishment reminiscent of the Noah story of the Old Testament, the evil village was punished by being flooded by a lake and the people were changed into fish.
Chapter XI

PHILEMÔN ET BAUCIS (pars priâma)

Potentia caeli est immensa et finem non habet. Quicquid dî (dei) imperant, factum est. Dubitatisne, discipuli? Narrabo de duabus arboribus, de tilia¹ et quercu¹ in Phrygia. Fábula est vêra. Ego ipse² locum vîdi; nôn procul est stâgnnum, terra ôlim plêna virôrum, nunc undae plênae piscium. Huc Iûppiter vênit et Mercurius caducifer³ cum patre suo quoque vênit. Deî förmam virôrum simulâverant,⁴ et in terrâ Phrygiâ ambulâbant. Requiem in mille casis rogabant, sed mille casae erant clausae.

Tamen ûna parva casa erat aperta. Pia Baucis et senex Philêmôn hic habitábant; duo erant tôta domus.⁵ Et servi et domini erant duo.

Ubi dì parvam casam intrâværunt, senex Philêmôn deös sedere iussit; Baucis vinum et cibum (carnem et râdicem et óva⁶) parâvit. Mensam quoque parâvit, sed mensa plâna nôn erat; ûnum membrum nôn satis longum erat. Testa⁷ autem mensa plâna facta est. Senês advenis benigni erant, et deis maiôreâ partem cibi et vini dedêrunt.

---

¹A linden tree and an oak, quercus, -ús, f., oak tree, 4th declension (see Sec. 101).
²I, myself.
³Carrier of the caduceus.
⁴Had assumed—pluperfect tense (see Sec. 76).
⁵They were the whole household.
⁶Meat, radish, and eggs.
⁷By means of a tile, a broken piece of pottery.
Verba

NOUNS

advena, -ae, c. stranger
arbor, arboris, f. tree
Baucis, Baucidis, f. Baucis
cibus, -i, m. food
dominus, -i, m. master, lord
finis, finis, -ium, m. (or f.) end; pl. boundary
locus, -i, m. (irreg. pl. loca) place
membrum, -i, n. leg (of a table)
mēnsa, -ae, f. table
Mercurius, -ii, m. Mercury
pars, partis, -ium, f. part
pater, patris, m. father
Philemon, -mōnis, m. Philemon
Phrygia, -ae, f. Phrygia
piscis, piscis, -ium, m. fish
requēs, requētis, -i, f. rest
requiem, acc. sing.
reōx, reōgis, m. king
senex, senis, -um, c. old man, woman
servus, -i, m. servant, slave
stagnum, -i, n. pool
vīnum, -i, n. wine

VERBS

dubōtō (1)8 doubt, hesitate
imperō (1), + dat. command, order, bid
intrō (1) enter
iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum order, command, ask, bid
parō (1) prepare
sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessum sit, remain, stay
veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum come

ADJECTIVES

apertus, -a, -um open
clausus, -a, -um closed

8From now on, first conjugation verbs will be marked (1).
duo, duae, duo  
two

factus, -a, -um  
done, made

immensus, -a, -um  
immense

maiōrem  
greater

noster, -tra, -trum  
our

pius, -a, -um  
pious, reverent

plēnus, -a, -um  
full

vērus, -a, -um  
true

OTHER WORDS

ego  
I

enim (postpositive)  
for, in fact, truly

et . . . et  
both . . . and

nōn procul  
not distant, near by

quicquid  
whatever

ubi  
where, when

Structure

64. Declension of duo, duae, duo. Duo is an irregular adjective. Of course it exists only in the plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duōs</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

65. The numeral mille. Mille, a thousand, is undeclined, although there is a plural, milia, meaning thousands, which is declined (see Sec. 107).

Mille puerōs vidi.  
I saw a thousand boys.

Mille puellās vidi.  
I saw a thousand girls.

Mille oppida vidi.  
I saw a thousand towns.

Mille caseae erant clausae.  
A thousand cottages were closed.

66. Third declension, masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns. Nouns of the third declension follow the patterns listed below. Masculine and feminine nouns appear in this lesson; neuter nouns occur in the following lesson. The endings are added to the stem which is formed from the genitive singular by dropping the -is ending: pater, patris; stem patr.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>[See n. 9]</td>
<td>-en, -us</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>-um (-ium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-em</td>
<td>-en, -us</td>
<td>-a (-ia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the following examples:

pater, patris, m. arbors, arboris, f. Iūppiter, iovis, m. rēx, rēgis, m.
father tree Jupiter king

### Singular

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td>arbor</td>
<td>Iūppiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>patris</td>
<td>arboris</td>
<td>iovis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>patri</td>
<td>arborī</td>
<td>iovi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>arborem</td>
<td>iovem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>patre</td>
<td>arbore</td>
<td>love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>patres</td>
<td>arborēs</td>
<td>[no plural]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>patrum</td>
<td>arborum</td>
<td>rēgum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>patribus</td>
<td>arboribus</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>patres</td>
<td>arborēs</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>patribus</td>
<td>arboribus</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The third declension endings are added to a stem formed from the genitive singular which may resemble or be quite different from the nominative singular. Therefore it is especially important to memorize the form of the genitive when the word occurs in the vocabulary, for it may add a syllable or change the stem vowel or consonant, or do both.

### I-STEM NOUNS

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>finis, finis, m.</td>
<td>pars, partis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sometimes f. in sing.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis</td>
<td>finēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finis</td>
<td>finium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fini</td>
<td>finibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finem</td>
<td>finēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fine</td>
<td>finibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 A variety of endings in -er, -or, -s, -x, -ē, -īō is possible for masculine and feminine; in the neuter, endings in -o, -s, -e, and -al are possible.
The nouns of the second group (called *I-Stems*) add an -i before the ending in the genitive plural. They are easy to recognize because either they have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*finis, finis*)\(^{10}\) or they have one syllable in the nominative singular and two consonants before the -is in the genitive singular (*pars, partis*).

67. Adjectives with third declension nouns. When third declension nouns are modified by first or second declension adjectives, the adjective still agrees with its noun in case, number and gender, but the endings frequently differ. Observe the following examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculines</th>
<th>Feminines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>good king</strong></td>
<td><strong>beautiful tree</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx bonus</td>
<td>arbor pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgis boni</td>
<td>arboris pulchrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgī bonō</td>
<td>arbori pulchrāe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgem bonum</td>
<td>arborem pulchram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēge bonō</td>
<td>arbore pulchrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgēs boni</td>
<td>arborēs pulchrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgum bonōrum</td>
<td>arborum pulchrārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgibus bonīs</td>
<td>arboribus pulchris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgēs bonōs</td>
<td>arborēs pulchrās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgibus bonīs</td>
<td>arboribus pulchris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although neuter nouns and adjectives will not appear until the following lesson, the declension pattern is included here.

\(^{10}\)Such nouns are called *parisyllabic*, from *pari-* meaning *equal* and *syllabs* meaning *syllable*.
### Neuters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Famous Name</th>
<th>Open Mouth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōmen fāmōsum</td>
<td>ōs apertum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōminis fāmōsi</td>
<td>ōris aperti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmini fāmōsō</td>
<td>ōri aperto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen fāmōsum</td>
<td>ōs apertum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmine fāmōsō</td>
<td>ōre aperto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmina fāmōsa</td>
<td>ōra aperta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōminum fāmōsōrum</td>
<td>ōrum apertōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōminibus fāmōsis</td>
<td>ōribus apertīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmina fāmōsa</td>
<td>ōra aperta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōminibus fāmōsis</td>
<td>ōribus apertīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

68. Partitive genitive (or genitive of the whole). The genitive case is used to denote the whole of something of which a part is discussed. English usage is similar, since we use *of* as the preposition.

\[
\text{maiōrem partem cibi et vini} \quad \text{the greater part of the food and (of the) wine}
\]

69. Ordinal numbers. The ordinal numbers, *primus, secundus, tertius, quartus, quintus, sextus, septimus*,\(^{11}\) etc. are declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*. They were frequently used in names, as the children in the family appeared—first, second, third, etc.

### Exercises

I. Respondēte Latīnē, quaesō.

1. Estne potentia caeli parva?
2. Quis fābulam nārrat?
3. Qui (who, *m. plu.*) ad locum in Phrygiā appropinquant?
4. Ubi est locus duārum arborum?
5. Estne fābula dē duābus arboribus vēra?
6. Simulatne Iuppiter fōrmam dei?
7. Populusne in Phrygiā deīs benignus erat?
8. Quī (*see 3 above*) erant deīs benignī?
9. Quis cibum et vinum parāvit?
10. Cūr mēnsa nōn plāna erat?

\(^{11}\)Virginia Woolf in her novel *Mrs. Dalloway* uses the name Septimus for one of her characters.
II A. Decline *pater, arbor, finis, pars, victor*.

B. Decline the following:

1. *pater noster*  
2. *parva arbor*  
3. *finis bonus*  
4. *longa pars*  
5. *victor ferus*

III. Add the correct ending to the stem of these nouns and translate the sentences:

4. *Fābula (finis)* bonam habet *(This masculine noun is often feminine in the singular).*  
5. *Piscis* bonōs habēmus.  
6. *Pater meus est (senex) pius.*  
7. *Di longam (requiēs) dēsiderābant.*  
8. *Multum (vīnum) habēmus.*  
9. *(Deus) Mercurium vidī.*  
10. *Duo (advena) sunt in oppidō.*  
11. *(Dominus) benignum ōrāmus.*  
12. *(Pater) noster est in caelo.*  
13. *(Servus) pium vocāmus.*  
15. *Longam (mēnsa) habēmus.*  
17. *Longum (piscis) in filō *(on the line)* tenēs.*  
18. *(Arbor) pulchram ĕrō.*  
19. *Magnum (stāgnum) videō.*  
20. *(Vīnum) bonum parō.*

IV. Fill in the blanks with the correct number. Remember that except for one, two and three, the numbers are undeclined.

1. *(One)* filiam habeō.  
2. *(Four)* equōs habeō.  
3. *(Seven)* casās habeō.  
4. *(Two)* oculōs habeō.  
5. *(Two)* discipulī absunt.  
6. *(Five)* discipulī absunt.  
7. *(Fifty)* discipulī sunt in scholā mathēmaticā.  
8. *(Thirty-five)* discipulī sunt in scholā hodiē.  
9. *Priamus (a hundred) liberōs habuit.* *(Priamus, -i, m., Priam)*  
10. *Niobhē (seven) filiōs et (seven) filiās habuit.*
V. Translate into Latin:
1. The power of heaven has no end (does not have an end).
2. I shall tell you a story about two old people.
3. It is a true story because I myself saw the place.
4. The lake is now full of fish.
5. Jupiter and his son Mercury approached the place (ad locum) and asked for rest in a thousand cottages.
6. Only one small cottage was open to the king of the gods.
7. Philemon bade the strangers (to) sit down (sedēre).
8. Baucis gave food and wine to the two gods.
9. The table was not level because one leg was not long enough.
10. The two old people were kind to the gods and gave them (eīs) the greater part of the food and wine.

VI. Mark the accents in the first paragraph of today’s reading. Use the antepenultimate rule as your guide:

Accent the penult if it is long (if it has a long vowel)
(if it has a diphthong)
(if it has a short vowel followed by two consonants)12

Accent the antepenult if the penult is short.

Remember that an excellent guide is your ear as you listen and as you imitate the correct sounds and accents, but you can always check the accent by the invariable antepenultimate rule.

Etymology

Explain the following words from their Latin sources:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arboretum</td>
<td>at Ann Arbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperativus mood</td>
<td>to dominate the situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce</td>
<td>a final agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedentary animals</td>
<td>a Requiem Mass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aperture in the rocks</td>
<td>stagnant water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pious priest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dominus comes into English through many cognate words: dominate, dominance, dominant, domination, domineer, dominical, Dominican, the name Dominic, dominion, and domino meaning costume, mask, and game.

The Senate in Rome consisted originally of older men forming a legislative body, the senātus, from which we derive our word senate.

---

12 A stop consonant (p, b, d, t, g, c, k, q) followed by l or r does not always make a long syllable (see Introduction).
Rex, regis, m. gives many words both to Latin and to English. Related in Latin are regnum (kingdom), regina (queen), regnare (to rule), regere (to rule), regalis (kingly, royal). From the original source word and from the many correlative words come: the name Rex, the name Regina, regent, regal, regicide (reg- + cide, from caedō, meaning kill), regime, regiment, regimentation, regnal, regnant.

What is patricide?
What is matricide?
Chapter XII

PHILĒMŌN ET BAUCIS
(pars secunda)


Iuppiter oppidum malum in stāgnum et homīnēs impīōs in piscēs trānsfōrmāvit; casam autem duōrum senum piōrum in templum trānsfōrmāvit. Duōbus senibus dīxit: “Quid désiderātis, senex iūste et fémina pia?” Senēs respondērunt, “Dēsiderāmus sacerdōtēs in templō Iovis esse, et quoniam multōs annōs beātōs inter nōs habuimus, mortī désiderāmus eādem hōrā.”


---

1 The two old folks had a goose. Duōbus senibus is dative of possession (Sec. 36).
2 As a sacrifice to the gods. Sacrificium is in apposition to ānserem.
3 To die.
4 At the same hour.
5 Tam diū quam, as long as they live.
6 These.
7 This.
### NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annus, -i, m.</td>
<td>year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anser, anseris, m.</td>
<td>goose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cena, -ae, f.</td>
<td>dinner, meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conlunx, coniugis, c.</td>
<td>husband or wife, spouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crater, -eris, m.</td>
<td>bowl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custos, custonis, c.</td>
<td>guardian, keeper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hominis, m.</td>
<td>man, human</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miraculum, -i, n.</td>
<td>miracle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nomen, nominis, n.</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oes, oiris, n.</td>
<td>mouth, face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praemium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>reward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacerdos, -dosis, c.</td>
<td>priest (-ess)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrificium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>sacrifice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frondeo, -ere</td>
<td>put out leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prehendo, -ere, -endi, -ensus</td>
<td>catch, seize, grasp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeo, -ere, -ui</td>
<td>fear, be afraid of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vasto (1)</td>
<td>destroy, lay waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vivo, -ere, vixi, victum</td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>impius, -a, -um</td>
<td>wicked, impious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</td>
<td>self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, my self, yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iustus, -a, -um</td>
<td>just, upright, true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receptus, -a, -um</td>
<td>received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timidus, -a, -um</td>
<td>timid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OTHER WORDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eos (m.); eas (f.)</td>
<td>them (accusative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter + acc.</td>
<td>between, among</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nos</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prae + abl.</td>
<td>in front of, before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qui</td>
<td>who (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoniam</td>
<td>since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semper</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine + abl.</td>
<td>without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vobis</td>
<td>to you (pl.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Structure

70. Common gender nouns. Nouns which logically can be either masculine or feminine are said to be of common gender. The third declension nouns sacerdōs, custōs, and coniunx can be either masculine or feminine, since the role can be either male or female.

- sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m. & f. | priest, priestess
- custōs, custōdis, m. & f. | guardian, keeper
- coniunx, coniugis, m. & f. | husband, wife, spouse

71. Neuter third declension nouns. Like all neuter nouns, neuter third declension nouns are alike in the nominative and accusative forms, both singular and plural:

- nōmen, nōminis, n., name | ōs, ōris, n., mouth
- nōmen | ōs
- nōminis | ōris
- nōmini | ōri
- nōmen | ōs
- nōmine | ōre

72. Videō + infinitive with accusative subject. The verb videō is often followed by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative. In English it is necessary to supply “that” to achieve a smooth translation and to avoid misreading. The infinitive is translated as an indicative verb.9

- Deōs appropinquāre videō. I see that the gods are approaching.
- Hominēs dubitāre videō. I see that the men are doubting.
- Coniugēm frondēre videt. He sees that his wife is putting out leaves.
- Advenās esse deōs vident. They see that the strangers are gods.

73. Third conjugation. The third conjugation infinitive ends in -ere.

- dicō, dicere | say, speak, tell
- tendō, tendere | stretch out, extend
- prehendō, prehendere | catch, seize
- vivō, vivere | live, be alive

74. Negative commands. Nōli (singular) and nōlite (plural) are used with an

---

8 Do not confuse with ōra, -ae, f., shore.
9 This construction is closely related to Indirect Statement (Sec. 128).
infinitive to give a negative command. These are imperative forms of the verb nolle meaning to be unwilling:

Nōli timēre.  Do not fear. (addressing one)
Nōlite ānserem necāre.  Do not kill the goose. (addressing more than one)

75. Adjectives used as nouns: substantives. Many times in Latin the adjective is used as a noun. You are familiar with this use in English in such expressions as, “the blind,” “the rich,” “the poor,” “the brave,” “the strong,” “the weak,” “the old,” “the young.” The Beatitudes in the Bible employ these adjectives, “the poor in spirit,” and “the meek.” When the adjective takes the place of the noun or is used as a noun, it is called a substantive. In Latin it is also possible to distinguish gender in a substantive.

boni  the good men
bonae  the good women
bona  the good things (or goods)
multi  many men, many people
pii  the pious ones
duo  the two people
duo pii  the two pious ones
mali  evil men

76. Past perfect indicative of verbs (also called pluperfect). The past perfect of the verb is formed by adding the imperfect forms of sum to the perfect stem of the verb. The auxiliary in English is had.

vocāv + eram = vocāveram  I had called

First Conjugation  Second Conjugation
vocāv-  docu-
vocāveram  I had called  docueram  I had taught
vocāverās  you had called  docuerās  you had taught
vocāverat  he had called  docuerat  he had taught
vocāverāmus  we had called  docuerāmus  we had taught
vocāverātis  you had called  docuerātis  you had taught
vocāverant  they had called  docuerant  they had taught

Exercises

1. Respondēte Latīnē, quaesō.
   1. Qui mirāculum vidērunt?
   2. Quid erat mirāculum?
Philemon and Baucis

The myth of Philemon and Baucis is a story of piety rewarded. Jupiter and Mercury come to earth as mortals to test the humanity of men. As strangers they are driven out of a village when they seek refuge, but they are kindly received by an old couple, Philemon and Baucis, who share their humble cottage and all their food with the strangers. Old Philemon tries to level the table, as Baucis prepares a hearty meal. The two old folks even try to catch their goose to serve to the guests. In return for such kindness, the gods reveal their "numen," changing the cottage to a grand temple and complying with the request of the two pious old people to be temple guardians as long as they live. Granting also a request that they die at the same time, Jupiter eventually changed the two into trees which flanked the doors to the temple.

In a punishment reminiscent of the Noah story of the Old Testament, the evil village was punished by being flooded by a lake and the people were changed into fish.
3. Qui ānserem servāvērunt?
4. Qui erant advenae?
5. Cūr dī oppidum vastāre dēbent?
6. Cūr dī praemium dare dēbent?
7. Quid est praemium senibus?
8. Qui sunt custōdēs templī Iovis?
9. Quid nunc est oppidum ubi habitāverant improi homīnēs?
10. Qui sunt arborēs prō templō?

II. Decline:
1. sacerdōs pius 3. coniunx beāta
2. ānser ferus 4. nōmen nōtum

III. Complete each idea by means of an infinitive with an accusative subject:
(Omit the word “that” in the Latin sentence.)

1. Videō (that) deōs (are approaching).
2. (That) hōram (is fleeing) videō.
3. Videō (that) Iovem (is) rēgem deōrum.
4. (That) Baucidem (is) arborem videō.
5. Multi vident (that) cēnam (is) bonam.
6. Senēs vident (that) cibum (remains).
7. Senēs vident (that) ānserem (is fleeing) ad deōs.
8. Dī vident (that) bonōs (are) laetōs.
9. Dī vident (that) senēs (are) advenis benignōs.
10. Philēmōn videt (that) Baucidem (is putting out leaves).

IV. Fill in the correct case for each object of the preposition in the following sentences:

1. Arborēs prō templ-________ stābant.
2. Post cēn-_________ mīrāculum vidērunt.
3. Trāns camp-________ equus fugitāvit.
4. Dē vit-_________ deōrum fābula nārrātur.\(^{10}\)
5. In silv-_________ nympha habitat.
6. Nōlite ambulāre, liberi, cum adven-________.
7. Ursa in silv-________ errāvit. (into)
8. Inter arbor-________ casam parvam videō.
9. Cibus erat etiam in crātēr-________.
10. Sine homin-________ terra est vacua et sōla.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Philemon and Baucis saw a miracle after supper.
2. The bowl was still full of food. (plēnus, -a, -um—full)

\(^{10}\) *A story is told...*
3. They wanted to kill their only goose (as a) sacrifice to the gods.
4. The gods changed the wicked men into fish and the town into a lake.
5. The gods asked the old people, “What do you wish?”
6. The two old folks reply, “We wish to die at the same hour.”
7. The gods change the small cottage into a temple.
8. Philemon and Baucis are custodians of the temple.
9. Strangers are always well received in the temple.
10. Two trees stand before the temple of Jupiter, the guardians Philemon and Baucis.

Etymology

Who Invented the Motor Car?

- **motor** from moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
- **car** carrus, -i, m.
- **battery** battuere
- **accelerator** accelerāre (from ad + celer)
- **piston** pinsō, -ere, pistum
- **cylinder** (Greek) kyllindros, kyllindrein
- **fuel** (Old French) fouaille from focus
- **mixture** miscēō, -ere, miscui, mixtum
- **transmission** trānsmittō, -ere, -miṣi, -missum
- **selector** seligere, selectus
- **generator** generāre
- **distributor** distribuere
- **carburetor** carbō, -ōnis, m.
- **air** (Greek) aēr to Latin aēr, aēris, m.
- **gas** (Greek) chaos to Latin, chaos
- **engine** ingenium, -ii, n.
- **lubrication** lubricus, lubricāre
- **universal** ūniversus
- **joint** iungere
- **torque** torquēre
- **convertor** convertere
- **electric** electrum, -i, n.
- **differential** differre
- **suspension** suspendere

Etymology

**move**

**car**

**beat**

**quicken**

**stamp, pound**

**roll**

**fireplace, fire**

**mix**

**send across**

**gather aside**

**give birth, bring to life**

**distribute**

**coal**

**air, atmosphere**

**formless**

**invention**

**slippery, slip**

**whole, entire**

**join**

**twist**

**turn together, turn with**

**amber (associated with electricity)**

**carry in different directions**

**hang up, hang in**
shock absorbers  absorbere  suck in
pedal  pēs, pedis, m.  foot
hydraulic  hydraulus, -i, m.  a water organ

Give the source for the underlined words:
annual dues
conjugal bliss
sacerdotal celibacy
a free premium with cereal
prehensile hands
a devastating experience
an impious man (here the in- acts as a negative)
a just decision
Echo and Narcissus

Echo, another of Diana's nymphs, is robbed by Juno of her power to initiate conversation, in punishment for trying to engage the queen of the heavens in talk while Jupiter philandered in one of his amorous escapades. In an aetiological metamorphosis, the nymph pines away and becomes only an answering voice when she is unable to win the love of Narcissus, a handsome youth who loves only himself. Narcissus, bending over a pool, sees his own reflection in the water and eventually is absorbed into the pool by his desire for the handsome youth he sees in the water. In place of the boy only a flower remains. From the youth's name come both the flower and a complex identified by Sigmund Freud as the state of being abnormally absorbed with oneself.
Dialogue
Quis abest hodiē?  Who is absent today?
Nēmō abest.  No one is absent.
Bene est.  It is well. (That’s good.)

Chapter XIII
ECHŌ ET NARCISSUS

Narcissus erat iuvenis fōrmōsus et superbus. Putābat sē fōrmōsissimum esse.1 Quamquam multae iuvenem amāverant, tamen Narcissus nēminem præter sē amābat.


Ōlim Narcissus cum cēteris iuvenibus animālia fera in silvis et montibus sequitur.3 Forte sōlus errat, et Echō iuvenem sēcrētō sequitur. Nox appro­pinquat et fōrmās obscūrās in silvā cēlat.

“Quis adest?”4 rogat Narcissus. “Quis adest?”
“Adest,”4 respondet Echō.
“Venī,”5 clāmat Narcissus magnā vōce. “Venī!”
“Vēni,”5 respondet Echō, et nympha misera iuvenem superbum brac­chiīs suis tenēre temptat.


Narcissus autem potestātem amōris nōn fugitāvit. Ōlim in undis fluminīs sē, iuvenem fōrmōsissimum, vidit et imāginem suī amāvit. Cum imāginem tangere temptāvit, imāgō fugitāvit. Dēnique pervidit sē imāginem

---

1 He thought that he was most handsome.
2 By means of a trick.
3 Is following, follows.
4 “Who is here?” Echo replies, “Here.”
5 Venī, “Come!”: a command (imperative singular); vēni, I have come.
6 “I will die before I will give myself to you.”
esse.\textsuperscript{7} Lacrimīs aquās fontis turbāvit. Imāgō iterum fugitāvit; amor corpus iuvenis dēvorāvit; neque vigor, neque color, neque fōrma mānsit.


"Valē," resonāvit Ėchō.

Sorōrēs Narcissī corpus iuvenis quem amāverant humāre parāvērunt. Sed prō corpore sōlum mānsit flōs—fīōs appellātus\textsuperscript{8} Narcissus albis foliis.

\textbf{Verba}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textbf{NOUNS} & \\
\textit{amor, amōris, m.} & love \\
\textit{color, colōris, m.} & color \\
\textit{corpus, corporis, n.} & body \\
\textit{Ēchō, f.} & Echo (\textit{a nymp}) \\
\textit{flōs, flōris, m.} & flower \\
\textit{flūmen, -inis, n.} & river \\
\textit{folium, -ii, n.} & leaf \\
\textit{fons, fontis, -ium, m.} & fountaine, pool, spring \\
\textit{imāgō, -inis, f.} & image \\
\textit{iuvenis, iuvenis, iuvenum (gen. pl.), c.} & youth, young person \\
\textit{mons, montis, -ium, m.} & mountain \\
\textit{Narcissus, -i, m.} & Narcissus (\textit{a youth}) \\
\textit{nox, noctis, -ium, f.} & night \\
\textit{potestās, -tātis, f.} & power \\
\textit{pudor, -ōris, m.} & shame \\
\textit{ripā, -ae, f.} & bank of a river \\
\textit{soror, -ōris, f.} & sister \\
\textit{spēlunca, -ae, f.} & cave \\
\textit{vigor, -ōris, m.} & liveliness, force, vigor \\
\textit{vōx, vōcis, f.} & voice \\
\end{tabular}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textbf{VERBS} & \\
\textit{dēsistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītum} & desist, stop, leave off \\
\textit{dēvorō (1)} & consume, devour \\
\textit{humō (1)} & bury \\
\textit{inquit\textsuperscript{9}} & he, she says, said \\
\textit{noceō, -ère, -ui, -itum + dat.} & harm \\
\textit{parō (1)} & prepare \\
\textit{pervideō, -ère, -vidī, -vīsum} & see through, discern, realize \\
\end{tabular}

\textsuperscript{7}Finally he realized that he himself was the image (see Sec. 72).

\textsuperscript{8}A flower called . . .

\textsuperscript{9}Inquit frequently interrupts the quotation and normally follows the first word in it.
possum, posse, potui can, be able
putō (1) think
reportō (1) carry back, report
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum touch
turbō (1) stir, disturb

ADJECTIVES

albus, -a, -um white
alius, -ia, -lud (see Sec. 131) other, another
obscurus, -a, -um dark
vester, -tra, -trum your (pl.)

OTHER WORDS

adhuc until now, up to this point
antequam before, sooner than
forte by chance
haec this
nēmō, nēminem (acc.) no one
praeter + acc. except
prō + abl. in place of, before, for
quamquam although
quem, rel. pro. whom
Quem, interrog. pro. Whom
sui, sibi, sē, sē, reflexive pro. himself, herself, itself, themselves
tamen nevertheless
ūsque + acc. as far as
vōs you (pl.)

Structure

77. Superlative of adjectives. Most adjectives form the superlative by adding
-issimus, -a, -um to the stem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Longissimus</th>
<th>Longissima</th>
<th>Longissimum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

In English the superlative may be variously translated: the longest, the
most long, very long, exceedingly long.

beātus, -a, -um beātissimus, -a, -um happiest
pius, -a, -um piissimus, -a, -um most pious
sanctus, -a, -um sanctissimus, -a, -um most holy
78. Subordinate clauses: quamquam, tamen. A subordinate clause introduced by quamquam (although) is frequently concluded by a main clause introduced by tamen (nevertheless).

Quamquam multae iuvenem amāverant, tamen Narcissus nēminem amābat.
Although many maidens had loved the youth, nevertheless Narcissus loved no one.

79. Present tense of posse. The verb posse (can, be able) is a combination of esse (to be) and the stem pot- (as in potentia, power). The -t of pot- becomes -s before another -s by a process known as assimilation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>I, we</td>
<td>can, am able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>can, are able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>he, she</td>
<td>he, she, it can, is able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potestis</td>
<td>you can, are able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>they can, are able</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

80. Ablative case. The Ablative case originates from three different cases: in the parent Indo-European language, there were eight cases, including a true ablative or "from" case, an instrumental or "with, by" case, and a locative or "in, on" (a where) case. These three cases were merged into one case in Latin, but these three distinct aspects still exist—all as ablative forms. Every use of the ablative in Latin can be reduced to one of these three aspects.

True ablative: separation, source, agent, comparison
Instrumental ablative: means, manner, accompaniment, description

Means: Phoebus filiōs rēginae sagittā necāvit. by means of an arrow
Manner: Narcissus magnā vōce clāmat. in a loud voice

If no adjective modifies the ablative noun, the preposition cum is used, and is sometimes used even when the noun is modified, appearing between the noun and its adjective: magnō cum gaudīō, with great joy.

Accompaniment: Mercurius cum patre Iove ambulābat. with his father Jupiter
Description: Flōs appellātus Narcissus albis foliis. with white petals

Locative: place where, time when, place or time within which

Place where: Arachnē in Lydiā habitābat.
Arachne lived in Lydia.

---

10 See Introduction, The Indo-European Family of Languages.
11 To be studied in subsequent lessons.
Time when:  Nocte Pyramus et Thisbē "Valē" dicebant.
At night Pyramus and Thisbe said, “Goodbye.”

81. Third declension nouns, -i stems. You have already met pars and finis (Sec. 66) as third declension nouns having -ium in the genitive plural. This added -i in the stem of the genitive plural is characteristic of the following groups of nouns:

A. Parisyllabics ending in
   -is (nom.), -is (gen.) finis, finis, finium (end)
   -ēs (nom.), -is (gen.) aedēs, aedis, aedium (house)
B. Nouns in -s or -x whose stem ends in two consonants:
   nox, noctis, noctium (night)
   mōns, montis, montium (mountain)
C. Neuters in -e, -al, -ar: animal, animālis.

82. Future perfect tense, indicative. The future perfect tense is formed by adding the future forms of esse to the perfect stem of the verb. Note that in the third person plural, however, erunt becomes -erint. The English auxiliary verbs are shall have and will have.

\[
\begin{align*}
amāv + erō & = amāverō \\
amāverō & \text{ I shall have loved} & amāverimus & \text{ we shall have loved} \\
amāveris & \text{ you will have loved} & amāveritis & \text{ you will have loved} \\
amāverit & \text{ he, she, it will have loved} & amāverint & \text{ they will have loved} \\
nocuerō & \text{ I shall have harmed} & nocuerimus & \text{ we shall have harmed} \\
nocueris & \text{ you will have harmed} & nocueritis & \text{ you will have harmed} \\
nocuerit & \text{ he, she, it will have harmed} & nocuerint & \text{ they will have harmed}
\end{align*}
\]

One of the most common uses of the future perfect tense in Latin is in the conditional clause of a real (possible) conditional sentence, when the time or tense is future. The Roman mind conceived of the idea as taking place at a time preceding the future time of the main verb:

If you (will have) come home, father will talk to you.

English idiom calls for present or future in the “if” clause.

Sī vōs in montibus errāveritis (errābitis) et "Ėchō, Ėchō," clāmāveritis, Ėchō verba vestra resonābit.

12Iuvenis, iuvenis youth is an exception; its genitive plural is iuvenum. Also exceptions are canis, dog; senex, old man; and volucris, bird. For sedes, seat; mensis, month; and vates, bard, both -um and -ium appear in the genitive plural.
If you wander (will have wandered) in the mountains and shout (will have shouted), "Echo, Echo," Echo will sound back your words.

83. **Quem** as interrogative and relative pronoun. **Quem** (*whom*) can ask a question, as an interrogative pronoun.

*Quem* in silvā vidisti? \(\text{Whom did you see in the forest?}\)

As a relative pronoun, *quem* within the sentence relates to an antecedent preceding it:

Sorōrēs Narcissi corpus iuvenis *quem* amāverant humāre parāvērunt. \(\text{The sisters of Narcissus prepared to bury the body of the youth whom they had loved.}\)

*Quem* is accusative, object of the verb amāverant. *The relative pronoun takes its case from its use in its own clause.*

84. Reflexive pronoun *sē*. The declension of *sē* is the same both singular and plural:

- **Gen.** sui of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves
- **Dat.** sibi to himself, to herself, to itself, to themselves
- **Acc.** sē (sēsē) himself, herself, itself, themselves
- **Abl.** sē (sēsē) with himself, with herself, with itself, with themselves

*Sēsē* is an alternate form for *sē*.

85. Third declension nouns. Gender.

Nouns denoting human beings are masculine or feminine according to natural gender; the following rules regarding grammatical gender are reasonably consistent:

- **Masculine**
  - -or, -ōris (amor, amōris; pudor, pudōris; labor, labōris)
  - -tor, -tōris (victor, victōris; scriptor, scriptōris)
- **Feminine**
  - -tās, -tātis (vēritās, vēritātis; libertās, libertātis)
  - -tūs, -tūtis (virtūs, virtūtis; senectūs, senectūtis)
  - -tūdō, -tūdinis (multitūdō, multitūdinis; pulchritūdō, pulchritūdinis)
  - -tiō, -tiōnis (natiō, natiōnis; ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis)
- **Neuter**
  - -us, -o/eris (corpus, corporis, tempus, temporis: genus, generis)
  - -e, -al, -ar (mare, maris; animal, animālis, exemplar, exemplāris)
  - -en (flumen, fluminis; nōmen, nōminis)
Exercises

I. Respondēte Latīnē, quaesō.
   1. Quis erat Narcissus?
   2. Quem Narcissus amābat?
   3. Cūr Ėchō vocem novam habet?
   4. Estne Ėchō Iūnōni grāta?
   5. Habetne Ėchō sua verba?
   6. Ubi Narcissus animālia fera sequitur?
   7. Cūr nympha misera erat?
   8. Ubi Ėchō sē cēlāvit?
   9. Quem Narcissus in flumine vidit?
  10. Quid mānsit prō corpore iuvenis?

II A. Conjugate the following verbs in the past perfect and the future perfect:
   1. regnō (1) 4. video, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum
   2. parō (1) 5. doceō, docēre, docūi, doctum
   3. habitō (1) 6. maneō, manēre, mānsī
   7. sum, esse, fuī, futūrum
   8. tangō, -ere, tētīgī, tactum

B. Change the verb to plural:
   1. Nympha Narcissum amāverat.
   2. Iuvenis in silvis errāverat.
   4. Iuvenis silvam amāverat.
   5. Nox fuerat longa.
   6. Rēgina nymphae nōn nocuerat.
   7. Dea in terrā nōn mānserat.
  10. Iuvenis sē in undis viderat.

C. Supply the correct future perfect in each condition and the future in each conclusion.
   1. Si vōs in montibus, “Ēchō,” clāmā ________, Ėchō respond ________
   2. Si Ėchō respond ________, corpus eius nōn vid ________.
III A. Practice the declension of these third declension nouns modified by second declension adjectives:

rēx bonus parva soror flūmen pulchrum nox longa

B. Make each adjective in the following sentences superlative:

1. Narcissus est fōrmōsus.  
2. Callistō est deō cāra.
3. Iūnō est írāta.
4. Arachnē est superba.
5. Philēmōn est pius.
7. Flamma est sancta.
   (What Christmas hymn uses this and the preceding superlative?)
8. Nympha est nōta.
9. Lātōna est stulta.
10. Īnsula est longa.

IV. Supply the correct forms of posse:

1. Arachnē pictūrās melius quam Minerva fōrmāre nōn
   ____________________________ .
2. Ėchō fābulam nārrāre nōn ________________ .
3. Narcissus aliās amāre nōn ___________ ; sōlum sē amāre
   ____________________________ .
4. Īnsulam vidēre (I can)________________________ .
5. (Can you, sing.) __________ nymphās spectāre?
6. Iuvenēs Narcissum vidēre nōn ____________________ .
7. Ėchō verba resonāre sōlum ______________________ .
8. Sorōrēs flōrem vidēre ____________________________ .
10. Nymphae deis grātae esse ____________________________ .

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Handsome Narcissus loved no one except himself.
2. Echo had a voice up to this time.

13 The sentences.
14 To die.
3. Juno was angry; the nymph was not pleasing to her (el, Sec. 88).
4. Narcissus used to wander (Imperfect Tense) with other youths in the forests and mountains.
5. Echo had seen and had loved the youth.
6. Echo can only reply; she can only report the words of Narcissus.
7. The wretched nymph hides in caves until her form is very small.
8. If Narcissus will (have looked) look in the river, he will see himself.
9. He tries to touch the image.
10. (His) sisters see a flower in place of the body.

Etymology

By assimilation (ad + similis) the prefix may change its final consonant to the same letter as the first letter of the root word or to a letter that sounds pleasant (euphonious) with it.

- illusion: assimilate
- immigration: afferent
- irritation: affect
- illogical

Such a change also took place in Latin, producing different spellings for verbs: adficio or afficio.

Nowhere is this process of assimilation more apparent than in the forms of the verb possum, posse, potui, for the stem pot- changes to pos- wherever the ending begins with an -s: possum, posse, potest, possunt. The stem or root, however, is pot- (power) and from it come many words in both English and Latin: potent, impotent, omni(all)-potent, potentate, potential, potency, potentiality, possible, possibly. The last two words come from the infinitive posse which itself is a contraction of potis + esse (to be powerful). In Latin the cognate words are potentia, potēns, potis, and potestās.

*  *  *  *  *

Give the source for the following underlined words and define each one:

- vox pop (populi)
- amorous behavior
- the color of his eyes
- corporal punishment
- a floral arrangement
- a wild imagination
- juvenile delinquency
- Monterey (rey is Spanish for king)
- nocturnal prowlers
- spelunkers engage in speleology
- my sorority sister
- tangible evidence
- an obscure poet
- Who is Captain Nemo?
Phoebus and Daphne

The theme of the female pursued by the male is reflected in the story of Apollo and Daphne, this time the powerful sun god pursuing the poor nymph of Diana against her will. He begs her to stay her flight, calling out that it is no mere mortal who is seeking her, but the great shining Phoebus, god of music, the arts, and medicine. His arguments are to no avail, and when the god has chased the nymph to exhaustion, the maiden pleads with her river-god father to change her shape. He complies with her request, and Daphne becomes a tree, the laurel, which Apollo embraces even as the nymph disappears into foliage. Since he cannot have the nymph, he wears her leaves as his crown, as do the Roman victors, as a mark of honor to Daphne, the nymph of Apollo and his first love.
Dialogue

Partēs corporis sunt caput et truncus et crūra et bracchia.
Partēs capitis sunt capilli, oculi, ōs, nāsus, aurēs.
Bracchia manūs et digitōs habent.

The parts of the body are head, trunk, legs, and arms.
Parts of the head are hair, eyes, mouth, noṣe, and ears.
Arms have hands and fingers.

Chapter XIV
PHOEBUS ET DAPHNĒ


Pater filiae hoc dōnum dedit.


---

1All things.
2In his bow.
3That I be a maiden forever.
4That I am Phoebus.
Statim pater bracchia pulchra in ramōs mūtat. Daphnē virgō fōrmōsa nunc est laurus, arbor pulchra. Phoebus oscula arborī dat et dicit: "Si coniūnx mea esse nōn potes, arbor eris certē mea; stābis prīma in capītibus rēgum ducumque Rōmae."

Verba

**NOUNS**

aqua, -ae, f.  
arcus, m. (4th decl.)  
arma, -ōrum, n. pl.  
ars, artis, -ium, f.  
caput, -itūs, n.  
Cupīdō, -inis, m.  
Daphnē, -ēs, f.*  
digitus, -I, m.  
dolor, dolōris, m.  
dux, ducis, m.  
hostis, hostis, -ium, m.  
laurus, -i, f.  
manus, f. (4th decl.)  
medicina, -ae, f.  
mūsica, -ae, f.  
osculum, -i, n.  
ramus, -i, m.  
sōl, sōlis, m.  
tēlum, -i, n.  
Venus, Veneris, f.  
Vulnus, -eris, n.  

**VERBS**

crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētum  
dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum  
faciō, facere, fēci, factum  
figō, figere, fixi, fixum  
fugō (1)  
nescīō, -ire, nescivī, nescītum  
petō, -ere, petivī, petitum  
superō (1)

*This name, like many other feminine names, is of Greek origin with a genitive in -ēs and accusative in -ēn.
ADJECTIVES

acūtus, -a, -um  
sharp

alter, -era, -erum; alter . . .  
the other; the one . . .

alter  
the other

contentus, -a, -um  
satisfied

hic, haec, hoc  
this; he, she, it; the latter

ille, illa, illud  
that; he, she, it; the former

obtūsus, -a, -um  
dull, blunt

tuus, -a, -um  
your (sing.)

OTHER WORDS

eī, eae, ea  
they

is, ea, id  
he, she, it

quod  
which, that

tū  
you

Structure

86. Third conjugation. The infinitive of the third conjugation ends in -ere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Conjugation</th>
<th>Second Conjugation</th>
<th>Third Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-āre</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portāre</td>
<td>habēre</td>
<td>dicere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāre</td>
<td>docēre</td>
<td>petere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice how the short -e in the stem of the third conjugation infinitive causes the accent to shift to the antepenult. The vowel of the present tense, however, is -i, changing to -u before -nt in the third person plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dīcō</td>
<td>dīcēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcis</td>
<td>dīcēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcit</td>
<td>dīcēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcimus</td>
<td>dīcēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcītis</td>
<td>dīcēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcunt</td>
<td>dīcēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I speak, etc.</td>
<td>I was speaking, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you speak</td>
<td>you were speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he, she, it speaks</td>
<td>he was speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we speak</td>
<td>we were speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you speak</td>
<td>you were speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they speak</td>
<td>they were speaking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The imperfect is completely regular, though the short -e of the stem is lengthened before -bā.

The perfect tenses are completely regular, being formed, as in first and second conjugations, from the perfect stem plus endings. Therefore it is important to learn the third principal part with each verb: dīcō, dīcere, dīxī but also petō, petere, petīvi.
Perfect Tense

Perfect Stem + Perfect Endings

dīxi  I have said, did say  petīvi  I have sought

dīxisti  you have said, did say  petīvisti  you have sought

dīxit  he, she, it has said  petīvit  he, she, it has sought

dīximus  we have said  petīvimus  we have sought

dīxistis  you have said  petīvistis  you have sought

dīxērunt  they have said  petīvērunt  they have sought

Past Perfect Tense

Perfect Stem + Imperfect of esse

dīixeram  I had said  petīveram  I had sought

dīixerās  you had said  petīverās  you had sought

dīixerat  he, she, it had said  petīverat  he, she, it had sought

dīixerāmus  we had said  petīverāmus  we had sought

dīixerātis  you had said  petīverātis  you had sought

dīixerant  they had said  petīverant  they had sought

Future Perfect Tense

Perfect Stem + Future of esse

dīixerō  I shall have said  petīverō  I shall have sought

dīixeris  you will have said  petīveris  you will have sought

dīixerit  he, she, it will have said  petīverit  he, she, it will have sought

dīixerimus  we shall have said  petīverimus  we shall have sought

dīixeritis  you will have said  petīveritis  you will have sought

dīixerint  they will have said  petīverint  they will have sought

87. Third -īō conjugation. There are some third conjugation verbs which end in -īō in the present, first person singular. These verbs end in -iunt in the third person plural and have -iē- before the tense sign -bā- in the imperfect. Their perfect tenses are completely regular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Imperfect Tense</th>
<th>Perfect Tenses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>faciō</td>
<td>faciēbam</td>
<td>fēci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facis</td>
<td>faciēbās</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facit</td>
<td>faciēbat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facimus</td>
<td>faciēbāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facitis</td>
<td>faciēbātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faciunt</td>
<td>faciēbant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
88. Personal pronouns. The personal pronouns are used in all cases in Latin as in English, except in the nominative case where they are usually omitted unless the reference is unclear, or unless needed for emphasis; otherwise the personal endings of the verb absorb the nominative function of the pronouns. (See Sec. 25.)

**Personal Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
<th>Third Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ego</td>
<td>mei</td>
<td>mihi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tui</td>
<td>tibi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>eum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>eatis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Third Person</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eó</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Exercises** |

1. Respondête Latînê, quaesô.
   1. Quis erat primus amor Phoebi?
   2. Quis Phoebo amôrem dedit?
   3. Cûr Cupidô erat irâtus?
   4. Suntne sagittae Cupidinis acûtae? Suntne obtûsae?
   5. Figtine Cupidô obtûsam sagittam in Phoebum?
   6. Quis est pater nymphae?
   7. Laudatne Phoebus fôrîm nymphae?
   8. Quis est Phoebus?
   9. Datne pater nymphae auxilium eî?
  10. Mutatne pater fôrîm eius? Amatne Phoebus etiam eam, nunc laurum?

II A. Conjugate the following verbs in the present, imperfect, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect.

   1. crêscô, crêscere, crêvî, crêtum
   2. dô, dare, dedî, datum
   3. respondêô, respondère, respondi, responsum

<sup>5</sup>Alternate forms: nostrî and vestrî, of us, of you (pl.). Nostrum and vestrum are used for the Partitive Genitive.
4. petō, petere, petivi, petitum
5. faciō, facere, feci, factum

B. Change these present tense verbs to imperfect:

1. dicit dicēbat
2. facit
3. spectat
4. stat
5. docet
6. iubet
7. manet
8. tangit
9. petit
10. crēscit

C. Change these perfect tense verbs to past perfect:

1. habuerunt habuerant
2. dixerunt
3. dederunt
4. tenuerunt
5. fecerunt
6. viderunt
7. manserunt
8. iusserunt
9. draverunt
10. iuverunt

Notice the change of accent in the past perfect tense.

III. Decline the following:

1. magnus amor
2. coniunx mea
3. soror tua
4. nomen famōsum
5. caput meum
6. hostis novus

IV. Supply the correct form of the personal pronoun followed by an appositive:

1. (We), régēs, ducibus dōnum dedimus.
2. (You), dux, eris rēx Romae.
3. (I), nympha, deum amāre nōn possum.
4. (He), dux magnus Romae, rēx nōn erit.
5. (They), viri Romae, bona consilia habent.
6. (You), hostēs, (her) nōn nocēre potestis. (nocēre takes the dative)
7. (She), rēgīna, (them, f.) nocēre potest.
8. (She), rēgīna, (us) nōn nocēre potest.
9. (They) (templae) sunt dē cārissima.
10. (It), flumen, (them, m.) cēlābit.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Cupid gave Phoebus (his) first love.
2. Phoebus had watched Cupid with (his) bow (árcae) and arrows.
3. Venus’ son had said to Phoebus, “My arrow can transfix you.”
4. Cupid holds two arrows in his bow (árcae); the one is sharp, the other is dull.
5. Daphne loves only to wander with Diana and her friends in the woods.
6. The father of the nymph is a river god. (god of a river)
7. He gives the nymph a gift—to be an eternal maiden.
8. Phoebus Apollo is the god of the arts, music and medicine; he is also god of the sun.
9. Daphne flees to the river and begs for aid.
10. (Her) father changes the maiden into a tree, the laurel, dear to Phoebus.

**Etymology**

_Aqua_ (water) comes into English in many forms: _aquatic, aquaplane, aquarium, Aquarius_ (water-carrier of the Zodiac), _aquatint, aqueduct_ (duc means lead). The famous Pont du Gard in France is one of the most famous aqueducts in the world. Situated dramatically across the Gard River near the town of Nimes, it spans an enormous valley in three tiers of arches. The trough at the top is about a yard wide and about four feet deep. One can climb the rugged mountainside and walk out into the partially covered aqueduct to view the gorge most advantageously.

The words that come into English from the verb _dicē, dicere, dixi, dictum_ are many and varied depending on the root form used: _dictionary, edict, dictaphone, dictate, dictation, dictator, diction, dictum, addict, abdicate, abdication, indict_ (in- here means against; to speak against someone, to charge him with an offense), _indication, indictment_.

Words in English from the stems of _facē, facere, feci, factum_ and its many compounds in Latin include the following: _fact, factory, manufacture, faculty, factotum, putre(rotten)-faction, putrefy, affect, effect, infect, infection, confection, defect, defective, satis(enough)-fy, amplify, electrify, verify (_-fy is from _facere_ via Old French _fier_)._  

---

* * * *

Give the Latin source words for the following underlined words:

- _"Mono"_ is an _oscular_ disease.
- dolorous sounds
- artistic expression
- hostile behavior
- _Il Duce_, the name for Mussolini
- manual dexterity
- a _solarium_ for plants
- _virgin_ soil
- a _vulnerable_ person
- increase in strength
- _transfix_ with an arrow
- sign the petition
- _acute_ reasoning
- an _obtuse_ fellow
- alter _ego_
Pyramus and Thisbe

Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet* has a plot similar to Ovid's tale of Pyramus and Thisbe. The story is set in Babylonia. Pyramus and Thisbe live in a duplex, a house with a common wall, and they have fallen in love with each other. Because their parents forbid their marriage, the two meet to converse and send kisses through a crack in the wall, but when love becomes too powerful and the wall too impenetrable, the two lovers decide to meet in the woods at the tomb of Ninus under a mulberry tree. Thisbe comes first and drops her veil in fright as she hides in a cave in fear of a lion all bloody from a recent kill. The lion tears the veil with its bloody mouth and departs. Then Pyramus comes and sees Thisbe's veil all bloody; agonizing over his tardy arrival, he kills himself. Thisbe then comes from the cave, sees the body and bloody garment and realizes that she has been the cause of Pyramus' death. In grief she plunges the dagger into herself. The mulberry tree, which up to then had white berries, now bears purple fruit from the blood-soaked ground near its roots, and the parents bury the ashes of the two lovers in a single urn. Shakespeare used the story of Pyramus and Thisbe as the play performed by the Rustics in *Midsummer Night's Dream*. 
Chapter XV
PYRAMUS ET THISBÉ
(pars prīma)


Prīmō Thisbē pervenit et sub arbore sedet. Ecce venit leō qui aquās fontis bibere dēsiderat. Quia recēns leō animal necaverat, crōrer erat in ōre. Procul Thisbē leōnem videt et in speluncam obscūram fugit. Ubi fugit, vēlāmina relinquit quae leō ōre cruēntō laniat.5


---

1 In the wall of the houses was a crack which . . .
2 Soft words.
3 At the tomb of Ninus.
4 A mulberry tree, very heavy with white fruit; mōri, of the mulberry; do not confuse with mori, to die, the infinitive of the deponent morior.
5 Which the lion tears with its bloody mouth.
6 Come. imperative, pl.
7 Spurts up.
Verba

Certain words will appear in the vocabulary with an asterisk (*) beside them. These words will be required to be learned as valuable additions to the student's vocabulary. The others are necessary for the reading, but need not be acquired at this time.

NOUNS

*amāns, amantis, c. one who loves, a lover
*consilium, -ii, n. plan, advice
*crūor, -ōris, m. blood
*domus, -ōs, f. house, home
fissum, -i, n. crack
*gladius, -ōn, m. sword
*herba, -ae, f. grass
*iter, itineris, n. road, path, way
leō, leōnis, m. lion
*mors, mortis, -ium, f. death
*parēns, parentis, c. parent
parīēs, parietis, m. wall
pōnum, -i, n. fruit, apple
*Pyramus, -i, m. Pyramus (a youth)
rādix, rādīcis, f. root, radish
tempestus, -oris, n. time
*Thisbē, -ēs, f. Thisbe (a maiden)
tumulus, -i, m. grave, mound
vēlīmen, -inis, n. garment, covering
*vestīgium, -īli, n. track, footprint

VERBS

*bibō, -ere, bibi, bibitum drink
*conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum meet, assemble
fallō, -ere, fēfelli, falsum deceive
*fugiō, -ere, fūglī, -itum flee
murmurō (1) murmur
optō (1) wish for, desire
*perveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum arrive
*quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum seek, ask, inquire
*quaesō, -ere; quaesō (tē) seek, beg; I beg (you), please
*relinquiō, -ere, reliquit, relictum leave behind
*sentīō, -ire, sensī, -sum feel, know, sense
XV Pyramus et Thisbē (pars prima) 125

*trahō, -ere, traxī, -ctum  
draw, draw out, drag
*veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum  
come

ADJECTIVES

*albus, -a, -um  
white
*cruentus, -a, -um  
bloody
*dignus, -a, -um + abl.  
worthy (of)
*prior, prius (comparative)  
before, earlier
*purpureus, -a, -um  
purple
*vicinus, -a, -um + dat.  
neighboring, near (to)

OTHER WORDS

*e (ex) + abl.  
out of, from, out from
*hinc  
here, on this side, hence
*illinc  
there, on that side, thence
*procul  
at a distance
*qui, quae, quod  
who, which
*quia  
because
*recēns  
recently
*sub + acc. or abl.  
under, beneath
*ut  
as, like
*utrimque  
on each side, on both sides

Structure

89. Fourth conjugation. The infinitive ending of the fourth conjugation is -īre: venire. To the stem veni- are added the personal endings. Notice how similar the fourth conjugation is to the third -io.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Third -io Conjugation</th>
<th>Fourth Conjugation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fugiō, fugere</td>
<td>veniō, venire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugiō</td>
<td>veniō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I flee, am fleeing, do flee</td>
<td>I come, am coming, do come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugis</td>
<td>venis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugit</td>
<td>venit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugimus</td>
<td>venimīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugītis</td>
<td>venītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugiunt</td>
<td>veniunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The vowel of the fourth conjugation is -i-, but it, like all vowels, must be shortened before final -t or -nt. Notice that the accent is on the penult in
the first and second person plural of the fourth conjugation because of the long vowel.

Imperfect tense:  
\begin{align*}
\text{veniebam, veniebās, veniebat, veniebāmus,} \\
\text{veniebātis, veniebant}
\end{align*}

Perfect tense:  
\begin{align*}
\text{vēni, vēnisti, vēnit, vēnimus, vēnisti, vēnerunt}
\end{align*}

Past perfect tense:  
\begin{align*}
\text{vēneram, vēnerās, vēnerat, vēnerāmus, vēnerātis,} \\
vēnerant
\end{align*}

Future perfect tense:  
\begin{align*}
\text{vēnerō, vēneris, vēnerit, vēnerimus, vēneritis,} \\
vēnerint
\end{align*}

90. Future tense, all conjugations. The greatest difference between the first and second conjugations and the third and fourth conjugations is in the formation of the future tense. The tense sign for the future in the first and second conjugations is \(-bi\),\(^8\) but in the third and fourth, the sign is \(-e\).\(^9\) The English auxiliary is shall (will) for the future: “I shall love, you will love, he will love, we shall love, you (pl.) will love, they will love.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First</th>
<th>Second</th>
<th>Third</th>
<th>Third-io</th>
<th>Fourth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābō</td>
<td>docēbō</td>
<td>dicam</td>
<td>faciam</td>
<td>veniam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>docēbis</td>
<td>dicēs</td>
<td>faciēs</td>
<td>veniēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>docēbit</td>
<td>dicet</td>
<td>faciet</td>
<td>veniet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābimus</td>
<td>docēbimus</td>
<td>dicēmus</td>
<td>faciēmus</td>
<td>veniēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābitis</td>
<td>docēbitis</td>
<td>dicētis</td>
<td>faciētis</td>
<td>veniētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābunt</td>
<td>docēbunt</td>
<td>dicent</td>
<td>facient</td>
<td>venient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REMEMBER THESE SIGNS** \(-bi\) \(-e\)

91. Synopsis of the verb. A short-cut method for reviewing the forms of a verb is the synopsis, a presentation of a single person and number of the verb in all tenses. A synopsis of vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum in the third person singular, all tenses, follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>vocat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>vocābat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>vocābit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>vocāvit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>vocāverat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>vocāverit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

92. Figures of speech: simile. The comparison of two ideas, using like or as to introduce the compared image is called simile. It is a device much used

\(^8\) Note \(-bō\) for first person singular and \(-bu-\) for third person plural.

\(^9\) Note that \(-e-\) becomes \(-a-\) in the first person singular.
by poets, and although the idea of gore spouting up, fountain-like, may be a bit too graphic for a poetic image today, it is, nevertheless, the simile used by Ovid, although the original compares the spurting up to a jet stream from a broken pipe.

Cruor émicat, ut fons . . .
The blood spurts out, like a fountain . . .

93. Superlative of adjectives in -er. The superlative of adjectives which end in -er is formed by adding -rimus, -a, -um to the nominative masculine singular.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum pulcherrimus, -a, -um most beautiful
miser, misera, miserum miserrimus, -a, -um most unhappy
sacer, sacra, sacrum saecerrimus, -a, -um most sacred

94. Declension of domus. Domus is irregular, being formed in part like a fourth declension noun (see Sec. 101) and in part like a second declension noun in the accusative and ablative. Remember also that it is a feminine noun ending in -us:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domüs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domüs, domi</td>
<td>domuum, domorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domui, domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>domōs, domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>domū, domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc.</td>
<td>domi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises

1. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō.
   1. Quis est Pýramus? Quis est Thisbē?
   2. Ubi habitābant?
   3. Quī amōrem iuvenum prohibuērunt?
   4. Ubi fissum erat?
   5. Quid est consilium iuvenum?
   6. Ubi convenient?
   7. Quis vēnit prīmō?
   8. Quis adest quoque?
   9. Quid fēcit leō? Quid fēcit Thisbē?
  10. Quid colōrem pomōrum mutāvit?

10 Locative is the place-where case: at home—domi. It exists also with names of cities, towns, and small islands, resembling the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions: Rōmae, at Rome.
II A. Conjugate in all six tenses: petō, petere; fugiō, fugere; sentiō, sentire.

B. Give a synopsis of: relinquent, quaerō, factum, pervenit.

III. Change each verb to the future tense:

1. Iuvenēs oscula utrimque dant. dabunt
2. Pyrāmus velāmina Thisbēs videt.
3. Pyrāmus prīmus nōn venit.
4. Leō virgini nōn nocet.
5. Amor viam facit.
6. Amantēs domōs relinquent.
7. Pyrāmus sē necat.
8. Poma nōn sunt alba.
9. Cruor colōrem pomōrum mūtavit.
10. Leō virginem nōn dévoravit.

IV. From the following list of adverbs, choose the correct one for each sentence:

hinc, illinc, hūc, hīc, ībi, ēlim, deinde, dēnique, recens, bene, prior, procul, subitūm, utrimque, statim.

1. Pyrāmus (here) in herbā iacet.
2. Leō (to this place) nōn venit.
3. (On this side) stābat Pyrāmus, (on that side) Thisbē.
4. (Once upon a time) erat arbor albis pomīs in silvā.
5. Oscula (on each side) dabant.
7. (Then) Pyrāmus velāmina vidit.
8. Thisbē (from a distance) leōnem vidit.
10. (Finally) Pyrāmus quoque mortem quaesīvit.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Pyramus loved Thisbe (Thisbēn, Greek acc.), but their parents tried to prevent (their) love.
2. They spoke through a hole in the wall.
3. They had neighboring houses.
4. They have a plan to leave their homes at night and meet secretly.
5. They will deceive their parents and leave the city.
6. They will meet at the tree near the tomb of Ninus.
7. Thisbe is the first to come (comes first) and sees a lion.
8. Thisbe flees and leaves behind her veil.
9. The lion tears (laniat) the veil with his bloody mouth.
10. Pyramus is most wretched when he sees the veil, and he kills himself with his sword.

Etymology

The endings -arium and -orium mean a place for. By adding this suffix to the following roots, English obtains several familiar words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a place to hear</th>
<th>audit-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a place to have the sun</td>
<td>sol-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a place for water</td>
<td>aqua-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a place for penguins</td>
<td>penguin-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a planter holding earth</td>
<td>terr-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Roman baths had three areas for three temperatures of water: a calidarium (for hot water), a tepidarium (for lukewarm water), and a frigidarium (for cold water).

The -ium sometimes changes to -y in English; what happens to dormitorium and observatorium?

* * * * *

Give the English derivatives for the following definitions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a crack in the rock</th>
<th>f</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the house one lives in</td>
<td>domi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a man who fights with a sword</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the triptik from AAA</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like a lion</td>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother and father</td>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not eternal</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a meeting of salesmen in New York</td>
<td>c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink liquor</td>
<td>imb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something asked</td>
<td>qu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave behind, give up</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Greek mood</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a feeling</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign for square root of a number</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter XVI
PYRAMUS ET THISBĒ
(pars secunda)

Ecce Thisbē ex speluncā venit. Amantem oculis quaerit quod ei de periculis narrāre désiderat. Locum et formam arboris videt, sed color pomi eam incertam facit. Dum dubitat, videt in herbā sub hāc arbore corpus Pyramī cruentum. Multis lacrimīs ita clāmat virgō territa, "Pyrame, quis tē a mē rapuit? Pyrame, Pyrame, respondē, tua tē cārissima Thisbē nōminat!"

Ad nōmen Thisbēs Pyramus oculōs aperuit; tum iterum eōs in morte clausit.

Ubi Thisbē vēlāmina sua gladiumque Pyramī vidit, "Tua tē manus," inquit, "amor quem tuus necāvit. 1 Mihi quoque sunt amor et manus. Mē in mortem mittam; si causa mortis tuae fui, comes quoque mortis tuae erō. Ô, parentēs miserē, date nōbis hoc dōnum. Pōnite in hōc tumulō ūnō nōs quōs 2 amor coniūnxit, quōs ūna hōra coniūnxit. At tū arbor, habē semper pōma purpurea, monumenta duōrum amantium mortuōrum."

Dum haec dicit, gladiō Pyramī sē necat. Et deī et parentēs haec verba audīvērunt, nam color pōmī mōri 3 nōn iam albus est, sed purpureus ubi permātūruit. 4 Cinis duōrum amantium in ūnā urnā requiescit. 4

---

1 Latin often uses a singular verb with a plural subject.
2 Us whom love has joined together.
3 Of the mulberry tree.
4 When it has ripened thoroughly. The prefix per indicates the idea of thoroughly.
4 Rest.
Verba

NOUNS

• cinis, -eris, m.
• *comes, comitis, c.
• *hōra, -ae, f.
  monumentum, -i, n.
• *periculum, -i, n.
• *urna, -ae, f.

ashes
companion, sharer
hour
memorial, reminder
danger
urn, vessel of baked clay

VERBS

• aperiō, -ire, -ui, -pertum
• *audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum
  claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum
• *inquit
• *legō, -ere, lēgi, lectum
• *mittō, -ere, misi, missum
• *nōminō (1)
• *pōnō, -ere, posui, positum
• *rapīō, -ere, -ui, raptum

open
hear
close
says, said
read, gather, choose
send
call, name
put, place
seize, carry off

ADJECTIVES

• *incertus, -a, -um
• *mortuus, -a, -um

uncertain, unsure
dead

OTHER WORDS

• at (introducing a contrary idea)
  but, yet, but meanwhile
• *atque
  and, and also
• *nam
  for
• *nōn iam
  for, because
• *quōs
  whom, acc. pl.

Structure

95. The demonstrative pronoun and adjective this: hic, haec, hoc.⁶ Hic in its
deprecated forms can function either as a pronoun or as an adjective:

---

⁵Cinis means the ashes of a corpse that has been burned; it is frequently used in both
numbers, but occurs in the plural especially in poetry and in post-Augustan prose. Cf. English,
cinerary urn.

⁶Some dictionaries list hic and hoc with a long vowel in the nominative, but this text, like
most, will consider the vowel short to avoid confusion with the adverb hic, here, and the ablative
hoc.
Pronoun: Hoc est bonum This is good.
Adjective: Hic puer est bonus This boy is good.

Used either way, it agrees with the word or idea it refers to or modifies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular (this)</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural (these)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

96. The demonstrative pronoun and adjective that: ille, illa, illud. Ille in all its declined forms can also function either as a pronoun or as an adjective:

Pronoun: Illud est novum. That is strange.
Adjective: Illa arbor est pulchra. That tree is beautiful.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular (that)</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural (those)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The inflected forms of both hic and ille often function as substantive pronouns, with the gender indicating whether men, women, or things are being implied. Since Latin has both natural and grammatical gender, however, the context helps to determine the antecedent.

Hi sunt mortui. These men are dead.
Ilī sunt vivī. Those men are alive.
Haec venit. This woman is coming.
Hanc videō. I see this woman.
Hic respondit. This man answered.
Hoc videō. I see this thing.
Hi ōrāvērunt. These men prayed.
Hae respondērunt. These women replied.
Ille respondērunt. Those women replied.
Illud nōn est sacrum. That thing is not sacred.
Illam nōn amō. I do not love that woman (or her).
Illum nōn vidī. I have not seen that man (or him).
Illī pervēnērunt. Those men arrived. (or They arrived.)
Pān haec dixit. Pan spoke these things.
Hic and ille can also mean *the latter* and *the former*, respectively: luppiter Mercurio dicit. Ille (the former) huic (the latter) fãbulam dẽ senibus bonis in terrâ nãrrat.

97. Imperative of verbs, all conjugations. The imperative mood regularly gives a command. The singular imperative is formed by dropping the -re of the infinitive form. The plural adds -te to this stem. This third conjugation uses -ite for the plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-iō</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive:</td>
<td>vocā(re)</td>
<td>docē(re)</td>
<td>mitte(re)</td>
<td>fugē(re)</td>
<td>venī(re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper. Sing.:</td>
<td>vocā</td>
<td>docē</td>
<td>mitte</td>
<td>fugē</td>
<td>venī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper. Pl.:</td>
<td>vocāte</td>
<td>docēte</td>
<td>mittite</td>
<td>fugite</td>
<td>venīte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the following accents, following the antepenultimate rule:

vocāte docēte mittite fugite venīte

Pōnite in hōc tumulō nōs . . . Place us in this grave . . .
Habē semper poma purpurea . . . Always have purple fruit . . .
Ōrāte deōs. Pray to the gods.
Venite ad tabulam. Come to the board.
Salvē! Hello! *(Greeting one person)*
Valēte! Goodbye! *(Leaving more than one person)*

**Exercises**

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaeso.
1. Cūr Thisbē Pyramum quaesivit?
2. Suntne poma adhūc alba?
3. Quem Thisbē in herbā vidit?
4. Quid clāmat Thisbē?
5. Cum Pyramus nōmen "Thisbem" audīvit, quid fēcit?
6. Quae8 Thisbē prope corpus Pyrami vidit?
7. Quid est dōnum quo9 Thisbē parentēs ōrāvit?
8. Quid est dōnum quo Thisbē arborem ōrāvit?
9. Quid dēnique fēcit Thisbē?

II A. Supply the correct form of hic:
1. ____________ arbor est pulchra.
2. ____________ gladius est acūtus.

---

7The imperative singular of dicō, faciō, and ferō is irregular: dic, fac, and fer.
8What things.
9Which.
3. ________ librum in manū habeo.
4. ________ libĕs in scholā habĕmus.
5. ________ puellam Pyramus amat.
6. ________ dōnum nōn est tibi.
7. ________ cinis in ūna urnā requiescit.
8. ________ arborem Thisbē nōn videt.
9. ________ poma sunt purpurea.
10. ________ ūna hōra duōs amantēs coniunget.

B. Supply the correct form of ille:
1. ________ liber est novus.
2. ________ fābula est longa.
3. ________ dōnum est novum.
4. ________ librum novum habeō.
5. ________ longam fābulam amō.
6. ________ dōnum sacrum ὀραῦ.
7. ________ poma sunt purpurea.
8. ________ gladiō sē necavit.

III. Supply the correct form of the imperative. The vocative will indicate whether you need the singular or plural.
1. (Place), discipuli, libĕs in mēnsam.
2. (Place), Thisbē, gladium in herbam.
3. (Hear), discipuli, verba magistri.
4. (Read), discipuli, fābulam in librīs.
5. (Open), Marce, portam (door).
6. (Close), rēgīna, portās rēgiae.
7. (Hear), Marce, mūsicam deōrum.
8. (Write), discipuli, nōmina hic, quaesō. (Lesson IV, Dialogue)
9. (Open), servi, urnās.
10. (Send), parentēs, filiās filiōsque ad scholam.

IV. Give a synopsis of the following verbs; translate each form into English:
1. mittō: 1st person singular
2. legō: 3rd person plural
3. pōnō: 3rd person singular
4. audīō: 2nd person singular

V. Translate into Latin:
1. Thisbe wants to tell Pyramus (dat.) [about] these dangers.
2. She hesitates when she sees the color of the fruit.
3. She sees the body of Pyramus covered with blood (the bloody body).
4. Pyramus did not open his eyes again.
5. Thisbe said, “This great love has killed you.”
6. “I shall be your companion in death.” (the companion of your death)
7. “O, wretched parents, give us this gift.”
8. “Place [our] ashes in a single urn.”
9. The gods heard the words of the maiden, and the parents placed the ashes in a single urn.
10. The color of the fruit of the mulberry (mōrus) is always purple.

**Etymology**

**Space Age Vocabulary**

**LATIN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>astronaut</td>
<td>astrum, -i, n. (star) + nauta, -ae, m. (sailor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satellite</td>
<td>satelles, -itis, c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigation</td>
<td>navigāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosmonaut</td>
<td>cosmos (Greek) + nauta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbit</td>
<td>orbita, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propellant</td>
<td>prō (forward) + pellere (to push)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rocket</td>
<td>diminutive of (Italian) rocca (distaff)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retrorocket</td>
<td>retrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juno</td>
<td>Iuno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>Mercurius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlas</td>
<td>Atlās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centaur</td>
<td>Centaurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titan</td>
<td>Titan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturn</td>
<td>Sāturnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo</td>
<td>Phoebus Apollo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Etymology**

**Space Age Vocabulary**

**LATIN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>astronaut</td>
<td>astrum, -i, n. (star) + nauta, -ae, m. (sailor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satellite</td>
<td>satelles, -itis, c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigation</td>
<td>navigāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosmonaut</td>
<td>cosmos (Greek) + nauta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbit</td>
<td>orbita, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propellant</td>
<td>prō (forward) + pellere (to push)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rocket</td>
<td>diminutive of (Italian) rocca (distaff)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retrorocket</td>
<td>retrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juno</td>
<td>Iuno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>Mercurius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlas</td>
<td>Atlās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centaur</td>
<td>Centaurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titan</td>
<td>Titan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturn</td>
<td>Sāturnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo</td>
<td>Phoebus Apollo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Etymology**

**Space Age Vocabulary**

**LATIN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>astronaut</td>
<td>astrum, -i, n. (star) + nauta, -ae, m. (sailor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satellite</td>
<td>satelles, -itis, c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigation</td>
<td>navigāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cosmonaut</td>
<td>cosmos (Greek) + nauta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbit</td>
<td>orbita, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propellant</td>
<td>prō (forward) + pellere (to push)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rocket</td>
<td>diminutive of (Italian) rocca (distaff)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retrorocket</td>
<td>retrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juno</td>
<td>Iuno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercury</td>
<td>Mercurius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>Delta (Greek)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atlas</td>
<td>Atlās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centaur</td>
<td>Centaurus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titan</td>
<td>Titan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturn</td>
<td>Sāturnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo</td>
<td>Phoebus Apollo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gemini</td>
<td>gemini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pegasus</td>
<td>Pegasus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nimbus</td>
<td>nimbus, -ì, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor</td>
<td>moneō, monitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
<td>communicāre (commūnis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planet</td>
<td>planēta from Grk. planētēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lunar</td>
<td>lūna, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solar</td>
<td>sōl, sōlis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mariner</td>
<td>mare, maris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interplanetary</td>
<td>inter + planēta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Module</td>
<td>modulus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>commandāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space</td>
<td>spatium, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Station</td>
<td>stō, stāre, statum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scientific</td>
<td>scientia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>labōrāre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umbilical</td>
<td>umbilicus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tower, turret</td>
<td>turris, turris, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>liquidus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trajectory</td>
<td>trāns + iacere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(path of a moving body)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Atalanta and Hippomenes

The maiden Atalanta, exposed as an infant because her royal father wanted a son, had been raised in the woods by animals and had developed into a fine, strapping, beautiful young woman by the time she presented herself to her father. The king was delighted with the splendid, proud girl and accepted her gladly as his daughter and heir. Because of the unusual circumstances of her education, Atalanta conforms to the pattern of the hero who grows up away from parents and, because of the altered conditions, is stronger, wiser, and better able to cope with the world than he would have been had he been reared at home.

Atalanta was so beautiful that many suitors desired to marry her, but hoping to avoid wedlock, Atalanta imposed a harsh restriction on any suitor. "Race with me," she demanded, "and if you lose, you die. As reward, I shall be wife to the victor." And many young princes had died for this prize.

Hippomenes, who first came only to watch, had fallen in love himself with the maiden. Praying to Venus for help, he was given three golden apples which he threw to the side one at a time during the race. Each time Atalanta, delayed by her desire for the golden apple, was slowed down, and Hippomenes raced ahead to win the contest and a wife. Atalanta, who had noticed the courage and manly grace of Hippomenes, was pleased by the outcome.

The two, however, forgot to acknowledge their indebtedness to Venus, and they did not show proper moderation in waiting to consummate their love; therefore they were turned into lions by Cybele, the offended goddess whose shrine had been desecrated by their love-making.
Chapter XVII
ATALANTA ET HIPPOMENĒS
(pars prīma)

Forsitan audivisti dē virgine quae virōs in certāmine cursūs superābat. Illa fābula nōn est rūmor, superābat enim Atalanta. Hominēs dicēbant hanc esse tam clāram fōrmā quam pedibus.2


---

1 See Appendix for dates and time.
2 Men said that this girl was as famous for her beauty as for her (fleetness of) foot. (Abl. of respect)
3 Let this be . . . (future imperative).
4 Supply vōs as the antecedent of quōs, you whom . . .
5 On swift foot.
6 Not more slowly than a Scythian arrow.
7 Admires, active meaning with passive ending.

Verba

NOUNS

*aetās, aetātis, f.*
*audācia, -ae, f.*
avus, -i, m.
*certāmen, -minis, n.*
cornū, -ūs, n.
culpa, -ae, f.
cūra, -ae, f.
cursus, -ūs, m.
*ignis, ignis, -ium, m.*
lēx, lēgis, f.
Megareus, -i, m.
*Neptūnus, -i, m.*
procus, -i, m.
*rūmor, -oris, m.*
spectātor, -ōris, m.
τurba, -ae, f.
*victōria, -ae, f.*

VERBS

*addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum*
*capio, -ere, cēpi, captum*
corōnō (1)
*culpo (1)*

---

8 Easy (facilem is a third declension adjective: see Sec. 112).
9 It will not cause you shame (double dative: pudor, -ōris, m., shame).
10 She hesitates whether she prefers to . . .
11 What god . . .? (see p. 153, Sec. 105).
12 If I am any judge (two words in abl.: lit., with me as judge).
13 By a better maid.
*damnō (1) condemn
*eō, ire, ī (īvī), ītum go
*ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat. forgive
*moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum move, stir
*sciō, scire, scivi or scii, scītum know
*sonō (1) sound
*superō (1) surpass, rise above, conquer
*vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum conquer, defeat, get the better of, vanquish, be victorious

ADJECTIVES

dēterritus, -a, -um deterred
dūrus, -a, -um hard, harsh
innubus, -a, -um unwed
*tantus, -a, -um such a great, so great
*tardus, -a, -um late, slow
*victus, -a, -um conquered, beaten

OTHER WORDS

an or
*forsitan perhaps
*magis more
*nisi unless, if . . . not
nōndum not yet
*quī, quae, quod who, which, that
*tam so
(nōn) tardius (not) more slowly
vērē truly

IDIOM

*vidētur he, she, it seems (passive of see)

Structure

98. The passive voice. The active voice of the verb expresses what the subject of the verb is or does. The passive voice expresses what is done to the subject of the sentence (by someone or something).

Active: Agricolae aquam portant. The farmers carry the water.
Passive: Aqua ab agricolis portātur. Water is carried by the farmers.
Active: Parentēs dōnum dant. The parents give the gift.
Passive: Dōnum ā parentibus datur. The gift is given by the parents.

The passive forms in the present, imperfect, and future of the verb are based on the same present stems which you have already learned for all four conjugations, but the passive endings are added.

Passive Endings First Conjugation

-\textit{r} portor I am carried, am being carried
-\textit{ris} portāris you are carried, are being carried
-\textit{tur} portātur he, she, it is carried, is being carried
-\textit{mur} portāmur we are carried, are being carried
-\textit{mini} portāmini you are carried, are being carried
-\textit{ntur} portāntur they are carried, are being carried

Note how the stem vowel of each conjugation continues to be the characteristic vowel before the passive endings are added.

\textbf{Remember: } I II III III-io IV

\begin{tabular}{lllll}
 a e & e(i) & e(i) & i \\
 doceor & mittor & capior & audior \\
 docēris & miteris & caperis & audēris \\
 docētur & mittitur & capitur & auditur \\
 docēmur & mitteris & caperis & audēmur \\
 docēmini & mittimini & capimini & audimmī \\
 docentur & mittuntur & capiuntur & audintur \\
\end{tabular}

The \textit{imperfect passive} is formed by inserting between the stem and the passive endings the tense sign -\textit{ba}-, which was also used in the active voice.

\begin{tabular}{lllll}
 portābar & docēbar & mittēbar & capiēbar & audiēbar \\
 portābāris & docēbāris & mittēbāris & capiēbāris & audiēbāris \\
 portābātur & docēbātur & mittēbātur & capiēbātur & audiēbātur \\
 portābāmur & docēbāmur & mittēbāmur & capiēbāmur & audiēbāmur \\
 portābāmini & docēbāmini & mittēbāmini & capiēbāmini & audiēbāmini \\
 portābantur & docēbantur & mittēbantur & capiēbantur & audiēbantur \\
\end{tabular}

The \textit{future passive} is formed by inserting the tense sign -\textit{bi}- before the passive ending for first and second conjugations, the vowel -\textit{e}- for third and fourth:

\begin{tabular}{lllll}
14I was carried, I was being carried; you were carried, were being carried; etc.
Exercises

I. Respondēte Latīnē, quaesō.
   1. Audīvistīne fābulam dē Atalantā, puellā clārā?
   2. Estne fābula dē virgine rūmor?
   3. Čūr Atalanta coniugem fugit?
   4. Ubi Atalanta vivit?
   5. Quīs est lēx certāminis?
   6. Qui ad hanc lēgem vēnērunt?
   7. Čūr vēnērunt?
   8. Amatne Hippomenēs spectātor Atalantam?
   9. Ubi (when) Hippomenēs fōrmam Atalantae vidit, quid fēcit?
  10. Quid Atalanta facit?

II A. Give a passive synopsis: present, imperfect, and future tenses only, of the following verbs (Be sure to translate each form):
   1. laudō: 3rd person singular
   2. moveō: 1st person singular
   3. vincō: 3rd person plural
   4. petō: 1st person plural
   5. scio: 3rd person singular

B. Translate the following passive forms, as in laudāmini, you are praised:
   1. laudābāmini
   2. monetur
   3. capientur
   4. vincēbāmur
   5. amāberis
   6. mittuntur
   7. audiēris
   8. audīris
   9. vocor
   10. mittar

C. Translate the following phrases into Latin passive verbs:
   1. we are loved
   2. you will be killed
   3. they were called
   4. you (pl.) will be heard
   5. he is praised
   6. you (sing.) were warned
   7. I shall be captured
   8. I am being captured
   9. we were sent
   10. they will be sent

D. Fill in the correct present passive form of the verbs in the following sentences:
   1. Templum ā puellis (ornāre).
   2. Urna ā parentibus (portāre).
   3. Casa ā deis (petēre).
   4. Coniūnx ab Atalantā (ēvitāre).
   5. Certāmen ā procīs nōn (ēvitāre).
**Latin via Ovid**

These are the old people to whom Jupiter is giving a gift.
Old men whom the gods love fear nothing.
The farmer to whom the house was given is joyful.

In each sentence note how the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in number and gender, but how its use in the relative clause determines its case.

101. Fourth declension. The fourth declension forms are identified by the vowel -u- in the stem of the noun, except for dative and ablative plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cursus</td>
<td>cursūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cursūs</td>
<td>cursuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cursui, -ū</td>
<td>cursibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cursum</td>
<td>cursūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cursū</td>
<td>cursibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Manus** and **domus** are two feminine nouns in this otherwise masculine and neuter declension. **Manus** is declined like the masculine **cursus**, and **domus** has been declined in a previous lesson (see Sec. 94).

102. Passive infinitives, all conjugations. You are already familiar with the active infinitives of the conjugations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-iō</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portāre</td>
<td>docēre</td>
<td>petere</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>audire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to carry</td>
<td>to teach</td>
<td>to seek</td>
<td>to take</td>
<td>to hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The passive infinitives are formed by changing the final vowel (e) of the infinitive ending to -i, except in the third conjugation, where the whole ending becomes -i.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-iō</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portāri</td>
<td>docēri</td>
<td>peti</td>
<td>capi</td>
<td>audiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be carried</td>
<td>to be taught</td>
<td>to be sought</td>
<td>to be taken</td>
<td>to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Spectatōrēs procul audīri possunt.** The spectators are able to be (can be) heard at a distance.

––––––––

₁⁶Never used for this word.
Exercises

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō.
   1. Audivistīne fābulam dē Atalantā, puellā clārā?
   2. Estne fābula dē virgīne rūmor?
   3. Cūr Atalanta coniugem fugit?
   4. Ubi Atalanta vīvit?
   5. Quis est lēx certāminis?
   6. Quī ad hanc lēgem vēnērunt?
   7. Cūr vēnērunt?
   8. Amatne Hippomenēs spectātor Atalantam?
   9. Ubi (when) Hippomenēs fōrmam Atalantae vīdit, quid fēcit?
 10. Quid Atalanta facit?

II A. Give a passive synopsis: present, imperfect, and future tenses only, of the following verbs (Be sure to translate each form):
   1. laudō: 3rd person singular
   2. moveō: 1st person singular
   3. vincō: 3rd person plural
   4. petō: 1st person plural
   5. sciō: 3rd person singular

   B. Translate the following passive forms, as in laudāmini, you are praised:
      1. laudābāmini
      2. monetur
      3. capientur
      4. vincēbāmur
      5. amāberis
      6. mittuntur
      7. audiēris
      8. audīris
      9. vocor
     10. mittar

   C. Translate the following phrases into Latin passive verbs:
      1. we are loved
      2. you will be killed
      3. they were called
      4. you (pl.) will be heard
      5. he is praised
      6. you (sing.) were warned
      7. I shall be captured
      8. I am being captured
      9. we were sent
     10. they will be sent

   D. Fill in the correct present passive form of the verbs in the following sentences:
      1. Templum a puellis (ornāre).
      2. Urna a parentibus (portāre).
      3. Casa a deis (petere).
      4. Coniunx ab Atalantā (ēvitāre).
      5. Certāmen a procis nōn (ēvitāre).
      6. Victor a populō (corōnāre).
7. Periculum a iuvene (petere).
8. Atalanta aetate pueri (movère).
9. Rûmor a iuvenibus (nârrâre).
10. Légës a viris (fôrmâre).
11. Puellae non facile (vincere).
12. Rûmôres a puellis (nârrâre).
13. Victôres a rége (corônâre).
15. Pericula a iuvenibus (petere).
16. Impii a deis non (amâre).
17. Callistô a love in ursam (mütâre).
18. Proci a spectâtôribus (laudâre).
20. Praemia victôribus (dare).

III. Change these active infinitives to passive infinitives:

1. Verba deorum (dubitare) non débent.
2. Légës virorum (ëvitare) non débent.
3. Régia régis (vastare) non débent.
4. Victor superbus (corônâre) non débent.
5. Verba superba (audire) non débent.
6. Liberi (videre) débent, non (audire) débent.
7. Légës ab hominibus (scire) débent.
8. Sapientia a rége (petere) débet.
9. Proci a virgine (vincere) non débent.
10. Hippomenês formâ virginis (movère) non débent.

IV. Supply the correct form of the relative pronoun:

1. Viri, (who) in viis errant, 1. qui in viis errant, . . .
   labôrâre débent.
2. Vir (whom) virgo amat vincere débet.
3. Puella (who) innuba est procös non évitat.
4. Puella (whom) proci laudant est Atalanta.
5. Lëx (by which, abl. of means) proci necantur est nôta.
6. Rëx (whose) filia est Atalanta, in régiä in Boeotiä habitat.
7. Dôna (which) a deis dantur non sunt semper grâta.
8. Dônum (which) dea dabit Hippomenem servâbit.
9. Lëx (which) Atalanta fécit non est bona.
10. Viri (whose) casae sunt in ripis fluminum semper aquâs (water)
    timent.
11. Atalanta est filia (whom) rëx amâbat.
13. Lēgem nōn amō *(which)* Atalanta fēcit.
14. Poma *(which)* dea dedit Hippomenem iūvērunt.
15. Poma *(which)* erant pulcherrima Atalantae coniugem dedērunt.

V. Translate into Latin:
1. Have you heard about that famous maiden Atalanta?
2. She surpassed men in a running contest.
3. Let this be the law of the race!
4. If I do not win, I shall be the wife of the victor. But if I do win, the suitor shall be killed.
5. (As a) spectator, Hippomenes condemned the suitors, but when he saw the girl he praised (her) beauty.
6. Hippomenes knows the law of the race, but he will try to win; so great is the power of love.
7. Atalanta says, “Can I be beaten or will I win?”
8. She says, “I am moved by his age, not by the boy.”
9. Truly she loves him, but she does not realize her love.
10. Poor Hippomenes, leave while you can!

**Etymology**

Supply the English derivative from the words in the vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bold</th>
<th>Au___________</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire produced</td>
<td>i___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One who watches</td>
<td>s___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hearsay</td>
<td>r___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crown (verb)</td>
<td>c__________ (noun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not able to be conquered</td>
<td>inv___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late</td>
<td>t___________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* manus, manūs, f.: hand (manual)  
  sinister, -tra, -trum, left  
  dexter, dextra, dextrum, right  
  manū sinistrā, on the left hand  
  manū dextrā, on the right hand

Since portents on the left were considered unfavorable, the added meaning of threatening or menacing came to be associated with *sinister*, while the sociological evidence here that most people seem to have been right-handed and therefore were more skillful with their right hand gives us the word *dexterous* in English.

Consulting the *augur*, the priest of a sacred college of prophecy, was generally done before planning activities. The *augury* (*auspicium*, -ii, n. *auspices*) could be in one of many forms: the observation of the flight of
birds, 17 the observation of the entrails of recently slaughtered animals, observation of the heavens and interpretation of any unnatural portent or phenomenon—thunder, lightning, earthquake. Since the proclaiming of days favorable (fās) or unfavorable (nefās) gave the priests great political power, one can see how easily the abuse of the office became prevalent. Ovid’s Fasti was an almanac of dates in the month, identifying them as being holidays sacred to the many gods of Rome and supplying later generations with a huge compendium of mythological data. Some of the information is labored, but most of it is extremely valuable for what it tells us about the religious observances of the Romans. The work was to be divided into twelve books, originally planned for the twelve months of the year, but only the first six books (through June) were completed.

17 Ovid tells us in the Fasti that Romulus observed double the number of birds as did his brother Remus; therefore Romulus became the founder of Rome and gave his name to the city.
Chapter XVIII
ATALANTA ET HIPPOMENÈS
(pars secunda)

Iam populus paterque cursum promissum pòscunt. Iam Hippomenès Venerem hòc modò invocat: “Ô dea Venus, iuva ignès amoris quòs dedisti.” Venus, his precibus adducta et mòta,¹ sine morā auxilium dat.


Hoc pōmus aureum iactum spectat désideratque virgō. Relinquit cursum et pōmus manū carpit. Quia interea Hippomenès eam superat, spectātōrēs clāmant et plausum² dant.


Hērōs autem nec Veneri dōna dedit nec in ārā deae tūra⁶ posuit. Venus igitur, quae erat magnopere irrāta, duōs amantēs in leōnēs trānsfōrmāvit.

¹ Influenced and moved.
² Applause (plausum dare, to applaud).
³ Behind her back.
⁴ Be near (Imperative of adēste).
⁵ Heavier.
⁶ Incense.
Verba

NOUNS

*auctor, -ōris, m.
cursor, -ōris, m.
Cyprus, -i, f.
*herōs, -ōis, m.
*liber, -brī, m.
mēta, -ae, f.
*pāgina, -ae, f.
prex, precis, f. (usually plural)
sententia, -ae, f.
*signum, -i, n.
*tabula, -ae, f.
*ūsus, ūsūs, m.

author
runner
the island of Cyprus
hero
book
goal, post
page
thought, sentence
signal, sign
board, plank, table
use, practice

VERBS

*addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum
*adōrō (1)
carpō, -ere, carpsi, carptum
concinō, -ere, -ui
*currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum
*dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
*gaudeō, -ere, gavisus sum7
*iaciō, -ere, ieci, iactum
*inquit
*pōscō, -ere, poposci
praetereō, -ire, -ii, -itum
*prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, prōmissum
*scribō, -ere, scripsi, -ptum

influence
adore
pick, pluck
sound in chorus
run
lead
rejoice
throw
says, said
request, demand
go past, pass by
promise
write

ADJECTIVES

*aureus, -a, -um
dēfessus, -a, -um
invitus, -a, -um
*medius, -a, -um
*mōtus, -a, -um
remorātus, -a, -um
*summus, -a, -um
*tertius, -a, -um

golden
tired, worn out, weary
unwilling
middle of
moved, influenced
delayed again, hindered
top of, highest
third

7Gaudēre has only passive forms in the perfect tenses, but these passive forms have active meanings.
OTHER WORDS

dēmum
*facile
*forte
*iam
*igitur
interēa
longē
magnopere
nec . . . nec
*nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam
obliquē
*quōmodō
sēcrētō
vix

at last, finally
easily
by chance
now, already
therefore
meanwhile
far away
very greatly
neither . . . nor
not only . . . but also
to the side
how, in what manner
secretly, apart
scarcely

IDIOM

*hōc modō

in this manner, thus

Structure

103. Perfect passive participle. The fourth principal part of the verb provides the form needed to make the perfect passive participle. A participle is an adjective made from a verb, and this perfect passive adjective, declined like bonus, -a, -um, appears in the vocabulary listing with the ending -um. The use of only this neuter form of the participle resolves the problem of intransitive verbs which lack a passive voice.\(^8\) Learn the fourth principal part for each verb in the vocabulary. Its ending is either -tum or -sum for all conjugations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect Tense</th>
<th>Perfect Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st Person Sing.</td>
<td>1st Person Sing.</td>
<td>1st Person Sing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocō</td>
<td>vocāre</td>
<td>vocāvi</td>
<td>vocātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I call)</td>
<td>(to call)</td>
<td>(I have called)</td>
<td>(having been called)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>videō</td>
<td>vidēre</td>
<td>vidi</td>
<td>visus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>dūxi</td>
<td>ductus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>cēpi</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audīre</td>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audītus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The perfect passive participle is easy to form for all regular first conjugation verbs, the -tum being added to the present stem:

\(^8\)This form is identical to the supine (see Sec. 187), and avoids limiting the participle to masculine or feminine.
parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum \(\text{having been prepared}\)
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum \(\text{having been cared for}\)
spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātum \(\text{having been watched}\)
laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum \(\text{having been praised}\)
dō, dare, dedi, datum \(\text{having been given}\)

The meaning of the perfect passive participle, vocātus, -a, -um, is literally \textit{having been called}, but it can be translated simply \textit{called}, depending on the context. In the following examples note that the perfect passive participle agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.

- Puer a patre vocātus respondit. The boy (having been) called by his father replied.
- Puella a patre vocāta respondit. The girl called by her father replied.
- Dōnum a deis datum vita aeterna est. The gift given by the gods is eternal life.
- Cibus a senibus parātus iam in mensā est. The food prepared by the old people is already on the table.
- Arcadia est terra a Love cūrāta. Arcadia is the land cared for by Jupiter.
- Atalanta est puella a iuvene amāta. Atalanta is the maiden loved by the youth.
- Venus mōta adductaque respondit. Venus moved and persuaded replied.
- Ad terrās iam visās revēnī. I returned to lands already seen.

Maintaining characteristics of both verb and adjective, the perfect passive participle acts in the following manner:

\textit{vocātus, -a, -um}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>having</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle (adjective)</td>
<td>called (by somebody)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the Latin sentences given above the perfect passive participle is accompanied by an ablative of agent (see Sec. 99) and is translated by a phrase or clause. Oftentimes, however, the participle is best translated simply as an adjective.

- Populus cursum promissum pōscit. The people demand the promised race.
- Atalanta pomum iactum carpit. Atalanta picks up the thrown apple.
Ades, dea adôrâta, auctor amôris.

Be near me, adored goddess, author of love.

104. Interrogative pronoun, quīs, quīd. You have already met most of the forms of the interrogative pronoun in the questions at the end of each lesson. Below is the complete declension:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. &amp; F. N.</td>
<td>M. F. N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius quīrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quēs quēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These forms of the interrogative pronoun can mean *who*, *what*, *which*, *whose*, *to whom*, *from whom*, *by whom*, depending on the gender and case.

Quīs est Atalānta?  Who is Atalanta?
Quīd Hippomenēs fēcit?  What did Hippomenes do?
Cui Venus pōma dedit?  To whom did Venus give the apples?
Ā quō pomum iaciēbātur?  By whom was the apple thrown?
Cūlus arbor in agrō stat?  Whose tree stands in the field?

105. Interrogative adjective. The forms of the interrogative adjective are the same as the forms of the relative pronoun (see Sec. 100). Note the difference in use between the *interrogative pronoun* and the *interrogative adjective*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pro. Quīs est Minerva?</th>
<th>Adj. Quae dea est auctor amōris?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Who is Minerva?</td>
<td>What goddess is the author of love?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pro. Quid est consilium hostium?</td>
<td>Adj. Quod consilium hostēs habuērunt?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What is the plan of the enemy?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adj. Quam arborem in agrō vidisti?</td>
<td>Pro. Quem Hippomenēs superāvit?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What tree did you see in the field?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adj. Quem iuvenem Atalanta amāvit?</td>
<td>Adj. Quam virgīnem Pyramus amāvit?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What youth did Atalanta love?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adj. Quam virgīnem Pyramus amāvit?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What maid did Pyramus love?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
106. Irregular verb: eō, irē, īī (īvī), ītum. The verb eō, a most commonly used verb meaning “go,” with its compounds, ineō, exeō, adeō, adeō, adeō, subeō, trānseō, praetereō, etc., is conjugated as follows in the present tense:

- eō I go, am going, do go
- īs you go, are going, do go
- it he, she, it goes, is going, does

Do not confuse eō and īs with the personal pronoun (Sec. 88).

The imperfect and future are regular:

- ibam, ibās, ibat, ibāmus, ibātis, ibant I went, you went, etc.
- ibō, ibis, ibit, ibimus, ibitis, ibunt I shall go, you will go, etc.

The perfect system can be based either on the stem i- or iv-:

- īi, īsti, īit, īimus, īstis, īerunt I have gone, etc.
- (or) īvi, īvīstē, īvit, īvimus, īvītis, īvērunt

Past Perfect: īveram, īverās etc. or īeram, īerās, etc.

Future Perfect: īverō, īveris, etc. or īerō, īeris, etc.

Imperative Singular: ī

Imperative Plural: īte

107. Declension of trēs and milia. Milia is followed by the genitive plural (of the whole). See Sec. 65 for indeclinable mille, singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

108. Passive of videō. The passive forms of videō frequently mean seem rather than is seen or are seen.

Duo trānsum summum cursum volāre videntur. The two seem to fly over the top of the course.

Exercises

1. Respondēte Latinē, quaesō.
   1. Quid populus patērque pōscunt?
   2. Quem Hippomenēs invocat?
3. Adducēbāturne Venus precibus?
4. Ubi stat arbor pomis aureis?
5. Quae Venus iuveni dat? Quid docet?
6. Quae signum cursūs dant?
7. Dēsiderābantne spectātorēs Atalantam aut Hippomenem vincere?
8. Quōmodō Hippomenēs vicit?
9. Quis in matrimonium Atalantam, praemium, duxit?
10. Cūr Venus duōs amantēs in leōnēs trānsfōrmāvit?

II A. Give the principal parts for these verbs:

1. mūtō
2. resono
3. parō
4. supers
5. desiderō
6. moveo
7. dūcō
8. videō
9. iaciō
10. audiō

B. Using the perfect passive participle as an adjective, fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb above:

1. Venus (moved) ā iuvene auxilium dedit.
2. Pomum (thrown) ā iuvene ab Atalantā spectābātur.
3. Populus cursum (desired) pōscit.
4. Auxilium (prepared) ā dea est idōneum.
5. Hippomenēs his verbīs (having been heard) gaudet.
6. Cornua (having been sounded) signum cursūs dant.
7. Virgō (having been heard) ā iuvene dūcitur.
8. Amantēs ā dea (changed) vōcem nōn iam habent.
10. Auxilium ā deis (sent) nōn est sine pretiō.

III. Fill in the correct form of the interrogative pronoun (quis, quid):

1. (Who) est virgō quae coniugem fugit?
2. (Whom) Hippomenēs amāvit?
3. (Who) iuveni auxilium dedit?
4. Ā (whom) auxilium dabātur?
5. (Who) cursum promissum pōscunt?
6. (Whose) arbor ramōs aureōs habet?
7. (To whom, pl.) Venus auxilium dedit?
8. (Who) est victor in certāmine cursūs?
9. Ā (whom) pomum aureum carpitur?
10. (Whom) Venus in leōnēs trānsfōrmāvit?

9 When he heard these words (lit., at these words having been heard).
IV. Fill in the correct forms of the interrogative adjective (qui, quae, quod):
1. (What) praemium Hippomenēs quaerit?
2. (What) virgō pomum aureum nōn dēsiderat?
3. (What) dea Hippomenem iūvit?
4. In (what) agrō arbor ramis aureis stat?
5. (What) iuvenem Atalanta relinquit post tergum?
6. (What) virginem Hippomenēs vicit?
7. (What) dōna hērōs Veneri nōn dedit?
8. (In what) modō Venus Hippomenem iūvit?
9. (What) dea est auctor amōris?
10. In (what) animālia Venus amantēs trānsfōrmāvit?

V. Translate into Latin:
1. Hippomenes asks the aid of Venus, goddess of love.
2. Venus, moved by the prayers of the youth, promises aid.
3. Venus gave the youth three golden apples picked from her sacred tree.
4. “How can these apples, even if they are very beautiful, help me?” asked Hippomenes.
5. The people seem to wish Hippomenes to be the victor.
6. Because the people shout the name of the hero, the maiden secretly rejoices.
7. Hippomenes throws the apples far to the side and Atalanta has to (debeat) leave the course.
8. Atalanta saw the third apple which was thrown into a field and she wanted it.
9. The costly delay gave victory to the youth, who led away (abduxit) his prize.
10. Venus changed the two lovers into animals because Hippomenes had not given her gifts.

Etymology
Many nouns in -or are formed from verbs with the meaning of the person performing the act of the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin noun</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spectāre</td>
<td>spectātor</td>
<td>spectator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigāre</td>
<td>navigātor</td>
<td>navigator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēvastāre</td>
<td>dēvastātor</td>
<td>devastator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūrāre</td>
<td>cūrātor</td>
<td>curator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 Etiamū or etsi.
All of these nouns belong to the third declension: *ōrātor*, -ōris, *m*.

The pronoun-adjective *ille, illa* is the source for the articles *il* and *la* in Italian, *le* and *la* in French, *el* and *la* in Spanish.

**Table of Pronoun Cognates in Romance Languages**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ego</td>
<td>io</td>
<td>je</td>
<td>yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tū</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tu</td>
<td>tu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>me/mi</td>
<td>moi/me</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē</td>
<td>me/mi</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>te/ti</td>
<td>toi/te</td>
<td>te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tē</td>
<td>te/ti</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs (nom.)/vōs</td>
<td>noi/voi</td>
<td>nous/vous</td>
<td>nosotros/vosotros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs (acc.)/vōs</td>
<td>ci/vi</td>
<td>nous/vous</td>
<td>nos/os</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Suffix Equivalents in Romance Languages and English**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Italian</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-tās, -tātis</td>
<td>-tā</td>
<td>-tē</td>
<td>-tad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libertās</td>
<td>libertā</td>
<td>liberté</td>
<td>libertad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravitās</td>
<td>gravitā</td>
<td>gravité</td>
<td>gravidad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tor, -tōris</td>
<td>-tore</td>
<td>-teur</td>
<td>-dor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatōr</td>
<td>amatore</td>
<td>amateur</td>
<td>amador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spectatōr</td>
<td>spettatore</td>
<td>spectateur</td>
<td>espectador</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iō, -iōnis</td>
<td>-zione</td>
<td>-tion</td>
<td>-ción</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrātiō</td>
<td>orazione</td>
<td>oration</td>
<td>oración</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>natiō</td>
<td>nazione</td>
<td>nation</td>
<td>nación</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Midas

Midas, the king of Phrygia, was a man obsessed by greed for gold. Because Midas had done a favor for Bacchus (he had let Silenus, a friend of Bacchus, sleep off a drunken state at his court), Bacchus had offered to grant any favor Midas chose. Like Phaethon he chose unwisely, asking that everything he touch turn to gold. After rejoicing for a while in the gift, the king tried to eat and drink, but found the hard metal no satisfaction to his appetite and thirst. Then Midas begged to have the gift removed and was told to go to bathe in a river in Sardis. Even today the sands are golden where the touch flowed from the king into the waters and then to the banks along the river.

Foolish Midas also tried to be an unwise and unsolicited judge in a musical contest between Pan playing his pipe and the god Apollo singing and playing the lyre. The mountain god Tmolus was chosen judge and he wisely acknowledged Apollo’s superiority, but Midas still claimed that Pan had won. Apollo rewarded such a stupid judgment by giving Midas ass’s ears. Midas much ashamed tried to hide his ears in a turban, and only his barber knew the truth. Not able to keep such a delicious piece of gossip, but also not able to tell anyone, the barber dug a hole and whispered the secret into the ground. When the rushes grew up, however, they disclosed the secret when stirred by the wind. “Midas has ass’s ears.”
Chapter XIX

MIDĂS ET VĪS AUREA


Ubi Midās satis gavisus erat servi prō eō mēnsam carne atque dōnis Cereris onustam posuērunt. Midās cibum dente avidō tangere temptāvit, sed dentēs durum aurum tetigerunt. Ubi Midās aquam et vinum bibere temptāvit, liquidum aurum in ōre fluxit. Rēs quae prius secundae, nunc adversae vidēbantur.


His verbīs auditīs, rēx ad flūmen in Lydiā īvit, et corpus lavāt. Ubi prīnum rēx flūmen tetigit, vis aurea dē corpore hūmānō in flūmen trānsīvit. Etiamnunc terra Lydiæ est aurea, aquis in agrōs vicīnōs portātīs.

---

1 The gift of Ceres, wheat, and hence bread.
2 To shine.
3 Had rejoiced.
4 With eager tooth.
5 Near Sardis.
Verba

NOUNS

*aurum, -ī, n.
*Bacchus, -ī, m.
carō, carnis, f.
Cerēs, Cereris, f.
crimen, -inis, n.
*diēs, diēī, m.
maeṣtitia, -ae, f.
Midās, Midae, m.
ortus, -ús, m.
postis, -is, -ium, m.
*rēs, reī, f.
*saxum, -ī, n.
venia, -ae, f.
*vis,6 f.

gold
Bacchus (*god of wine*)
flesh, meat
Ceres (*goddess of agriculture*)
sin, crime, fault
day
sadness
Midas (*King of Phrygia*)
source, origin
doors post
thing, object; pl., situation
rock, stone
pardon, favor
force, strength; touch

VERBS

bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitum
crēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum + dat.
edō, -ere, ēdi, ēsum
flōō, -ere, fluxī, fluxum
lavō, -āre, lävi, lautum or lōtum
ōdi, ōdīsse (perfect used as present)
peccō (1)
*remittō, -ere, -misī, -missum
*removeō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum
tendō, -ere, tetendi, tentum or tensum
*transeō, -ire, -iī (-ivi), -itum

drink
believe, trust
eat
flow
wash
I hate
sin, make a mistake, err
send back, let go back, drive away
remove, take away, put off
stretch out, extend
go across, pass over, cross

ADJECTIVES

adversus, -a, -um
tall, lofty, deep, high
*altus, -a, -um
ruinous
*damnōsus, -a, -um
liquidus, -a, -um
sad, gloomy
maestus, -a, -um

6This irregular noun in classical Latin appears in the singular only in nom. (vis), acc. (vim), and abl. (vī); plural forms are: virēs, virērum, virībus, virēs, virībus. Do not confuse this noun with the second declension vir, man (see Sec. 49).
Structure

109. Ablative absolute. The ablative absolute consists of a noun or pronoun and a modifier (usually the perfect passive participle) in the ablative case. This construction is grammatically independent of the subject and verb of the sentence and usually states an adverbial idea telling how, when, where, why, or under what circumstances the main act of the sentence is performed. Note the following examples and their possible English translations:

Mēnsā parātā, Midās cupidē ēdit. When the table had been set, Midas ate eagerly (lit., the table having been set.)

Since the literal English translation is often quite awkward, the ablative absolute is best expanded into a subordinate clause according to the meaning of the sentence. Reread Sec. 80 concerning the ablative case and note how all of the ablative absolute meanings fit into the pattern for the uses of the ablative.

Aquis in agrōs vicīnōs portātīs, terra Lydiae est aurea. Because the waters were carried into the neighboring fields, the land of Lydia is golden.

Virgine victā, Hippomenēs praemium dūxit. After the maid had been conquered, Hippomenes led away his prize.
Pōmō iactō, Atalanta cursum reliquit. When the apple was thrown, Atalanta left the track.

His verbis auditīs, rēx ad flumen īvit. When he had heard these words, the king went to the river.

Occasionally the ablative absolute consists of two nouns, or of a noun and a pronoun, or of a noun or pronoun and an adjective:

Caesare duce, urbs est tūta. With Caesar as leader, the city is safe.

Atalantā coniuge, Hippomenēs est laetus. With Atalanta as his wife, Hippomenes is happy.

Mē iūdīce, nōn sum digna pretī. If I am a judge, I am not worth the price.

Mē invītā, cornua signum cursūs dant. Against my will the horns give the sign of the race.

110. Principal parts of verbs: perfect passive participles of second, third, and fourth conjugations. Although the rule for the formation of the perfect passive participle is not so regular in these conjugations as in the first conjugation, note that the perfect passive participles all end in -tum or -sum. Study the following patterns:

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitum

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum

videō, vidēre, vidī, visum

mittō, mittere, misi, missum

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, dūctum

faciō, facere, fēci, factum

audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītum

sentīō, sentīre, sēnsi, sēnsum

111. Fifth declension. The characteristic vowel of the fifth declension is -e. All of the nouns are feminine, except diēs, which is masculine.

| Case Endings | rēs, rei, f. | diēs, diēi, m.?
|--------------|-------------|----------------
| Nom.         | -ēs         | rēs            | diēs          |
| Gen.         | -ēi         | rei            | diēi          |
| Dat.         | -ēi         | rei            | diēi          |
| Acc.         | -em         | rem            | diem          |
| Abl.         | -ē          | rē             | diē           |

7Diēs is feminine when it refers to a specific day, e.g., constitūtā diē, on the appointed day.
112. Third declension adjectives. Thus far all adjectives have belonged to the first and second declensions, declined like bonus, -a, -um. There are also third declension adjectives which employ the third declension endings you already know. Very common are those which have one ending for masculine and feminine and another for neuter in the nominative singular.⁸

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ēs</td>
<td>-ērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Omnis is frequently used as a substantive. In the plural, omnēs means *all (the people)* and omnia means *all things*.

The third declension adjective is an i-stem, in that the characteristic vowel i appears in the nominative and accusative of the neuter plural and in the genitive plural. Note also the i in the ablative singular.

**Exercises**

1. Respondête Latīnē, quaesō.
   1. Habetne Midās sapientiam?
   2. Cui Bacchus dōnum dedit?
   3. Estne Midās laetus aut maestus cum Bacchus ei dōnum dat?
   4. Quid temptat?
   5. Quae tangit?
   6. Quōs in rēgiā tangit?
   7. Qui mēnsam parāvērunt?
   8. Cum Midās edere temptat, quid dentēs tangunt?
   9. Potestne Midās bibere aut edere?
  10. Quōmodō Midās dōnum damnōsum remittit?

---

⁸Because these third declension adjectives have two endings in the nominative singular, they are sometimes referred to as adjectives of two terminations.
II. Change each sentence in column A into an ablative absolute and incorporate it into a sentence with the sentence in Column B (unchanged) as the main clause.

Make into ablative absolutes:

2. Dönum datur. ________ Midas erat laetus.
4. Verba audiuntur. ________ Midas ad flumen ivit.
5. Deus movētur. ________ Midas dōnum remittit.
6. Rēx movētur. ________ servus liberatūr.

III A. Give the principal parts for the following verbs:

1. laudō 6. moveō 11. fugīō
2. vocō 7. dūcō 12. audiō
3. spectō 8. mittō 13. sentiō
4. teneō 9. petō 14. veniō
5. habeō 10. faciō 15. dō

B. Change these imperative singular forms to plural:

2. Manē, Marce. 2. ______, puerī.
3. Pete, pater, fortūnam. 3. ______, patrēs, fortūnam.
4. Ėvitā, mater, verba dūra. 4. ______, matrēs, verba dūra.
5. Carpe diem, discipule. 5. ______ diem, discipuli.
7. Dūc,⁹ rēx, populum laetum. 7. ______, rēgēs, populōs laetōs.
10. Audi, puer, verba mea. 10. ______, puerī, verba mea.

IV A. Review the five declensions by giving the declensions for the following nouns:

1. vita, -ae, f. 4. puer, -erī, m. *life*  
2. ramus, -i, m. 5. oppidum, -i, n. *branch*  
3. ager, -grī, m. 6. rēx, rēgis, m. *field*  

⁹ The shortened form of the imperative singular occurs only in these commonly used verbs: dīcō (dic), dūcō (duc) and faciō (fac).
Supply the correct endings for each noun and adjective in the plural:

1. Terra est immensa.
2. Amicus pueri est defessus.
3. Lex hominis boni est certa.
4. Civis talem legem non evitat.
5. Animal silvae in monte nnon habitat.
6. Dies longissimus est in Iunio.
7. Rēs optima nonn est facilis.
8. Cornu signum dat.
9. Dux omnis nonn est pater familiae.

Translate into Latin:

1. Bacchus gave the golden touch to the foolish king of Phrygia with great sadness.
2. Midas however was overjoyed (laetissimus) and tried to change all things in the palace to gold.
3. A green branch touched by the king is now golden.
4. A stone and an apple are transformed by the golden touch.
5. The water with which Midas tries to wash his hands seems to shine.
6. The situation which seemed favorable now is unfavorable.
7. But when the servants place a table laden with food and wine before the king, he can neither eat nor drink.
8. Since the food is now golden (abl. abs.) Midas cannot eat.
9. He stretches out his hands to heaven and asks pardon.
10. Bacchus orders him to go to a river in Lydia and wash in its waters.

---

10Civis, civis, -ium, c., citizen.
11. The fields of Lydia are now golden, since (the power of) the golden touch has been carried into the waters of the river (abl. abs.).

**Etymology**

Third declension nouns ending in -tās, -tūdō, -īō are all feminine and have the general meaning of the quality of whatever the root means. Many of these words were formed from adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>celer</td>
<td>celeritās</td>
<td>celerity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravis</td>
<td>gravitās</td>
<td>gravity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libertās</td>
<td>liberty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antiquus</td>
<td>antiquitās</td>
<td>antiquity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanus</td>
<td>sanitās</td>
<td>sanity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>securus</td>
<td>securitās</td>
<td>security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilis</td>
<td>utilitās</td>
<td>utility</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What does the suffix -tās become in English?

Many second conjugation verbs combine their roots with the suffix -idus, meaning quality of and new adjectives are created in both Latin and English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>timēre</td>
<td>timidus</td>
<td>timid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frigēre</td>
<td>frigidus</td>
<td>frigid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horrēre</td>
<td>horridus</td>
<td>horrid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rigēre</td>
<td>rigidus</td>
<td>rigid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liquēre</td>
<td>liquidus</td>
<td>liquid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stupēre</td>
<td>stupidus</td>
<td>stupid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many fourth declension nouns which are formed from the fourth principal part of the verb come into English with the -us dropped or with a mute -e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cultum</td>
<td>cultus</td>
<td>cult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adventum</td>
<td>adventus</td>
<td>advent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūsum</td>
<td>ūsus</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exitum</td>
<td>exitus</td>
<td>exit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habitum</td>
<td>habitus</td>
<td>habit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GAUDEĀMUS IGITUR
A Medieval Student Song

Gaudeāmus igitur iuvenēs dum sumus. Let us rejoice, then, while we are young. (Repeat)
Gaudeāmus igitur iuvenēs dum sumus. After a joyful youth,
Post iūcundam iuventūtem, After a bothersome old age
Post molestam senectūtem
Nōs habēbit humus—
Nōs habēbit humus.
(The music appears in the Appendix, p. 453.)

Chapter XX
MIDĀS ET PĀN

Postea Midās in silvis habitābat ubi deum Pānem colēbat, sed etiam-nunc sē stultum esse demōnstrāvit. Et sapientia et iūdicium rēgī Phrygiae eō tempore déerant.

Est in Lydiā mōns altus, Tmōlus nōmine, summō quō Pān nymphis carmina sua cantābat, dum fistulam cērāconiunctam inflāt. Carmina eius quidem erant pulcherrima et grāttissima nymphis Midaeque qui deum maximē laudābat. Pān superbus carmina Apollinis, dei mūsicae, contemnit; vocat Apollinem ad certāmen sub iūdice Tmōlō,1 deō montis.


Iūdicium autem sacri montis Tmōlī quod erat omnibus grātum, nōn erat grātum Mīdae, qui ita loquitur. "Iūdicium est iniustum." Apollō nōn patitur tālēs aurēs hūmānam figūram reтинēre. Ille eāsdem longiōrēs5 et plēnās villīs

1 Tmōlus, the mountain; also a mountain deity, acting as judge.
2 Dye with Tyrian purple.
3 Ivory.
4 Pick.
5 Longer.
facit; dat quoque posse movēri. Midās damnātus inūn parte corporis aurēs aselliō gerit quamquam cētera partēs sunt hominis.


**Verba**

**NOUNS**

*Apollō, -inis, m.*

*auris, aurīs, -ium, f.*

*carmen, -inis, n.*

*gemma, -ae, f.*

*iūdex, -icis, m.*

*iūdicium, -ii, n.*

*lyra, -ae, f.*

*ventus, -i, m.*

Apollo (god of music and medicine)

ear

song

jewel, gem

judge

judgment

lyre

wind

**VERBS**

abēd, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum

*cantō (1)

*coepī, coepisse, coemptum (defective)

*colō, -ere, -ui, cultum

*conor, conārī, conātus sum

contemnō, -ere, -tempsi, -temptum

decorō (1)

*dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrum

effodī, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum

*gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum

immurmurō (1)

inflo (1)

*liberō (1)

*loquor, loqui, locūtus sum

*miror, mirāri, mirātus sum

*patorium, pati, passus sum

go away

sing, make music

began

till, cultivate, honor, worship

attempt, try

value little, disdain

adorn, decorate

be absent, be lacking, missing

dig

bear, carry, wear, accomplish, do

whisper into

blow into

free, set free, liberate

speak, say

wonder at, admire

allow, suffer, permit

---

6 Of an ass.

7 In a purple turban.

8 The whispering (quivering) reeds. The English is also onomatopoetic, “Midas has ass’s ears.”

9 Caesar Augustus entitled a book devoted to his accomplishments: Rēs Gestae (Things Accomplished).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*orior, oriiri, ortus sum</td>
<td>rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*repōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum</td>
<td>put back, replace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resecō, -āre, -ui, -tum</td>
<td>cut off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum</td>
<td>put down, lower, humble, yield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum</td>
<td>be silent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terminō (1)</td>
<td>end, finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vereor, verērī, veritus sum</td>
<td>fear, be afraid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertō, -ere, vertī, versum</td>
<td>turn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADJECTIVES**

- barbarus, -a, -um: rough, rude, foreign
- *dexter, -tra, -trum: right, skillful
- *hūmānus, -a, -um: human, humane
- iniūstus, -a, -um: unjust, unfair
- *sinister, -tra, -trum: left, adverse
- villōsus, -a, -um: shaggy, hairy
  
  *(from villus, -i, m.)*

**OTHER WORDS**

- *nam: for*
- *postea: afterwards, thereafter, after that*
- *tum: then*

**Structure**

113. Perfect passive system, all conjugations. The perfect passive of all verbs is formed by combining *in a verb phrase* the perfect passive participle and a form of the verb *esse:* *ductus est, he has been led.* The perfect passive system is easily distinguished from the active in that the forms consist of *two separate words.* The perfect passive participle agrees with its subject *in number and gender.*

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxī</td>
<td>I have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxistī</td>
<td>you have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxit</td>
<td>he, she, it has led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duximus</td>
<td>we have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxistis</td>
<td>you have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxērunt</td>
<td>they have led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxeram</td>
<td>I had led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerās</td>
<td>you had led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerat</td>
<td>he, she, it had led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerāmus</td>
<td>we had led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerātis</td>
<td>you had led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerant</td>
<td>they had led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxeram</td>
<td>I had been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerās</td>
<td>you had been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerat</td>
<td>he had been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerāmus</td>
<td>we had been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerātis</td>
<td>you had been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerant</td>
<td>they had been led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(feminine and neuter forms also possible)*

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duxerō</td>
<td>I shall have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxeris</td>
<td>you will have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerit</td>
<td>he, she, it will have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerimus</td>
<td>we shall have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxeritis</td>
<td>you will have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerint</td>
<td>they will have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerēs</td>
<td>I shall have been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerēs</td>
<td>you will have been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerēt</td>
<td>he will have been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerimus</td>
<td>we shall have been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerētis</td>
<td>you will have been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duxerēnt</td>
<td>they will have been led</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(feminine and neuter forms also possible)*

Notice that the perfect passive participle *ductus, -a, -um* changes to plural *ducti, -ae, -a* depending on the gender of the plural subject.

Vir ab agricolā in casam *ductus* est. *The man* has been *led* by the farmer into the house.
Virgō ab hērōe in matrimonium *ducta* est. *The maid* has been *led* into marriage by the hero.
Animal ā nautā in ripam *ductum* est. *The animal* has been *led* by the sailor onto the shore.
Virī ā rēge in silvam *ductī* sunt. *The men* have been *led* by the king into the forest.
Animālia ā puerō in agrum *ducta* sunt. *The animals* have been *led* by the boy into the field.

114. *Idem, eadem, idem*. You are familiar with the forms of *is, ea, id* as a personal pronoun from previous lessons (see Sec. 88). This word also functions as an adjective, less definite than *hic* or *ille*, in such phrases as:
eō tempore at that (this) time
in ea loca into these (those) places

The enclitic ending -dem added to the forms of is, ea, id gives an intensive emphasis to the word either as a pronoun or an adjective translated by the English same: the same man, the same woman, the same thing.

The same man is my friend and my companion.

The same time

Into the same places

115. Deponent verbs. Deponent verbs are those which have laid aside (dépōnere) their active forms and appear only in the passive; these passive forms must be translated as active. These verbs exist in all conjugations and one from each appears in the lesson:

I conor, conāri, conātus sum attempt, try
II vereor, verēri, veritus sum fear
III loquor, loqui, locūtus sum speak
III-io patior, patī, passus sum suffer, allow
IV orior, orirī, ortus sum arise, rise up

The conjugation of the deponent verb is completely regular (Consult Paradigms in the Appendix), coinciding with the forms for the passive verbs. Below is a synopsis for each verb in the third person singular:

I conātur verētur loquitur patītur orītur
II conābātur verēbātur loquēbātur patiēbātur oriēbātur
III conābitur verēbitur loquēbitur patiētūr oriētūr
III-io conātus est veritus est locūtus est passus est ortus est
IV conātus erat veritus erat locūtus erat passus erat ortus erat

Remember that the sign for the future tense is -bi- for first and second conjugation, but -e- for third, third -io, and fourth conjugations.
116. Figures of speech: onomatopoeia. When the meaning of words is echoed by the sound of the words, the figure of speech employed is called onomatopoeia. In the story of Midas the verb immurmurat echoes in sound the meaning of the word. Poets are sensitive to the use of onomatopoetic words.

117. The reflexive pronoun se (sēsē). When the third person subject (he, she, it, or they) acts upon itself, the cases of is, ea, id are not used; the cases of se (sēsē) are used instead for all genders, singular and plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>suī</td>
<td>of himself, herself, itself, themselves; his, her, its, their own</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sībi</td>
<td>to himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sē (sēsē)</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself, themselves (Objective)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sē (sēsē)</td>
<td>(by) himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Arachné sē (sēsē) docet. Arachne teaches herself.
Vir ā sē necātus est. The man was killed by himself.
Femīnae sē laudant. The women praise themselves.
Narcissus erat sībi grātissimus. Narcissus was very pleasing to himself.

Exercises

I. Respondēte Latinē, quaeso.
1. Quem Midās colēbat?
2. Habetne Midās nunc sapientiam aut iūdicium?
3. Quibus Pān carmina cantābat?
4. Quem Pān ad certāmen vocat?
5. Quis est iūdex certāminis?
6. Cuius carmen est primum? Estne pulchrum?
7. Estne lyra Apollinis decorāta? Quibus?
8. Quis est victor certāminis?
9. Quis iūdicium vocat inīustum?
10. Quōmodo Midās damnātur? (Quō modo, in what manner (how), is commonly written as one word, quōmodo.)
11. Quōmodo Midās aurēs cēlat?
12. Quis aurēs rēgis videt?
13. Eratne servus tacitus?
14. Quōmodo servus fābulam nārrāre potest?
15. Quae fābulam murmurnant?

II A. Give a complete synopsis of the following verbs, active and passive, third person singular:
1. cantō
2. submittō
3. retineō
4. colō
5. audiō
6. gerō
B. Conjugate the perfect passive of the following verbs:
1. liberō  2. videō  3. repōnō  4. retineō

C. Supply the correct form of the perfect passive in the following:
1. Iūdicium *(has been made)*
2. Verba *(have been spoken)*
3. Vōx *(has been heard)*
4. Puer *(has been terrified)*
5. Fābula *(has been told)*
6. Terra *(had been abandoned)*
7. Pomum in aurum *(had been changed)*
8. Carmen *(will have been sung)*
9. Clāmor ā spectātōribus *(has been sounded)*
10. Aures aselli ā rēge *(have been hidden)*

D. Translate these deponent verbs *(cave! The passive forms must be translated as active)*:
1. conantūr
2. verebamur
3. locūnti sumus
4. passi erātis
5. ortus es
6. oriebatur
7. loquēmur
8. veritus est
9. conabaris
10. patimini

III. Supply the correct pronoun in the following sentences:
1. *(He)* est rēx, sed rēgēs sapientiam nōn semper habent.
2. Iūdicium est grātum nymphis, sed Midās *(it)* iniūstum vocat.
3. Tmolūs *(him)* spectat dum cantat.
4. Apollō lyram gemmis decorātam habuit *(which)* manū sinistrā tenuit.
5. Nymphīs iūdicium est grātum. Carmen Apollinis est grātum *(to them)*.
6. *(To him)* Tmolūs iūdicium dedit.
7. Apollō aurēs aselli *(to him)* dedit, sed Midās *(them)* cēlāre temptat.
8. Servus *(them)* vidit; quamquam nārrāre fābulam nōn potest, tamen *(it)* retinēre nōn potest.
9. Fābula dē auribus *(his)* ā ventō nārrāta est.
10. Aselli aurēs longās habent *(which) (they)* movēre possunt.

IV. Supply the reflexive adjective or pronoun where needed:
1. In summō monte Tmolō Pān nymphīs carmina *(his)* cantābat.
2. Narcissus *(himself)* in aquis fluminīs vidit.
3. Pyramus *(himself)* necāvit quod putāvit leōnem Thisbēn necāvisse.  

*Because he thought that the lion had killed Thisbe. Necāvisse is the perfect infinitive.*
4. Æstivam et Thisbē parentēs (*their*) fallunt.
5. Midās cibum (*his*) nōn edere potest.

V. Translate into Latin, please.

1. Midas, still stupid, now worships the satyr Pan.
2. Pan sings his beautiful songs to the nymphs on Mt. Tmolus.
3. He calls Apollo to a contest of songs.
4. Tmolus has been named (*nomināre*) judge of the contest.
5. The judgment has been given to Apollo.
6. Because Midas called the judgment unfair, his ears were changed (*perfect passive*) into ass’s ears.
7. Midas tried to hide his ears, after he had felt (*sentīre*) his punishment by Apollo. (*use abl. abs. construction*).
8. The ears had been seen by the slave who cut (*imperfect*) his hair.
9. The slave dug the ground and whispered the story into the earth.
10. Rushes grew in that place, and the rushes, moved by the wind, now tell the tale of Midas and his ears.
Etymology

Piscis in Mari

in + abl. \( \text{trans} + \text{acc.} \)
- in
- across

in + abl. \( \text{sub} + \text{acc.} \)
- on
- under (or abl.)

in + acc. \( \text{a (ab)} + \text{abl.} \)
- into
- away from

e (ex) + abl. \( \text{ad} + \text{acc.} \)
- out of
- to, toward, near

inter + acc.
- between

ob + acc.
- against

per + acc.
- through

circum + acc.
- around
INTERIM READING

The stories in these sections are designed to give the student reading confidence and pleasure. They employ more of the vocabulary and grammar of the original Ovidian story than was possible earlier. They contain no new grammar, but make use of all the forms and constructions of the first twenty lessons. Whatever vocabulary is new is translated in the footnotes to each page. Wherever the note includes a word which would be a valuable addition to the student’s vocabulary, the forms of the word are given and the word is to be learned; otherwise the word is merely translated.

The story should be read four times: once for comprehension with the help of the notes; a second time for a smooth, idiomatic English rendering; then to get meaning from the Latin as it is read; and finally for smooth Latin comprehension and appreciation, aloud if possible. The macrons (the long marks over the lengthened vowels) which have appeared up to now in the readings are no longer provided. The Interim Readings appear without macrons, as do the subsequent reading sections beginning with Chapter XXI, although the macrons appear in the notes, the vocabularies, and the structure sections.

INTERIM READING I:
DAEDALUSE TICARUS

Daedalus in insula Creta longum exsilium egit. Tactus loci natalis amore, diu et magnopere insulam relinquere desiderabat, sed mari clausus erat. ‘‘Minos, rex Cretae,’’ inquit, ‘‘terras et undas tenet, at caelum certe est apertum. Caelo ibimus. Quamquam omnia Minos possidet, tamen non aëra possidet.’’

---

1 _Agō_, -ere, ēgi, actum, do, drive, spend time; spent a long exile.
2 _Touched by a longing (love) for his native land (place of birth)._ 
3 _Mare, maris, n., by the sea; mari is ablative singular (see declension in Appendix)._ 
4 _Possideo, -ère, -sēdi, -sessum, owns, possesses, controls._
Tum Daedalus animum\(^5\) in artes ignotas dimittit\(^6\) et naturam novat.\(^7\)
Nam pennas\(^8\) in ordine\(^9\) ponit a minima usque ad longissimam. Sic
quondam\(^10\) fistulam rusticam\(^11\) Pan disparibus\(^12\) papyris fecerat.

Deinde partes medias imasque\(^13\) cera adligat\(^14\) atque parvo curvamine
pennas ita compositas flectit.\(^15\) Potes putare has esse alas avium verarum.\(^16\)

Puer Icarus, filius Daedali, ad patrem stat spectatque dum pater laborat.
Nescit se sua pericula tangere dum pennas tenet et ceram digito mollit\(^17\) et
ludo suo\(^18\) mirabile opus patris impedit.\(^19\) Denique postquam\(^20\) ultima penna
in loco posita est, artifex,\(^21\) duabus alis apertos et motis, in aëre peperdit.

Pater filium sic monuit, "Tene viam mediam, Icare. Si ibis prope mare,
unda pennas gravabit.\(^22\) Si prope solem ibis, ignis pennas vastabit. Te viam
mediam tenere iubeo. Vola inter utrumque,\(^23\) mare et solem. Me duce, carpe
viam." Praecepta volandi\(^24\) dat dum novas alas umeris pueri accommodat.\(^25\)
Manus patris tremunt\(^26\) et oscula ultima filio dat.

Pennis motus pater in aëre volat. Timet et respectat\(^27\) velut\(^28\) avis quae
parvam avem ducit et eam volare docet; Daedalus ipse suas alas movet et
alas filii respectat.

Hominis in terra—piscator, pastor, arator\(^29\)—hos viderunt qui per
aëra volare poterant et hos esse deos crediderunt.\(^30\) Et iam insulae Graeciae
relictae sunt cum puer gaudere coepit\(^31\) et patrem ducem reliquit. Desideravit

---

\(^5\) Animus, -i, m., mind.
\(^6\) Directs his mind toward unknown skills.
\(^7\) He renews nature (invents something new).
\(^8\) Penna, -ae, f., feather.
\(^9\) In order.
\(^10\) Once.
\(^11\) Fistula, -ae, f., a rustic pipe.
\(^12\) Uneven.
\(^13\) Imus, -a, -um, lowest, bottom of.
\(^14\) Ties together.
\(^15\) Bends in a slight curve the feathers thus put together.
\(^16\) Of real birds (avis, avis, avium, f.). You can imagine that these are the wings of real birds.
\(^17\) Softens the wax.
\(^18\) By his own play, by his own amusement.
\(^19\) Impedes the wonderful work of his father (opus, operis, n., work).
\(^20\) Postquam, conj., after.
\(^21\) The craftsman, creator.
\(^22\) Will wet, weigh down.
\(^23\) Uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two; fly between each of two.
\(^24\) Rules of flying.
\(^25\) Fits the strange wings on the shoulders of the boy.
\(^26\) Tremble.
\(^27\) Looks back.
\(^28\) Just as.
\(^29\) The fisherman, the shepherd, the farmer (he who plows).
\(^30\) They believed that they (these men) were gods (indirect statement).
\(^31\) Began (Coepi, coepisse) has no present system, only perfect forms.
volare altius\textsuperscript{32} in caelo et audacia eum ab itinere patris duxit. Sol ceram mollit\textsuperscript{33} et penae liberatae sunt. Puer nudis bracchiis aëra percussit.\textsuperscript{34} Aqua quae eum recepit\textsuperscript{35} nomen ab illo tenet.\textsuperscript{36} At pater infelix,\textsuperscript{37} nunc non iam pater, "Icare," dixit, "Icare, ubi es? Quo in loco te quaeram? Icare," dicebat cum pennas notas in undis summis spectavit et damnavit suas artes. Tum corpus carum filii in sepulchrum\textsuperscript{38} posuit et terra a nomine pueri dicta est—Icaria.

\textsuperscript{32} Higher (a comparative adverb).
\textsuperscript{33} Melts, softens.
\textsuperscript{34} Beat.
\textsuperscript{35} Received.
\textsuperscript{36} The Icarian Sea.
\textsuperscript{37} Infelix, -icis, unlucky, unhappy, ill-fated, miserable.
\textsuperscript{38} Grave.
Orpheus and Eurydice

Orpheus, the sweet singer of the ancient world, bard of Apollo, was able to soften the spirits of wild beasts and to move harsh stones with his songs. The omens for his wedding day, however, proved unfavorable, for his bride of a day, Eurydice, while walking through a field, was bitten by a serpent and died. Descending to the Underworld, Orpheus begs for her return from Pluto and Proserpina, reminding Pluto in poetic eloquence that he too had been conquered by Love. The king and queen of the gloomy regions of the dead agree to Eurydice's return on the condition that Orpheus not look back at her. Eagerly he leads her out of the Underworld until they are almost at the entrance, the great cave of Avernus. Then Orpheus, anxious for her safety, looks back at Eurydice and she slips back forever to the land of the dead.

Despondent at this double loss, Orpheus shuns the company of women either because his first love had turned out badly or because he had given his pledge to Eurydice. The women, especially the Maenads, the maddened women who worship Bacchus, are angered at being so scorned. They therefore attack the bard and eventually the noise of their shouts and the drums and cymbals drown out the sound of his lyre. Then the rocks run red with the blood of the poet as the women tear him apart.

Orpheus descends again to the Underworld, this time as a shade, where he is finally reunited with Eurydice.

Because of his descent to and emergence from the Underworld, Orpheus has become associated with a cult known as Orphism, which combines features of both Apollonian and Dionysian worship. The literature attributed to Orphism records an early account of the birth of Dionysus.
Chapter XXI

ORPHEUS ET EURYDICE

Hymen voce Orphei ad nuptias cum Eurydice vocatur. Ile deus matrimoni adfuit, sed nec verba laeta nec omen felix attulit. Fax quam tenuit nullos ignes dedit. Matrimonium exitum infelicit habuit, nam nupta, Eurydice, dum per herbas cum turba comitum ambulat, dente serpentis in pedem recepto, occidit.


Eum dicentem talia animae exsangues2 audiebant et lacrimabant. Tantalus undam non petivit; orbis Ixionis stupuit; Sisyphus in suo saxo sedit.3 Eumenides4 quidem lacrimas non retinebant nec rex Pluto nec coniunx Proserpina ei oranti negare potuerunt; Eurydicen vocant.

Illa erat inter umbras recentes et tardo passu de vulnere ambulabat. Orpheus gaudens eam accipit sed cum hac lege Plutonis; non debet respicere Eurydicer donec ingentem speluncam Avernum exierit; aut donum erit vanum.

---

1 I am sure to ... (lit., it is certain to me).
2 Bloodless.
3 Tantalus' punishment was always to be thirsty and to reach for water that eluded him, always to be hungry and to reach for food that was out of his reach; Ixion was forever turning on his wheel; Sisyphus was forever pushing a rock uphill.
4 The Eumenides were the Furies that pursued a man who raised a hand against his parent.
Arduum et obscurum et acre erat iter eorum per muta silentia.\textsuperscript{5} Summa spelunca non procul afuit. Orpheus timens et avidus magnopere respicere desiderabat; amans oculos revertit et protinus illa relapsa est.\textsuperscript{6} Bracchia tendens et certans eam prehendere, nil nisi auras infelix tenuit. Descendens iterum illa dixit supremum “vale” quod iam vix auribus Orpheus accepit, et Eurydice rursus eodem reversa est.


**Verba**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>anima</em> -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>aura</em> -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avernum, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>dens</em> dentis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Eurydicē</em> -ēs, f., acc. -ēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>exitus</em> -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fatum</em> -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fax, facis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>herba</em> -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hymēn, Hymeulis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>matrimonium</em> -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mōnstrum</em> -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nupta</em> -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuptiae, -ārum, f. pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ōmen</em> -inis, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>orbis</em> orbs, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Orpheus</em> -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plūto, -ōnis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prōserpina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēgnum</em> -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>serpēns</em> -entis, c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Styx, Stygis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tartarus, i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>umbra</em> -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{5} Total or utter silence.  
\textsuperscript{6} Slipped back.
XXI Orpheus et Eurydice 183

VERBS

*acciπo, -ere, -cepι, -ceptum receive, accept
*adeο, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum go to, approach, go near
*affero, -ferre, attuli, allatum carry to, bring to, bring in
agο, -ere, egι, actum do, drive, live, spend time
*aιt, irregular verb; pl. aiunt he, she says, said
*audeο, -ere, ausus sum7 dare
*aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablatum carry away, carry off
*exeo, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum go out, depart
*fero, ferre, tuli, latum bear, bring, carry
*invenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum find, discover
*occido, -ere, -cidι, -cassium die, perish, fall down
*ploro (1) weep, mourn for
*recipiο, -ere, -cepι, -ceptum receive, take back; return (with se), restore
*redeo, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum go back, retreat
*respicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum look back, look behind
*retexo, -ere, -ui, -textum reweave, unravel
*reverto, -ere, -verti, -versum turn back
*stupeo, -ere, -ui, -itum be amazed, be shocked

ADJECTIVES

*aer, acris, acr harsh, hard, rough, bitter
*arduus, -a, -um hard, difficult
*avidus, -a, -um eager
*crudelis, -e cruel, bloody
*felix, felicis happy, fortunate
*geminus, -a, -um8 twin, double
infelix, infelicis unhappy
*ingens, ingentis huge
*mutus, -a, -um mute, silent, still
*recens, recentis recent
*superus, -a, -um highest, upper
v anus, -ā, -um void, meaningless, vain

OTHER WORDS

eodem to the same place
*frustra in vain
prɔtius immediately, straightway, directly
rursus back again

7The perfect tenses of this verb are passive in form but active in meaning. Therefore ausus sum means I dared. Such verbs are called semi-deponent.
8The space rendezvous project of the United States NASA takes its name from the Gemini, the twin stars, Castor and Pollux, named after the twin sons of Leda.
Structure

118. Conjugation of ferō, afferō, auferō. The verb ferō and its compounds are used so frequently in Latin that its forms and meanings should be thoroughly mastered. The complete conjugation in the active voice is given below:

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum  bear, carry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferēbas</td>
<td>ferēs</td>
<td>tulisti</td>
<td>tulerās</td>
<td>tuleris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferēbat</td>
<td>feret</td>
<td>tulit</td>
<td>tulerat</td>
<td>tulerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferēbāmus</td>
<td>ferēmus</td>
<td>tulimus</td>
<td>tulerāmus</td>
<td>tulerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferēbātis</td>
<td>ferētis</td>
<td>tulistis</td>
<td>tulerātis</td>
<td>tuleritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>ferēbant</td>
<td>ferent</td>
<td>tulērunt</td>
<td>tulerant</td>
<td>tulerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperatives: Singular: fer  Plural: ferte

(See paradigm in the Appendix for the passive forms.)

Notice how the compounds afferō (ad + ferō) and auferō (ab + ferō) change in the forms of the principal parts: afferō, afferre, attuli, allātum and auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum. The conjugation of these compounds is patterned on the conjugation of ferō given above.

119. Third declension adjectives of one and three terminations. Some third declension adjectives have only one ending for all genders in the nominative singular. These are called adjectives of one termination.* On the other hand there are several which have separate endings for masculine, feminine and neuter, and these are called adjectives of three terminations. You have already studied the adjectives of two terminations (omnis, omne) in Section 112.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One Termination</th>
<th>Three Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ingēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ingentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ingentem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ingentēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ingentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ingentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ingentēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ingentibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Felix, fēlicis, infēlix, infēlicis, supplex, supplicis, and all adjectives of one termination follow the pattern of ingēns, ingentis.
Notice that the accusative has one form for masculine and feminine, and another for neuter, as do nominative and accusative plural. Third declension adjectives are declined like 1-stem nouns: acc. pl. -ia; gen. pl. -ium; and abl. sing. -i.

120. Participles. Participles are verbal adjectives. Like adjectives, they modify nouns or pronouns. Like verbs they express action or state of being, and have tense (present, past, and future), and voice (active or passive).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>amāns, amantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>amātūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>amandus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>about to love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The future participles will be studied in subsequent lessons. Notice, however, that they exist in both the active and passive voices, a condition not echoed in the present (only active) and perfect (only passive). You are already familiar with the forms and the meanings of the perfect passive participle:

Eurydice, ab Orphed amata, in Orcd quaesita est.

Eurydice (having been) loved by Orpheus was sought in Orcus.

121. Present active participle. The present active participle is a verbal adjective formed from the stem of the verb + ns (gen. -ntis). It is usually translated with “ing” in English: loving, holding, leading, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-iō</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>tenēns</td>
<td>ducēns</td>
<td>capiēns</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loving</td>
<td>holding</td>
<td>leading</td>
<td>taking</td>
<td>hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These participles are declined like third declension adjectives of one termination, except that they have -e in the ablative singular. The present active participle is an adjective capable of modifying a noun in any case, number, or gender.

Orpheus, tendēns bracchia et certāns eamprehendere, nil nisi aurās tenuit.

*Present participles used as adjectives have -i in the ablative singular: cum amanti coniuge, with his loving wife.*
Orpheus, stretching out his arms and struggling to clasp her, held nothing but the air.

Serpēns\(^{10}\) crescentēs annōs abstulit.

The serpent took away her growing years.

Animae eum tālia dicentem audiēbant et lacrimābant. (tālia, such things)

The spirits heard him speaking such things and wept.

The verbal aspect of the participle is quite obvious when it takes a direct object (tālia) as above.

The irregular eō, ire and its compounds have the following present active participle:

iēns, euntis, going; abiēns, going away; rediēns, going back

Deponent verbs have a present active participle for each conjugation:

hortāns, urging; verēns, fearing; sequēns, following; oriēns, rising

Exercises

I. Quaestiones:

1. Quis vocatur ad matrimonium Orphei et Eurydicēs?
2. Cur Hymen vocatur?
3. Quomodo Eurydice occidit?
4. Postquam Orpheus satis ploravit, ad quem locum descendit?
5. Quis deus omnia vincit?
6. Viceratne Amor Plutonem et Proserpinam?
7. Ubi est domus ultima?
8. Quem dei umbrarum vocant?
9. Qua lege Orpheus coniugem in terras superas duxit?
10. Potestne Orpheus ad Eurydicen non respicere?

II A. Give the four participles for each verb and translate:

voco mitto sentio

B. Translate these participles:

1. inventum  6. occidens  11. sequens
2. ferens  7. conans  12. loquens
3. recepturus  8. ploraturus  13. abiens
4. revertens  9. redeuntem  14. amata
5. respiciens  10. ablatura  15. daturus

\(^{10}\)The noun serpēns (serpent) is actually a present active participle formed from the verb serpō, -ere (creep, crawl).
III A. Decline the following:
1. Orpheus infelix
2. canis ingens
3. fatum acre
4. coniunx amans
5. digitus scribens

B. Fill in the correct form of the present participle of cantare: cantans, -antis.
1. Orpheus ________carmen sub terra descendit.
2. Proserpina carmen Orphei ________audivit.
3. Dei coniugem Orpheo ________dederunt.
4. Eurydice Orpheum ________audire potest.
5. Eurydice ab Orpheo ________per umbras ducta est.
6. Dei poetas ________audiverunt.
7. Dei dona poetis ________dederunt.
8. Poetae ________deis placent (are pleasing: placeō, -ēre, placui).
9. Carmina laetissima a poetis ________cantabantur.

IV. Fill in the correct form of the perfect passive participle of the verb in parentheses:
1. Carmina ______cantata______deis placent, (cantare)
2. Eurydice ________in Orcum descendit. (necare)
3. Hymen ________ad matrimonium adfuit. (vocare)
4. Eurydice dente serpentis ________in pedem occidit. (recipere)
5. Coniuge ________Orpheus ex Orco exire temptavit. (invenire)

V. Translate into Latin:
1. Hymen was present at the marriage but the omens were unfavorable (infelix, infelicis; remember that third declension adjectives are I-stem).
2. A serpent bit (momordit) the foot of Eurydice (while she was) walking. (Express by a present participle in the genitive case.)
3. Orpheus sang his song of complaint to the gods and they gave the bride back to the rejoicing husband (vir).11
4. Orpheus was not supposed to (nōn dēbēbat) look back at his bride.
5. Orpheus was not able to restrain himself, and he gazed back at his wife with loving eyes.

---

11 Compare the English phrase, "my man," meaning my husband.
LATIN IN MUSICAL TERMS

The story of Orpheus symbolically represents the power of music over the harsh forces of life. Music was indeed an integral part of Greek life, the natural accompaniment to festivals, public events, marriages, funerals, dramatic presentations, banquets, and social gatherings. Instruction in singing and playing the lyre therefore was part of the education of a citizen. People in general not only could distinguish between music performed well or poorly, they could themselves participate in the performances. At the great games there were contests of musical as well as athletic skills, and prizes were offered for songs accompanied by the cithara or the aulos.

The cithara or lyre was the instrument of Apollo, the shining god of the sun, music, medicine, and the arts. His bard Orpheus also played the lyre and is always so represented in art. The aulos was the instrument of Dionysus and of the satyrs, who are usually depicted in vase paintings and on reliefs in a drunken procession honoring this god of the vine. Perhaps the all-pervasive wail of present-day Near Eastern music is descended from the wailing tone of the aulos of antiquity.

The Romans never seemed to develop as fully the ear for, the appreciation of, or the ability to perform music, as did the Greeks. The whole field was left to professional musicians who ranked along with actors as a craft or guild. When the Emperor Nero, obsessed with his musical abilities, went to perform at the games in Athens, the event was most unusual. Despite the Romans’ neglect of the art, however, Latin has given a rich heritage of musical terms to English, some directly from Latin, but many from the intermediate language of Italian.

fugue (fuga, flight) soprano (supra, above, over)
sonata (sonare, to sound) basso profundo (pro + fundus, bottom)
invention (invenire, to discover) tenor (tenere, to hold basic notes)
alto (altus, -a, -um, high, deep) lyre (lyra, lyre)
cantata (cantata, having been sung) movement (movere, move)
percussion (per + cussum, beaten) opera (opus, pl. opera, a work or works)
plectrum (plectrum, a pick) sound (sonus, a sound)
harmony (harmonia, harmony) dulcimer (dulcis, sweet)
composition (cum + positum, placed with)

* * * * *
Give the Latin source for the following words from the vocabulary of the story:

- an *animated* conversation
- no *exit*
- harsh *fate*
- prospect of *matrimony*
- a *monster* movie
- *nuptial* bliss
- an evil *omen*
- put into *orbit*
- the Biblical *serpent*
- the *penumbra* (*pen < paene*) of the sun
- a cool *reception*
- revert to evil habits
- a *stupefying* performance
- an *arduous* task
- an *avid* reader
- *felicitations* are in order!
- a *recent* performance
- *frustrating* experiences
Chapter XXII
MORS ORPHEI

Ter Sol annum finiverat et Orpheus omnem amorem feminarum fugerat, seu quod amor primus male evenerat seu quod fidem coniugi dederat. Multas tamen feminas ardor vati se iungere habebat. Aliquae ab illo repulsae magnopere doluerunt, sed maxime Maenades.


Miserrimus Orpheus tendens manus et orans Bacchantes voce movere frustra temptavit; insanissimae eum laceraverunt. Per os ipsum (O Iuppiter!) quod saxa et animos animalium ferorum vicerat, anima eius in ventos exit.

Te aves maestissimae, Orpheu, te turba ferorum, te saxa dura, te silvae ploraverunt. Arbor frondibus positis quasi capillis laceratis te ploravit. Dicunt illius causa flumina crevisse lacrimis plurimis suis et nymphas vestimenta nigra et capillos neglectos habuisse.

†Passion held (or seized) the women.
1Would have been (fut. act. part. + imp. subjunctive, see p. 234).
2Vocative case.
3As if (quasi) they were torn hair.
4Illius causâ, for his sake, (lit., for the sake of that man). They say that for his sake . . .

Umbra Orphei sub terras ivit et recognovit loca quae antea viderat; quaerens per agros piorum$^5$ Eurydicen invenit. Bracchiis avidissime eam prehendit. Hic nunc ambo coniunctis passibus$^6$ ambulant. Orpheus nunc Eurydicen suam tuto respicere potest.

---

**Verba**

**NOUNS**

*animus, -i, m.*
- soul, spirit, mind; pl., courage

*ardor, -oris, m.*
- burning, heat, eagerness

**Baccha, -ae, f. also Bacchantēs**
- a Bacchante (*female worshipper of Bacchus*)

*causa, -ae, f.*
- cause, sake, reason

*cervus, -i, m.*
- stag

*contemptor, -ōris, m.*
- a despiser

*ērinys, -yos, f.*
- one of the Furies

*hasta, -ae, f.*
- spear, javelin

*hebrus, -i, m.*
- Hebrus (*a river in Thrace*)

*fīdēs, -ei, f.*
- trust, belief, faith, pledge

*frons, frondis, f.*
- a leaf, foliage

*maenas, -adis, f.*
- a Bacchante, a maddened woman, a Maenad

*pectus, -oris, n.*
- breast, heart

*praedae, -ae, f.*
- booty, prey

*tibia, -ae, f.*
- shin bone, pipe, flute

*tympanum, -ī, n.*
- tamborine, drum

*umbra, -ae, f.*
- shade, shadow

*vātes, -is, c. (gen. pl., -um or ium)*
- bard, poet, seer, singer

*vellus, -eris, n.*
- fleece, wool

*ventus, -i, m.*
- wind

**VERBS**

*dicunt*
- they say, people say

*dīripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptum*
- snatch apart, tear away

*doleō, -ēre, -ui*
- suffer pain, grieve

---

$^5$ *The Elysian Fields*; lit., *The fields of the blessed.*

$^6$ *With their footsteps joined together, or walking side by side.*
*eveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum
*finiō, -ire, -ivi, -ītum
lacerō (1)
mordeō, -ere, momordi, morsum
*natō (1)
*pōrō (1)
*recoigneōscō, -ere, -cognōvi, -nitum
*repellō, -ere, reppulē, -pulsum
rubēscō, -ere, rubulē
tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum
*sē vertere
soleō, -ere, solitus sum
turn out, come about
end, conclude, finish
tear to pieces, maim
bite
swim
weep, wail for
recognize, recall
drive back, drive away, push, spurn
grow red, become red
cover, conceal, hide
to turn oneself
to be accustomed

ADJECTIVES
amoenus, -a, -um
pleasant
*diversus, -a, -um
scattered, spread out, turned in
different directions
*innocēns, -entis
innocent, harmless
*insānus, -a, -um
maddened, insane
*peregrinus, -a, -um
foreign
*supplex, -icis
suppliant (often as substantive,
a suppliant)

OTHER WORDS
*aliquis, aliquid
dsome, any; some, any one; some, any thing
*ambō, -ae, -ō
both, two, together
*circum + acc.
around, about
ēn, interjection
lo, behold, see
*male
badly
*quandō
when
*seu . . . seu, conj.
whether . . . or
*ter
thrice, three times
*tōtō
safely
velut (velutē)
just as, just like, even as

Structure
122. Future active participle. The future active participle, introduced in Section 120, is formed from the perfect passive participle (the fourth principal part) with the -us, -a, -um ending expanded to -ūrus, -ūra,
194 Latin via Ovid

-ūrum. The best way to remember its future nature and forms is to observe the future active participle of sum: futūrus, -a, -um,8 from which the English word “future” is formed. The English translation is about to or going to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-i0</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātūrus, -a,</td>
<td>doctūrus, -a,</td>
<td>ductūrus, -a,</td>
<td>captūrus, -a,</td>
<td>auditūrus, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

about to love about to teach about to lead about to take about to hear

These participles are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

Orpheus cantātūrus ā turbā fēminārum necātur.

Orpheus, about to sing, is killed by a band of women.

Fēminae Orpheum cantātūrum necant.

The women kill Orpheus [as he is] about to sing.

Orpheus Eurydicem ex Orcō ductūrus respicit et eam āmittit.

Orpheus, about to lead Eurydice out of Orcus, looks back and loses her.

123. Active periphrastic conjugation. Periphrasis means “circumlocution,” talking around a subject. The periphrastic construction in a roundabout way expresses the future tense in a more immediate fashion. Compare: dabit, he will give with datūrus est, he is about to give. Usually tense, mood, voice, and number are indicated in Latin by inflectional endings on the main verb stem. You have already studied the perfect passive system in which a participle is combined with forms of the verb sum to make up what we call in English a verb phrase (Sec. 113). The active periphrastic conjugation9 is also a verb phrase using the future active participle with forms of sum: the ending of the participle agrees with the subject of the verb in number and gender. Note the tenses and meanings of the forms of the verb, do, dare, dedi, datum in the following sentences:

INDICATIVE MOOD

Pres.: Pecūniām datūrus (-a) sum. I am about to give the money.

Imp.: Pecūniām datūrus (-a) erās. You were about to give the money.

Fut.: Pecūniām datūrus (-a, -um) erit. He (she, it) will be about to give,

will be going to give the money.

8 When no logical perfect passive participle exists, the future active participle is given as the fourth principal part. The verb esse has a fourth principal part that means “about to be,” since a “having been” idea would be illogical. Sometimes the supine is given for the fourth principal part: maneō, -ēre, niānsi, mānsūm, remain.

9 There is also a passive periphrastic, which will be studied in a subsequent lesson.
Perf.: Pecūniam datūri (-ae) fuimus. We have been (were) about to give the money.

Plu. Perf.: Pecūniam datūri (-ae) fuerātis. You had been about to give the money.

Fut. Perf.: Pecūniam datūri (-ae, -a) fuerint. They will have been about to give the money.

INFINITIVE: These sentences are examples of Indirect Statement, which is explained in Chapter XXIII. Supply "that" after the main verb in the following sentences:

Putō eum datūrum esse pecūniam. I think that he is about to give the money.

Putō eos datūros esse pecūniam. I think that they are about to give the money.

124. Comparison of adjectives: positive, comparative, superlative. The degree of intensity of adjectives is called comparison. A man may be happy (positive), happier (comparative) or most happy (superlative) both in Latin and in English. Observe the following ending changes to indicate these degrees:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laetus, -a, -um</td>
<td>laetior, laetus</td>
<td>laetissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier, more happy, too happy, rather happy</td>
<td>happiest, most happy, very happy, exceedingly happy, especially happy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The general rule: -ior, -ius

Note the form of these regular adjectives:

| avidus, -a, -um | avidior, avidius | avidissimus, -a, -um |
| maestus, -a, -um | maestior, maestius | maestissimus, -a, -um |
| ingēns (-entis) | ingentior, ingentius | gentissimus, -a, -um |
| fortis, -e      | fortior, fortius | fortissimus, -a, -um |

The comparative form is declined in general like a third declension adjective of two terminations. The superlative form is declined like bonus, -a, -um.

---

10 Do not neglect these possible translations for the comparative and superlative.

11 N.B., abl. sing. in -e, neuter nom. and acc. plu. in -a, gen. plu. in -um. The 1-stem nature of the third declension adjective disappears in the comparative declension.
## COMPARATIVE DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. &amp; F. N.</td>
<td>M. &amp; F. N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laetior laetius</td>
<td>laetiōrēs laetiōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laetiōris laetiōris</td>
<td>laetiōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laetiōri laetiōri</td>
<td>laetiōribus laetiōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laetiōrem laetius</td>
<td>laetiōrēs laetiōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laetiōre laetiōre</td>
<td>laetiōribus laetiōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The most common adjectives, however, are compared irregularly. It is important to memorize these forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um</td>
<td>pēior, pēius</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>māior, māius</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um</td>
<td>———, plús;</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ulterior, -tra, -trum)_{12}</td>
<td>ulterior, -iūs</td>
<td>ultimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 125 Comparison of adverbs.

The adverb, the part of speech telling how an action is performed, usually ends in 
\(-e/-ē\) or 
\(-ō\) for adverbs formed from adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declension and in 
\(-iēter\) for those formed from 3rd declension adjectives.

- male (badly)
- optimē (very well, excellently)_{13}
- multō (by much)
- celeriter (quickly)

The adverb can exist not only in the positive form, but also in the comparative and superlative, the endings being 
\(-iūs\) in the comparative and  
\(-iissime\) in the superlative, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laetē (happily)</td>
<td>laetius (more happily)</td>
<td>laetissime (most happily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avidē</td>
<td>avidius</td>
<td>avidissime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_{12} Positive forms not found except in adverbs: ultrā, ultrō.

_{13} For idiomatic usage, see p. 37, Dialogue.
126. Infinitives: present, perfect, future. The infinitive exists in three tenses, active and passive. The present tense denotes simultaneous action, the perfect completed action, and the future an action not yet started. The forms are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>amāri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>amāvisse</td>
<td>amātus (-a, -um) esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>amatūrus (-a, -um) esse</td>
<td>amatūm iri (rarely used)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Below is a review of the active and passive infinitives for all conjugations:

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act.</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>tenēre</td>
<td>ducere</td>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass.</td>
<td>amāri</td>
<td>tenēri</td>
<td>duci</td>
<td>capi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFECT**

| Act. | amāvisse | tenuisse | duxisse | cepisse | audīvisse |
| Pass. | amātus esse | tentus esse | ducitus esse | captus esse | auditus esse |

**FUTURE**

| Act. | amatūrus | tentūrus | ductūrus | captūrus | auditūrus |
| Pass. | amatūm iri | tentum iri | ductum iri | captum iri | auditum iri |

127. Eō compounds. The verbs compounded with eō, the verb meaning go, are frequent in Latin, each preposition shading and altering the meaning, but the basic conjugation remaining the same. See the Appendix for the complete conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eō, ire, ii or ivī, itūrus</th>
<th>go</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abeō</td>
<td>go away, depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adeō</td>
<td>go toward, approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exeō</td>
<td>go out of, depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inēō</td>
<td>go into, enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obeō</td>
<td>go against, oppose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redeō</td>
<td>go back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subeō</td>
<td>go under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trānseō</td>
<td>go across</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

I. Quaestiones

1. Cur Orpheus amorem feminarum evitavit?
2. Quae Orpheus voce et lyra cepit?
3. Cur Maenades erant iratae?
4. Quae iecerunt Maenades?
5. Nocueruntne Orphei tela et saxa primo?
6. Quid denique Maenades fecerunt?
7. Per quod anima Orphei exivit?
8. Qui Orpheum ploraverunt?
9. Quis serpentem in saxum mutavit?
10. Quem Orpheus sub terram quaerit?

II A. Form the active and passive participles for each of the following verbs and give the English for each.

1. voco vocans vocatum vocaturum vocandum
2. doceo
3. ago
4. finio
5. capio
6. mitto

B. Form the six infinitives for each verb above and translate each form, following the pattern given below:

Pres. finire to end finiri to be ended
Perf. finivisse to have ended finitum to have been ended esse
Fut. finiturum to be about finitum to be about to be esse iri ended

III. Fill in the correct form of the active periphrastic for the verb phrase.

1. Pecuniam puellae (he is about to give).
2. Maenades Orpheum (were about to kill).
3. Eurydice Orcum (was about to leave).
4. Orpheus (was about to sing).
5. Fabulam mihi (you were going to tell).

IV A. Fill in the correct form of the adjective in the comparative and superlative.

Positive Comparator Superlative
1. amoenus, -a, -um
2. clarus, -a, -um
3. fortis, -e
4. magnus, -a, -um
5. bonus, -a, -um

B. Now use these forms in the sentences below:
1. Haec terra est (the most pleasant).
2. Haec urbs est (more famous) quam illa.
3. (The bravest) quidem viri mortem timent.
4. Ursa (the larger) est Callisto.
5. Ursa (the smaller) est filius eius, Arcas.
6. (The best) carmina a vate Orpheo cantabantur.

C. Use adverb forms for the words above in the following sentences:
1. (Most bravely) pugnavit.
2. (Very good!) (Very well done!)
3. Aliqui (very well) occidunt, sed Orpheus (very badly) occidit.
4. Haec stella lucem (most brightly) dat.
5. Haec fabula mihi (very much) placet.

V. Translate into Latin:
1. Many women repulsed by Orpheus desired to love the bard.
2. Some insane Maenads especially tried to kill him with all the weapons which they could find.
3. Even the weapons were charmed (capere) by the voice and the lyre of Orpheus, but the shouts of the women overcame the sound of his song.
4. All nature wept the death of the bard of Phoebus who was killed by the very crazed Maenads.
5. But Orpheus descended again under the earth and found his Eurydice; now he could look back at her in safety.

Etymology

MUSICAL TERMS

Musical terms in English of Latin (or Italian) origin abound. Traditionally the expressive dynamic markings in the musical score are written in Italian, most of them of Latin origin:

- forte (fortis, strong) loud, strong
- piano (planus, even, smooth) soft
- con amore or amoroso (cum amore, with love) tenderly
- vivace (vivere, to live) lively
- allegro (alacer, merry, gay) quickly
con espresso molto (cum expresso multo, with much pressed or forced out) with much expression
rhythm (rhythmus, time, harmony) regular pulsation
fortissimo (fortissimum, strongest) very loud
pianissimo (planissimun, smoothest) very soft
tempo (tempus, time) pace
clef (clavis, key) key
lento (lente, slowly) slowly
crescendo (crescere, to increase) increasing power of tone
diminuendo (diminuere, to lessen) decreasing power of tone
cadence (cadere, to fall, agree with) harmonic resolution

The number of musicians in a group gives the names to the performing artists:
solo, duet, trio, quartet, quintet, sextet, septet, octet

Many of the instruments existed in an early form in antiquity or were given names from Latin as they were invented:
cymbal (um), tuba, tympanum, cornet (a small horn)

What is the Latin or Greek source for these musical terms?
vibrato, accent, meter, sound, note, tone, tune, melody, instrument, balance, legato, firmata, pulse, triple, rehearse, symphony, concerto, repeat.

* * * * *

Give the Latin source for the underlined words, taken from the vocabulary, in the following phrases:
a Bacchanalian orgy
the cause of it all
a contemptuous remark
a bonafide guarantee
the fronds of a plant
the members of the body
pectoral muscles
a blessed event
finite forms (infinite forms)
lacerations of the face
only a morsel of bread
a clean, large natatorium
a recognition vocabulary
a repelling remark, a repulsive person
diverse knowledge
innocent blood (in + noceo)
insane act
a peregrinating hero
suppliant voices
circa (ca., c., C.) 1800
ambiguous terminology
a tertiary source

Which Latin adjectives are the source for the following Italicized words? The English derivatives may help you to remember the comparative and superlative forms.

1. Launching the rocket is a major step in space exploration.
2. The affair is of minor concern to me.
3. Jack always was an optimist.
4. Too bad George is such a pessimist.
5. We are working under optimum conditions.
6. The concessions granted by the union will help to ameliorate the situation.
7. Three plus five equals eight.
8. The ultimate experience may not be death.
9. Are you sure that he is not working with an ulterior motive?
10. The prison has maximum security to assure minimum risk.
INTERIM READING II: PHAËTHON

Phaëthon erat filius Phoebi Apollinis, dei solis, et feminae Clymenes.\(^1\) Iuvenis superbus de patre claro Phoebi magnopere dicere solebat;\(^2\) olim amicus autem ait,\(^3\) "Stultus es, si credis omnia quae mater tibi narrat." Phaëthon iram vix retinuit et ad Clymenen matrem it. "Mater, si vere a caelesti patre creatus sum,\(^4\) da mihi signum tanti parentis." Ita puer oravit sibi signa veri parentis.

Clymene, mota precibus Phaëthontis irape sua, ad caelum bracchia tendit et dicit, "Tibi iuro,\(^5\) puer, Solem quem spectas, qui orbem temperat,\(^6\) esse patrem tibi. Si vera verba non dico, numquam iterum lucem solis oculis meis videam.\(^7\) Sed non longe laborabis, si regiam patris quaeerere desiderabis. Si animus est tibi,\(^8\) i et roga patrem Solem ipsum." Phaëthon talibus verbis matris maxime gaudet; deinde terras suas transivit et regno\(^9\) patris appropinquavit.

Regia solis erat alta sublimibus columnis.\(^10\) Duae portae utrimque\(^11\) auro argentoque\(^12\) decoratae sunt. Opus materiam superabat.\(^13\) Nam Mulciber\(^14\) picturas terrarum et caeli in portis fecerat. In picturis terra homines oppidaque tenet silvasque fluminaque animaliaque et nymphas et

---

1 Clymēnē, -ōs, wife of Merops, an Ethiopian king; beloved of Phoebus.
2 Was accustomed to speak excessively, to brag.
3 Said. Dixit, inquit, ait all are used to introduce dialogue and may be postpositive often interrupting the quotation. Possible word order: "Stultus es," ait, "si crēdis. . . ."
4 If I have been created by a heavenly father (creō [1]).
5 lūrō (1), swear.
6 Who controls the earth.
7 May I never see the light of the sun again (lūx, lūcis, f., light; numquam, adv., never).
8 If you have the spirit (lit., if the spirit is to you).
9 Rēgnūm, -i, n., kingdom (dat. with appropinquāvit).
10 On lofty columns.
11 Utrimque, on each side.
12 Argentum, -i, n., silver.
13 The work surpassed the material.
14 Mulciber, -eris, m., a surname of Vulcan in whose forge the heavenly metalwork was wrought.

203
ceteras incolas silvae. Super haec posita est imago caeli, decorata sex signis zodiacis portis dextris, sex portis sinistris.

Phaëthon autem non deterritus, missus a matre, regiam parentis magna cum audacia intravit. Phoebus vestimento purpureo velatus\(^1\) in solio sedebat.\(^16\) A dextra sinistraque stabat Dies et Mensis et Annuus Saeculaque et Horae; stabat quoque Ver et nuda Aestas et Autumnus et Hiems.\(^17\) Lux erat clarissima; Phaëthon vultus\(^18\) patris spectare non potuit.

Deinde vidit Sol iuvenem oculis illis quibus omnia spectavit et dixit: "Quae causa itineris est tibi, fili Phaëthon?" Hib respondit, "O Lux totius caeli, Phoebus pater, si das mihi usum huius nominis, da mihi quoque dona quibus me filium tibi esse monstrabo.

Pater Sol coronam deposuit\(^19\) et iussit puerum appropinquare. "Es dignus me non negare te esse filium meum. Noli dubitare. Roga donum. Quicquid rogas, illud dabo."

Phaëthon, verbis patris auditis, rogavit currus\(^20\) patris et ius agendi\(^21\) equos solis in diem unum.\(^22\) Pater erat infelix\(^23\) quod puer tale donum rogaverat. "Temeraria," dixit, "est vox mea quae tibi donum infelix dedit. Promisi, sed non est gratum mihi dare quod quaeris. Magna petis, Phaëthon. Pater Iuppiter ipse hos currus agere\(^24\) non potest et quis est maior quam Iuppiter?\(^25\)

"Ardua est prima via caeli; durum et difficile\(^26\) est iter caeli quod equi ascendere\(^27\) debent. Medio caelo est altissima via unde\(^28\) etiam ego ipse timeo mare et terras spectare. Ultima via est prona,\(^29\) et si equi rapidius\(^30\) descendent,\(^31\) portaberis in undas maris vi equorum. Vix ipse ego equos retinere possum ubi animi eorum agitati sunt.\(^32\) At tu, fili, cave, dum tempus

---

\(^{1}\)Covered, veiled.

\(^{16}\)Was seated on a throne.

\(^{17}\)Day and Month and Year and Century, and the Hours; also standing there were Spring, naked Summer, Autumn, and Winter.

\(^{18}\)Face, countenance.

\(^{19}\)Deposuit, -ere, -posui, -positum, lay aside; + corōna, -ae, f., crown.

\(^{20}\)Chariot, here used in the plural with a singular idea (currus, -ūs, m.).

\(^{21}\)The permission to drive (lit., the right of driving).

\(^{22}\)For one day.

\(^{23}\)Infelix, -icis, unhappy, unfortunate, unlucky.

\(^{24}\)To drive this chariot (agō, agere, ēgi, actum: do, drive, discuss, live; spend time. This is a very important verb in Latin and its meanings are quite diverse).

\(^{25}\)Greater than Jupiter (mīior, mīlus is the comparative of magnus).

\(^{26}\)Difficult (difficilis, -e is declined like omnis, -e, Sec. 112).

\(^{27}\)Ascend (ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascensum).

\(^{28}\)Whence.

\(^{29}\)Straight down.

\(^{30}\)Too rapidly.

\(^{31}\)Descend (the Latin future tense in the if clause of a conditional sentence is usually translated by the present tense).

\(^{32}\)When their spirits have been aroused.
est; muta tua verba. Monstro me esse patrem tuum patrio timore.33 Circumspecta omnia dona caeli et terrae et maris.34 Posce aliquid. Noli dubitare; dabitur (per Stygias undas35 iuravi) quicquid optas.’’

Pater monitum finiverat; 36 tamen Phaëthon poposcit donum iam a se rogatum: agere currus patris. Ergo37 pater ducit iuvenem ad altos currus. Axis erat aureus, rotae erant aureae cum radiis argenteis.38 In ligno39 currus gemmæ positæ ex ordine40 luces claras Phoebi reddebant.41

Dum Phoebus et Phaëthon omnia spectant, ecce Aurora42 portas purpureas caeli aperuit. Stellae fugiunt et Lucifer43 exit e loco suo apud stellas. Ut Phoebus vidit terras rubescere,44 Horas iungere45 equos iussit.

Tum pater ora sui filii sacro medicamine46 tetigit posuitque coronam radiarum47 in caput filii et dixit, “Si haec verba patris audire potes, puer, tene frena;48 equi sponte sua properant.49 Labor est inhibere eos volantes.50 Vestigia rotae meae videbis. Tene iter nec dexterius nec sinisterius.51 Manda52 cetera Fortunae quae te iuvabit melius quam tu ipse te iuvare potes, opto. Sed iterum, puer, tene consilium meum, non currus. Est melius me dare luces terris.”

Phaëthon autem iam in currus ascendit statque superbus gaudetque frena tangere manibus. Equi viam rapuerunt et celeriter per nebulas53 cucurrerunt. Sed equi solis ignotas manus cognoscere non possunt54 et quasi sine frenis55 ferociter56 currunt. Cum Phaëthon sensit equos esse feros, ipse territus est nec scit iter. Tum primum Callisto et filius

32 By my fatherly concern (fear).
34 And of the sea.
35 By the River Styx; such an oath could not be revoked by a god.
36 Had finished his warning.
37 Therefore.
38 With silver spokes (axis, axle; rota, wheel; argenteus, -a, -urn, silver).
39 Lignum, -I, n., wood.
40 In order.
41 Reflected, gave back.
42 Aurora, goddess of the Dawn.
43 Lucifer (the morning star, lit., light-bringer, son of Aurora) left his place among (apud) the stars.
44 Grow red.
45 Iungō, -ere, i̯mxi, i̯mctum, join together, yoke.
46 Touched his son’s face with sacred salve.
47 Crown of rays.
48 Frēna, -Drum, n., reins.
49 Hasten of their own accord.
50 To stop their flying (lit., to hold back them flying).
51 Not too much to the left nor to the right.
52 Trust (imperative singular of mandō [1]) other things to Fortune (a goddess).
53 Clouds.
54 Cannot recognize.
55 As if without reins (quasi, as if).
56 Wildly.


Tum facta est Libya arida. Nymphæ undas et flumina et fontes lacrimant, sed omnia flumina arida fiunt. Pontus ipse fit campus. Pisces undas imas petunt et delphines in auras saltare non audent.

Tandem alma Tellus ora ad patrem Iovem tollit et causam tantæ poenæ rogat. "Estne hoc praemium fertilitatis. Si dei Tellurem aridam desiderant, Iuppiter fulmina statim iactare debet. Sed circumspecta terram; ecce—ardet ex polo ad polum. Si ignis ad caelum extendet, domus

---

57 Cold.
58 Grow warm.
59 From high heaven.
60 Suddenly he paled (subitō, suddenly).
61 Tremble.
62 Darkness.
63 That he had never touched the immortal horses.
64 As or like.
65 Likenesses.
66 Scorpio, the Great Bear, Cancer (the Crab).
67 Let's go the reins.
68 Where their force drives them.
69 Lūna, -ae, f., moon.
70 Ardeō, -ēre, burn.
71 Trees with their leaves and grain are burned.
72 Gēns, gentils, f., nations.
73 Aridus, -a, -um, dry.
74 The irregular passive system of faciō, make, do, which has the transposed meaning of become (fīō, fier, factus sum; fīō, fīs, fīt, fīmus, fītis, flunt).
75 The sea itself becomes a field.
76 Lowest.
77 Dolphins do not dare to jump in the air.
78 Loving mother Earth.
79 Raises.
80 Fertility.
81 Ought to hurl his thunderbolts (fulmen, -īnis, n.; iactō [1], hurl).
82 From pole to pole. It is interesting that the idea of poles should have existed in Ovid's time.
Haec dixit Tellus, et caput celavit; fumos enim tolerare non potuit neque plura dicere. At pater omnipotens deos vocat et Apollinem ipsum qui currus dederat puero; deinde summum caelum petit unde fulmina iactabat. Fulmen dextra tenet et id ab aure misit. Phaethonem ex curru vitaque expulsit et ignes ignibus extinxit.

Phaethon per aëra capillis flammis ardentibus iacitur. Cecidit ut stellae de caelo cadere videntur. Naïdes corpus eius tumulo dant his verbis:

Hic situs est Phaethon currus auriga paterni
Quem si non tenuit magnis tamen excidit ausis.


---

83 *Take from the flames whatever still is left.*
84 *Bear, withstand, or endure the smoke* (fūmus, -i, m.).
85 *Drove out, expelled, thrust out of.*
86 *He extinguished the fires with fires.* Compare modern firefighting methods.
87 *With his burning hair ablaze.*
88 *Cadó, cadere, cecidi, cāsum, fall.*
89 *The Naiads, water nymphs.*
90 *Here is buried Phaethon, charioteer of his father's coach; although he could not drive it, nevertheless he died daring to do great deeds* (Quem refers to the chariot or coach of the sun).
91 *When she had found the tomb.*
92 *Carved in marble.*
93 *Eripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, tear away, snatch away.*
94 *Spare us; parcō, parcere takes the dative case.*
95 *They became amber, hardened by the rays of the sun* (electrum, -i, n. amber).*
The Voyage of the Argonauts

The story of Jason and the Golden Fleece is an early tale of the episodic adventures of a great hero. This epic is the first sustained romantic love story, although the hero and heroine do not "live happily ever after." For Medea, the daughter of the king of Colchis, is a witch, related to Circe in Italy, her father's sister, and Medea's evil potentialities become evident when Jason brings his bride home to Greece from the far side of the Black Sea.

Apollonius of Rhodes has written Jason's adventures into a long epic, *The Voyage of the Argo*, which begins with Jason's arrival at Iolcus wearing only one shoe, the token by which he can be recognized by his usurper uncle Pelias. To regain his kingdom the young Jason must bring back to Greece the fleece of a miraculous golden ram which years before had come down from heaven to rescue the young Greek prince, Phrixus. Easily persuaded to show his prowess, Jason assembles the noble heroes of antiquity, pre-Trojan war heroes like Hercules, Orpheus, Theseus, Peleus, Zetes, and Calais, to participate in the expedition of the *Argo*. En route to their destination Jason has a love affair with the Queen of the island of Lemnos; Hercules drops out to search for his young armor-bearer Hylas; the sons of the North Wind, Zetes and Calais, rescue old King Phineas from starvation by driving off the Harpies; and the sailors of the *Argo* are told how to pass safely through the clashing rocks, the Symplegades.
At the far side of the Black Sea the Argonauts see Prometheus hanging on his crag in the Caucasus Mountains, and finally they arrive at the palace of Aeëtes where Medea, the princess, falls madly in love with the handsome Greek hero. In both the story of Apollonius and that of Ovid written several hundred years later, Medea wrestles with herself, torn between her love for Jason and her loyalty to her father. Ovid puts into her words the same idea Saint Paul (Rom. 7:19) uses to describe mortal frailty:

**Video meliora proboque, deteriora sequor.**

Medea, succumbing to the passions of love and Jason's promise of marriage, gives him all of her magic potions, her powers, and herself to thwart Aeëtes' trials and conditions for winning the fleece. For King Aeëtes had hoped to kill off the presumptuous Greek adventurer by giving him humanly impossible tasks to perform. By means of Medea's magic charms and her advice, the hero escapes with the fleece and the princess. When Aeëtes sends her brother Absyrtus to pursue the couple, Medea cuts him up, a bloody deed which delays Aeëtes, who stops to pick up the pieces of his son.

Once back at Iolcus in Greece, Medea causes the death of Pelias by pretending to his daughters that they can restore him to youth by cutting him up and boiling him in a pot, a magic trick she has demonstrated to them. For a time she and Jason live happily in Iolcus. Medea bears Jason two sons, but after the couple go to live at Corinth, Jason considers taking a new bride, the Princess of Corinth, an act which he justifies as expedient. Medea, in a doubly abhorrent act, causes the death of the princess by sending her a poisoned robe that consumes her by fire, and then—final horror—Medea kills her own two sons to revenge herself on Jason. She escapes to the court of Aegeus, king of Athens. The famous play *Medea* by Euripides portrays Medea's outrage at being slighted by Jason, with the off-stage murder of their two sons as the climax.
Chapter XXIII

IASON ET ARGONAUTAE

Aeson erat olim rex Thessaliae, sed frater eius, qui Pelias appellabatur, regnum obtinere cupiens Aesonem e regno expulit. Filium praeterea Aesonis, nomine Iasonem, occidere temptavit Pelias, homo sceleratus, sed ei, fabula ficta, nuntiaverunt amici Aesonis puerum iam mortuum esse. Non-nullis post diebus nuntius regi novo fidelis Delphos missus ad dominum suum se retulit, cui nuntiavit oraculum. Pythia, nam sic appellata est Delphis sacerdos, ediderat nullum esse periculum eo tempore, sed regem vereri debere iuvenem uno calceo solum indutum.

Paucis post annis, ubi Iason, altero calceo amissus, uno calceo solum indutus ad regiam Peliae pervenit, rex ipse periculum statim sensit, nam oraculi memoriam retinebat. Iuvenem igitur ad Colchidem misit, quo loco habitabat quidam rex, Aeêtes appellatus, qui vellere aureo potiebat. Hoc enim vellus a Phrixo olim in regno Colchide relictum erat, postquam ariete aureo in illum locum pervenit. Quia iter ad Colchidem erat maxime periculosum, Iasonem hoc iter facere iussit Pelias, eum enim hoc itinere interitum esse sperabat.

Iason autem sine comitibus ire non desiderabat; quam ob causam quinquaginta viros fortissimos delegit inter quos erant Orpheus et Hercules. Hi viri cum Iasone navem ab Argo perito aedificatam brevi tempore conscenderunt atque solverunt. Post multos dies multaque pericula auxilio deorum ad Colchidem pervenerunt Argonautae (sic enim nominabantur ex nomine navis, quae Argo appellata erat).

Tum Argonautae, multis periculosis rebus gestis, e nave egressi ad...
regiam se contulerant, qua habitabat Aeëtes. Ubi autem ab illo vellus aureum Phrixi poposcerunt, primum negabat se ulli vellus aureum umquam traditurum esse, sed deinde legem dedit ad quam hoc donum traderet. Si Jason duobus tauris iunctis agrum quendam araverit atque dentes draconis sparserit, vellus ei tradetur. At hoc negotium erat maxime periculosum, quia tauri ex ore flammam spirabant atque viri armati e dentibus sparsis creati sunt, sed iuvenis, rem esse malam non putans, haec nescivit.

Aeëtes autem filiam nomine Medeam habebat, quae auxilio magno Iasoni futura erat.

**Verba**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aeëtes, -ae, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aeson, -onis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Argonautae, -ärum, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ariēs, arietis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calceus, calceï, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colchis, -idis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Delphi, -örum, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*draco, -onis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Hēsēa, -onis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Mēdēa, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nāvis, nāvis, -ium, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*negōtium, -ii, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nūntius, -ii, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ōrāculum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelias, -ae, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrixus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Pythia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thessalia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vellus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*aedificō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*āmitterō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*appellō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*arō (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*conferō, -ferre, -tuli, collātum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8In which . . . (quā is feminine, since its gender is determined by régiam).  
*Ad here means according to which he would hand over . . .  
†Who was about to be of great help to Jason (Double Dative, Sec. 177).
conscendō, -ere, -ēdi, -sum
*credō (1)
dēligō, -ere, -ēligi, -lectum
*ēdō, -ere, ēdidi, ēditum
*ēgreōdior, -gredi, -gressus sum
*expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
flingō, -ere, finxi, fictum
*gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum

*induō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum
interēō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -ītum
*iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iūnectum
*morior, mori, mortuos sum
*nuntiō (1)
obtineō, -ère, -ui, -entum
*occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsum
*potior, -iū, potitus sum + abl.
*referō, -ferre, rettuli, relātum
*retineo, -ēre, -ui, -entum

solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum
*spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsum
*spērō (1)
spirō (1)
*trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditum

go on board ship, embark
create
pick, choose, select
put forth, give out, announce
step out, go out, disembark
shape, form, invent
do, make, experience, achieve; (+ bellum, wage war)
put on, wear, dress
die, perish
join
die
announce, report
obtain, get
slay, kill
get possession of, possess
carry back, take back
retain; (+ memoriam, hold in memory, remember)
set sail, free, loosen
scatter, sprinkle
hope for
breathe
hand over, betray, surrender

ADJECTIVES

*armātus, -a, -um
*brevis, -e
*fidēlis, -e + dat.
nōnnullosus, -a, -um
*paucus, -a, -um; pauci, -orum
*quidam, quaedam, quoddam
*scelestus, -a, -um
*ullus, -a, -um

armed
short
faithful (to)
some (lit., not none)
few; a few
a certain
wicked
any

OTHER WORDS

crās
erī
bodiē
*ob + acc.
*post, adv.
*umquam
tomorrow
yesterday
today
on account of, against
after, afterwards
ever
Structure

128. Indirect statement (Oratio obliqua). Although we frequently quote the exact words of a speaker or a writer, much more frequently we form a new sentence by incorporating another’s words into it. We call direct quotations of another’s words “direct statement, or Oratio recta” and the rephrased sentence “indirect statement, or Oratio obliqua.” Consider the following examples:

**DIRECT STATEMENT**

1. Dicunt, “Marcus hodie adest.”
2. Dicunt, “Marcus heri adfuit.” or “aderat.”
3. Dicunt, “Marcus cras aderit.”

**INDIRECT STATEMENT**

1. Dicunt Marcum hodie adesse.
2. Dicunt Marcum heri adfuisse.
3. Dicunt Marcum cras adfuturum esse.

Notice that in English the indirect statement consists of a clause introduced by that and quotation marks are no longer used. In Latin there is no word for that, and the indirect statement is expressed by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative case. In each example the tense of the infinitive conveys time relative to the main verb (present infinitive—same time; perfect infinitive—prior time; future infinitive—subsequent time). The participial element (adfutūrum) of the future infinitive agrees with its subject (Marcum) in case, number, and gender. If one keeps in mind the English idea, “I consider her to be the best woman for the job,” one can understand the Latin idea of the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

Latin uses indirect statement after verbs of saying, thinking, sensing, knowing, hoping, and showing. Some of the verbs that regularly introduce indirect statement are: ait, dīcō, negō, nuntiō, nārrō, mōnstrō, scīō, nesciō, crédō, putō, audiō, videō, sentiō, spērō, and dēmōnstrō.
A. **Tense in indirect statement.** *Since the tense of the infinitive is relative to the tense of the main verb* in the sentence, it is essential that the following examples be studied thoroughly to master this relationship.

**PRIMARY MAIN VERB**

```
Dicit
(Dicet)

(1) deōs amāre poētam.  the gods *love* the poet.
(2) deōs amāvisse poētam. He says that the gods *loved* the poet.
(3) deōs amātūrōs esse poētam. He says that the gods *will love* the poet.
```

The main verb in indirect statement affects the meaning of the subsequent infinitives. The primary tenses of the main verb include the present and future; the secondary tenses are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

**SECONDARY MAIN VERB**

```
Dicēbat
(Dixit)

(1) deōs amāre poētam. the gods *loved* the poet.
(2) deōs amāvisse poētam. He said that the gods *had loved* the poet.
(3) deōs amātūrōs esse poētam. He said that the gods *would love* the poet.
```

Passively the same idea could be expressed as follows:

```
Dicit poētam

amāri ā deīs. is loved by the gods.
amātum esse ā deīs. was loved by the gods.
amātum īri9 ā deīs. will be loved by the gods.
```

B. **Reflexive in indirect statement.** If the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the main verb of saying or thinking, the reflexive pronouns are used:

```
illa dicit sē hodiē adesse. She says that *she* is here today.
ille dicit sē heri adfuisse. He says that *he* was here yesterday.
illi dicunt sē crās adfutūrōs esse. They say that *they* will be here tomorrow.
```

9This form of the passive infinitive was seldom used by the Romans.
Dicō me crās adfutūrum esse. I say that I will be here tomorrow.

Dixisti tē herī adesse. You said that you were here yesterday.

The sentences from the lesson follow the rules discussed above:

Amīcī Aesonis nuntiāvērunt puerum iām mortuām esse. The friends of Aeson reported that the boy was already dead (or had already died).

Pūthia ēdiderat nūllum esse periculum eō tempore. Pythia had replied that there was no danger at that time.

129. The use of negō. In Latin one must use the verb negō to translate "say that . . . not" instead of using dicō plus a negative word.

Negō nautam adesse. I say that the sailor is not here.

Prīnum Aeētēs negābat sē ülli vellus aureum umquam trāditūrum esse. At first Aeetes said that he would never give (surrender) the fleece to anyone.

Note that with negō the negative words numquam or nēmō, nusquam, nūllus, etc. are not used but umquam, üllus, usquam, etc., since the verb negō already contains the negative idea within itself.

130. Quīdam, quaedam, quiddam. The adjective quīdam, quaedam, quiddam is mostly declined like quī, quae, quid (quod) with the suffix -dam. The meaning is "a certain."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quīdam</td>
<td>quādam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīdam</td>
<td>quiddam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuīdam</td>
<td>cuīdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuīdam</td>
<td>cuīdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quendam</td>
<td>quiddam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quendam</td>
<td>quiddam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quūdam</td>
<td>quūdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quūdam</td>
<td>quūdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quūdam</td>
<td>quūdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quūdam</td>
<td>quūdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

quoddam may be used instead of quiddam

131. Irregular adjectives: alter, alius, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, üllus, and ünus. These seven adjectives are irregular in the Genitive and Dative case, Singular only. All the other forms are like those of bonus, -a, -um. Study the following example:
Singular                      Plural
sōlus  sōla  sōlum          sōli  sōlae  sōla
sōlius  sōlius  sōlius     sōlōrum  sōlārum  sōlōrum
sōli  sōli  sōli         sōlis  sōlis  sōlis
sōlum  sōlam  sōlum      sōlōs  sōlās  sōla
sōlō  sōlā  sōlō        sōlis  sōlis  sōlis

alter, other (of two); alius,10 other; nūllus, none; sōlus, only; tōtus, whole, all; āllus, any; unus, one.

Exercises

I. Respondete Latine ad interrogata:
  1. Quam ob rem expulit Pelias fratrem suum? (Quam ob rem, for what reason, why?)
  2. Quid erat nomen filio Aesonis?
  3. Quando misit rex nuntium Delphos?
  4. Quid ediderat Pythia?
  5. Quomodo erat habitus Iasonis novus? (habitus, -ūs, m., appearance, dress)
  6. Quis potiebatur (habebat) vellere aureo?
  7. Quid iussit Pelias?
  8. Quisnam navem aedificavit? (quisnam, who?)
  9. Quantum virorum fortissimorum delegit Iason? (quantum, how many?)
 10. Perveneruntne Argonautae ad Colchidem sine auxilio deorum?
 11. Quid primum respondebat Aeetes?
 12. Quid denique respondebat ille?

II A. Give a synopsis of the following deponent verbs with English meanings:
(consult Appendix for paradigm)

1. miror (3rd person sing.)  3. morior (1st person plu.)
2. vereor (3rd person plu.)  4. potior (2nd person plu.)

B. Give the participles and infinitives of the verbs in A with their English translation. Consult the paradigms in the Appendix for the forms.

C. Translate into English the following deponent verbs:

1. verebatur       6. locuta est
2. egressi sunt    7. egressi
3. miramini       8. potiebatur
4. potitus es      9. mirabar
5. mortuus erat   10. veriti erimus

10Alius has unique endings. The neuter singular is allud, and the genitive for all three genders is alterius.
D. Supply the correct forms of the verbs in the following sentences:
1. Puellis dona (they are giving).
2. Iason tauros (feared).
3. Iason tauros (had to yoke together). (had to — débeo, débere +
infinite)
4. Iason haec verba (spoke).
5. Aeetes vellere aureo (obtained).

III. Complete the following sentences in indirect statement by supplying
the correct infinitive. Use the adverbs hodie (today), ieri (yesterday),
and cras (tomorrow) to help clarify the time.
1. Nuntiant puerum hodie (is absent). (abesse)
2. Nuntiant puerum ieri (was absent). (abfuisse)
3. Nuntiant puerum cras (will be absent). (abfuturum esse)

The tense of the main verb below (4–7) affects the translation of these same
infinitives used above.
4. Nuntiaverunt puerum ieri (was absent). (abesse)
5. Nuntiaverunt puerum ieri (had been absent). (abfuisse)
6. Nuntiaverunt puerum cras (would be absent). (abfuturum esse)
7. Dicunt puerum (is) filium regis.
8. Putant puerum (is fleeing).
9. Primum negabat nautam (was present). (nauta, -ae, m., sailor)
10. Poeta narrat Argonautas (were called) quoque Minyas. (Minyans)
11. Nautae putant ducem (fears) tauros.
12. Negat se cras (will be present). (adsum)
13. Nauta putat navem (is here). (adsum)
14. Nauta putat navem (was here).
15. Nauta putat navem (will be here).
18. Nautae putaverunt navem (was here).
19. Nautae putaverunt navem (had been here).
20. Nautae putaverunt navem (would be here).
21. Scit enim regem vellere aureo (possessed).

IV. Supply the subject for each of the following infinitives in the indirect
statements:
1. Omnes sciunt (Pythia) esse sacerdotem.
2. Aeetes negat (he) vellus aureum traditum esse.
3. Nautae non putant (he) vellus aureum traditum esse.
4. Nuntiat (the friends of Aeson) fabulum finxisse.
5. Negavit (anyone) vereri debere.
6. *(Those women)* fabulas ficturas esse non putavit. (He did not think . . .)
7. *(A ship)* ab Argo aedificatam esse dicunt.
8. Quam ob rem dixisti (/feed) de his rebus locutum esse?
10. Iason putavit *(he)* moriturum esse.

V. In Latinum convertite (Translate into Latin):
1. Aeson’s brother wanted to rule (desired the kingdom), but he did not kill Aeson.
2. He was going to kill the king’s son, but the messengers announced that the boy was already dead.
3. Jason was wearing only one sandal because he had lost the other.
4. He says that Jason did not choose fifty very brave men.
5. Many days later Jason and the Argonauts arrived in Colchis.
6. Then the Argonauts disembarked and went (took themselves) to the palace.
7. Aeetes said, “I will surrender the fleece on this condition.” *(lex)*
8. If you plow this field and sow the dragon’s teeth, I will give you the golden fleece.
9. They did not know that this task would be very dangerous.
10. A few years later the king recalled the oracle which the priestess had uttered.

**Etymology**

**LATIN IN GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS**

Perhaps the idea of the earth being so productive, with its fertile valleys and swelling hills, provides the psychological explanation for the Earth being usually feminine in Latin, both in mythology and in grammar (terra, tellus, humus). Whatever the reason, the names of the continents of the earth are also constructed as first declension feminine nouns:

- America (North and South)
- Asia
- Europe (-a)
- Arctic (-a)
- Africa
- Antarctica
- Australia (from Latin *australis*, *south*)

The name America is derived from the name of the Italian explorer Amerigo Vespucci, whose first name was adapted by a cartographer about 1507 to designate the whole of the regions of which Vespucci had explored a part. Europe, Africa, and Asia were names already existing in antiquity, and the naming of the last three continents followed the pattern set by the earlier names.
The names of most Mediterranean lands and adjacent areas, well-known in antiquity, have come into English either intact or with a suffix change -ia to -y or -e. In the word Spain, the rough breathing (Hi-) has been dropped in English. Locate the following countries on the map of the Mediterranean area.

Graecia       Mauretania       Asia Minor       Phrygia
Italia        Numidia          Phoenicia         Lydia
Hispania      Libya            Syria             Thracia
Germania      Aegyptus         Arabia            Thessalia
Britannia     Aethiopia         Parthia           Dacia
Gallia        Cyrenaica        Ionia             Macedonia

Persia

The travels of the ancient heroes whose bold adventures provided the events of the epic tales sung in the halls of the great lords were naturally set in the lands and islands of the Mediterranean and its surrounding areas. Some of the lands the travelling bard knew first-hand; some are fancifully described; several of the heroes even make trips to the Underworld to visit departed relatives, former associates, or dead lovers. One entrance to the Underworld was the cave of Avernus near Naples (see Chapter XXXIX).

* * * * *

Identify the source of the following underlined words from the lesson:

- oracle at Delphi
- dental hygiene
- final negotiations
- naval operations
- a fine edifice for the governor
- the appellate court
- collate these pages
- send a delegate
- the last edition of the book
- no egress through this door
- a disgrace to be expelled
- at the junction of the roads

- detective fiction
- mortuary science
- annunciation to Mary
- obtain the fleece
- refer to my secretary
- retain the power
- solution to the puzzle
- sparse population
- my (in-)spiration
- tradition in the family
- armed camp
- brief encounter
- fidelity in marriage
Chapter XXIV

AMOR IASONIS


"At nisi opem tulero, tauri ignem ex ore spirabunt in eum, aut concurret hostibus armatis tellure creatis, aut avido draconi dabitur. Si hoc patiar, tum me de tigride natam esse et ferrum in pectore habere fatebor! Eum peruntem spectare non possum: tauros in2 illum hortari non possum. Di meliora dent! Tradamne ego regnum parentis atque ope mea servabitur nescio quis advena? Forsitan ille per me salvus sine me vela dabat atque vir erit alterius dum ego poenae relinquor? Si hoc facere potest et aliam praeponerem mihi, occidat ingratus! Ego autem non arbitror illum haec scelestae et nefaria facturum esse. Antea fidem det, priusquam ego auxilium ei dabo, et di testes sint! Mihi se semper deebit Iason, me in matrimonium ducet. Tum apud Graecos perque urbes eorum honorabor servatrix.


1 Let him live or let him die; it rests with the gods (lit., it is in [the hands of] the gods).
2 Against; in + the accusative has this added meaning.
"Heu me miseram, cur pericula timeo? Dicunt mediis in undis montes concurrere et Charybdem naves vastare et Scyllam periculosam nautis esse. Nihil timeo, salva in bracchiis Iasonis quem amo. Si quicquid timeo, timeo de coniuge solo." ·8

Verba

**NOUNS**

Aesonidēs, -ae, m. Jason, son of Aeson
*ars, artis, -ium, f. art, skill, profession, practice, conduct
Charybdis, -is, f. Charybdis (a dangerous whirlpool)
*ferrum, -i, n. iron, weapon, sword
furor, -ōris, m. madness
germāna, -ae, f. sister
*iussum, -i, n. order, command
*menēs, mentis, f. mind
nāta, -ae, f. daughter
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, f. cloud
[ops,] opis, f. power, aid, abundance
*ratiō, -ōnis, f. reason, order, account
Scylla, -ae, f. Scylla (a monster, a rock)
servātrix, -icis, f. savior (fem.)
tellūs, -ūris, f. earth, land
*tigris, -idis, c. a tiger
*timor, -ōris, m. fear
vēlum, -i, n. sail
*virtūs, tūtis, f. courage, manliness

**VERBS**

*arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum think, judge
*committō, -ere, -misi, -missum commit, combine, connect
*concipiō, -ere, -cēpi, conceptum conceive, hold together

---

3 *Alas, wretched me, ...*

4 This lesson's reading passage is a condensation of a much longer passage in the original of Book 7 of the *Metamorphoses* in which Medea wrestles with her conscience as the daughter of a ruler whom she believes unfair and as a woman in love with a stranger, her father's enemy. Her ability to justify what she knows to be wrong is echoed and reechoed in other stories in the *Metamorphoses*, always in the mind of a woman (Myrrha in the story of Cinyras and Myrrha; Scylla in the story of Nisus and Scylla). Perhaps this understanding of female psychology made Ovid a confidant of women and eventually caused his exile.
concurrē, -ere, -curri, -cursum + dat. meet, come up against
*exhortor, -āri, -hortātus sum urge, exhort
existimō (1) think
existuō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum extinguish, put out
*fateor, -ēri, fassus sum confess, say
gravō (1) load, burden, weigh down
*metuō, -ere, -ulī, -ūtum fear, be afraid
nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum be born, originate from
*navigō (1) sail
*nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum come to know, get to know
obstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stītum block, oppose
pereō, -īre, -ivī or -ii, -ītum die, perish
*praepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum + dat. place before, prefer
*probō (1) approve
*repugnō (1) fight back
*sequor, sequi, secutus sum follow
suādeo, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat. persuade
*subveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum + dat. come to the aid of, help, relieve

ADJECTIVES

dēterior, -ius worse, lower
*ingrātus, -a, -um unpleasant, unpleasing
*mellor, -ius better
nefārius, -a, -um impious, wicked, abominable, evil
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage
*salvus, -a, -um safe

OTHER WORDS

*anteā beforehand
*apud + acc. among
ergō therefore
*heu alas
*intrā inside
*modo just now, only now
*nescio quis, -quid, nescio quis (advena) I do not know who or what (stranger), somebody or something, some (stranger)
nihil (nīl) nothing
priusquam (conj.) before

Also used with accusative.
Structure

132. Subjunctive forms: present active and passive. Since the subjunctive mood was so frequently used by the Romans (although it is rare in English), it is absolutely essential that its forms and uses be thoroughly mastered. Learning the forms is relatively easy, since their distinguishing characteristics are clearly recognizable. In the first conjugation the characteristic vowel -a- before the personal endings in the present indicative is replaced by -e- in the present subjunctive. In the second conjugation both vowels -ea- are retained in the stem, and in the other conjugations the characteristic vowel in the present subjunctive is -a-. Except for the ending -m in the first person singular, active voice, the personal endings are the same as the ones already mastered in the indicative, both active and passive:

**Present Subjunctive Forms, Active Voice**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-e-</td>
<td>-ea-</td>
<td>-a-</td>
<td>-ia-</td>
<td>-ia-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocem</td>
<td>doceam</td>
<td>dūcam</td>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēs</td>
<td>doceās</td>
<td>dūcās</td>
<td>capīās</td>
<td>audīās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocet</td>
<td>doceat</td>
<td>dūcat</td>
<td>capiat</td>
<td>audiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēmus</td>
<td>doceāmus</td>
<td>dūcāmus</td>
<td>capīāmus</td>
<td>audīāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocētis</td>
<td>doceātīs</td>
<td>dūcātīs</td>
<td>capīātīs</td>
<td>audīātīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocent</td>
<td>doceant</td>
<td>dūcant</td>
<td>capiant</td>
<td>audiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Subjunctive Forms, Passive Voice**

| vocer | docear | dūcar | capiar | audiar |
| vocēris | doceāris | dūcāris | capīāris | audīāris |
| vocētur | doceātur | dūcātur | capīātur | audīātur |
| vocēmur | doceāmur | dūcāmur | capīāmur | audīāmur |
| vocēmini | doceāmini | dūcāmini | capīāmini | audīāmini |
| vocentur | doceantur | dūcantur | capiantur | audiantur |

133. Subjunctive forms of sum and possum. Present tense.

| siim | simus | possim | possimus |
| sis  | sītis | possis | possitis |
| sit  | sint  | possit | possint  |

134. Subjunctive mood: usage. The moods of a verb are used to express the manner (mood) in which the action is conceived, whereas the tenses express the time of the action. The indicative mood is the mood of direct assertions or questions. The imperative mood is used to issue commands, orders, or entreaties. The subjunctive mood in Latin derives from a merging of several forms with modal significance in the parent language: the
subjunctive and the optative, expressing actions willed or vividly conceived and actions wished for or vaguely conceived. When the two forms merged, further meanings were given to the subjunctive and this development accounts for the many varied independent uses of the subjunctive. Its dependent uses, however, have arisen in every case from the employment of some independent subjunctive construction in coordination with a main statement. In time the two coordinate clauses grew together into a single complex sentence, with the subjunctive clause assuming a subordinate relation to the main statement. In fact, the name subjunctive signifies a subordinate role.

135. Independent uses of the subjunctive. There are three independent uses of the subjunctive, but these constructions are merely different phases of the same use (the negative is nē).

1) The hortatory or jussive (from iussum, participle of iubeō) subjunctive is used to express a milder exhortation or command than the more direct imperative mood. This is perhaps the most important independent use of the subjunctive mood. Since the imperative mood is also used to issue commands, it is logical that the imperative be used in the second person and the hortatory or jussive subjunctive primarily in the first and third persons.

Vivat tamen!  Yet let him live! (or)
Yet may he live!
Flammae amōris
    exstinguantur.
Let the flames of love be
    extinguished.
Occidat ingrātus!
Let the ungrateful wretch die!
Hoc faciāmus!
Let us do this!
Nē hoc faciāmus!
Let us not do this!
But
Hoc fac.
(You) Do this.  (Singular)
Hoc facite.
(You) Do this.  (Plural)

2) The optative (from optō) subjunctive is used to express a wish. It is often preceded by a particle (ūtī [ut], utinam or ō sī).

Utinam dī meliōra dent!
Would that the gods may give
    better things!
Ō sī dī meliōra dent!
O that the gods may give better things! (or) May the gods give
    better things! (or) God forbid!
Ita vivam.  (Cic. Att. 5.15)
So may I live.
Valeant, valeant cīvēs meī;
May they fare well, may my
sint incolumēs.
    fellow citizens fare well; may
    they be secure from harm.
    (Cic. Mil. 93)
May I be a false prophet! (or) Would that I am a false prophet! (or) Would that I may be a false prophet!

3) The deliberative or dubitative (from dubitō) subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt or indignation.

Quid faciam? What am I to do?
Quid senātūi populōque Rōmānō dicam? What am I to say to the senate and to the Roman people?
Quid dicerem? (Imperfect Subjunctive, see following lesson) (Cic. Att. 6.3)
What was I to say? (indignation expressed)

4) The potential subjunctive expresses possibility or ability (may, might, can, could). The negative is nōn.

Quis in tālī mari nāviget? Who could sail in such a sea?
Mēdēae amantī ignoscās. You could forgive Medea for falling in love (with him).
Aliquis mihi dicit . . . Someone may tell me that . . .

Exercises

I. Respondete Latine ad interrogata:

1. Quis erat Medea?
2. Quam ob rem putavit Medea se frustra repugnare? (For what reason? lit., “on account of what thing?”)
3. Quomodo sensit Medea amorem?
4. Quid fiēt nisi opem tulerit regis filia? (fiēt, will happen)
5. Quid fētēbitur Medea, si patietur Iasonem noceri?
6. Quae magna dīxit Medea se secuturam esse?
7. Quomodo navigabit illa?
8. Cur nihil verebitur Medea?
9. Quid timet illa, si quid timet?
10. Cur dubitat Medea Iasoni opem ferre?

II A. Convert the following verb forms into their corresponding forms in the subjunctive mood, and translate:

1. laudat laudet let him praise
2. ducis ducas you may lead
3. capio capiam let me take
4. monent
B. Locate all first conjugation verbs in present tense in the reading selection and convert indicative forms into the subjunctive and vice versa.

C. Select from the reading selection at least one verb from each conjugation and conjugate each in the present subjunctive, active and passive.

III. Supply the correct form of the verbs in the following sentences, then translate:

1. (Let them give) puellis dona.
2. Quid (is to do) Iason, si tauri flammam ex ore spiraturi sunt?
3. (Let us live), mea Lesbia, atque (let us love)!
4. Hoc (let be) quod amor vocatur.
5. Quid (is to be called) hoc malum factum?
6. Ne iussa patris mihi durissima (seem).
7. Ne iam (let us hesitate), nisi veremur.
8. Falsi utinam vates (may we be).
9. Ita (may you be taught).
10. Ne (may we think) Iasonem haec scelestae ac nefaria factum esse. (or, better English, Let us not think . . .)

IV. Supply the correct Latin forms for the word or words in parentheses:

1. Medea putat Iasonem (loves) eam.
2. Aeetes putat Iasonem (will die). (morturum is fut. act. part.)
3. Iason scit vellus (is) in regno Colchide.
4. Iason putat Medeam (is) pulchram.
5. Medea credit nescio quem deum (is opposing).
6. Putantne feminae se (will be afraid)?
7. Illa femina dixit (Jason) moriturum esse.
8. Scivit enim regem vellere aureo (possessed). (potiri) or habere
10. Quam ob rem (for what reason) dixisti (she) de his rebus (had spoken)?
11. Nego virginem (loves) advenam.
12. Nauta non putat ducem suum tauros (will fear).
13. De mortuis nihil nisi bonum (let us say).
14. Ne ullus credat (he) esse (happier) aut sapientiorem quam te.
V. In Latinum convertite:
1. Let us do even greater and better deeds for our country.
2. Let the daughter of the king be able to overcome her passion with reason.
3. May they not say that my father’s commands seem too harsh.
4. A few days later the Argonauts realized that Medea had a great love for their leader.
5. He said that he had never seen a more beautiful girl.
6. Unless you bring help, we shall all die.
7. First let him give a pledge and summon the gods as witnesses.
8. I will say that no one is more faithful than you.
9. Let no one think that he can betray his friends without penalty.
10. Let parents themselves neither allow evil deeds nor commit (them).

Etymology

The adventures of Jason, whose episodic peregrinations are described in the epic of Apollonius of Rhodes, the Argonautica, are indeed a geography tour of the ancient world. Jason first crosses the Aegean, probably going along the northern coast by sailing from port to port. He stops at Lemnos, has many adventures while passing through the Hellespont and across the Black (Euxine) Sea to Colchis. After his trials to gain the fleece, Jason returns with Medea across the Euxine to the Danube; the two go up the Danube to strange semi-fictitious lands; somehow or other they get the Argo across to the Rhone and come down into the Mediterranean again. They visit “Aunt” Circe on the coast of Italy, see Scylla and Charybdis between Sicily and the toe of Italy, have an adventure on Crete and eventually return to Greece. The following name equivalents from the areas are obvious:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Islands (F.)</th>
<th>Rivers (M.)</th>
<th>Seas (N.)</th>
<th>Cities (F.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sicilia</td>
<td>Nilus</td>
<td>Mare Mediterraneum</td>
<td>Roma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corsica</td>
<td>Danuvius</td>
<td>Mare Aegeum</td>
<td>Ostia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sardinia</td>
<td>Rhodanus</td>
<td>Mare Euxinum</td>
<td>Athenae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creta</td>
<td>(Rhone)</td>
<td>Mare Caspium</td>
<td>Syracuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus, -i, f.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Delphi (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minorca (the smaller)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Troia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maiorca (the larger)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Alexandria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sparta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mycenae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Massilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Marseille)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Explain the Latin source for these underlined words from the vocabulary in the lesson:

blind fury
ferrous oxide
jussive use of the verb
mental anguish
nebular formations
rational powers
tiger, tiger, burning bright
timorous child
testify at a trial (-fy from fio/facio)
virtue is its own reward
submit to arbitration
commit yourself to work
such a commission chosen by the mayor
such a grand concept

concur with you
my estimation of him
exhort you to work
extinguish the fire
navigate these waters
perish from hunger
repugnant to me
that is a non sequitur
nefarious schemes
the situation will deteriorate
you ingrate!
ameliorate the situation
annihilate the population of the city

Postero die populi in agrum sacrum Martis convenerunt; rex ipse in medio sedit vestimentum purpureum gerens et notus sceptro eburneo. Ecce tauri appropinquabant qui tantos ignes efflabant ut herbae ignibus tactae arderent. Tamen Iason obvius ivit. Argonautae terribiles tauros videntes magnopere timuerunt, sed Aesonides nec ignes nec fumos sensit. Tantum medicamina poterant ut sine timore dextra forti iugum grave in umeris taurorum poneret et ferreo aratro campum coleret.

Mirati sunt Colchi,³ Argonautae clamoribus gavisi sunt. Tum ex galea aenea dentes serpentis excepit ut eos in agros spargeret. Humus semina mollivit et dentes tam celeriter crescebant ut nova corpora hominum fieren. Quod magis mirum erat, quisque vir arma tenebat. Graeci timebant tot homines et tot arma videntes; Medea, quae illum tumet fecerat, ubi vidit unum iuvenem ab tot hostibus peti, palluit et frigida subito sine sanguine sedit.

Iason autem saxum in hostes iecit ut a se bellum in ipsos converteret. Omnes per multa vulnera ceciderunt; Graeci gavisi sunt et Medea quoque, agens gratias carminibus et dis auctoribus horum.

¹ Of Hecate (Greek genitive singular) the three-formed goddess of mystic incantations, the crossroads, the secrets of the underworld and the deep forest. Originally a very powerful goddess of all regions in the Theogony of Hesiod, Hecate became relegated in later Greek and Roman mythology to the mystical areas of the dark worlds, the places where her worshippers like Medea, one of the few witches in mythology, would go to learn magic spells.

² You could forgive Medea loving [him] (Ignoscere takes the dative case).

³ The men of Colchis were amazed.
Superest herbis somnum draconi pervigili dare, qui horrendus custos velleris aurei erat. Iason eum aquis Lethaeis sparsit et ter dixit verba somnos placidos facientia\(^4\) ut somnus in oculos draconis veniret. Heros Aesonides vellere aureo potiebatur. Superbus spolio et portans quoque secum auctorem spolii, ipsam alterum spolium, victor ad Graeciam cum uxore nova rediit, effugiens iram patris.

**Verba**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aesonidēs</td>
<td>the son of Aeson, Jason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arātrum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>plow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bellum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*carmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>song, chant, incantation, charm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*clāmor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>shout, clamor, noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*dextra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>right hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāmus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>galea, -ae, f.</td>
<td>helmet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hecatē, -ēs, f.</td>
<td>Hecate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*humus, -ī, f.</td>
<td>ground, earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*iugum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>yoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lēthē, -ēs, f.</td>
<td>Lethe (a river in the Underworld)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Mars, Martis, m.</td>
<td>Mars (god of war)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicāmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>drug, medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*prōmissum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>promise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sceptrum, -ī, n.</td>
<td>sceptre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*sēmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spolium, -īl, n.</td>
<td>booty, plunder, spoils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umerus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*uxor, -ōris, f.</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vultus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>expression of the face, the countenance, face</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*agere grātiās</td>
<td>to give thanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum</td>
<td>be on fire, burn with love, glow, burn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*cadō, -ere, ceccidi, cāsum</td>
<td>fall, fall down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*coepi, coepisse (defective, no present system)</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum</td>
<td>turn around, alter, change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*discō, -ere, didici</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>efflō (1)</td>
<td>breathe out, blow out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^4\) Words making (causing) calm sleep.
*effugió, -ere, -fugī, -fugitum  
*excipió, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum  
*fiō, fieri, factus sum (fiō, fis, fit, fīmus, fitis, fitunt)  
mollīō, -ire, -ivi or -ī, -ītum  
palleō, -ēre, -ul  
*recéđō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum  
*supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrum  

flee, escape from  
take out, receive  
become, be made, happen (semi-deponent passive of faciō)  
make pliant, make soft, soften  
become pale  
go back, draw back, recede, retreat  
be left, remain

ADJECTIVES

*aēneus, -a, -um  
eburneus, -a, -um  
*extinctus, -a, -um  
ferreus, -a, -um  
fixus, -a, -um  
frigidus, -a, -um  
*gravis, -e  
horrēndus, -a, -um  
Lēthaeus, -a, -um  
magicus, -a, -um  
*mirus, -a, -um  
obvius, -a, -um  
pervīginis, -e  
*placidus, -a, -um  
posterus, -a, -um  
*sēcrētus, -a, -um  
tantus, -a, -um  
*terribilis, -e  
triformis, -e  
*tūtus, -a, -um  

brass, bronze, brazen  
ivory  
put out, extinguished  
iron  
fixed  
cold  
heavy  
horrible, terrible  
Lethean  
magic  
wonderful, amazing  
to meet, in the way, against, exposed to  
ever-watchful  
calm, placid  
next  
secret  
so much, so great  
terrible  
three-formed  
safe

OTHER WORDS

*ipse, ipsa, ipsum  
*magis  
*quisque, quaeque, quidque  
*subitō  
*tam  
*tot  

himself, herself, itself; pl. themselves  
more  
each, every, everyone, everything  
suddenly  
so  
so many

Structure

136. Subjunctive forms, imperfect active and passive. The imperfect forms are based on the infinitive used as a stem, with the personal endings added. The translation of the subjunctive varies with each construction:
vocarem could mean *I might call* or [with si] *if I called* or [with ut] *so that I might call*.

### Imperfect Subjunctive Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocărem</td>
<td>docĕrem</td>
<td>dūcĕrem</td>
<td>caperem</td>
<td>audirem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārĕs</td>
<td>docĕrĕs</td>
<td>dūcĕrĕs</td>
<td>caperĕs</td>
<td>audīrĕs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāret</td>
<td>docĕret</td>
<td>dūcĕret</td>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>audīret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārĕmus</td>
<td>docĕrĕmus</td>
<td>dūcĕrĕmus</td>
<td>caperĕmus</td>
<td>audīrĕmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārĕtis</td>
<td>docĕrĕtis</td>
<td>dūcĕrĕtis</td>
<td>caperĕtis</td>
<td>audīrĕtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārent</td>
<td>docĕrent</td>
<td>dūcĕrent</td>
<td>caperent</td>
<td>audīrent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperfect Subjunctive Passive

| vocārēr | docĕrēr | dūcerēr | caperēr | audīrēr |
| vocārēris | docĕrēris | dūcerēris | caperēris | audīrēris |
| vocārētur | docĕrētur | dūcerētur | caperētur | audīrētur |
| vocārēmur | docĕrēmur | dūcerēmur | caperēmur | audīrēmur |
| vocārēmini | docĕrēmini | dūcerēmini | caperēmini | audīrēmini |
| vocārentur | docĕrentur | dūcerentur | caperentur | audīrentur |

137. Dependent uses of the subjunctive: The purpose clause. The Romans used the subjunctive mood to express the purpose or reason for the action of the main verb. The “purpose” appears as a subordinate clause introduced by *ut* (*so that, in order that, to*) or *nē* (*so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, not to*).

#### Sequence

**Primary:** Venit ut mē videat. He is coming *to see me* (*so that he may see me*).

**Secondary:** Venit ut mē vidēret. He came *to see me* (*so that he might see me*).

**Primary:** Nāvem aedificat ut illā in Colchidem nāviget. He is building a ship *so that he may sail* to Colchis in it.

**Secondary:** Nāvem aedificābat ut illā in Colchidem nāvigāret. He was building a ship *so that he might sail* to Colchis in it.

**Primary:** Dux clāmābit ut militēs moneat. The leader will shout *to warn* the soldiers.

**Secondary:** Dux clāmāvit ut militēs monēret. The leader shouted *to warn* the soldiers.
Primary: Magister venit ut discipulōs doceat.
The teacher is coming to teach students.

Secondary: Magister vēnit ut discipulōs docēret.
The teacher came to teach the students.

Secondary: Mēdēa ad ārās ibat ut magicās artēs disceret.
Medea went to the altars to learn magic arts.

Secondary: Dux clāmāvit nē militēs fugerent.
The leader shouted so that the soldiers might not flee.

Secondary: Iāsōn saxum in medium iēcit ut bellum ā sē in ipsōs converteret.
Jason threw a stone into the middle to turn the war from himself onto them.

Secondary: Iāsōn draconem aquis sparsit ut somnus in oculōs draconis venīret.
Jason sprinkled the dragon with water so that sleep might come into the eyes of the dragon.

138. Sequence of tenses. Note that in each of the sentences above there is a fixed pattern for the tense of the subjunctive following the main verb. This pattern is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Subordinate Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicative</td>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary:</td>
<td>Present or Future⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary:</td>
<td>Imperfect or Perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This pattern is repeated for almost all dependent subjunctive clauses.

139. Dependent uses of the subjunctive: Result clauses. When the main clause has a modifying element of so, such a, so great, so many (sic, ita, tam, tantus, -a, -um, or tot), the subordinate clause completing the idea is called a result clause and is expressed with a verb in the subjunctive mood introduced by ut (that . . . [as a result]) or ut nōn (that [as a result] . . . not).

Tanta virtūs in Iāsone erat ut Medēa statim eum amāret.
Such great courage was in Jason that (as a result) Medea immediately loved him.

Tot vulnera habuit ut caderet.
He had so many wounds that he fell.

Tam celeriter exīvit ut régem nōn vidēret.
He left so quickly that he did not see the king.

⁵The perfect with "have" and the future perfect are also generally considered to be primary main verbs.
140. Present and imperfect subjunctive forms of sum, esse, fui, futūrum and of possum, posse, potuī:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>possim</td>
<td>possem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>possis</td>
<td>possēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>possit</td>
<td>posset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simus</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>possimus</td>
<td>possēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitis</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>possitis</td>
<td>possētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sint</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>possint</td>
<td>possent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are no passive forms for sum or possum.

Exercises

I. Respondete Latine, quaeso.

1. In quo loco est ara Hecates?
2. Quae (What things) Medea ad aram Hecates quaesivit? (at the altar of Hecate)
3. Cur potes ignoscere Medeae amanti Iasonem?
4. Quid Iason promisit ut Medea auxilium ei daret?
5. Quomodo potes recognoscere regem Aeetem ubi in medio populo sedit?
6. Qui sunt labores Iasonis quos rex Aeetes iussit eum facere ut ei vellera aurea daret?
7. Cur difficile erat iugum in umeris taurorum ponere?
8. Quae debet Iason spargere humi? Qui crescunt de seminibus sparsis? Quomodo Iason effugit?
9. Quomodo Iason draconem pervigilem in somno ponere potest?
10. Quae altera spolia Iason secum quoque aufert ubi vellera aurea aufert?

II. Subjunctive forms:

A. Write the imperfect subjunctive active and passive for the following verbs (deponent only passive):

1. specto, moneo, mitto, cupio, invenio, sum
2. miror, gaudeo, sequor, potior, pono, disco

B. Translate these verbs into Latin (review deponent verbs!):

1. I urge
2. you (sing.) follow
3. we were admiring
4. they rejoiced
5. you (pl.) admire
6. we shall follow
7. they had owned
8. we did follow
9. he had admired
10. they will have followed
III. Translate each secondary sequence subjunctive purpose clause verb into Latin and translate the sentence. Do not use infinitives.

1. Vēnit ut me in matrimonium (to lead).
2. Vēnit ut me (to teach).
3. Vēnērunt ut me (to see).
4. Vēnērunt ut regem (to kill).
5. Vēnērunt ut vellera aurea (to carry off).
6. Vēnit ut me (to watch).
7. Mane (early in the morning) vēnit ne milites eum (might not see).
8. Vēnērunt ut musicā (to enjoy).
9. Vēnī ut te linguam novam (to teach). (lingua, -ae, f., language)
10. Vēnīstī ut linguam novam (to learn).
11. Vēnimus ut (to enjoy ourselves).
12. Iason vēnit ut draconem (to kill).
13. Vēnīstis ut tauros (to watch).
14. Vēnī ut me linguam novam (you might teach).
15. Medea deam oravit ut auxilium (to give).
16. Nos Bacchum dravimus ut deus nobis vinum (to give).

IV. Write the form of tam, ita, tantus, -a, -um or sic or tot that would best complete these sentences that contain result clauses and translate each sentence.

1. _________ homines et _________ arma videbat ut magnopere timeret.
2. _________ dixit ut omnes homines pallerent.
3. _________ opus habuit ut non finire posset.
4. _________ timor feminis erat ut illae in casis remanerent.
5. _________ tempestas coepit ut nautae in terrore clamarent.
6. Medea _________ amorem habuit ut Iasonem iuvare non recusaret.
7. Tauri _________ ignes efflabant ut herbae arderent.
8. _________ celeriter homines crescebant ut statim pugnare inciperent.
9. Draco _________ horrendus erat ut omnes adire metuerent.
10. Medea _________ Iasonem amabat ut patrem suum traderet.

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Medea had such a great love that she betrayed her father.
2. Jason promised to marry (to lead in marriage) Medea so that she might give him aid.
3. Medea watches and rejoices while Jason yokes the bulls, which breathe fire.
4. Finally Jason was so brave that he put to sleep (in somnō ponere) the ever-watchful dragon and sailed away with the fleece and his new wife, Medea.
5. Jason scattered dragon's teeth in the field, but he was amazed (wondered) when the teeth grew (crescēbant) into armed men.

Etymology

LEGAL LATIN

Many of the terms for conducting business within the law courts of England, and subsequently, America came from Latin, including such basic words as:

- **legal** (lex, legis, f.)
- **jury** (ius, iuris, n.)
- **judge** (iudex, iudicis, m.)
- **justice** (iustitia, -ae, f., from iustus)

Although the words *law* and *lawyer* come from the Anglo-Saxon word *lager*, many of the important terms which the lawyer must use to express ideas and conduct business in the courts have continued to be used in the original language of Latin:

- **habeas corpus** a writ or document demanding a person's bodily appearance in order to release him from unlawful restraint (*you shall have the body*)
- **ex parte** on one side only (*by or for one party*)
- **causa mortis** (a gift) given in contemplation of and conditional upon the approaching death of the donor (*with the cause of death*)
- **amicus curiae** a party, neutral to the specific action, but not to the issue before the court, who is invited to give advice (*friend of the court*)
- **inter vivos** during lifetime, while alive (*among the living*)
- **prima facie** on the face of it (*at first appearance*)
- **ultra vires** beyond or outside the scope of the powers as defined in a charter (*beyond the powers*)
- **nunc pro tunc** applies to acts allowed to be done after the time when they should have been done with retroactive effect (*now for then*)
- **res ipsa loquitur** an obvious inference (*the situation speaks for itself*)
- **res judicata** an issue already decided (*a matter adjudged*)
- **mens rea** the basic ingredient for criminal culpability, criminal intent (*a criminal mind*)
quantum meruit a claim for goods or services unjustly enriching another (as much as [the claimant] deserves)

sua sponte voluntarily (of one’s own accord)

subpoena duces tecum process by which the court commands a witness to produce documents or papers by a threat of punishment (under penalty you shall produce [the papers] with you)

stirpes by branches of the family as opposed to per capita (roots or stalks)

pari passu equal participation, equal process (in equal step)

in pari delicto equally culpable or criminal (in equal fault)

nolo contendere no contest (I do not wish to contend the charge)

in rem in or of the thing itself

inter se a relationship between partners (between each other)

corpus delicti the body upon which the deed was done (the body of the crime)

* * * * *

Give the Latin source for the underlined words from the vocabulary:

fumes from the fire try to convert you
clamor from the street fair conversion tables
dexterous use of his hands to mollify my parents
heroic deeds cause the waters to recede
(ex)hume the body antique furniture
Martial music a horrendous tale
hold the scepter a magic act
artificial (in)semination a placid animal
the spoils of war secret signals
heavy loss due to arson a terrible experience
Chapter XXVI

FACTA MAGICA MEDEAE

In Graecia patres matresque dona pro filiis receptis ferunt, sed abest Aeson, qui iam morti vicinus est atque defessus multis annis. Tum sic ait Aesonides: "O coniunx, cui me salutem debere confiteor, si hoc facere possunt carmina tua (quid enim non possunt?), aufer a meis annis et annos ablatos addite parenti." Nec retinuit lacrimas. Medea pietate rogantis mota est et "Putasne ergo" inquit, "me spatium vitae tuae transmittere posse? Ne hoc Hecate permittat! Aequa non petis. Sed maius munus dare experiar, Iason. Arte mea ei longiorem vitam dare conabor, annis tuis non revocatis, si modo dea triformis me iuvabit."

Post tres noctes ubi cornua lunae coierunt ut Diana plenissima terras spectaret, Medea nudo pede et vestimento aperto et capillis fluentibus egreditur e domu et sola per muta silentia mediae noctis gradus fert. Omnes homines et volucres et ferae graviter dormiunt; stellae in caelo solae micant ad quas tendens bracchia Medea ter se convertit, ter in caput aquas magicas sparsit et ter magnis clamoribus deam oravit.

"Nox," ait, "fidissima et stellae aureae et luna et tu Hecate triformis quae meas artes magicas carminibus tuis iuvas, auxilio vestro ventos voco et nubes moveo; serpentis supero et saxa silvasque moveo; montes tremescere et manes ex sepulcris exire iubeo. Te quoque, luna, ex caelo traho. Nunc opus est mihi sucis per quos senectus in florem redeat et primos annos recipiat. Et dabis hos sucos mihi! Neque enim frustra stellae micant neque frustra currus draconibus pennatis tractus adest."

Ecce adest currus ex caelo dimissus in quem simul ascendit, rapitur in montes summos quo crescunt herbae magicae. Post novem dies et novem noctes, herbis collectis, Medea curru draconibus pennatis tracto rediit; dracones solum odoribus herbarum tacti pelles senectutis deposuerunt. Pro

1 Subjunctive: . . . through which old age may return into the flower (of youth), and may regain . . .

2 Laid aside the skins of old age, i.e., shed their skins.
valvis regiae duas aras aedificavit, unam dextra parte Hecatae et alteram
sinistra parte Juventuti. His sacris factis magnam fossam effodit. Tum in
guttur atrae ovis gladium conicit et fossam sanguine perfundit. Deinde cra-
teras vini lactisque addit et rogat regem umbrarum cum coniuge rapta ne
mortem senis regis properent.  

Tum iussit corpus defessum Aesonis afferri ad aras quod in plenos
somnos in herbis ponit. Hinc procul Aesonidem et hinc procul sacerdotes ire
iussit et oculos profanos removere; Medea tum capillis fluentibus in modo
bacchantum aras geminas circumit terque senem flamma, ter aqua, ter
sulphure spargit.

Intererea aeno in igne posito medicamen validum fervet et albet spumis. Addit
seminia et flores et sucos acres et lapides Oriente extremo petitos. Praeterea in
aenum iacit alas et carnes volucrum et membranae serpentis et ova et caput avis. His rebus et mille aliis sine nomine mixtis, Medea
omnia in aeno miscet ramo olivae. Ecce ramus primo viridis fit; brevi tempore
frondet et subito gravis est viridibus olivis. Quae simul ac videt stricto
ense Medea guttur senis secat; Medea veterem sanguinem effundit ut sucis
novis eum repleat. Quos postquam Aeson bibit aut ore aut vulnere, barba
capillique color em nigrum recipiunt. Pallor abit et membra valida fiunt.
Aeson miratur se iuvenem iterum esse.

**Verba**

**NOUNS**

*áënus, -i, m.* brass pot  
*ála, -ae, f.* wing  
*barba, -ae, f.* beard  
*currus, -ūs, m.* chariot  
*ēnīs, ēnis, -īnum, m.* sword  
*fossa, -ae, f.* ditch, trench  
*gradus, -ūs, m.* step, footprint  
*guttur, -uris, n.* throat  
*Juventus, -tūtis, f.* Youth  
*lac, lactis, n.* milk  
*lapis, -idis, m.* stone  
*lūna, -ae, f.* moon  
*mānēs, mānium, m. pl.* the shades of the dead  
*membrāna, -ae, f.* thin skin *(of a snake)*  
*modus, -i, m.* manner

---

3Pluto with Proserpina, his coniuge rapta (noun clause of desire, Sec. 164).
4*Profane, i.e., not sacred* (to her rites).
5*Is boiling.*
6*With foam.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mūnus, -eris, n.</td>
<td>gift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*odor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>smell, odor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oliva, -ae, f.</td>
<td>olive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*opus est mihi + abl.</td>
<td>there is a need of, I need</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Oriēns, -ientis, m.</td>
<td>the East (the land of the rising sun)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovis, ovis, -ium, f.</td>
<td>sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>õvum, -i, n.</td>
<td>egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pallor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>pallor, paleness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pecūnia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*piētās, -tātis, f.</td>
<td>respect, reverence; piety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prex, precis, f.</td>
<td>request, prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*salūs, -ūtis, f.</td>
<td>safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*sanguis, -inis, m.</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*senectūs, -ūtis, f.</td>
<td>old age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepsulum, -i, n.</td>
<td>grave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spatium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>length, space, distance, period, portion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūcus, -i, m.</td>
<td>juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulphur, -uris, n.</td>
<td>sulphur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valvae, -ārum, f. pl.</td>
<td>folding doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volucris, -cris, volucrum, f.</td>
<td>bird</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*addō, -ere, -didi, -ditum</td>
<td>add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>albeō, -ēre, albi</td>
<td>become white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ascendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsum</td>
<td>mount, ascend, go up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*circumeō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum</td>
<td>walk around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coeō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum</td>
<td>go, come together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*confiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum</td>
<td>confess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coniciō, -icere, -ieci, -iectum</td>
<td>throw, hurl; plunge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormiō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effundō, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum</td>
<td>pour out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micō (1)</td>
<td>twinkle, shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miscē, -ēre, -ui, mixtum</td>
<td>mix, mingle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfundō, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum</td>
<td>pour over, fill with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experior, -īri, expertus sum</td>
<td>test, try, attempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recipiō, -ere, -cépi, -ceptum</td>
<td>regain, take back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*reddō, -ere, -didi, -ditum</td>
<td>give back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum</td>
<td>fill up again, refill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*revocō (1)</td>
<td>call again, call back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*secō, -āre, -ui, sectum</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*transmittō, -ere, -misī, -missum</td>
<td>send across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremescō, -ere</td>
<td>tremble, quake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visitō (1)</td>
<td>visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*vulnerō (1)</td>
<td>wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES

*aequus, -a, -um  

āter, ātra, ātrum  

calidus, -a, -um  

collectus, -a, -um  

*extrēmus, -a, -um  

*fidus, -a, -um  

niger, -gra, -grum  

nūdus, -a, -um  

*pennātus, -a, -um  

strictus, -a, -um  

*validus, -a, -um  

*vetus, veteris  

fair, just

black

hot

collected

furthest, last

faithful

black

naked

winged

drawn

strong

old

OTHER WORDS

*ergō  

graviter  

quō  

simul, simul ac  

*tandem  

therefore  

heavily, deeply  

where  

as soon as  

at last

Structure

141. Perfect subjunctive forms, active and passive. The forms of the perfect subjunctive active resemble the forms of the future perfect indicative. Note carefully the difference (in first person singular and in accent):  

ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverim</td>
<td>docuerim</td>
<td>dixerim</td>
<td>cēperim</td>
<td>audīverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>docueris</td>
<td>dixeris</td>
<td>cēperis</td>
<td>audīveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>docuerit</td>
<td>dixerit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverimus</td>
<td>docuerimus</td>
<td>dixerimus</td>
<td>cēperimus</td>
<td>audīverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverītis</td>
<td>docuerītis</td>
<td>dixerītis</td>
<td>cēperītis</td>
<td>audīverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>docuerint</td>
<td>dixerint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>audīverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus sim</td>
<td>doctus sim</td>
<td>dictus sim</td>
<td>captus sim</td>
<td>audītus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus sis</td>
<td>doctus sis</td>
<td>dictus sis</td>
<td>captus sis</td>
<td>audītus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus sit</td>
<td>doctus sit</td>
<td>dictus sit</td>
<td>captus sit</td>
<td>audītus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī simus</td>
<td>doctī simus</td>
<td>dictī simus</td>
<td>captī simus</td>
<td>auditī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sītis</td>
<td>doctī sītis</td>
<td>dictī sītis</td>
<td>captī sītis</td>
<td>auditī sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātī sint</td>
<td>doctī sint</td>
<td>dictī sint</td>
<td>captī sint</td>
<td>auditī sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
142. Pluperfect subjunctive forms, active and passive. The pluperfect forms are simply the personal endings added on to the perfect infinitive:

**ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>amāvissem</th>
<th>docuissem</th>
<th>dīxissem</th>
<th>cēpissem</th>
<th>audīvissem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvisseś</td>
<td>docuisseś</td>
<td>dīxisseś</td>
<td>cēpisseś</td>
<td>audīvisseś</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisset</td>
<td>docuisset</td>
<td>dīxisset</td>
<td>cēpisset</td>
<td>audīvisset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissemus</td>
<td>docuissemus</td>
<td>dīxissemus</td>
<td>cēpissemus</td>
<td>audīvissemus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisseśis</td>
<td>docuisseśis</td>
<td>dīxisseśis</td>
<td>cēpisseśis</td>
<td>audīvisseśis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>docuissent</td>
<td>dīxissent</td>
<td>cēpissent</td>
<td>audīvissent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>amātus essem</th>
<th>doctus essem</th>
<th>dictus essem</th>
<th>captus essem</th>
<th>audītus essem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amātus essēś</td>
<td>doctus essēś</td>
<td>dictus essēś</td>
<td>captus essēś</td>
<td>audītus essēś</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātus essḗset</td>
<td>doctus essḗset</td>
<td>dictus essḗset</td>
<td>captus essḗset</td>
<td>audītus essḗset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātēssḗmus</td>
<td>doctī essḗmus</td>
<td>dictī essḗmus</td>
<td>captī essḗmus</td>
<td>audītī essḗmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātēssḗtis</td>
<td>doctī essḗtis</td>
<td>dictī essḗtis</td>
<td>captī essḗtis</td>
<td>audītī essḗtis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amātēssent</td>
<td>doctī essent</td>
<td>dictī essent</td>
<td>captī essent</td>
<td>audītī essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

143. Contrary-to-fact conditions. One of the most common uses of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive is in the contrary-to-fact condition. Imperfect subjunctive is used for the present time, and pluperfect for past time in both the *si* clause and the conclusion:

**Imperfect:**  
*Si rēx essem,*  
pecūniam omnibus darem.  
If I were king, I would give money to all.

**Pluperfect:**  
*Si rēx fuissem,*  
pecūniam omnibus dedissem.  
If I had been king, I would have given money to all.

**Pluperfect:**  
*Si rēx fuissem, pācem fecissem.*  
If I had been king, I would have made peace.

**Imperfect:**  
*Si ālās habērem,* ad lūnam volārem.  
If I had wings, I would fly to the moon.

**Pluperfect:**  
*Si ālās habuissem,* ad lūnam volāvissem.  
If I had had wings, I would have flown to the moon.

**Imperfect:**  
*Si pecūniam habēret,* novum carrum emeret.  
If he had money, he would buy a new car.

**Pluperfect:**  
*Si pecūniam habuisset,* novum carrum ēmisset.  
If he had had money, he would have bought a new car.

**Pluperfect:**  
*Nisi pennātīs serpentibus in*  
If she had not gone into the sky with her winged serpents,
aurás ivisset,
Médeā poenās
nōn ēvitāvisset.

Medea would not have escaped punishment.

144. Subjunctive perfect and pluperfect forms of sum and possum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive perfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fuissemis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerimus</td>
<td>fuissemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueritis</td>
<td>fuissetis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerint</td>
<td>fuissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

145. Dative with certain verbs: Ten verbs whose meaning implies a “to” idea take the dative case as an object. Note the alternate English meaning for each:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crēdō</td>
<td>trust, put faith in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignoscō</td>
<td>forgive, give pardon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperō</td>
<td>command, give orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noceō</td>
<td>harm, do harm to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parco</td>
<td>spare, be lenient to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō</td>
<td>obey, be obedient to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuādeō</td>
<td>persuade, be sweet to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placeō</td>
<td>please, be pleasing to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servīō</td>
<td>serve, be slave to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>studeō</td>
<td>study, direct energy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tibi crēdō.
Ignosce mihi.
Caesar militibus imperat.
Mēdeā puellis persuādet.
Iuvenēs parentibus nōn pārent.

I trust you.
Forgive me.
Caesar commands the soldiers.
Medea persuades the girls.
Young people do not obey their parents.

146. Dative of compound. Certain verbs whose meaning is altered or compounded by the addition of prepositions at the beginning of the Latin verb take the dative case as an object. The following prepositions often alter the verb meaning to change the object to the dative case: ante, ob, prae and sub, although compounds of ad, circum, com- (con)-, in, inter, post, pro, re-, and super may also govern the dative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc. Object</th>
<th>Meats verba dicō.</th>
<th>I say many things (words).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat. Object</td>
<td>Meis discipulis praedīcō ut audiant.</td>
<td>I instruct my students to listen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

I. Respondete Latine, quaeso.
   1. Cur Aeson, filio tuto, laetus non erat?
   2. Quid est factum bonum quod Medea pro Aeson fecit?
   3. Quae dea carminibus Medeae adiuvat?
   4. Quo (in) loco crescunt herbae magicae?
   5. Quomodo currus Medeae volat?
   6. Quibus deabus Medea duas aras construxit?
   7. Quo ramo Medea omnes herbas in aeno miscuit?
   8. Quid fit ramus?
   9. Quomodo Aeson sucos bibit?
  10. Quid fit Aeson?

II A. Give the conjugation of *voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatum* in the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive, active and passive.

B. Translate each of the following verb phrases:
   1. ut effugerit
   2. si effugisset
   3. ut pervenerimus
   4. si pervenissemus
   5. ut repleat
   6. ut repleverit
   7. si replevisset
   8. ut mittat
   9. ut miserit
  10. si misisset

III. The following verbs take the dative case for the object. In each case there is the idea of “to” implied in the verb. Put an object in the dative case from the list of pronouns given (mihi, tibi, ei, nobis, vobis, eis, sibi) and translate the idea into English.

   1. Credo ____________
   2. Ignosco ____________
   3. Impero ____________
   4. Noceo ____________
   5. Parco ____________
   6. Pareo ____________
   7. Persuadeo ____________
   8. Placeo ____________
   9. Servio ____________
  10. Studeo ____________

IV. Many verbs which take the accusative direct object or a predicate nominative form take a dative direct object when compounded. Notice the following examples:

   Erat imperator. He was the commander.
   Praeerat exercitui. He was in command of the army.
   Hostem pugnavit. He fought the enemy.
   Fratri tuo repugnavit. He opposed your brother.
Using the preceding sentences as models, complete the following Latin sentences using the dative case for the object of the compound verbs.

1. Iason haec verba dixit.
   Iason (miles) praedixit
   (instructed) ut pugnarent.

2. Sum magistra.
   Praesum (am in charge)
   (discipulus).

3. Sum dux.
   Praesum (exercitus).

4. Fecit bellum.
   Praefecit (put in charge)
   (miles) Marcum.

5. Marcus in primis stat.
   Praestat (surpasses)
   (omnis).

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Medea had left her country and (had) betrayed her father so that she could marry Jason.
2. After a long journey Jason and Medea returned to Greece and Medea gave Aeson back his youth.
3. Medea built two altars, one on the right to Hecate and one on the left to Youth.
4. Medea poured new blood into Aeson and in this manner gave him back his youth.

After the Interim Reading translate the following sentences:

5. With false friendship Medea promised to restore Pelias (Pelian, acc.) and she persuaded (with dative) his daughters to cut him up.
6. Medea fled in her chariot with winged serpents to the palace of Aegeus after she had killed the daughter of the king of Corinth and also her own sons.

Etymology

**MEDICAL LATIN**

The medical profession relies heavily on Latin terms for anatomy, for fields of specialization, for directives and for prescriptions:

**Anatomical Terms**

- capillary (capillus, hair)
- nasal, (nasus, nose)
- oral (os, oris, mouth)
- ocular (oculus, eye)
- lacrimal (lacrima, tear)
- aural (auris, ear)
- jugular (jugulum, throat)
- ovary (ovum, egg)
- fertile (fero, bear)
- valve (valva, door)
- disk (discus, a circular plate)
- cerebrum (cerebrum, the brain)
- cerebellum (diminutive of cerebrum)
- dorsal (dorsum, back)
brachial (bracchium, arm) ventral (venter, belly)
flexur (flexum, bent) iris (Iris, the rainbow)
pectoral (pectus, pectoris, chest) canine (canis, dog)
intestine (intus, inside) incisor (incisus, cut)
foetus, fetus, (fetus, offspring) tibia (tibia, leg bone)

Consult a standard dictionary for the etymology of the following medical terms:

- operation
- transplant
- observation
- monitor
- cardiac
- infarction
- coronary
- cancer
- benign
- malignant
- formula

- convulsion
- circumcision
- mental
- doctor
- dentist
- internist
- podiatrist
- pediatrician (Greek, pais, paidos, child)
- dermatologist (Greek, derma, skin)
- npo (nihil per os, nothing by mouth)
- prescription

* * * * *

Identify the Latin words from which these English words are derived:

- hold my camera
- addiction to a drug
- attend the coronation
- ascend to the peak
- second grade
- confession of one’s sins
- begin to lactate
- emission standards
- lapidary science
- expert advice
- lunatic asylum
- merge on the left
- Mediterranean Sea
- mixture of the old and the new
- remove the membrane
- persuade people to vote
- mode of living
- replete with good advice
- all that was mortal in him
- retention of water
- the Orient express (from orior, rise)
- the transmission is broken
- ovulation cycle
- visit to the hospital
- pallor of his skin
- equal to each other
- piety in children
- collect evidence
- salutary effect
- Niger River
- a nude model
- bury him in the sepulchre
- veteran of foreign wars
- sanguinary war
- valid evidence
- sulphuric acid extreme cold or heat
- a valve in the heart
- frustrating experience
INTERIM READING III:
FACTA MALA MEDEAE


---

1 To inflict punishment on (de).
2 Amicitia, -ae, f., friendship (capit here means took in or won over).
3 To grow young again.
4 Agnus, -I, m., lamb.
5 MergO, -ere, mersi, mersum, dip, immerse.
6 Bleating.
7 Similia, -e, + gen., like, just like.
8 Room, bedroom, bedchamber.
9 Lectus, -I, m., bed.
10 Ictus, -lis, m., blow, stroke.
11 Blind.
12 SurgO, -ere, -rexI, -rectum, rise, rise up.

Nisi pennatis serpentibus in auras ivisset, Medea poenas non evitavisset. Fugit alta super montes et oppida usque Corinthum. Quo in oppido post multis annos Iason alteram uxor quarebat. Aesonides in matrimonium filiam regis Corinthii ducere speravit ut (ita dixit) pro Medea et filiis duobus suis domum tutam faceret. Medea hanc iniuriam sine ira non fert et filiae regis vestimenta magica et coronam cum veneno misit quae ignara filia induit. Statim haec et pater qui eam servare temptavit per tota corpora ardebant. Tum Medea, regia cremata filiisque suis ense suo necatis, Athenas et ad regiam Aegei fugit; ita curru serpentibus pennatis tracto arma iramque Iasonis effugit.

---

13 Cadē, -ere, cecidi, casum, fall.
14 Calidus, -a, -um, hot.
15 Persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum (+ dat.: see Sec. 145).
16 A poisonous crown (corōna, -ae, f., crown; venēnum, -i, n., poison).
17 Unwittingly, unaware.
18 Ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum, burn.
19 Cremō (1), burn, consume by fire.
20 Aegaeus, -ei, m., Aegaeus, king of Athens.
Theseus

The many tales woven around Theseus, the legendary king of Athens, are richly embroidered with threads of love and adventure on the loom of prehistory and archaeology. The first episodes of his heroic adventures occur at his birthplace, Troezen, as he claims the tokens, the sword and the sandals, left by Aegeus, his mortal father. He then becomes a local folk hero as he travels through the Isthmus, clearing it of fantastic monsters and robbers, his adventures being climaxed by his arrival in Athens to reveal himself to King Aegeus. The inference that Poseidon is also his father-protector is a continuing theme in Mary Renault’s two novels of the Theseus myth, *The King Must Die* and *The Bull from the Sea*, the latter based on Theseus’ later adventures after he becomes King of Athens. Ann G. Ward’s *The Quest for Theseus* reconstructs the Bronze Age archaeological settings both in Crete and in Athens against which the stories are projected.

Aegeus’ joy at acknowledging his princely son is short-lived, since the threat of tribute to King Minos of Crete hangs over the city. Theseus contrives to join the young Athenians who are sent to be devoured by the Minotaur housed in the labyrinth beneath the palace at Knossos. Once there, he is befriended and aided by the Princess Ariadne, who teaches him the secret of the labyrinth and the means of escaping from it. In return, Theseus takes her with him after he has slain the monster, but he abandons her on the island of Naxos on the voyage home. As he nears Attica on the return trip, he forgets to raise the white sail, the signal to his father that he is alive. Aegeus, waiting at Cape Sounion, assumes that his son has died and throws
himself into the sea which thereafter bears his name, the Aegean.

Theseus then becomes king of Athens and with his friend Pirithous, king of the Lapiths, has many further adventures, including the famous fight which occurs at the latter's wedding when the centaur relatives of the groom get drunk and behave in a most unseemly manner. The ensuing battle is depicted on the metopes of the Parthenon on the Acropolis in Athens. Another of his adventures with Pirithous might have ended in catastrophe, when the two were caught in Hades trying to steal Proserpina, had not Hercules, the mighty kinsman of Theseus, descended to that dreary place and forcibly removed him from the seat of forgetfulness.

Theseus emerges also as the just and wise ruler of the city of Athens, its lawgiver and sagacious prince. He marries the Amazon queen Hippolyta, who later dies fighting at his side in battle after she has borne him his beloved son Hippolytus. When this son has grown to become a handsome youth, Theseus marries again, taking as his bride the young princess Phaedra, sister of Ariadne. Phaedra falls madly in love with the young Hippolytus; and when her love is rejected, she kills herself in shame, after first writing a letter to Theseus accusing Hippolytus of having violated her. Theseus, believing the false accusation, banishes his son from the kingdom. The young Hippolytus, driving along the coast road, is thrown to his death from his chariot when the horses rear at an apparition from the sea. Theseus learns the truth too late and grieves at having caused the death of his only son.

Theseus befriends others in grief, particularly Oedipus, when that tragic figure, now blind, is wandering as an outcast. He is also invited to aid in settling the bloody strife at Thebes, after the princes of Argos have intensified the internecine war between the brother princes of the city. After Theseus' troops have established order, he forbids the soldiers to pillage or sack the city, and in all his later roles he emerges as a peacekeeper, an arbiter, a judge, a wise ruler and lawgiver, as contrasted with his much envied kinsman Hercules, whom he so admired, who represents the hero of physical strength. Tragically, Theseus dies in a foreign land, betrayed by a neighboring king while a guest in his court.
Possunt quia posse videntur. They can do it because they believe they
Virgil, Aen. V.231 can (seem to be able to do it).

Chapter XXVII
THESEUS TROEZENE


Avus Pittheus, valde conatus ei persuadere ut iter per mare faceret, ei navem offerebat; Theseus autem, cupiens similem Herculis cognati1 se facere, per isthmum ire constituit ut populos periculo liberaret; nam scivit illum regionem esse plenam monstrorum et latronum.

Primo die Theseus prolem claviferentem2 Vulcani superavit; postea clavam illius semper portabat, memoriam primae victoriae. Deinde ille occidit Sinem magnis viribus male usum qui tam validus erat ut pinus ad terram curvare posset. Arboribus solutis corpora hominum late per aera iaciebat. Eum Theseus eodem modo necavit.

Sequens3 viam secundum oram, Theseus venit ad montes altos. Nam scivit in quo loco Sciron latro habitaret et in quo saxo sederet. Hic latro peregrinatoribus imperavit ut pedes lavarent; sed cum hi se inclinabant ut ita

1His kinsman Hercules.
2Compound descriptive participle made up of ferens (bearing) and clavam (club or cudgel); Cf. mortiferum (bringing death) and the name Christopher (Christ-Bearer); this monster was named Periphetes, the son of Vulcan.
3Deponent verbs can have present active participles: sequens, -entis, following. See Sec. 121.

257
facerent, ille eos in mare ictu pedis demisit. In mari ingens turtur illos devorabat. Theseus autem pedes Scironis lavare recusavit. Quem\(^4\) e saxo sublatum in mare iecit. Prope Eleusinam heros suem feram interfecit ut agricola in illo loco nunc securus ruri agros suos arare posset.

Alii tyranni et latrones a Theseo superati sunt, in quibus erat Procrustes qui incolas prope Athenas terrebat. Traditum est eum habuisse lectum ferreum in quo omnes peregrinatores ponebat. Si quis hospes longior erat, aut caput aut pedes secabat. Si quis minor erat, Procrustes eum tendebat ut lecto aptaret. Aegides Procrusten\(^5\) in eodem lecto necavit.

Multi poetae narrant quomodo Theseus alios latrones monstraque superaverit et in quibus regionibus populi vota publica fortissimo heroi suscipiant. Factus erat heros, filius idoneus regi Atheniensium.

**Verba**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Aegēs, -ei, m.</em></td>
<td>Aegeus (king of Athens)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aegidēs, -ae, m.</em></td>
<td>son of Aegeus, Theseus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aethra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Aethra (princess of Troezen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athēniensis, -īnum, m.</td>
<td>the inhabitants of Athens, the Athenians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clāva, -ae, f.</td>
<td>club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eleusina, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Eleusis (a very ancient city of Attica)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hospes, hospitis, c.</td>
<td>a host, a guest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ictus, ictus, m.</td>
<td>blow, stroke, beat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isthmus, -ī, m.</td>
<td>the Isthmus of Corinth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latrō, -ōnis, m.</td>
<td>robber, brigand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lectus, -ī, m.</em></td>
<td>bed, couch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Neptūnus, -ī, m.</em></td>
<td>Neptune (god of sea)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ōra, -ae, f.</em></td>
<td>shore, sea shore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peregrinātor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>stranger, traveller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pinus, -īs or -ī, f.</td>
<td>pine tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitthēs, -ei, m.</td>
<td>Pittheus (grandfather of Theseus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procrusteis, -ae, m.</td>
<td>Procrustes (a robber)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōles, -is, f.</td>
<td>off-spring, son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regō, -ōnis, f.</em></td>
<td>region, land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rūs, rūris, n.</em></td>
<td>the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sciron, -ōnis, m.</td>
<td>Sciron (a brigand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinis, -is, m.</td>
<td>Sinis Pinebender (a mythical robber)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solea, -ae, f.</td>
<td>shoe, sandal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūs, suis, c.</td>
<td>pig, sow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thēsēs, -ei, m.</td>
<td>Theseus (son of Aegeus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^4\)See Sec. 160.  
\(^5\)Greek accusative ending.
Troezen (a city in Argolis)
turtle
tyrant
prayer, offering, vow
Vulcan (god of fire)

**VERBS**

- aptō (1) + dat. fit to, adapt to
- arō (1) plow, cultivate
- curvō (1) curve, bend, arch
- *démittō, -ere, -misit, -missum send away, send down
- *discēdō, -ere, -cessit, -cessum depart, go away
- expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum put out, display, show
- inclinō (1) bend, bend over
- *occidō, -ere, occidi, -cissum kill
- *offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum offer, present
- *persuādeo, -ere, -suñsi, -suñsum + dat. persuade
- *proficiscor, -ciscī, -fectus sum set out
- rectūs (1) refuse
- *suscipiō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum undertake, offer
- terreō, -ere, -ul, -itum terrify
- *tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātum raise
- *trādītūr, trādent* use

**ADJECTIVES**

- aptus, -a, -um fitting, suitable
- *ferreus, -a, -um iron
- idōneus, -a, -um suitable
- *publicus, -a, -um public
- *puerilis, -e boyish
- Troezēnius, -a, -um of Troezen (a city of Argolis)
- sécrurus, -a, -um secure, free from care
- similis, -e + gen. or dat. like
- solūtus, -a, -um loosened, freed

**OTHER WORDS**

- *quam ob rem for this reason
- *quis, quid anyone, anything, someone, something
- *secundum + acc. after; by, along
- valdē strongly, very hard
Structure

147. Review and synopsis of subjunctive forms: The forms of the subjunctive are most easily mastered when seen as a unit in a synopsis of a single person and number. Notice the rules apparent from these synopses in the third person singular.

**ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>amet</td>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>ducat</td>
<td>capiat</td>
<td>audiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>amāret</td>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>dūceret</td>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>audīret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>dūxerit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperf.</strong></td>
<td>amāvisset</td>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>dūxisset</td>
<td>cēpisset</td>
<td>audīvisset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td>moneātur</td>
<td>dūcātur</td>
<td>capiātur</td>
<td>audīātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>amāretur</td>
<td>monerētur</td>
<td>dūcerētur</td>
<td>caperētur</td>
<td>audīrētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>amātus</td>
<td>monitus</td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>captus</td>
<td>auditus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperf.</strong></td>
<td>amātus</td>
<td>monitus</td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>captus</td>
<td>auditus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Easiest, of course, is the imperfect, which consists of the infinitive plus personal endings, active and passive. These forms are very commonly used and they are easy to recognize and to produce. With the present tense forms, the trick to remember is that the first and third conjugation verbs reverse their characteristic vowels:

\[
\text{amā} \quad \text{(stem)} \quad \text{duce} \quad \text{(stem)}
\]

\[
\text{Subj.:} \quad \text{amet} \quad \text{amētur} \quad \text{ducat} \quad \text{ducātur}
\]

Second conjugation uses both vowels:

\[
\text{monē} \\
\text{moneat} \quad \text{moneātur}
\]

3rd-io and 4th conjugations are conjugated like 3rd with an i preceding the a:

\[
\text{capiat} \quad \text{audiat} \\
\text{capiātur} \quad \text{audiātur}
\]

Perfect subjunctive forms resemble the future perfect indicative and differ only in the first person singular (erim instead of erō) and in accent caused by vowel lengthening.

Pluperfect forms active consist of the perfect infinitive (-isse) plus the personal endings. The passive forms in the perfect system consist of the perfect passive participle plus the forms of sum in the subjunctive written as separate words.
There is, of course, no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive since the philosophy or logic of this mood lies in the unreal world of future possibility or probability. Whether the subjunctive verb is used independently to express a wish or a desire (would that, if only) or a potential possibility (may, might) or whether it is used dependently in a clause of purpose, result, indirect question, desire, or characteristic, the whole idea of the subjunctive implies a vague, potential, or hypothetical situation and hence a future time. Therefore there are no future tenses in the subjunctive.

148. Indirect question. Another very common use of the subjunctive is in a subordinate construction called the Indirect Question. Such indirect questions depend on a declarative verb of telling, knowing (or not knowing), asking, wondering, and the like. They are really noun clauses introduced by interrogative words such as quis (who), quid (what), cūr or quam ob rem (why), quōmodo (how), ubi (when or where), (in)quō locō (where), and the like.

Scit quis sīs. He knows who you are.
Rogant cūr veniēs. They are asking why you are coming.
Thēseūs Aethram rogāvit cūr ea sē hūc addūceret. Theseus asked Aethra why she was leading him to this place.
Thēseūs Aethram rogāvit cūr ea sē hūc addūxisset. Theseus asked Aethra why she had led him to this place.
Multi poētae narrāvērunt quōmodo Thēseūs monstra superāret. Many poets told how Theseus overcame the monsters.
Multi poētae narrāvērunt in quibus regiōnibus populi vōta Thēseō susciperent. Many poets told in what regions the people offered prayers to Theseus.

149. Sequence of tenses. In all of the above examples there is a fixed pattern for the use of tenses in the subjunctive following the tenses of the main verb in the indicative. The scheme is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Main Verb)</td>
<td>(Subordinate Clause Verb)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PRIMARY SEQUENCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present or Future</th>
<th>Present (same time as main verb)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Perfect (time before main verb)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6The perfect with "have" and the future perfect are also generally considered to be primary verbs.
SECONDARY SEQUENCE

Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect

Imperfect (same time)

Primary Sequence

Pluperfect (time before)

Rogat (rogābit) cūr veniās.

He asks (will ask) why you are coming.

Rogat (rogābit) cūr vēnerīs.

He asks (will ask) why you came.

SECONDARY SEQUENCE

Rogābat (rogāvit, rogāverat)
cūr venīrēs.

He asked (has asked, had asked)
why you came.

Rogābat (rogāvit, rogāverat)
cūr vēnissēs.

He asked (has asked, had asked)
why you had come.

This relationship of tenses holds true for most subordinate clause usage with introductory indicative verbs.

150. Útor with the ablative case. Several deponent verbs have the peculiarity of governing the ablative case for their direct objects. The logic appears when the verb Útor, to use, is understood as meaning make use of. In the reading, the perf. pass. part. (translated in the active sense) governs the ablative magnis viribus male ūsus, using his great powers evilly or making bad use of his great powers. The verbs fungor (perform) and vescor (feed on) also use the ablative case in this manner.

151. Locative case. Place where may be expressed by the preposition in with the ablative case: in mari, in viis, in the sea, on the roads, but with the names of cities and small islands no preposition is used and the locative case is used instead. The locative always expresses place where. Its forms are taken from the other cases. In the first and second declensions the forms resemble the genitive in the singular and the ablative in the plural. Since the names of cities are frequently plural, be prepared to recognize both cases as locative:

Rōmae at Rome
Athēnis at Athens
Corinthi at Corinth
Thēbis at Thebes

In the third declension the forms are like the dative or ablative, both singular and plural:

Carthāgini or Carthāgīne at Carthage
Troezēnī or Troezēne at Troezen

The words domi and rūri (at home and in the country) are regularly used to indicate place where without a preposition.
The accusative case without a preposition indicates place to which for cities, small islands and domum and rūs (home and to the country).

| Rōmam | to Rome       | Thēbās | to Thebes |

Exercises

I. Respondete Latine, quaeso.
   1. Quis erat pater Theseo?
   2. Quis erat mater ei?
   3. Quis quoque tradebatur fuisse pater ei?
   4. Ubi Theseus crescebat?
   5. In quo loco Aegeus soleas et gladium celavit?
   6. Quid debebat Theseus facere ut soleas et gladium caperet?
   7. Cur Theseus desiderabat iter facere per isthmum?
   8. Quomodo necavit Theseus Sinem?
   9. Quomodo Procrustes peregrinatores curabat?
 10. Ad quam urbem Theseus proficiscebatur?

II. Give a synopsis of the subjunctive forms of: apto, persuadeo, dimitto, suscipio, and offero. Use a different person and number for each verb.

III A. Construct sentences of your own using the following verbs in the indicative and the subjunctive, illustrating the primary and secondary tense sequence usage:

   cur (why)
   Nescio quomodo (how) rex bellum gerere (wage war)
   (I do not know) ubi (where)

B. Rewrite the Quaestiones of Exercise I as Indirect Questions introduced by Scivi.

   1. Scivi quis esset pater Theseo.

IV. Review the usage of locative forms and prepositions with names of cities, regions, islands and "home" and "the country." Complete each idea with either ibam or habitabam.

   1. to Athens Athenas ibam.
   2. at Athens Athenis habitabam.
   3. home (going) ____________________
   4. in Attica (a region) ____________________
   5. to Rome ____________________
   6. at home ____________________
   7. in the country ____________________
   8. at Troezen ____________________
V. Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. Aegeus, king of Athens, was the father of Theseus, and Aethra, daughter of Pittheus, was his mother.
2. Neptune also is said by many poets to have been his father.
3. Theseus grew up in Troezen, but when he was a strong young man he removed the stone which covered the sandals and sword of his father and set out for Athens.
4. Theseus wanted (volebat) to free the people of Corinth from monsters and tyrants.
5. Sinis used his great strength to bend pine trees to the ground.
6. Sciron killed travellers who had to bend over to wash his feet (purpose clause).
7. Procrustes stretched his guests to fit his bed (purpose clause).
8. Even today poets tell how Theseus freed the isthmus from danger.
9. Theseus asked his mother why she had led him to the rock.
10. Aegeus will ask Theseus how he came to Athens.

Etymology

CHURCH LATIN

The Roman Catholic Church, which used Latin for centuries as a vehicle of communication for ideas in both the spoken and written language, has bequeathed many Latin words directly to English. Within the last few decades sweeping changes within the Church have required that local languages be substituted for previous Latin prayers and liturgy, but there remains a body of terms which remind one of the historical development of the Church via the legacy of its language.

advent (advenire, to arrive)
angel (angelus, angel)
ascension (ascendere, to ascend)
Beatitudes (beatus, blessed)
benediction (bene + dicere, well + to speak)
commandment (commandare, to command)
communion (communis, common, shared)
congregation (con + gregare, to collect)
confession (*confessum, confessed*)
confirmation (*confirmare, to strengthen*)
consecration (*consecrare, to consecrate*)
convent (*convenire, to come together*)
conversion (*convertere, to turn together*)
creation (*creare, to create*)
Credo (*credo, I believe*)
curate (*curare, to care for*)
Dominus vobiscum (*Lord be with you*)
immaculate conception
(*immaculata, without stain or blemish, pure, conceptum, conceived*)
missionary (*missum, having been sent*)

Consult a standard dictionary for the etymology of the terms below:

resurrection  coronation  providence
sacrament  crucifix  relic
sacrifice  nativity  religion
temptation  excommunication  remission
Trinity  novice  sanctuary
unity  pontiff  vespers
altar  procession  vigil
cardinal  profane  vulgate
ex cathedra  reformation  mass

* * * * *

Explain the derivation of the following words from the lesson’s vocabulary:

*Aegean* Sea  *terrify all strangers*
*hospitality* in that city  *curve of the earth*
*isthmus* of Corinth  *use all your powers*
*Marathon* runner  *puerile* behavior
*regional representation*  *public worship*
*a votive offering*  *secure in the confidence of his love*
the *tyrant* overthrown  *apt to win*
incline *his head*  *second prize; second the motion*
Dum Theseus Troezene crescit, Aegeus Medeam\(^1\) in regnum accipit ad quod haec curru serpentibus pennatis tracto fugit postquam regiam Corinthi accenderat filiosque suos ense necaverat. Aegeus hanc accipit, neque satis hospitium est, sed se Medeae foedere thalami quoque iungit, nam sperabat se arte Medaeae filium procreaturum esse. Non adhuc Theseum vivere cognovit.

Iamque Theseus aderat filius parenti ignarus, qui virtute sua bimarem isthmum pacaverat. At tamen Medea eum recognovit simul ac in urbem pervenit; quam ob rem mala invidiae Aegeo persuasit ut Theseum in regiam invitat ut necaretur. Cum hic in convivium iniret, illa vino venenum miscuit quod Aegeo dedit ut ipse nato ignaro daret. Hoc mortiferum\(^2\) venenum, quod Medea secum attulerat, olim factum est de spumis albis quibus Cerberus agros latratibus sparsit, dum Hercules eum ex Orco\(^3\) aufert. Theseus iam poculum datum ignara dextra sumpserat, cum pater in ornamento eburneo gladii signa sui generis recognovit et ab ore Thesei poculum abiecit. Medea autem cantans carmina magica necem effugit nebulis motis, cum facinus patere videret.

At pater, cum laetus esset nato tuto invento, tamen miratus est se nefas ingens paene commisisse. Di prohibuerunt quin\(^4\) filium suum necavisset! Accendit igitur aras deorum ignibus. Nulla dies fertur\(^5\) celebrior quam illa Athenis. Pater et populus carminibus heroem celebraverunt. ‘‘Tu, maxime Theseu, amaris ab omnibus incolis Isthmi. Tutum iter nunc patet peregrinis. Si desideramus numerare et facto bona et annos tuos, facto superant annos. Pro te, fortissime, vota publica suscepimus; tibi poculum vini bibimus.’’

---

\(^1\) Fabullam de Medea in Capitibus XXIV–XXVI legistis.

\(^2\) Death-bearing.

\(^3\) Orcus, -i, m., is another poetic name for Hades. It is an area in the lower regions.

\(^4\) The gods prevented him from killing his own son.

\(^5\) Is considered. The passive of ferō has this possible meaning.

Verba

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Androgeus, -ei, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Cerberus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convivium, -ii, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crēta, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facinus, -oris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foedus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*genus, -eris, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hospitium, -ī, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*labyrinthus, -ī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātrātus, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Mīnōs, -ōs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minōtaurus, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*nebula, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nefās, indecl., n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nec, necis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*plausus, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^6\) As a guest. Ut can mean as in this sense, though no word for as is necessary. Androgeus hospes would have the same meaning with hospes an appositive.

\(^7\) The temple was probably located on the Acropolis, the high place of the city.

\(^8\) Pasiphae, the wife of Minos, conceived an illicit passion for a beautiful white bull (see next chapter). The offspring of this unnatural union was the Minotaur, who was imprisoned by Minos in a labyrinth built by Daedalus beneath the palace at Knossos.
**pŏculum, -i, n.** drinking cup, goblet

**spūma, -ae, f.** foam, froth

**thalamus, -i, m.** marriage couch, marriage, bedroom

**venēnum, -i, n.** poison

**voluptās, -tātis, f.** pleasure, delight

**VERBS**

*abiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum* throw down, aside

**accendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum** kindle, set on fire

**accidō, -ere, -cidī** fall down, happen

**celebrō (1)** praise, honor

*interficīō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum* kill

*invītō (1) invite*

**pācō (1)** make peaceful

*pateō, -ēre, patui* lie open, be disclosed, be revealed

**prōcreō (1)** beget offspring

**sacrificō (1)** sacrifice

**ADJECTIVES**

*albus, -a, -um* white

**biformis, -e** two-formed

**bimaris, -e** lying between two seas

**celeber, -bris, -bre** celebrated

*ferox, -ōcis* savage, wild

**ignārus, -a, -um** unknowing, unaware of, unknown

**patrius, -a, -um** fatherly, parental

*potēns, potentis* powerful

**tristis, -e** sad, gloomy

**OTHER WORDS**

*quam* (after a comparative) than

**quin** but that, from . . . doing (*see note in Lesson*)

**Structure**

152. *Cum* as a preposition and as a conjunction.

A. The word *cum* as a preposition can mean “with” or “accompanied by” to express either manner or accompaniment.
cum amore with love
magnō cum amore with much love
cum patre filiōque with the father and son

B. Cum as a subordinate conjunction introduces several kinds of subordinate clauses with the following possibilities of meaning:

1. **Cum with the indicative** mood indicates time when in simple temporal clauses:

   - Cum vocās, respondeō. When you call, I reply.
   - Cum vocābis, respondēbō. When you (will) call, I shall reply.

   *Cum* with the pluperfect tense is used to express the idea of “whenever,” when the main verb is in a past tense.

   - Cum Rōmam vēnerat, ivit ut mātrem vidēret. Whenever he came to Rome, he went to see his mother.

   The past tenses of the indicative with *cum* are limited to expressions of the exact time concurrent with the happening of events in the main clause. More frequently when *cum* is used with the past time, the subjunctive mood is used to indicate the circumstances or cause of the events in the main clause.

2. **Cum with the subjunctive** mood indicates the circumstances, cause or concession under which the events of the main clause occur.

   a. **Cum circumstantial** (when)

      - Cum Caesar iter per Galliam faceret, ad Rhodanum pervēnit. When Caesar was marching through Gaul, he arrived at the Rhone.

      - Cum Caesar iter per Galliam fēcisset, ad Rhodanum pervēnit. When Caesar had marched through Gaul, he arrived at the Rhone.

   b. **Cum causal** (because or since)

      - Quae cum ita sint,10 Caesar Rōmam ibit. Since these things are so, Caesar will return to Rome.

      - Quae cum ita essent, Caesar Rōmam rediit. Since these things were so, Caesar returned to Rome.

      - Cum Androgeus missus esset in periculum ab Aegēō, Minōs bellum parāvit. Because Androgeus had been sent into danger by Aegeus, Minos prepared for war.

---

9 *Nota bene*: position of *cum* between adjective and noun. *Cum* may be omitted if the noun is modified by an adjective: magnō amōre.

10 Frequently the *cum* is postpositive, especially after *Quae*. 
c. Cum concessive (although)

Cum laetus esset nātō tutō
inventō, tamēn11 Aegeus
mirātus est . . .

Although he was overjoyed at
finding his son safe,
nevertheless Aegeus was
astonished that . . .

153. Temporal conjunctions. Time relationships in subordinate clauses can be expressed by many subordinate conjunctions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Indicative or Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ubi</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ut</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quandō</td>
<td>when, at the time when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dum12</td>
<td>while; as long as, until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōnec</td>
<td>until</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antequam</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postquam</td>
<td>after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simul ac</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(atque)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The conjunctions in the first column usually take the indicative in the perfect or the historical present. The conjunctions in the second column usually take the indicative if the time element is a fact or a clear possibility; they govern the subjunctive if they indicate purpose or expectancy or vague possibility.

154. Adjectives with the dative case. Certain adjectives like grātus (pleasing to) and cārus (dear to) take the dative case. The adjective ignārus can take several different constructions in its active meaning of ignorant of, unacquainted with, but in its passive meaning of unknown it takes the dative case.

fīlius parentī ignārus
a son unknown to his father

155. Irregular comparison of adjectives. Most adjectives follow the rules for the comparative and superlative forms already presented (see Sec. 124).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laetus, -a, -um</td>
<td>laetior, laetius</td>
<td>laetissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier</td>
<td>happiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. Several adjectives ending in -lis (facilis, difficilis, similis, humilis, gracilis), however, are irregular in forming the superlative by adding -limus, -lima, -limum to the base of the word:

---

11 Tamēn in the main clause signals that cum means "although."
12 Dum generally is used with the present indicative to denote continued action in past time. Dum with the subjunctive means as long as or until.
facilis, -e      facilior, facilius      facillimus, -a, -um
easy           easier            easiest

Other adjectives in -lis form their superlatives regularly.

B. All adjectives ending in -er (in the masculine) form their superlative
by adding -rimus, -rima, -rimum to the whole word; miserrimus.

miser, -era, -erum  miserior, -ius  miserrimus, -a, -um
miser, -era, -erum  most wretched

sacer, -cra, -cram  sacrior, sacrius  sacerrimus, -a, -um
sacer, -cra, -cram  most sacred

acer, acris, acre    acrior, acrius    acerrimus, -a, -um
acer, acris, acre    most bitter

C. Review the irregular comparison of the most common adjectives:
bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus, in Sec. 124.

Adverbs formed from these irregular superlatives are as follows:

laetissimē  most joyfully
facillimē  most easily
miserrimē  most wretchedly
sacerrimē  most sacredly
acerrimē  most bitterly

156. Word mosaic or arresting word order. Note how effectively tight the
word order makes the line and the idea expressed in the following
excerpt:

... currū serpentibus pennātīs ablātō
... in her chariot, carried aloft by winged serpents

Although this criss-cross technique is a poetic usage, it is still effective
in a line of prose to express an idea in a tight, succinct fashion.

Exercises

1. Respondete Latine, quaeso.
   1. Quos ense necaverat Medea?
   2. Cur Aegeus Medeam in matrimonium duxerat?
   3. Quod facinus Medea temptavit?
   4. Cur facinus Medeae non fieri potest?
   5. Quibus signis filium recognovit Aegeus?
   6. Quomodo Aegeus gratias deis demonstravit?
   7. Estne Theseus dignus esse filius regis?
8. Cur Minos bellum facere volebat?
9. Quis erat Androgeus? Cur Athenis aderat?
10. Quomodo taurus albus in Graeciam portabatur?

II. Decide which is the best translation for *cum* in each sentence and then translate:

1. Quae cum ita sint, Minos bellum facere desiderat.
2. Cum Aegeus laetus esset quod Theseus adesset, tamen miratus est quod paene filium suum necaverat.
3. Cum in regiam intravisset, Theseus patrem recognovit.
4. Cum venenum in poculum posuisset, Medea id Aegeo dedit.
5. Cum Theseus se similem Herculis esse vellet (*wanted*), per isthmum ire desideravit.
6. Cum Theseus patrem recognosceret, tamen Aegeus filium adhuc non recognovit.
7. Cum Theseus in regno patris adesset, magnum gaudium (*joy*) in urbe erat.
8. Cum Medea venenum secum haberet, facile hoc in poculum vini ponere potuit.
9. Cum Theseus filius Aegeo esset, tamen rex adhuc de filio nescivit.
10. Cum Medea advenam viderat, timuit.

III. Translate the following forms; complete each idea with either *ibam* or *habitantam*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>into English:</th>
<th>into Latin:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domi</td>
<td>1. to the island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruri</td>
<td>2. at Athens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athenis</td>
<td>3. in Crete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romae</td>
<td>4. at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Creta</td>
<td>5. in Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in urbe</td>
<td>6. home (going home)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domum</td>
<td>7. in the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romam</td>
<td>8. in Sicily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athenas</td>
<td>9. at Carthage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carthagine</td>
<td>10. in Thebes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. Translate this epigram of Martial:

*Non amo te, Sabidi, nec possum dicere quare.*

*Hoc tantum possum dicere: non amo te.*

**Sabidi:** vocative, Sabidius

**quare:** why

**hoc tantum:** only this
Do you know the English version of this epigram?
I do not love thee, Doctor Fell,
And why it is I cannot tell,
But this I know and know full well,
I do not love thee, Doctor Fell.

It was written by Tom Brown, who, having been expelled from his college in England, was given a chance to be reinstated by the Dean, one Doctor Fell, who required that the young man translate this epigram. The student did so, substituting the name of his dean for Sabidius.

V. In Latinum convertite:

1. Medea tried (use conor) to give Theseus poison by means of a cup of wine.
2. When Aegeus recognized his son, he immediately prevented him from drinking it. (prohibeo + acc. + infinitive)
3. Medea fled in her winged chariot (rephrase in Latin to say: in her chariot drawn by winged serpents) singing her evil song.
4. Theseus was praised because he was the son of the king and because he had freed the isthmus from many great dangers.
5. The kingdom at Athens, however, was not joyful because the Athenians were afraid of a war with Crete. (timeo, -ere + acc.)

Etymology

BIOLOGICAL, BOTANICAL, AND ZOOLOGICAL LATIN

Latin, the language of scholars and scientists, was widely used as the source for names given to identify objects in the physical world. The following constitutes a beginning list of such names in the various disciplines:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lumen</td>
<td>a unit of light, passageway</td>
<td>lumen, light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locus</td>
<td>place or position</td>
<td>locus, place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flagellum</td>
<td>whip-like appendage</td>
<td>flagellum, whip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in vivo</td>
<td>in life, alive</td>
<td>vivus, living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in vitro</td>
<td>in glass, in a tube, in the laboratory</td>
<td>vitrum, glass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in situ</td>
<td>in natural position</td>
<td>situs, position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovum</td>
<td>egg</td>
<td>ovum, egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genus</td>
<td>classification between family and species</td>
<td>genus, kind, clan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>species</td>
<td>classification lower than a genus</td>
<td>species, appearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virus</td>
<td>poison or disease</td>
<td>virus, venom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Consult a standard dictionary for the meanings and source of the following terms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Botanical Terms</th>
<th>Zoological Terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pollen</td>
<td>floral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stamen</td>
<td>cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arboretum</td>
<td>fungus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conservatory</td>
<td>order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lilium</td>
<td>palm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floral</td>
<td>cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cell</td>
<td>caecum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fungus</td>
<td>cilium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>foetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palm</td>
<td>cloaca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>villus</td>
<td>simian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caecum</td>
<td>fossil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cilium</td>
<td>canine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foetus</td>
<td>leonine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloaca</td>
<td>papilla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similar lists could be compiled from the fields of geology, astronomy, physics, or chemistry—all scientific investigation into the physical world. Throughout history, scientists all over the world have given Latin names (sometimes their own names Latinized) to objects identified in the physical universe. Many times local names also exist, but the Latin names have provided an international language for the identification of plants, animals, and other phenomena. Ficus (fig tree) and pinus (pine tree) provide a clear reference, whether the botanist lives in America, Russia, Greece, or Iran.

* * * * *

From the vocabulary of the lesson identify the Latin source for the synonyms of the underlined words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Synonym</th>
<th>Latin Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jolly, party mood</td>
<td>c-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kindness to a guest</td>
<td>h-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path through the maze</td>
<td>l-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bull-headed monster</td>
<td>m-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud formations</td>
<td>n-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thunderous clapping</td>
<td>(ap)p-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous poison</td>
<td>v-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensuous creature</td>
<td>v-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low degree of poverty</td>
<td>ab-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perform a ceremony</td>
<td>c-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please come, don’t wait for an</td>
<td>i-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the process of reproduction</td>
<td>p-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one’s own wishes</td>
<td>v-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>powerful ruler</td>
<td>p-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between two seas</td>
<td>b-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one who does not know</td>
<td>i-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a powerful agent</td>
<td>p-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter XXIX
THESEUS CRETAE

Neptunus, deus maris, album taurum pulchrum Minoi donaverat ut sibi sacrificaretur; taurus autem erat tam pulcher ut Minos ipse taurum conservaret. Neptunus, qui regem punire voluit, fecit ut Pasiphaë, coniunx eius, taurum amaret; adultera ligno taurum saevum deceperat ut fetum discordem utero ferret.\(^1\) Dum Minos bellum gerit, opprobrium generis creverat et adulterium foedum reginae monstro biformi patebat. Minos hunc pudorem thalamo removere et eum multiplici domo sub regiam celare constituit.

Daedalus, qui celeberrimus in arte aedificandi erat, hunc labyrinthum construxit qui lumina in errorem variarum viarum multis flexibus duceret. Non aliter Maeandrus in agris Phrygiis ludit et ambiguo lapsu fluit et refluit; occurrens sibi, aquas incertas nunc ad fontes, nunc ad mare apertum ducit. Tot sunt camerae, tot sunt viae ut Daedalus ipse vix ad limen revertere posset. Tanta est fallacia tecti.

Quo Minos celaverat geminam figuram tauri iuvenisque et bis monstrum sanguine Athenienses pastum erat mortis causa Androgei.\(^2\) Tertia sors autem (nam iuvenes Athenienses ad Cretam missi sorte lecti erant) mortem Minotauro dedit. Nam Theseus quamquam filius regis erat, tamen inter alios iuvenes navigare constituit ut patria minotauri liberaret. Si navis, Minotauro necato, reveniat,\(^3\) velo albo naviget;\(^3\) iuvenibus necatis, velo atro. Hoc futurum est signum Aegeo.

Cum navis in Cretam perveniret, familia regalis in litus descendit ut iuvenes Athenienses videret. Minos, qui de factis et parentibus Thesei audiverat, nunc vidit quam formosus et fortis heros esset. "Estne Neptunus vere pater qui te iuvet?" inquit Minos et anulum de digito in mare iecit.

---

\(^1\)Daedalus had constructed a wooden cow into which the adulterous queen crawled to deceive and mate with the bull.

\(^2\)Androgeus, Minos' son, had been allowed to go on a boar hunt while a guest of Aegeus in Athens and had been killed; his death became the pretext for the tribute demanded of Athens to be sent to Crete every nine years.

\(^3\)Subjunctive: \textit{If the ship should return . . . , it would sail . . .} (see Sec. 170).
"Refer mihi hunc anulum, signum parentis divini." Theseus, qui virtutem ad fortitudinem addit, orans deos omnes et magnopere Neptunum se in mare submergit; mox cum anulo a Nereo dato revenit.

Ariadna, filia Minois, quae omnia haec opera spectaverat, statim Theseum amavit. Cum omnes Athenienses spero effugiendi dimitterent, virgo regalis spero novam dedit, nam Theseum quaesivit et consilium ei proposuit quo ambo effugerent. Primo heroi filum gladiumque dedit (alii dicunt eum secreto gladium patris reteneuisse); deinde eum exitum e labyrintho docuit qui a Daedalo aedificatus erat. Dixit oportere eum ligare in postem ianuae filum quod Theseus evoluturus esset4 dum Minotauro appropinquet. Monstro gladio necato, filum glomerandum erat3 Theseo qui tum omnes amicos educeret. Pro tanto beneficio Aegides promisit se Ariadnam in matrimonium ducetur esse et eam Athenasconiugem portaturum esse. Auxilio virginis ianua difficilis a Theseo iterum inventa est. Rebus gestis Theseus a Creta cum sociis filiaque regis navigavit.

Ariadna rapta, Aegides protinus ad insulam Diam6 vela dedit. Qua in insula alii dicunt Theseum virginem reliquisse; alii dicunt Ariadnam in litore relictam esse ab heroe quem in navem conscendentem subita tempestas auferret. Desertae virgini multa querenti Bacchus amorem opemque tulit et coronam de fronte Ariadnae in caelo posuit ut perennis stella foret clara. Aut forte aut voluntate deorum Ariadna facta est coniunx et sacerdos Dionysi.

Verba

NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adulterium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>adultery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anulus, -i, m.</td>
<td>ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Ariadna, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Ariadne, daughter of Minos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beneficium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*camera, -ae, f.</td>
<td>box, chamber, room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Daedalus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Daedalus (an inventor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Dia (an old name for Naxos)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Dionysus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Dionysus (god of wine and the liquid principle in life)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*error, -ōris, m. | error, wandering, mistake
| fallācia, -ae, f. | trick, deceit
| fētus, -ūs, m.   | fetus
| filum, -i, n.    | string
| flexus, -ūs, m.  | bending, turning
| fortitūdo, -inis, f. | strength
| frōns, -ntis, f. | forehead

4The subjunctive is used here both because of the relative purpose clause and because of the subordinate clause within indirect statement, a construction explained on p. 291, Sec. 165.

5The string had to be wound up by Theseus who then would lead out.

6Dia is an ancient name for Naxos, the island in the Aegean on which Theseus abandoned Ariadne.
XXIX Thēseus Crētae 279

*iānua, -ae, f.
lapsus, -ūs, m.
*lignum, -i, n.
limen, -inis, n.
*lūmen, -inis, n.
Maeandrus, -drī, m.
Naxos, -i, f.
Nērēus, -ei, m.
opprobrium, -ii, n.
*opus, -eris, n.
*Pāsīphāē, -ae, f.
*patria, -ae, f.
socius, -ii, m.
*sors, sortis, f.
uterus, -i, m.
voluntās, -tātis, f.

door

gliding, falling

wood

threshold

light, eye, life

Meander River

Naxos (the island)

Nereus (a sea god)

scandal, disgrace

work, labor

Pasiphaē (wife of Minos)

fatherland

companion, ally

lot, chance, lottery

uterus, womb

will, wish

VERBS

*conservō (1)
*constituō, -uere, -ui, -stītūtum
construō, -ere, -struxī, -structum
dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum
*dīmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum
ēvolvō, -ere, -volvi, -volūtum
foret (futūrum esset)
*libet, -ēre, libuit
*licet, -ēre, licuit
*ligō (1)
*occurrō, -ere, -currī, -currum + dat.
*oportet, -ēre, oportuit
pasco, -ere, pāvi, pastum
*placēt, -ēre, placuit
prōpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum
pūniō, -ire, -ivi, -ītum
queror, -i, questus sum
refluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum
*reveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum
submergō, -ere, -mersī, mersum

keep, preserve

decide, determine

build, construct

deceive

send away, let go, abandon

roll out

would be

it is pleasing

it is permitted

bind, tie, fasten

run, run against

it is necessary

feed

it is pleasing

propose

punish

complain

flow back

come back, return

submerge, plunge into

ADJECTIVES

dēsertus, -a, -um

discors, -cordis

deserted

inharmonious, discordant
280 Latin via Ovid

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foedus, -a, -um</td>
<td>abhorrent, abominable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiplex, -icis</td>
<td>multiple, with many windings and turnings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perennis, -e</td>
<td>perennial, eternal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrygius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Phrygian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*rēgālis, -e</td>
<td>royal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*saevus, -a, -um</td>
<td>savage, fierce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subitus, -a, -um</td>
<td>sudden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*varius, -a, -um</td>
<td>different, varied, various</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OTHER WORDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aliter (ac)</td>
<td>otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ambō, -ae, -ō</td>
<td>both (of two)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bis</td>
<td>twice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*crūdēlīter</td>
<td>cruelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mox</td>
<td>soon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn aliter</td>
<td>not otherwise, i.e. just as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proplius</td>
<td>closer; closer and closer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōtinus</td>
<td>immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam</td>
<td>how</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Structure**

157. Relative clauses with the indicative. The relative pronoun qui, quae, quod, which you have already learned in Section 100, may be used to introduce adjectival clauses which describe a noun antecedent.

Pasiphaē, quae erat coniunx
Minōis, taurum amāvit.

Taurus quem Neptunus Minōī
dōnāverat erat pulcher.

Pasiphaē, who was the wife of Minos, loved a bull.
The bull which Neptune had given to Minos was beautiful.

158. Relative clauses with the subjunctive.

A. Relative clauses of characteristic: When the descriptive nature of the subordinate adjectival clause is not of the simple, factual kind, as in the above sentences, but rather tells the sort of person that the antecedent is or may be, then the less definitive mood, the subjunctive, is used to indicate this less factual nature.

Haec est fēmina quam in theatrō vidi.

Haec est fēmina quam in theatrō videam.

She is the woman whom I saw in the theater. (a definite person)
She is the sort of woman whom I may see in the theater. (the kind of person whom I would see in the theater)
Notice the less factual, less definite, less real nature of the second example. Keep this difference in mind and you will understand the subtle change in meaning from the simple relative clause to the relative clause of characteristic.

Estne Neptunus vērē pater qui tē iuvet? Is Neptune really the sort of father who may help you?
(who would help you)?

B. Relative purpose clause. The relative pronoun introducing a subordinate clause with the subjunctive may be used to give variety to the normal ut clause to express purpose.

Thēseus ēduxit amicōs qui effugerent. Theseus led out his friends so that they might escape.

The same idea could be expressed by using ut instead of qui.

159. Impersonal verbs: oportet, licet, libet, placet. Frequently Latin uses the third person singular of certain verbs to introduce an infinitive construction which may be translated in English in a variety of ways to express necessity, permission, or pleasure.

Oportuit eum ligāre in postem filum quod ēvolverētur. It was necessary for him to tie on the doorpost the thread which would be unwound.
(or)
He had to tie on the doorpost the thread which would be unwound.
(or)
He should tie on the doorpost the thread which would be unwound.

Mihi lūdere licet. It is permitted for me to play.
(I may play, am allowed to play.)

Mihi lūdere libet. It is pleasant for me to play.
(I like to play.)

Respondēte, si vōbis placet. Reply, if you please (lit., if it is pleasing to you). French, R.S.V.P.

160. Relative Pronouns used to introduce a sentence. The relative pronoun, which normally is used within the sentence to refer to an antecedent, may be used in Latin to introduce a sentence or even a paragraph. Its

---

6Licet, libet, and placet take dat. + infinitive; oportet takes acc. + infinitive.
antecedent may be found in the preceding sentence and the pronoun is
best translated as a personal pronoun or a demonstrative.

**Quō (in locō)** Minōs cēlāverat
geminam figūram taurī
juvenisque.

**Quem ē saxō sublātum in mare
iēcit.**

*In this place (lit., in which place)*

Minos had concealed the twin
figure of bull and youth.

Then he lifted *him* from the rock
and threw *him* into the sea. (*lit.,
whom lifted from the rock*)

161. **Facere ut.** A special causal expression is used to indicate the idea of
*bringing about or making happen* in the phrase *facere ut* with the sub-
junctive:

**Neptūnus fēcit ut Pāsiphaē
taurum amāret.**

Neptune *caused* Pasiphaē to fall
in love with the bull.

(*brought it about that . . . *)

(*made it happen that . . . *)

162. Gerund used in the genitive. The gerund is a *verbal noun* made by
adding -nō (-ō, -um, -ō) to the stem of the verb.⁷ It is a second de-
clension neuter noun declined *only* in the singular of the genitive, da-
tative, accusative, and ablative cases, since the infinitive is used in the
nominative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>III-io</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.: of loving</td>
<td>amandi</td>
<td>videndi</td>
<td>dūcendi</td>
<td>capiendi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.: to loving</td>
<td>amandō</td>
<td>videndo</td>
<td>dūcendo</td>
<td>capiendō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.: loving</td>
<td>amandum</td>
<td>videndum</td>
<td>dūcendum</td>
<td>capiendum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(object)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.: by loving</td>
<td>amandō</td>
<td>videndō</td>
<td>dūcendō</td>
<td>capiendō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A common use of the gerund is the genitive used to complete an objective
idea in such phrases as:*

**ars aedificandi**

the art of building

**spēs effugiendi**

the hope of escaping

**facultās dicendi**

opportunity of speaking

The use of the gerund is beautifully illustrated in this passage from
Ecclesiastes in the *Old Testament*:

Omnia tempus habent, et suis spatiis transeunt universa sub caelo.
Tempus nascendi et tempus moriendi,

---

⁷Note *capiendi* and *scienedi* in 3rd -io and 4th conjugations.
tempus plantandi et tempus evellendi quod plantatum est,
tempus occidendi et tempus sanandi,
tempus destruendi et tempus aedificandi,
tempus flendi et tempus ridendi,
tempus plangendi et tempus saltandi,
tempus spargendi lapides et tempus colligendi,
tempus amplexandi et tempus longe fieri ab amplexibus,
tempus adquirendi et tempus perdendi,
tempus custodiendi et tempus abiciendi,
tempus scindendi et tempus consuendi,
tempus tacendi et tempus loquendi,
tempus dilectionis et tempus odii,
tempus belli et tempus pacis.
Quid habet amplius homo de labore suo?

*Liber Ecclesiastes III. 1–9*

**Verba**

*spatium, -ii, n., space, prescribed path*
*üniversus, -a, -um, whole, entire; the whole world, everything*
*plantō (1), plant*
*ēvellō, ere, -vellī, -volsum, tear out*
*sanō (1), heal*
*dēstruō, -ere, -läxi, -lēctum, destroy*
*plangō, -ere, -ānxī, -anctum, beat, lament, wail*
*saltō (1), dance*
*colligō (conligō), -ere, -lēgi, -lēctum, collect*
*amplexor, -āri, -ātus sum, embrace*
*adquirō, -ere, -quisīvi, -quisitum, accumulate*
*perdō, -ere, -dīdi, -ditum, throw away*
*custodiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, keep back, preserve, hoard*
*scindō, -ere, scidi, scissum, tear apart, divide*
*consuō, -ere, -sui, -sūtum, sew together, mend*
*dilectō, -ōnis, f., choosing love*
*amplius, more, further*
*pax, pacis, f., peace*

**Exercises**

1. Respondete Latine, quaeso.
   1. Quis taurum Minoi donaverat?
   2. Cur Neptunus Minoem punire voluit?
   3. Quomodo Neptunus Minoem punivit?
   4. Ubi Minos monstrum celare constituit?
   5. Cui Minos opus labyrinthum aedificandi dat?
6. Estne facile effugere e labyrintho? Cur non est?
7. Quomodo lecti sunt iuvenes qui missi sunt ad Cretam?
8. Quid erit signum si Theseus monstrum necaverit?
9. Quomodo Theseus Minotaurum superavit?
10. Cuius auxilio Theseus a Creta effugit?

II. Supply the correct form of qui, quae, quod, according to the case required in the subordinate clause and the number and gender of the antecedent; then translate the sentence.
1. Pasiphae erat regina __________ erat adultera.
2. Minotaurus erat monstrum __________ Minos sub regiam celavit.
3. Daedalus erat artifex __________ Minos opus labyrinthum aedificandi dedit.
4. Iuvenes __________ cum Theseo navigaverunt fortes amici in itinere fiebant.
5. Insula ad __________ iuvenes navigaverunt erat Creta.
6. Minotaurus __________ iuvenes pasti sunt sub regia in labyrintho habitavit.
7. Ariadna statim Theseum amavit __________ filum et gladium dedit.
8. Ariadna Theseo docuit consilium __________ labyrinthus aedificatus erat.
10. Aegeus erat pater _(whose)__ filius a(j Cretam navigaverat.

III. Write each ut clause as a relative purpose clause, after translating:
1. Minos naves Athenas misit ut iuvenes ad Cretam portarent.
2. Aegeum iuvenes mittere oportuit ut Minotauro sacrificerentur.
3. Ariadna Theseo filum dedit ut e labyrintho educeretur.
4. Defessi ad insulam Diam navigant ut dormiant.
5. Theseum navigare velo albo oportet ut Aegeus filium salvum esse sciat.

IV. Change each relative clause to a relative clause of characteristic and translate both sentences:
1. Hoc est animal quod in silva vides.
2. Quercus est arbor qui in Africa non crescit.
3. Theseus est heros quem in hac fabula invenis.
   quem solum in fabulis __________.
4. Ariadna erat filia quae non erat fidelis patri.
5. Haec est fabula quae non credibilis est.
V. Supply the correct form of the impersonal verb.
1. __________ Theseum navigare cum iuvenibus aliis. (Theseus has to ... oportet)
2. __________ Theseo monstrare fortitudinem in litore Cretae. (It is permitted ...)
3. __________ Ariadnae Theseum adiuvare. (It is pleasant for Ariadne to help Theseus)
4. __________ Baccho Ariadnam servare. (It is pleasant for Bacchus to save Ariadne)
5. __________ Theseum velo albo navigare. (Theseus has to ...)

VI. In Latinum convertite:
1. While Minos was waging war (use the present tense of gerô), the monster grew large in the womb of his wife.
2. Neptune made Pasiphaë fall in love with the bull because Minos had not sacrificed to him.
3. When Minos was no longer able to conceal the disgrace to his marriage couch, he made (Sec. 161) Daedalus build a labyrinth beneath the palace.
4. Maidens and youths who had no hope of escaping were fed every nine years (novenis annis) to the Minotaur.
5. Theseus decided to sail with the other youths to free his country.
6. When Theseus arrived in Crete Minos tried to test his courage and bravery, and hoped that he would drown in the sea.
7. Luckily the gods helped Theseus and caused Ariadne to fall in love with the hero.
8. Ariadne gave Theseus a string by which he might find the way through the many blind passages (vias caecas) of the labyrinth.
9. Either by chance or by the will of the gods, Ariadne was left on the island of Dia where she became the priestess of Bacchus.
10. Unfortunately Theseus did not sail home with the white sail on his ship.

Etymology

PSYCHOLOGICAL LATIN

Modern psychiatry, deriving from the investigations of Sigmund Freud and his followers, has given English many words derived from Latin or Greek words and from mythological sources, which took on a new symbolism as applied to human behavior. The following words are typical of the contribution made by this science to the English language.
id (neut. of is, it)

ego (ego, I)

psyche (Greek, psyche, soul)

suppression (suppressum, pressed under)

subliminal (sub + limen, under the threshold)

libido (libido, desire)

oral (os, oris, mouth)

anal (anus, anus, ring)

Consult a dictionary for the meaning and etymology of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>complex</th>
<th>dementia precox</th>
<th>eros</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>neurosis</td>
<td>dementia senilis</td>
<td>Oedipus complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychosis</td>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>Electra complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hysteria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* * * * *

Match the words in the two columns and identity the Latin source for the words in the second column:

1. faithlessness
2. an orgy
3. wandering from the right course
4. tricky, deceitful
5. embryo
6. great strength of mind
7. family
8. doorman (literally)
9. a sliding from the path, a slip
10. just under the threshold
11. following a winding and turning course
12. shame or disgrace
13. great effort in many arts combined in a single program
14. love for the fatherland
15. the womb
16. the quality of moral excellence
17. wishful
18. save energy
19. punishing action
20. something made
21. place to feed

| a. opera (opus, pl. opera, work) |
|---|---|---|
| b. fallacious |
| c. janitor |
| d. adultery |
| e. Meandering |
| f. punitive |
| g. pasture |
| h. (sub)liminal |
| i. lapse |
| j. genus |
| k. Bacchanalia |
| l. patriotism |
| m. uterus |
| n. construction |
| o. virtue |
| p. error |
| q. fortitude |
| r. conserve |
| s. voluntary |
| t. foetus (fetus) |
| u. opprobrium |
Cum Theseus ad Graeciam rediret, aut commotus cogitatione laetitiae patris aut regis oblitus navem velo albo non ornavit; Aegeus qui velum atrum ex arce vidit se in mare iecit et mortuos est. Mare nominabatur Aegaeum, huius regis causa et exitus maesti.

Ita Theseus factus est rex, Aego mortuo, et sapiens dux per multos annos populo Atheniensi auspicium felix et iura iusta dedit. Tum Athenae habebantur domus libertatis, urbs prima totius orbis. Non iam Athenae ad Cretam tributum lamentabile mittere debeat. Templum floribus coronatur; populus Minervam cum Iove disque aliis honorat quorum templum sanguine voto munerebusque datis turibusque decorat.


Alii Aegidem rogaverunt ut auxilium daret, imprimis septem principes qui bellum contra Thebanos gesserunt, quorum rex Creon eos vetuerat corpora interfectorum humare. Victi Theseum imploraverunt ut Thebanos cogere met ne hanc rem facerent. Non solum illa opem fert, sed etiam sapiens vetuit milites suos urbem captam vastare; mortuis sepultis pacem in terra tota fecit.

Oedipum quoque fugientem in exsilio recepit cum hic miser nunc

---

1Pirithoüs, king of the Lapiths, was Theseus’ best friend.
2See story in Chapters XVII and XVIII.
3Meleager, son of the king of Calydon, loved Atalanta.
4Vetō, vetāre, vetul, vetitum, forbid, prevent. Creon’s refusal to allow the burial of the dead is central to the plots of both Sophocles’ Antigone and of Euripides’ Suppliants.
caecus cum filiabus duabus errabat.\textsuperscript{5} Herculī amicitiam Theseus fert post-quam ille furens coniugem et liberos necaverat et postea in sanitatem mentis revenerat. Aegides semper Herculem miratus etiam post tantum factum malum ei persuasit ne se necaret. Hercule comite, Theseus traditur in terra Amazonum bellum gessisse. Cum Athenas rediret Hippolytam reginam earum secum rettulit quae maxime amata filium Hippolytum peperit. Haec autem infelix pugnans iuxta Theseum in proelio necata est.

\textbf{Verba}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{Amāzon, -onis, f.} Amazon (\textit{female warrior})
\item \textit{arx, arcis, f.} citadel
\item \textit{auspicium, -i, n.} guidance, divination
\item \textit{Calydōn, -ōnis, f.} Calydon (\textit{a city in Greece})
\item \textit{*canis, canis, -um, c.} dog
\item \textit{cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f.} thinking
\item \textit{exsilium, -ii, n.} exile
\item \textit{*furor, -ōris, m.} madness, insanity
\item \textit{*Hippolyta, -ae, f.} Hippolyta (\textit{queen of the Amazons})
\item \textit{*Hippolytus, -i, m.} Hippolytus (\textit{son of Theseus})
\item \textit{*iūs, iūris, n.} law, justice
\item \textit{laetitia, -ae, f.} joy
\item \textit{*libertās, -tāris, f.} liberty
\item \textit{Meleager, -gri, m.} Meleager (\textit{prince of Calydon})
\item \textit{moenia, -ium, n. pl.} city walls, fortification, ramparts
\item \textit{*Oedipus, -i, m.} Oedipus (\textit{king of Thebes})
\item \textit{pastor, -ōris, m.} shepherd
\item \textit{Pirithoūs, -i, m.} Pirithoůs (\textit{friend of Theseus})
\item \textit{*princeps, -cipis, m.} chief, leader, prince
\item \textit{*proelium, -i, n.} battle
\item \textit{sanguis, -inis, m.} blood
\item \textit{sānītās, -tāris, f.} sanity, health
\item \textit{sūs, suis, c.} sow, swine, pig, boar
\item \textit{tribūtum, -i, n.} tribute
\item \textit{tūs, tūris, n.} incense
\item \textit{vēnāatrix, -icis, f.} huntress
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{5}Oedipus wandered in exile after the suicide of his mother/wife, Jocasta.
VERBS

*cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactum
*commovere, -ère, -mōvī, -mōtum
*habēor, habērī (passive of habēō, habēre)
implōrō (1)
*mālō, mālle, mālui
*nōlō, nōlle, nōlui
*oblīvīscor, -visci, oblītus sum + gen.
*parīō, -ere, pepīrī, partum
*vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum
*volō, velle, volui

force, compel
shake, move, disturb
be held, regarded, considered
implore, beg
prefer
not wish, not want
forget, be forgetful of
give birth to
want, wish

ADJECTIVES

lamentābilis, -e
deplorable, lamentable
*sapiens, -ientis
wise
sepultus, -a, -um
buried
Thēbānus, -a, -um
Theban

OTHER WORDS

*contra + acc.
against
imprimis
especially, among the first
iuxtā + acc.
beside, next to
*nōn iam
no longer

Structure

163. Irregular verbs volō, nōlō, mālō. The conjugation of the irregular verbs based on volō is logical, but notice the patterns in the following paradigms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō, velle, volui</td>
<td>nōlō, nōlle, nōlui</td>
<td>mālō, mālle, mālui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish, want</td>
<td>not wish, not want</td>
<td>prefer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultīs</td>
<td>nōn vultīs</td>
<td>māvultīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Imperfect Tense: volēbam, nōlebam, mālebam, etc.

Future Tense: volam, volēs, volet, volēmus, volētis, volent
nōlam, nōlēs, nōlet, nōlēmus, nōlētis, nōlent
mālam, mālēs, mālet, mālēmus, mālētis, mālent

The perfect system is entirely regular.

Subjunctive

Present: velim, velis, velit, velimus, velitis, velint
nōlim, nōlis, nōlit, nōlimus, nōlītis, nōlint
mālim, mālis, mālit, mālimus, mālītis, mālint

Imperfect: vellem, etc.
nōlem, etc.
mālem, etc.

Perfect: voluerim, etc.
nōluerim, etc.
māluerim, etc.

Pluperfect: voluissem, etc.
nōluissem, etc.
māluissem, etc.

Present Participle

volēns nōlēns

Imperative

Singular —— nōli

Plural —— nōlīte

The imperative forms of nōli, nōlīte are the regular means of expressing a negative command with the infinitives:

Sing. Nōli in periculum ire. Do not go into danger. (one person)

Plu. Nōlīte in periculum ire. Do not go into danger. (more than one)

Sing. Nōli mē tangere. Do not touch me. (Jesus to Mary Magdalene)

164. Noun clause of desire (also called indirect command or jussive noun clause):

In describing Fortunata and her low life before Trimalchio raised her to become his wife, Petronius has one of the guests say of her: "Nōluisses de manu illius panem accipere." ("You would not have wished to take bread from her hand.") The quotation is from Petronius, Cena Trimalchionis, ed. by T. Cutt with Introduction to the Revised Edition by J. E. Nyenhuis (Detroit: Wayne State University Press, 1970), p. 53, Sect. 37a.
This formidable array of titles introduces a quite simple construction which is closely related to the purpose clause, differing only in that it is introduced in the main clause by a verb of *asking*, *begging*, *requesting*, or *ordering*. The idea which is asked or ordered is the “desired” noun clause and its verb is in the subjunctive, introduced by *ut* or *nē*.

Rēx Herculi imperāvit *ut* leōnem necāret.
Māter ab eō petīvit *ut* cavēret.

Populus Thēseum ōrāvit *ut* auxilium ferret.
Thēseus urbī imperāvit *ut* portās aperīret.
Principēs dūcem rogāvērunt *ut* fortiter pugnāret.
Antigone ōrāvit Creōntem *ut* corpus frātris humāret.
Equum hortātus est *nē* verteret.
Thēseus Herculi persuāsit *nē* sē necāret.

The king ordered Hercules *to kill* the lion.
The mother begged him *to take care*.
The people begged Theseus *to bring aid*.
Theseus ordered the city *to open* the gates.
The chiefs asked their leader *to fight bravely*.
Antigone begged Creon *to bury* the body of her brother.
He urged the horse *not to turn*.
Theseus persuaded Hercules *not to kill* himself.

From these examples the principle may be easily seen: a verb of desiring or commanding or persuading or asking, *i.e.* from a request to a command, followed by *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. Notice how closely this construction is related to a regular purpose clause. Note also the idiomatic use of certain cases after each verb:

+ accusative
+ ablative
+ dative
ōrō Thēseum *ut* . . .
petō à Thēseō *ut* . . .
impērō Thēseō *ut* . . .
rogō Thēseum *ut* . . .
quaerō à Thēseō . . .
persuādeo Thēseō *ut* . . .
hortor Thēseum *ut* . . .
moneō Thēseum *ut* . . .

165. Subjunctive by attraction (or seduction, as one class in Latin preferred to call it). This use involves a change of the verb from indicative to subjunctive whenever a subordinate clause verb occurs within an indirect statement or within another dependent subjunctive clause. The logic is that a dependent construction standing within another dependent construction represents a removal from reality that the subjunctive easily expresses:
Theseus persuaded the Thebans to bury the bodies of the men who had died in the war.

The simple relative clause *qui in bellō mortuī erant* thus becomes the subjunctive *qui in bellō mortuī essent* by attraction.

166. Subjunctive after verbs of fearing. After verbs indicating fear (*metuo* and the deponent verb *vereor, verēri, veritus sum*) the subjunctive is used with the meaning of *ut* and *nē* reversed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ut</em></td>
<td><em>that...not</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nē</em></td>
<td><em>that or lest...</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Populus metuit nē animī, corporibus nōn sepultīs, aeternum errārent.*

The people feared *lest* the souls, if the bodies were not buried, *would wander* eternally.

167. Inverted *cum* clause with the indicative. *Cum* (*when*) is used with the indicative to make subordinate an idea that would normally in English be the main clause of the sentence, reversing the emphasis of ideas:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Vix Thēsēus rex factus erat cum bellum incēpit.</em></td>
<td><em>Scarcely had Theseus become king when war began.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Usually a word such as *vix* (*hardly, scarcely*) or *nōndum* (*not yet*) introduces the main clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Nōndum carmen Hymenis incēperat cum virgō adest cum aliīs puellīs.</em></td>
<td><em>The song of Hymen had not yet begun when the maiden stood present with the other girls.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

168. Accusative of place to which. The accusative is used without a preposition to indicate place to which with names of cities, towns, small islands and the words *dōmum* (*home*) and *rūs* (*to the country*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Caesar Brundisium venīt.</em></td>
<td><em>Caesar came to Brundisium.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cicerō dōmum revēnit.</em></td>
<td><em>Cicero returned home.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Crās rūs ībō.</em></td>
<td><em>Tomorrow I shall go to the country.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

169. Accusative of extent of time. The accusative is used without a preposition to indicate the time unit within which an action has occurred.
Graeci multōs annōs bellum contra Trōiānos gessērunt. The Greeks waged war for many years against the Trojans.

Exercises

I. Quaestiones. Respondete Latine, quaeso.
1. Cur Theseus rex fiebat?
2. Qualia (what kind of) iura populo Theseus dedit?
3. Cur cives Calydonis opem a Theseo petiverunt?
4. Cur septem principes contra Thebas a Theseo petiverunt ut opem sibi daret?
5. Quem fugientem recepit Theseus?
6. Quibuscum errabat Oedipus?
7. Quos necavit Hercules furens?
8. In quo bello Hippolyta victa est a Theseo?
9. Quid est nomen filio Hippolytae?
10. Quomodo Hippolyta necata est?

II A. Change each of the following statements into a noun clause of desire after the introductory clause “Rex imperavit ut . . .” and translate the sentence, as in the example:

Theseus suem necavit. Rex imperavit Theseo ut suem necaret.

1. Populus mortuos suos humavit.
2. Cives vitas bonas agebant.
3. Oedipus Thēbis excedebat. (Thēbis—from Thbes)
4. Hercules poenas pro furore dabat. (paid the penalties)
5. Pirithoüs Hippodamiam in matrimonium ducebat. (Hippodamia was the bride of Pirithoüs at whose wedding the centaur relatives of the bride got drunk and tried to carry her off, the conflict between the centaurs and the Lapiths [the men of Pirithoüs] being the scenes depicted in marble sculpture on many public buildings in Greece.)
6. Hercules se non necavit.
7. Oedipus in exsilio errabat.
8. Septem principes contra Thebas domum ibant.

B. Now change each of the sentences above to primary sequence after “Rex imperat . . .” and translate the sentence.
Rex imperat Theseo ut suem necet.  The king orders Theseus to kill the sow.

1.  5.  
2.  6.  
3.  7.  
4.  8.  

C. Now substitute *iussit* for *imperavit* and change each subjunctive construction in A. to the infinitive construction, as in the example: Rex iussit Theseum suem necare.

D. Now change *Rex imperavit* to *Rex petivit* and change the object nouns to the proper case (*peto a Theseo, Sec. 164*).

III. Give a synopsis of *volo, nolo, malo,* and *fero* in the indicative, third person singular. What peculiarity of infinitive forms do these verbs have in common? Give the imperatives, singular and plural, where applicable.

IV. Change each of the following short statements into a *cum* clause within indirect discourse (see Sec. 165):

Theseus putabat populum futurum esse laetum cum  
1.  *leges bonas dedit.*  
2.  *bellum finivit.*  
3.  *suem necavit.*  
4.  *Hippolytam in matrimonium duxit.*  
5.  *pacem fecit.*  

V. Translate into Latin:

1. Since Aegeus was dead, his son Theseus became king.  
2. Theseus gave good laws to the citizens of Athens and he persuaded them to live in peace.  
3. The seven against Thebes persuaded him to give them aid in their war.  
4. Theseus conquered the Amazons and persuaded one of them to return to Athens as his bride (nominative, in apposition with subject of return).  
5. Theseus knew that the Amazons, who were very brave, did not want their queen to go away.

**Etymology**

**DAYS OF THE WEEK**

Naming the days of the week in Latin after the sun; moon, Mars, Mercury, Jove, Venus, and Saturn continued into Romance languages,
except for the name for Sunday which was considered the Lord’s day (Dominus). The suffix -di in French and Italian is derived from dies. The English equivalents for the first six days come from Germanic roots and Norse mythology: Sun-day; Mo(o)n-day; Tiw(god of war)’s-day; Wodin (king of the Norse gods)’s-day; Thor (thunder god)’s-day; Freya (goddess of love)-day; Satur(n)-day comes from the Latin Saturn, although Spanish and Italian use Sabbath as their source for this day’s name:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>French</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sunday</td>
<td>dies solis</td>
<td>dimanche</td>
<td>domingo</td>
<td>domenica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>dies lunae</td>
<td>lundi</td>
<td>lunes</td>
<td>lunedi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>dies martis</td>
<td>mardi</td>
<td>martes</td>
<td>martedi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>dies mercurii</td>
<td>mercredi</td>
<td>miércoles</td>
<td>mercoledi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>dies iovis</td>
<td>jeudi</td>
<td>jueves</td>
<td>jovedi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>dies veneris</td>
<td>vendredi</td>
<td>viernes</td>
<td>venerdi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>dies saturni</td>
<td>samedi</td>
<td>sábado</td>
<td>sabbato</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fill in the blank at the right with the English word derived from the Latin root word at the left:

- totus  
  e.g. _______ total _______ warfare
- mens  
  ____________ anguish
- navigo  
  circum ____________ the globe
- orbis  
  put a vehicle in ____________
- pastor  
  ____________, feed your flock
- sanitas  
  a plumber, a ____________ engineer
- supplex  
  a ____________ prayer
- tributum  
  not a cent for ____________
- sapio  
  a ____________ ruler
- partum  
  giving birth, an act of ____________
- commoveo  
  such a noisy ____________
- vasto  
  a (de-) ____________ city
- imploro  
  I ____________ your aid
- corono  
  attend the ____________ of the queen
INTERIM READING IV:
PLUTO ET PROSERPINA

Prima Ceres terram aratro dimovit, prima fruges alimentaque mitia terris dedit, prima leges dedit; omnia sunt dona Cereris. Carmen de Cerere canendum mihi est. Utinam modo dicere possim carmina digna dea. Certe dea carmine digna est.


---

1 Ceres was the first to stir (first stirred); dimoveō, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, move, part, divide, stir, plow; arātrum, -i, n., plow.
2 Frux, frūgis, f., fruits of the earth; alimentum, -i, n., food; mitis, -e, soft, gentle, kindly.
3 I must sing (lit., [it] ought to be sung by me) passive periphrastic; canō, -ere, cecini, cantum.
4 Only.
5 Typhōeus, -ēi, m., Typhoeus, a giant buried beneath Mt. Etna.
6 Premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, press, lie on.
7 Surgō, -ere, surrexi, surrectum, rise.
8 On his back.
9 Vomō, -ere, -ui, -itum, vomit forth, throw up.
10 To roll off.
11 When the earth is split apart; ablative absolute.
12 Metuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, fear, be afraid.
13 Inspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, look into, examine, inspect.
14 Exploō (1), search out, investigate, explore.
15 Volucrēs, -cris, -cre, winged.
16 Celer, -eris, -ere, swift.
17 Are being diminished.
Nonne vides Minervam et Dianam et omnes nymphas me fugitare? Filia quoque Ceres virgo erit, si patiemur. At tu, pro me et pro tuo regno, iunge deam patruo.

Dixit Venus; ille pharetram aperuit et de mille sagittis unam acutissimam in arcu posuit. Flexilem arcum curvavit inque cor sagitta acuta Plutonom percussit.

Haud procul lacus est ubi carmina cycnorum audiuntur. Silva aquas frondibus suis coronat; perpetuum ver est. Quo dum Proserpina ludit carpitque aut violas aut candida lilia impletque tunicam floribus, paene simul a Plutone visa amataque raptaque est. Ita est potentia amoris.

Dea territa et matrem et comites (sed matrem saepius) ore maesto clamat, et quod vestimentum laicatur, collecti flores, tunica remissa, ceciderunt. Tanta simplicitas ei adfuit, haec iactura virgineum dolorem movit.

Raptor currus per lacum stagnaque agit et equos hortatur, nomine quemque vocando. In medio stagno nympha Cyane a cuius nomine stagnum dictum est, celeberrima inter nymphas Sicilianas exstitit recognovitque deam. "Nec longius ibitis," inquit. "Non potes gener Cereris invitae. Proserpina roganda, non rapienda fuit. Anapis me dilexit; exorata tamen nec, ut haec, exterrita nupsi.

Dixit et in partes diversas bracchia tendens obstitit. Pluto autem iram non tenuit et sceptro stagnum percussit. Terra viam apertam in Tartarum...
fecit et currum medio craterem recept. At Cyane dolens et deam raptam et iura fontis sui contempta mente tacita vulnerem gerit et omnis in lacrimas convertitur. In ipsas aquas, quarum fuerat nympha, Cyane mutatur. Molliri membra videres: ossa et caerulei crines digitique et crura et pedes lique­scunt; post haec umeri et tergum et pectus in gelidas undas abeunt; denique pro sanguine vivo subit aqua clara; nihil restat quod tangere posses.


Tum nympha Arethusa caput ex undis tulit et comas a fronte ad aures removit atque ait, "O mater filiae raptae et frugum, siste immensos labores tuos. Terra invita nihil meruit nec digna tantis poenis est. Serva has terras. Dum sub terris Stygio flumine fluo, tua Proserpina oculis meis.
visa est. Illa quidem tristis66 neque etiam adhuc interrita sed tamen est regina maxima regni obscuri, tamen uxor regis inferni.”67


Iuppiter respondit, “Nata tua est cura communis mihi tecum, sed si modo nomina vera rebus dare placet, non inuria est hoc factum, sed amor. Neque ille erit nobis gener pudori,73 si tu modo, dea, velis. Si cetera desint, quantum74 est fratrem Iovis esse. Sed si tanta cupidio discidii75 est tibi, repetet Proserpina caelum, tamen lege certa, si nullos cibos illic ore tetigit.

Dixerat, at Cereri certum est educere natam; non ita fata sinunt,76 quoniam Proserpina ederat. Dum in hortis cultis77 errat, pomum poeniceum78 de arbore curva carserat et in ore suo septem grana79 presserat.

At Iuppiter medius fratris sui et sororis maestae annum ex aequo80 dividit; nunc dea communis duorum regnorum sex menses81 cum matre, sex menses cum coniuge agit. Facies et oris et mentis vertitur dum filia cum matre est. Proserpina quae maesta Plutoni videbatur nunc laeta est, ut sol qui nubibus82 obscuris ante tectus fuit, nunc e nubibus exit et terrae lucem dat.

Metamorphoses V. 341–571 (adapted)
The Trojan War

Probably no war in history has been so far-reaching in its effect on subsequent literature as the real or fictional expedition of the Greeks to bring home from Troy the captured Helen and to destroy the city of Priam, whose son Paris had caused so much suffering to both Trojans and Greeks. Quite familiar is the legend material, probably based on historical events of war and conquest by Hellenic tribes from the Peloponnesus against older cities on the coast of Asia Minor. Such a war for plunder, for revenge, or for carrying off treasure and captive women, provided much material for the bard who sang nightly in the halls of great princes, reciting in chanted verse the adventure of some great chief, the battle between great heroes, the quarrels between rival chieftains, or the beauty of some ancient princess. Added to the affairs of mortal men were the tales of the gods who regularly intervened in the stories to aid a favorite or to pursue an enemy.

The story of the Trojan war begins with the wedding of Peleus and Thetis, to which Eris, the goddess of Discord, has not been invited. The
offended goddess takes revenge for the slight by introducing into the festivities the golden apple on which is inscribed "To the Fairest." A quarrel ensues between the three leading goddess-contenders for the title—Juno, Minerva, and Venus—and Jupiter chooses as judge for the contest the Trojan Paris who awards the golden apple to the goddess of Love, unfairly bribed by her on the promise that he is to receive the most beautiful woman in the world to be his wife.

Complications arise from the unfortunate (for Paris) marital status of this most beautiful lady, Helen, whose position as wife of Menelaus, King of Sparta in the Greek Peloponnesus, makes her quite unattainable by legal means. Her abduction, therefore, has to be admitted improper, with Paris breaking the important bonds of host-guest relationship in carrying off his host's wife while a visitor in Sparta. King Menelaus does not stand alone in his injury to pride and home, for his relatives and friends have all promised to help defend his marriage, should it ever be threatened. They all rally to his cause, assembling a fleet at Aulis to sail to Troy to recover the lost Helen.

Included in the assembly of Greek leaders are Agamemnon, Prince of Mycenae and brother of Menelaus; the great warrior Achilles, who with his Myrmidons provided a formidable army himself; the mighty Ajax, son of Telamon of Salamis; the aged Nestor of Pylos; and the wily Ulysses (Odysseus), King of Ithaca. The latter's subsequent adventures on the way home from the war in a ten-year series of detours provide the substance for the *Odyssey*, the sequel to Homer's first epic poem describing part of the ten-year war at Troy, the *Iliad*.

The Greek fleet has assembled at Aulis, ready to sail, when the wind dies down and the becalmed Greeks seek from the priests the reason for the delay. The explanation given is that a sacred animal of Diana has been killed and the fleet must remain at Aulis until this affront to deity has been expiated in the form of the sacrifice of the young Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon. Such a sacrifice is an ancient motif in folk literature, that of human sacrifice to appease an injured deity. The father naturally is reluctant to accept the honor of having his daughter sacrificed, but persuasion by the other leaders, especially Ulysses, finally affects his decision to have the girl brought to the fleet. Not daring openly to reveal the reason for summoning the girl, Agamemnon pretends that Iphigenia is being brought to be the bride of Achilles so that Clytemnestra, his wife, will comply with his request. Then treacherously he allows the sacrifice to take place. Luckily for the girl, however, Diana relents at the last moment, substituting a deer at the altar, and wrapping the girl in a cloud, she spirits her away to safety to become priestess at the temple of Diana in Tauris. The scene is reminiscent of the sacrifice demanded of Abraham where an animal is substituted for Isaac at the last moment. Both incidents are probably indicative of a social order in which a memory of human sacrifice remained at a time when the human blood rite
had become abhorrent, the substitution of the animal making the ritual more acceptable. Ovid, delighting in the visual drama of the scene of Iphigenia being slain, tells the story twice, himself as narrator in Book XII, and in the words of Ulysses again in Book XIII.

Ovid was quite aware that his readers were familiar with the episodes of the Trojan War, both from the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* in Greek and from early Latin imitations of these epics. Furthermore, Virgil, the giant of court poetry, had recently completed the *Aeneid*, the story of the wanderings of the Trojan prince Aeneas as he comes to Italy to found an Italian nation, an elaborate epic written in frank admiration and imitation of the epics of Homer, with six books of *Odyssey*-like wanderings and six books of *Iliad*-like warfare in Italy between Aeneas and the local prince Turnus. Thus if Ovid was to include the story of the Trojan War, he had to find an original approach, for he had no wish to compete for laurels with Virgil, Rome's greatest epic poet. Though Ovid does include almost three books devoted to Trojan War episodes in the *Metamorphoses* (Books XII–XIV), he handles the material in a unique manner, emphasizing certain stories omitted by other poets and dramatists and neglecting some of the more familiar parts of the tale completely. He does, however, enjoy retelling the sacrifice of Iphigenia, and the reading section begins with this tale.

Note how the poetic devices of richly decorative words, unusual word order, certain shortened verb forms, and the recurrent beat of the meter all create new dimensions of meaning, but demand new skills to master and appreciate. One can almost hear the ancient poet chanting his tale, creating his visual images in serial manner in a time when there was no other nightly entertainment for the telling of tales.
A New Format: Beginning with this chapter a new format will be used. A short portion of the reading will be followed by explanatory notes and vocabulary. For instance, Selection 31a in the reading will be accompanied by 31a in the notes and vocabulary. Selection 31b of the reading then follows, with its corresponding notes and vocabulary. The usual sections of Structure and Exercises follow. As before, vocabulary words to be acquired are indicated by an asterisk (*). The other words and explanatory notes need not be memorized. Selections 31a–d depart noticeably from Ovid’s metrical phrasing to provide a transition into the poetry which begins in Selection 31e. In the poetry of Chapters 31 to 40 there are some verses that do not scan in dactylic hexameter because of vocabulary substitutions, particularly for proper nouns.

Chapter XXXI

BELLUM TROIANUM:
SACRIFICIUM IPHIGENIAE

31a  Paris, filius Priami regis Troiae, longum bellum in patriam attulit cum Helena rapta esset. Mille rates et omnes Pelasgae gentes coniuratae sequuntur. Nec poena dilata foret, nisi saevi venti fecissent aequora invia et tellus Aulide puppes tenuisset.

31a

*Paris, Paridis, m., Paris, son of King Priam, was exposed as a child because of a prophecy that he would cause disaster to his father’s kingdom. The prince, therefore, had been reared as a shepherd on the slopes of Mt. Ida near Troy, and he was selected to be the judge in the beauty contest between the three goddesses, Juno, Minerva, and Venus.

*Priamus, -i, m., King Priam of Troy is supposed to have had fifty sons and fifty daughters.

*bellum, -i, n., war.

*adferĕ, -ferre, attuli, allātum, bring to, cause, bring about.

*Helena, -ae, f., Helen.

*mīlle, mǐlia, milium, thousand, indeclinable in singular; abbreviated M in Roman numerals: MCMLXXII = 1972.

*ratis, ratis, f., ship, boat, vessel.

*Pelasgus, -a, -um, Pelasgian or Greek. The Pelasgians were the oldest inhabitants of Greece, and the name is used poetically to refer to the Greeks.

*gentēs consilīrītāe, all the Greek tribes sworn together; *gēns, gentis, f., tribe.

*nec dīlātā foret (= dīlātā futūra esset), a syncopated or shortened form used in poetry: would not have been delayed; *differĕ, differre, distuli, dīlītum, carry in different directions, delay, postpone.

*aequor, -oris, n., flat or level surface of land or sea; hence, poetically the sea itself (from aequus, -a, -um).

*invius, -a, -um, impassable.

*tellūs, -ūris, f., land, earth.

Aulide, at Aulis, locative case; review locative forms, Sec. 151.

*puppis, puppis, f., ship.
Hic de more patro cm Iovi sacra parassent, ut ara accensis ignibus incanduit, Danai draconem in arbore videre quae proxima aris sacris stabat. Nidus erat bis quattuor volucrum arbore summa, quas serpens avido ore corripuit et matrem volantem circum sua damna.

Augur "Vincemus" ait "Pelasgi; gaudete! Troia cadet si nos moram longam belli ferre poterimus." Novem volucres in novem annos belli digerit.

At permanet Neptunus violentus in undis et bella non transfert. Sunt qui credant Neptunum Troiae parsic (quia moenia urbi fecerat) et iram virginis deae sanguine virgineo placandam esse. Si Danai Iphigeniam Agamemnonis filiam sacrificaverint, venti rates movebunt.

In Book XIII Ulysses tells how he was responsible for persuading Agamemnon to sacrifice his daughter. Ulysses brags about his eloquence as he recounts his achievements before the Greek chiefs, trying to claim the

---

dē mōre patrīō, according to ancient custom; *mōs, mōris, m., custom, habit.
parāvissent becomes parāssent in its syncopated form; cum circumstantial.
incandēscō, -ere, -candui, begin to glow or whiten, especially with heat or fire (ignibus accensis, kindled fires).
*Danai, -drum, m., the Danai or the Greeks, a particular tribe being used for all the Greeks.
*vidēre—syncopated form of vidērunt, (they) saw.
nidus, -I, m., nest.
*bis quattuor volucrum, eight birds (lit., twice four birds).
*ōs, ōris, n., mouth or any opening such as the harbor of a river or the opening of a cave. Do not confuse with os, oasis, n., bone.
corripuit, snatched at.
damna, a substantive for her condemned ones, or her doomed offspring.

---

*augur, -uris, m., the augur, fortune teller or prophet who frequently told the future on the basis of interpreting natural phenomena, the flight of birds, or the entrails of animals.
sit, say, affirm, assert; *sīs, sīs, sīt, sīlunt, defective and postpositive.
digerō, -ere, -gessi, -gestum, spread, arrange, interpret.

---

*permaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, remain.
*Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea. had helped to build the walls of Troy.
vientus, -a, um, violent.
*trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lītus, carry across, transfer.
urbi: dat. of reference, the walls of the city; *urbs, urbis, f.
*sunt qui, there are those who . . .
crēdant, believe that . . .; followed by two infinitives in indirect statement, parīcere and placandum esse. *parīcō, parcere, pepercī, spare, followed by the dative case; placandam esse, gerundive with sum, the passive periphrastic implying obligation or necessity, must be appeased (see Sec. 184).
virgineus, -a, -um, maidenly, of the maiden, virgin (Iphigenia, -ae, f.).
plācō (1), calm, quiet, appease.
armor of Achilles by virtue of his greater cleverness whereas the other claimant for the armor of dead Achilles, the mighty Ajax, can recite only deeds in battle which he has done in the war with the Trojans. Here are the words of Ulysses:

31e  "Ut dolor unius Danaos pervenit ad omnes, exspectata diu, nulla aut contraria classi flamina erant, duraeque iubent Agamemnona sortes inmeritam saevae natam mactare Dianae. Denegat hoc genitor divisque irascitur ipsis atque in rege tamen pater est; ego mite parentis ingenium verbis ad publica commoda verti: difficilem tenui sub iniquo iudice causam.

31f  Hunc tamen utilitas populi fraterque datique summa movet sceptri, laudem ut cum sanguine penset; mittor et ad matrem, quae non hortanda, sed astu decipienda fuit. Sed si Telamoniusisset, orba suis essent etiam nunc lintea ventis."

Met. XIII.181–195 passim
Consilium Ulixis erat dolosum. Si Clytemnestra filiam mittat, 
Achilles princeps eam in matrimonium ducat. Mater laeta 
Iphigeniam mittit ut filia coniunx herois praecleri Danaorum fiat. 

postquam pietatem publica causa 
rexque patrem vicit, castumque datura cruorem 
flentibus ante aram stetit Iphigenia ministris, 
victa dea est nubemque oculis obiecit et inter 
officium turbamque sacri vocesque precantum 
supposita fertur mutasse Mycenida cerva. 

Accipiant ventos a tergo mille carinae 
multaque perpessae Phrygia potiuntur harena. 

Met. XII.29–38 passim

---

Ulixes, -is, m., Ulysses. 
*dolosus, -a, -urn, tricky, crafty. 
Achilles, -is, m., Achilles, a Greek hero, son of Peleus and Thetis. 
praeclerus, -a, -urn, famous. 

*flō, fieri, factus sum, become. 

publica causa, the common good. 
castumque datura cruorem, about to shed her innocent blood, datura modifies Iphigenia. 

*flē, -ēre, -ēfid, -ēctum, weep. 
minister, -tri, m., attendant, official; here probably a priest. 
obiclōs, -ēre, -īcl, -ōctum, cast before, with dat. of compound. 

nōbes, -is, f., cloud. 
*officium, -i, n., ceremonial action, duties. 
turba, -ae, f., crowd (attending the sacred rite, sacrum, -i, n.). 

precantum, of those praying. 
fertur, (the goddess) is said; Mycēnida (Greek acc.: The Mycenaean maiden) is the object of mūtāssē (ind. statement). 
mūtāssē is mūtāvisse syncopated, to have replaced, to have changed. 
cerva, -ae, f., a hind, a deer, modified by supposita, (having been) put in her place. 

carina, -ae, f., keel, ship, use of the part of the vessel to represent the whole ship, a literary device called pars pro toto. 
*tērgō, at their back. 
multa perpessae, having suffered many adventures. 
potitus, -īri, potitus sum, gain possession of, arrive at, with abl. 
Phrygīa harēnē, the sandy beach of Phrygia, the land in which Troy is located.
Thus Ovid completes the tale of Iphigenia, but not so the earlier Greek playwright, Euripides, who, like Diana, transports the girl from the scene of the sacrifice to the island of Tauris where she is set down to assume duties as the priestess of Diana in that barbarian region where all strangers are sacrificed to the goddess. The king of the island, Thoas, falls in love with the maiden and wishes to keep her forever in his land. In Euripides' play, Iphigenia's brother Orestes comes to the island, and when the two finally discover their relationship, they plan to escape by sea. Thoas pursues, but he is prevented from apprehending the fugitives by the intervention of the gods in the form of a storm, a "deus ex machina" device of Greek drama to affect the outcome by a force outside the play.

The same material is handled by the eighteenth-century German writer Goethe, who, in a most classically structured drama based on the same story, accounts for the departure of Iphigenia from the land of Tauris by a character change within Thoas who relents in his physical pursuit of the maiden priestess and decides to allow her, whom love cannot hold, to leave of her own free will. Thoas becomes humanly real as a person and grows in stature as a man and as a king. Characters as pawns of fate or as instruments of the gods pale beside this new dimensional portrait.

Structure

170. Conditions. A sentence consisting of a subordinate clause introduced by *si* (*if*) or *nisi* (*if . . . not*) and a concluding main clause is called a condition. The verbs of both clauses are in the indicative if the condition is a real possibility, but in the subjunctive if the condition is unreal, vague, improbable, or contrary-to-fact.

Real conditions (Indicative Mood in both clauses)

*Present:*  
Si hoc temptat, fortis est.  
*If he tries this, he is brave.*

*Imperfect:*  
Si hoc temptābat, fortis erat.  
*If he tried this, he was brave.*

*Future:*  
Si hoc temptābit, fortis erit.  
*If he tries (will try) this, he will be brave.*

*Future Perfect:*  
Si hoc temptāverit, fortis erit (fuerit).  
*If he will try (will have tried) this, he will be (have been) brave.*

The Roman mind delighted in the logic of this last combination of time ideas, for a future act would have had to be completed in the past in order for the conclusion to be logical. The use of the future or future perfect in both clauses is called by some grammarians the *Future More Vivid.*
Unreal Conditions (Subjunctive in both clauses)

**Present:**  
*Si hoc temptet, fortis*  
If he should try this, he would be brave.

This clause is sometimes called the *should... would clause*; some texts refer to this use as the *Less Vivid.*

**Contrary-to-Fact:**

*Imperfect:*  
*Si hoc temptaret, fortis esset.*  
If he tried (were trying) this, he would be brave.

The implication is that he *had not tried it.*

*Pluperfect:*  
*Si hoc temptavisset, fortis fuisset.*  
If he had tried this, he would have been brave.

Again the implication is that he *had not tried it.*

Let us try some sentences from the reading:

**Fut. Ind.**  
*Trōia cadet si nōs moram longam bellī ferre poterimus.*  
Troy will fall if we can bear the long delay of war (lit., will be able to bear).

**Pres. Subj.**  
*Si Clytemnestra filiam mittat, Achillēs eam in mātrimōnium ducat.*  
If Clytemnestra should send her daughter, Achilles would marry her.

**Contrary-to-Fact**  
*Si Aiāx isset, sine suis essent etiam nunc lintea ventīs.*  
If Ajax had gone, the sails would now be devoid of winds.

The implication is that Ajax had *not* gone.

171. Reading poetry. Reading poetry demands a more imaginative kind of comprehension than reading prose, since the poet is freed from the conventional language of direct statement and tries to communicate in an exciting or unusual manner, using any device that he finds effective to convey an idea. He may condense many ideas into few words; he may depend on certain rhythms to reflect the mood of his ideas; he may use unusual word order to gain a certain effect; he may make use of decorative, sensuous, foreign, or unusual words.

a) Let us first explore *the unusual word order* and see what effect is gained by it.

*Flentibus ante āram stetit Iphigenia ministris.*
Notice how the adjective *flentibus* describing the attendants or priests is separated by the whole of the main sentence (adverbial phrase, verb, subject) from *ministris*, the noun modified. There is no possibility of losing the meaning, since the endings (both in the ablative plural) make this absolute phrase a unity, but within the unity is the whole reason for the *ministri* being there and for their *flentibus*, for their weeping. This is visually arresting word order and it is here very effective. A modern poet like E. E. Cummings uses the physical arrangement of words on a page to gain his effect in the same manner. Notice the image of Iphigenia standing between the weeping priests.

b) Meter. Many times the unusual word order is also the result of the poet fitting his ideas into the meter of the line; in the case of the meter of epic poetry, Ovid uses in the *Metamorphoses*, as Virgil in the *Aeneid*, dactylic hexameter with spondaic alternations. This meter is discussed in the Appendix under Reading Latin Poetry. It consists of six measures or feet to a verse, each a dactyl or spondee.

c) Poetic forms. Several contractions in the spelling of verbs appear in poetry and should be mastered so that confusion is avoided.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{vidēre} & < \text{vidērunt} \quad \text{they have seen} \\
\text{parāssent} & < \text{parāvissent} \quad \text{they had prepared} \\
\text{mūtāsse} & < \text{mūtāvisse} \quad \text{to have changed} \\
\text{(dilata) foret} & < \text{futūrus, -a, -um, esset} \quad \text{would have been (delayed or postponed)} \\
\text{fore} & < \text{futūrum esse} \quad \text{to be going to be (about to be)}
\end{align*}
\]

d) Name and place allusions. The poet delights in giving the genealogy, geography, history, or any other details of local color to enliven his material. Therefore he will call Ulysses the son of Laertes, or Aeneas the son of Venus, or the brothers Agamemnon and Menelaus, the Atridēs, the sons of Atreus, and he will make allusions to the ancient Pelasgians and the Danaī and the Phrygian sands. In giving genealogy, the poet regularly uses the ending -idēs to mean "the son of" the person to whose name the suffix is attached; just as the English name Stephenson means the son of Stephen. (The -vich ending in Russian serves the same purpose.)

**Exercises**

I. **Respondete Latine:**

1. Quis est coniunx rapta a Paride?
2. Quis est pater Paridi?
3. Estne pulcherrima femina virgo aut coniunx? Cui coniunx?
4. Quis est frater regi Spartae?
5. Qui sunt duces qui cum classe Aulide convenerunt?
6. Cur classis non navigavit?
7. Quot rates erant Aulide?
8. Quem Danai viderunt in arbore proxima sacrae arae?
9. Quot annos erit bellum inter Danaos et Trojanos?
10. Cur Clytemnestra filiam Iphigeniam ad classem misit?
11. Quis mittitur ad Clytemnestram ut ei persuadeat ut filiam ad classem mittat?

II. Translate the following conditions, noting the shades of meaning indicated by the changes in tense and mood:

Real 1. Si Caesar adest, bene est.
Real 2. Si Caesar aderat, bene erat.
Real 3. Si Caesar aderit, bene erit.
Real 4. Si Caesar adfuerit, bene erit.
Unreal 5. Si Caesar adsit, bene sit.
Unreal 6. Si Caesar adesset, bene esset.
Unreal 7. Si Caesar adfuisse, bene fuisse.

(Rewrite 1-7 using the forms of veniō instead of adsum)

8. Si me amabit, fidelis erit.
9. Si me amavit, fidelis fuit.
10. Si me amet, fidelis sit.
11. Si me amavisset, fidelis fuisse.
12. Si me vides, te saluto.
13. Si te videbo, te salutabo.
14. Si te videbit, te salutabit.
15. Si te videat, te salutet.
16. Si te viderem, te salutarem.
17. Si te vidisset, te salutavisset.
18. Nisi venti movent, rates non navigare possunt.
20. Nisi venti movebunt, rates non navigare poterunt.
22. Nisi venti moveant, rates non navigare possint.
23. Si rex ero, pecuniam pauperibus dabo.
24. Si rex sim, pecuniam pauperibus dem.
25. Si rex essem, pecuniam pauperibus darem.
26. Si rex fuissem, pecuniem pauperibus dedisse.
27. Si tu essem, domum irem.

III. Construct a conditional sentence using the vocabulary of the lesson to demonstrate the real and unreal uses of the Indicative and Subjunctive. See 1-7 above.
IV. Study pp. 448–49 and name the meters of the following:
- a three-foot line
- a four-foot line
- a five-foot line
- a six-foot line

Indicate the schematic length of the following feet:
- iamb
- dactyl
- trochee
- spondee
- anapest

What is the meter of the *Metamorphoses*? Indicate the pattern of the dactyls and spondees in this meter. (See p. 451.)

**Etymology**

**MONTHS OF THE YEAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Roman Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>Januarius</td>
<td>Janus, two-headed god of doorways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>Februarius</td>
<td>the Februa, days of atonement and cleansing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>Martius</td>
<td>Mars, the god of War</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>Aprilis</td>
<td>aperire (<em>to open</em>) or Aphrodite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>Maius</td>
<td>Maia, mother of Mercury by Jupiter, or maiores (<em>the older ones</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>Junius</td>
<td>Juno, wife of Jupiter, or juniores (<em>the younger ones</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July</td>
<td>Julius</td>
<td>originally Quintilis (<em>the fifth month</em>) renamed for Julius Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>Augustus</td>
<td>originally Sextilis (<em>the sixth month</em>), renamed for Augustus Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September</td>
<td>September</td>
<td>septem; originally the seventh month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October</td>
<td>October</td>
<td>octo; originally the eighth month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November</td>
<td>November</td>
<td>novem; originally the ninth month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December</td>
<td>December</td>
<td>decem; originally the tenth month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Kalends (*Kalendae*) were the first of each month.
The Ides (*Ides*) were either the fifteenth or the thirteenth.
The Nones (*Nones*) were either the seventh or the fifth.

Days between these monthly designations were reckoned as so many days before the Kalends or the Nones or the Ides. See Appendix for a full account of the Roman calendar.

* * * * *

What Latin roots account for these English derivatives?

- bellicose
- oral
- turbulence
- augury
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rapture</th>
<th>permanent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>minister</td>
<td>transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dragon</td>
<td>contrary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sententiae
Pallida Mors aequo pulsat pede pauperum
    tabernas regumque turres.
    Horace, *Carmina* IV.13

Pale death with impartial foot
knocks at the door of poor
men's hovels and kings'
palaces.

Chapter XXXII
BELLUM TROIANUM:
MORS CYGNI

The report (*fama*) of the armada of invasion reached Troy long before the Greek ships appeared off the Phrygian coast. The ships pulled up on to the sandy beaches, and the battle began with great slaughter on both sides. Single combat between heroes is often described by epic writers in the style of Homer, who recounts in the *Iliad* events of a war which may have taken place about three hundred and fifty years before his time. The great wonder is that so much of what Homer tells us is fairly accurate (allowing for anachronisms such as describing weapons that had not yet been made of certain materials), although the conversations and challenges that the heroes exchange are, of course, part of poetic convention. Ovid here, nearly eight hundred years after Homer, describes the same war and a particular battle between Achilles and Neptune's son Cygnus, who is fighting on the side of the Trojans.

32a Fecerat haec [fama] notum Graias cum milite forti
adventare rates neque inexspectatus in armis
hostis adest; prohibent aditus litusque tuentur
Troes, et

magno quid Achaica dextera posset
sanguine senserunt, et iam Phrygia rubebant
litora, iam leto proles Neptunia, Cygnus,

---

32a

*fama, -ae, f., report, rumor*. Ovid has just described *fama*’s power.

*Graius, -a, -um, Greek*. The Romans gave the many tribes living in Greece the name *Græi* or *Graeci*, from the name of a Greek family living in the Naples area of *Magna Graecia*. The name spread to cover all the other tribes—the Achaeans, the Danai, the Pelasgi, and the Hellenes, none of whom ever called themselves *Graeci*.

*ratēs Graiās adventūre*, indirect statement telling what rumor had made known. Note the sequence of tenses here: *had made known* that the Greek ships *were arriving*.

*inexspectūtus, -a, -um, unexpected*.

*adventū (1), arrive, approach*.  

(32a continues overleaf)

315
32b mille viros dederat, iam curru instabat Achilles
agmina perque acies aut Cygnum aut Hectora quae
occurrut Cygno (decimum dilata in annum
mors Hectoris erat): tum . . .
exhortatus equos currum direxit in hostem
concutiensque suis vibrantia tela laceris
"quisquis es, o iuvenis" dixit "solamen habeto
mortis, ab Aeacide quod sis iugulatus Achille!"

---

*aditus, -ús, m., approach; here, accusative plural.
*ltus, litoris, n., shore.
tueor (tuor), tuērī, tu rents, protect; Tuēbor, “I shall protect,” is the motto of the state of Michigan.
Trōes, the Trojans, subject of prohibent.
quid . . . posset, an indirect question completing the idea of sensērunt. They realized what power
the Achaean (Greek) army possessed (lit., what the Achaean hand was able [to do]—what
power was in the Achaean hand). Try several different possibilities for this image and you will
see the problems of the translator as he tries to approximate the image of the original.
Phrygius, -a, -um, Phrygian; Phrygia lltora, the Phrygian shores.
rubeō, rubēre, to be red (with what?).
lētum, -I, n., death.
prōles, prōlis, f., offspring.
Neptunius, -a, -um, Neptunian.
Cygnus, the name of the Neptunian offspring, Cygnus (meaning swan, into which the appropriate
metamorphosis takes place at the end of the story).

---

32b

*instō, -stare, -stiti, stand in, follow closely, press on.
*agmen, -inis, n., column of troops, army ranks.
acēs, -ēi, f., the whole army, battle line.
*Hectora, Greek accusative form.
*decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
dilītus erat, from *differē, delay.
exhortātus, perfect participle of a deponent verb is translated as active, having urged.
*diregō, -rigere, -rexī, -rectum, direct.
*in + acc., against; in hostem, against the enemy.
concutiō, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, shake violently, agitate.
vibrāns, -ntis, present participle vibrō (1), quiver, shake, tremble
*tēsum, -I, n., weapon, spear, javelin.
*iscurrus, -I, m., arm, shoulder.
quisquis, whoever.
sōlāmen, -inis, n., comfort, consolation; here acc. sing.
habeō, future imperative (see Sec. 176); consider is a second meaning for habeō, in the sense of
“have in mind, hold in your thought.”
quod iugulātus sis, the fact that you have been butchered by Achilles, the son of Aeacus (really his
grandfather); the whole quod clause is in apposition with sōlāmen, explaining the consolation.
Heros ita fatus est: vocem gravis hasta secuta est,
sed quamquam certa nullus fuit error in hasta,
nil tamen mortis cum ferro emissis volavit.

"Nate dea, nam te fama praenovimus" inquit
ille "as nobis vulnus miraris abesse?"

(mirabatur Achilles enim.) "Nec haec cassis quam vides
neque scutum, onus sinistriæ,
auxilio mihi sunt; decor est quaesitus ab istis;
Mars quoque ob hoc capere arma solet! [Si] removebitur huius
tegminis officium, tamen indestictus abibo;
est aliquid non esse natum Nereide, sed qui
Nereaque et natas et totum temperat aequor."

---

32c

fatus est, spoke, from for, fārī, fātūs sum.

*hasta, -ae, f., spear, modified by certa.

*nil mortis, genitive of the whole.

*ferrum, l. n., iron weapon, spear. Iron had not been invented as a metal for use in weapons of
war in Trojan war times, but the Romans of Ovid's day had developed iron weapons, as had
the smiths of Homeric times.

Nīte deā, goddess born. Nīte is vocative and deā ablative.

*prenaescē, -ere, get to know beforehand.

fāmī, by reputation, abl. of means

ī nōbīs, from me, the plural used for the singular.

mirāris is followed by indirect statement (abesse).

---

32d

nec . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
cassis, -idis, f., helmet of metal.

*scūtum, -i, n., shield.

*onus, oneris, n., burden.

*sinistra, -ae, f., left hand; portents on the left were considered unfavorable and therefore were
associated with unpleasant, undesirable ideas, hence, the English word sinister.

auxiliō mihi, as an aid for me, a double dative usage (see Sec. 177).

istīs, from things like that, with a contemptuous meaning.

decor, -ōris, m., beauty, grace.

Mars, Martis, m., Mars, the god of warfare.

ob hoc, for this purpose.

solet, is accustomed (to bear arms).

tegminis officium, the job of protection, the function of protecting (me).

indestictus, untouched, unhurt.

*aebō, from *abeō, -ire, -ii or -iī, -iītum; I shall go my way (conclusion of a future more vivid
clause).

nātum Nērēide, the son of a Nereid; Cygnus is referring to Achilles being the son of Thetis, a
Nereid, a minor goddess of the sea.

qui, (of the one) who.

temperō (1), rule.

Nērea, Nereus, a Greek accusative form.

nāta, -ae, f., daughter

aequor, aequoris, n., the sea.
Now the battle rages between the two heroes; Achilles is increasingly frustrated that, with all his strength and experience, he is unable to wound the young son of Neptune. The older hero presses harder and harder against the presumptuous youth, and now finally Cygnus is on the run.

32e

\[
\ldots pavor occupat illum,
\text{ante oculosque natant tenebrae retroque ferenti}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{aversos passus medio lapis obstitit arvo;}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{quem super inpulsam resupinò corpore Cygnum}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{vi multa vertit terraeque adfixit Achilles.}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{Vincla trahit galeae;}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{victum spoliare parabat;}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{arma relictà videt; corpus deus aequoris albam}
\vspace{3mm}
\text{contulit in volucrem, cuius modo nomen habebat.}
\vspace{10mm}
\text{Met. XII.64–145, adapted passim}
\]

Structure

172. Review of deponent and semi-deponent verbs. The trick to mastering the deponent verb is to remember that certain verbs with passive endings must be translated actively.

Trôes \textit{tuenter} litus. \hspace{6cm} The Trojans \textit{protect} their shoreline.

Achilles, \textit{equös exhortātus} \ldots \hspace{6cm} Achilles, \textit{having urged on} his horses \ldots

(N.B. perfect active translation for the perf. pass. part.)

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{pavor, -oris, m.}, \textit{fear, trembling}.
  \item \textit{occupō (1)}, \textit{seize}.
  \item \textit{tenebrae}, nom. pl., \textit{dark shadows}.
  \item \textit{retrō ... arvō}, \textit{a stone blocks him as he steps backward in the middle of the field}; \textit{lapis (a stone)} is subject of \textit{obstitit}, which has a dat. of compound object (\textit{eī}) understood, modified by \textit{ferentī}: bearing his turned steps backward in the middle of the field (\textit{medīō arvō}).
  \item \textit{quem super inpulsam resupinō corpore}, \textit{with his body bent backwards over this (stone)}.
  \item \textit{inpulsam}, from \textit{impello, -ere, -pull, -pullum}, \textit{strike, throw to the ground}.
  \item \textit{vi multā}, \textit{with mighty force}.
  \item \textit{adīligō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum}, \textit{pin to, affix}: with the dat. of compound (\textit{terræ}) and acc. dir. obj. (\textit{Cygnum}).
  \item \textit{vinculum, -I, n.}, \textit{band, cord, chain, strap}. Ovid wrote \textit{vincla} for metrical reasons.
  \item \textit{galea, -ae, f.}, \textit{helmet (of leather)}. Achilles uses the straps of the helmet to choke Cygnus, the victim, the man he had conquered.
  \item \textit{spoliō (1)}, \textit{despoil, strip of arms}.
  \item \textit{relictà (having been left) empty}.
  \item \textit{deus aequoris}, \textit{Neptune}.
  \item \textit{contulit, has changed}.
  \item \textit{modo, now}.
\end{itemize}
An irregular verb like *gaudeō*, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus sum* is conjugated with active endings in the present system and only has deponent forms in the perfect system. Because of this double nature such verbs are termed semi-deponent:

- *Gaudēte, Pelasgi...*  
- *Gaudeāmus, igitur...*  
- *Militēs gāvisi sunt.*

173. Deponent verbs have four participles and three infinitives.

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hortāns, -antis</td>
<td>hortātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>hortātūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>hortandus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hortāri</td>
<td>hortātus esse</td>
<td>hortātūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative Mood

The imperative forms of a deponent verb are similar to the forms of the passive second person singular (the alternate -re form) and plural:

- **Singular**
  - hortāre¹ (urge!)

- **Plural**
  - hortāmini (urge!)

Consult the paradigms in the Appendix for the deponent verb forms of the other conjugations.

174. Review of indirect questions. Verbs of asking, knowing, sensing, feeling, perceiving and the like may complete their ideas with a subordinate clause (verb in the subjunctive) introduced by an interrogative word. (What, why, where, how, who, whose, etc.) Reread Sec. 148.

#### Primary Sequence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Subordinate Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present or Future Indicative²</td>
<td>Present or Perfect Subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēx scit quis sis.</td>
<td>The king knows <em>who you are.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēx rogat quid désiderēs.</td>
<td>The king asks <em>what you desire.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rēx quaesit ĉūr veniant.</td>
<td>The king asks <em>why they are coming.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹This form looks like an active infinitive, but it is not. It is really the alternate form of hortāris.

²See p. 235, note 5.
Secondary Sequence

**Main Verb**
Past Tense in the Indicative (Imp., Perf., Pluperf.)

- Trōes sensērunt quid Achaea manus posset.
- Trōes sensērunt cūr Graeci venīrent. (vēnissent)
- Trōes sensērunt quam ob causam Graeci vēnissent.
- Trōes sensērunt in quō locō ratēs Graecae sē cēlārent.
- Trōes sensērunt unde ratēs Graecae ēvēnissent.
- Trōes sensērunt quōmodo Graeci vēnissent.

**Subordinate Verb**
Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive

- The Trojans understood what the Achaean hand was able (to do).
- The Trojans understood why the Greeks came. (had come.)
- The Trojans understood why (for what reason) the Greeks had come.
- The Trojans realized where (in what place) the Greek ships were hiding.
- The Trojans realized from whence the Greek ships had come.
- The Trojans realized how the Greeks had come.

175. Further uses of the genitive. You are already familiar with the genitive to show possession and the objective use of the genitive:

- **Possession:** filius Priami— the son of Priam (or) Priam’s son
  mors Hectoris— the death of Hector (or) Hector’s death

- **Objective:** amor pecūniae— love of money

The genitive is also used in a partitive sense, also called very logically Genitive of the Whole, since it represents the whole of which a part is being referred to:

- pars terrae part of the land
- quid bonī? what good? (lit., what of good?)
- nil mortis no death (lit., nothing of death)
- maior frātrum the elder brother (lit., of the brothers)
- plūs fortūnae more luck (lit., more of luck)
- pars fortūnae part of the luck
- multa mīlia vīrōrum many thousands of men
In each case there is a word (usually an indeclinable pronoun or a number) followed by the whole of which the preceding word is a quantitative part.

176. Future Imperative. The logic of having a future imperative is clear, since all commands can be fulfilled only in the future, although when the General commands "Attack" or "Halt" the reaction in the future should be instantaneous. Nevertheless, although English cannot make this subtle distinction of time in a command except by an adverbial modifier, Latin had separate forms for a Present Imperative command and a Future Imperative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Habē Consider</td>
<td>Habēte Consider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Habētō In the future, consider . . .</td>
<td>Habētōte In the future, consider . . .</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(The use of the future, however, is rare and usually poetic.)

177. Double Dative. The double dative involves two dative case nouns, the first explaining a function and the second the person for whom the function occurs.

Auxiliō mihi sunt. They are an aid to me.

Exercises

I. Respondete Latine:
1. Quis fecerat notum Graias rates adventare?
2. Adeste hostis Graecus inexpectatus?
3. Qui aditum Graecorum prohibent?
4. Quis mille viros Graecorum letō dederat?
5. In quem annum mors Hectoris dilatus est?
6. Quid erit solamen mortis Cygni? (solāmen—comfort, consolation)
7. Cur hasta gravis Achillis nil mortis portavit?
8. Quam ob causam Cygnus scutum portavit?
9. Quid Achilles victo facere parabat?
10. In quam avem deus Neptunus corpus Cygni contulit?

II. Change each of these indirect questions to secondary sequence by making the indicative verb perfect and the subjunctive verb either imperfect or pluperfect as the sense requires.

1. Neptunus sentit cur filius suus immortalis sit.
2. Cygnus non sentit in quo loco moriatur.
3. Troes non sentiunt quo modo Graeci bellum gerant.
4. Achilles miratur cur hasta sua nil mortis portet.
5. Vos omnes scitis cur Cygnus in cygnum mutetur.

III. Change these commands to future imperative:

1. Scribe, discipule!
2. Cantate mecum.
3. Venite, adoremus.
4. Gaudete, discipuli; ludus finitus est.
5. Da dona deis.
6. Ama, noli pugnare. (or) Fac amorem, non bellum.

IV A. Write an indicative synopsis of hortor, hortari, hortatus sum with a synopsis of morior, mori, mortuus sum beside it so that you can compare the forms of the verb in the first (and second) conjugation with those of the third. Naturally these will all be passive forms since the verbs are deponent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>hortor</th>
<th>morior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indicative:</strong></td>
<td>3rd person singular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Subjunctive:** |                      |                      |
| Present   |                      |                      |
| Imperfect |                      |                      |
| Perfect   |                      |                      |
| Pluperfect|                      |                      |

Consult the Appendix for a full conjugation.

B. Write the participles, infinitives, and imperatives of the verbs above and translate each.
V. Translate into Latin:

1. The Trojans knew why the Greeks were coming to their shores.
2. Both the Greeks and the Trojans had sent many thousands of men to their deaths in this bloody war.
3. Cygnus had no fear because he knew that his father was an immortal god who ruled the sea.
4. Achilles' mother was the goddess Thetis and his father was Peleus, the son of Aeacus.
5. Cygnus was changed into a swan when Achilles tried to despoil (vastāre or spoliāre) his victim.

Etymology and Roman Life

EDUCATION

In early times Roman children were educated at home either by the father of the family or by a slave, usually Greek, who often was better educated than the master himself. Sometimes neighboring children or those of friends or relatives would also attend the lessons of such a slave, but eventually schools were established in central locations—usually in the entrance to a building in an area roofed but open to the street, where the distractions of public life competed with the lessons of the slave or freedman teacher. Small fees were paid for such lessons, the amount varying with the reputation of the teacher, and often presents took the place of regular tuition. Children from well-to-do families were accompanied to the school by a slave called the paedagogus (child leader in Greek), and this trusted family servant, usually an elderly man, was in charge not only of conducting his student to the school, but also of supervising his studying, his Greek learning, his moral deportment, and his general behavior. The relationship between paedagogus and child often continued informally after the child reached the age of assuming the toga. Our English word pedagogue comes from this word.

Pupils learned to write on wax tablets, making an impression on the smooth surface by means of a stilus, a pointed tool with a flattened end for.

---

smoothing over errors in the manner of an eraser. Later the pupil learned to write with ink on papyrus, ancient paper made from the papyrus plant. Letters were all capitals, although there was a kind of script called "cursive," which was found on tablets and in various account books. Roman numerals made arithmetic difficult, and complicated problems were computed on an abacus or by means of fingers. Much learning was memory training, the epics of Homer being learned by students in the original Greek language. Because the chief pursuit of the upper-level school (reading, writing, and arithmetic having been learned in the elementary school) was grammatica—literature and language—the school was called a "grammar" school and teacher a grammaticus. Students were given lessons in many subjects rising out of the careful study of Homer's Iliad and Odyssey, depending on the skill of the teacher. Latin schools naturally stressed Roman authors, as poetry began to appear, especially the translation of the Homeric epic into Latin by Livius Andronicus in the third century B.C. In both elementary and grammar schools, special emphasis was given to oral recitation and to careful pronunciation of words, since oratory was to be important for many young men in public life. Some of these young men went on to study at schools of rhetoric where they studied prose: history, philosophy, and public speaking, leading to a refining of the art of oratory. The wealthy also could attend famous schools at Athens, to which Roman youths went much as Americans go abroad to Europe to study and complete their education. Young men could also become apprenticed to lawyers and men in the government, especially in the administration of overseas colonies, to prepare themselves for future occupations.

Below are some of the many words connected with education that have come into English from Latin roots:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>educare &amp;/or educere</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school (schola)</td>
<td>disciple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curriculum</td>
<td>science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>college</td>
<td>literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university</td>
<td>medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confer (a degree)</td>
<td>fraternity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grade</td>
<td>sorority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>student</td>
<td>alma mater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discipline</td>
<td>office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>notes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Latin Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>elementary</td>
<td>B.A. (Baccalaureus Artium, Bachelor of Arts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary</td>
<td>M.A. (Magister Artium, Master of Arts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum laude</td>
<td>Ph.D. (Philosophiae Doctor, Doctor of Philosophy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summa cum laude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* * * * *
What English words are derived from these Latin words in the lesson?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fama</td>
<td>annus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advenio</td>
<td>error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tueor</td>
<td>emitto (emissum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubrum</td>
<td>admiror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occurro</td>
<td>absum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter XXXIII

BELLUM TROIANUM: AIAX ET ULIKES

Homer's *Iliad* is the tale of the coming of age of the hero Achilles, whose rash anger in the ninth year of the war, in a quarrel with Agamemnon over a woman captive, results in the disastrous prolonging of the war. The Greeks and Trojans finally consent to a battle of champions, one to represent each side. And who better to fight than Menelaus, the injured husband, and Paris, the amorous abductor? Menelaus wins the battle easily, and is about to drag Paris off by his helmet strap when Venus intervenes and whisks Paris off to Helen's boudoir to be tended by her, and the battle resumes. The Greeks are hard pressed, and they retreat even to the ships, despite heroic action by Ajax and Diomedes. The leaders try to persuade Achilles to rejoin the battle with his Myrmidon army, but the hot-headed Achilles sulks in his tent and will not be moved. Then Patroclus, beloved friend of Achilles, begs the hero to allow him to go into battle wearing Achilles' armor, the sight of which will be enough to reinspire the troops. Achilles agrees and Patroclus, wearing Achilles' armor, for a time breathes new hope into the Greek forces, rallying the troops. Finally the great Trojan hero Hector slays the young man and strips the body of its borrowed armor. When Achilles learns the fate of Patroclus, weeping he regrets his delay in rejoining the battle, and he now furiously seeks Patroclus' slayer, wearing wonderful new armor forged by Hephaestus at the request of his mother, the Nereid Thetis. He demands to meet Hector in single combat. After a tender farewell to his wife Andromache and his young son Astyanax, Hector comes forth to meet the greatest of the Greek warriors. Hector is defeated, and Achilles' anger is great as he sees his own glorious armor worn by Hector, armor stripped from the body of Patroclus. His anger rekindled, Achilles kills Hector. In a terrible show of pride, he drags the body tied to his chariot around the walls of Troy for Priam and all the Trojans to see.

There is a lull in the fighting, and Priam, urged on by the gods, goes
through the enemy lines to Achilles to beg for the body of Hector so that it may be buried. Achilles, now more mature, pities the elderly king, remembering his own father, and he returns the corpse for burial, achieving in this single act what he could not achieve on the battlefield—his maturity. There is a truce for burial and funeral games, and thus ends the twenty-fourth book of the *Iliad* with the war still unconcluded.

Achilles had been warned by his sea-goddess mother that he himself would die soon after Hector’s defeat, but undaunted the Greek hero continues fighting. Eventually he is killed by Paris, who wounds him in the heel, the only part of his body that is vulnerable. After his death, the possession of his wonderful armor becomes the subject of a violent quarrel between Ulysses and Ajax.

Ulysses engages in a mighty verbal battle with Ajax, son of Telamon, who has claimed the armor as his reward, since he is the strongest of all the Greeks. Ajax has recounted his ancestry through Telamon and Aeacus to Jove himself, since Jupiter had been the father of Aeacus, conceived when the king of gods and men had carried off Aegina. Ajax speaks of his massive shield and his brave deeds on the battlefield, while Ulysses, he says, is confined to describing deeds done at night and by stealth. Ajax challenges Ulysses to a contest of arms then and there, in the presence of the assembled Greek chiefs to decide which of them deserves the honor. In reply, Ovid has Ulysses describe his own honored ancestry; then he tells about how he tricked Achilles into betraying his identity when this young Greek hero had hidden as a girl to avoid going to war. Then Ulysses tells how he persuaded Agamemnon to sacrifice Iphigenia and how he went to Troy as an ambassador.

33a

“Mittor et Iliacas audax orator ad arces visaque et intrata est altae mihi curia Troiae plenaque adhuc erat illa viris; interritus egi, quam mihi mandarat communis Graecia, causam accusoque Parin praedamque Helenamque reposco et moveo Priamum Priamoque Antenora iunctum; at Paris et fratres et qui rapuere sub illo vix tenuere manus (scis hoc, Menelae) nefandas, primaque lux nostri tecum fuit illa pericli.

33a

*audax órātor, as a bold orator.*

*Iliacus arcēs,* note the interlocking word order, *the Trojan citadel.* Ilium is the Greek name for Troy; *Iliacus, -a, -um, Trojan.*

---

1 Achilles had been dipped in the River Styx when he was an infant to make him invulnerable a common motif in epic literature. His mother held him by the heel, thus covering “Achilles’ heel.”

2 Ulysses (*Ulixēs*) is the Latin equivalent for the Greek Odysseus.
"Longa referre mora est, quae consilioque manuque utiliter feci spatiosi tempore belli. Post acies primas urbis se moenibus hostes continuere diu, nec aperti copia Martis ulla fuit; decimo demum pugnavimus anno; quid facis interea, qui nil nisi proelia nosti? Quis tuus usus erat? Nam si mea facta requiris, hostibus insidior, fossa munimina cingo, consolor socios, ut longi taedia belli mente ferant placida, doceo, quo simus alendi armandique modo, mittor, quo postulat usus."

---

*arx, arcis, f., building, pl. arcae, citadel.
*cūria, -ae, f., the senate house (an anachronism, since Ovid is using the name of the Roman assembly for the Trojan senate).

---

Paris, Paridis, m., Paris; Paridin (shortened to Parin) is a Greek acc. obj. of acēsō, accuse.

---

*referre, to recount, to tell again; it would cause a long delay to recount (all the things) which... quae, the antecedent omnia is omitted.
*utiliter, usefully, for the common good.

---

*mili is dat. of agent, by me.
*interritus, -a, -um, unterrified, undaunted.
*causam agere, to plead a case (causam), as in a senate hearing, continuing the image of the curia; reposcō, demand back.
*commūns, -e, shared, common, general, public; therefore, the state (here the Greek state).
*mandō (1), intrust.

---

Paris, Paridis, m., Paris; Paridin (shortened to Parin) is a Greek acc. obj. of acēsō, accuse.

---

*que...que, both...and.
*praedā, -ae, f., booty, obj. of reposcō with Helenam.

---

Antēnor, -oris, m., Antenor, a Trojan Antenora, Greek acc. sing.

---

*lux, lūcis, f., light, day; that was the first day of my danger (pericli) with (in behalf of) you.

---

*copeia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance, means; opportunity; pl., troops.

---

nec ulla copia aperti Martis, a poetic way of saying not any opportunity of open combat, Mars standing for warfare or fighting.

---

*requirō, -ere, -quisīli or -quisīli, -quisīsum, ask, look for, inquire after.

---

33b continues overleaf
Ulysses continues to berate Ajax, describing how Ajax was ready to turn his back on the war and sail home.

33c "Quid, quod et ipse fugit? Vidi, puduitque videre, cum tu terga dares inhonestaque vela parares; nec mora 'quid facitis? Quae vos dementia' dixi 'concitat, o socii, captam dimittere Troiam, quidque domum fertis decimo, nisi dedecus, anno?''

Optional Reading

33d Talibus atque aliis, in quae dolor ipse disertum fecerat, aversos profuga de classe reduxi. Convocat Atrides socios terrore paventes: nec Telamoniades etiamnunc hiscere quicquam audet. . . .

Orior et trepidos cives exhortor in hostem amissamque mea virtutem voce repono. Tempore ab hoc, quodcumque potest fecisse videri fortiter iste, meum est, [ego] qui dantem terga retraxi."

Met. XIII.196–237 passim

---

cingō mūnīmīna fossā, I surround the fortifications with a trench (fossā, abl. of mēns).
consōlor, -āri, -ātus sum, console, comfort, encourage.
ut ferant taedia placīdī mentē, purpose clause; so that they may bear the tedium of the long war with equanimity (mentē, lit., with a calm mind).
*quō . . . modo, how we are to be fed and armed, two indirect questions introduced by doceō, I taught them; (a)ē, -ere, -ui, feed).
quō postulat ēsus, where usefulness demands, wherever there is a mission.

---

33c

quid, quod, what of the fact that . . .
puduit, I was ashamed, impersonal verb (lit., it shamed me to see it).
*terga dare, to turn one's back; inhonesta vēla, dishonored sails.
*nec mora, without delay (lit., and there was not a delay).
concitō (1), incite, impel.
*dimittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīssum, send out, send away, give up, abandon.
nisi dēdecus, except disgrace (dēdecus, -decoris, n., disgrace).
*socius, -ii, m. ally, companion, comrade.

---

33d
tālībus atque aliis, with such and other words.
in quae dolor ipse disertum, to which grief itself had made me eloquent.
disertus, -a, -um, eloquent.
aversōs, those who had turned in flight (acc. object of reduxī).
*Atrīdēs, the son of Atreus assembled his companions trembling (paventēs) with fear.
Telamōniiādēs, the son of Telamon, i.e., Ajax.
etiamnunc, even now.
biscō, -ere, open his mouth.
quicquam, at all (anything), here used adverbially.
*Orlor, I arose, historical present (*orior, orī, ortus sum). (33d continues opposite)
Ulysses acknowledges Ajax's glorious deeds in battle, but he continues to berate him as a claimant for the arms of Achilles, citing his own participation in the actual fighting and also his cunning strategy. He explains his previous reluctance to fight and then tells how he brought about the conclusion of the war in favor of the Greeks by gaining the prophecy of the Trojan seer Helenus, who told that the Greeks must bring the weapons of Hercules which were still on the island of Lemnos with Philoctetes, and that they must capture the Palladium, a sacred image of Athena, and carry it from the temple at the citadel of Troy into the Greek lines. In order to accomplish the first prophetic command Ulysses goes with Achilles' young son, Neoptolemus, and tricks Philoctetes into surrendering the weapons of Hercules, the scene at Lemnos being the setting for a play by Sophocles, *Philoctetes*. The stealing of the Palladium, Ulysses accomplishes with Diomedes. Here are Ulysses' own words as he recounts his exploits. Ovid does not have him include the final Trojan Horse venture, but that would have been the final, convincing argument. The Greek leaders are swayed by his eloquence and award Ulysses the armor.

Thus Ulysses sums up the difference between the two: "You excel only in body, I in mind. As much as he who captains the ship is superior to the man who rows, as much as the general is greater than the soldier, just so much I surpass you, for in our bodies the heart (mind) is stronger than the hand; for all our strength lies in it."

Further optional reading

Ulysses anticipates the Philoctetes and Palladium episodes:

33e  "Sis licet infestus sociis regique mihique, 
      dure Philoctete, licet exsecrere meumque 
      devoveas sine fine caput cupiasque dolenti 
      me tibi forte dari nostrumque haurire cruorem,

*trepidus, -a, -um, trembling.
*tempore ab hōc, from this time on.
*iste, -a, -ud, that fellow (spoken in a derogatory manner), that one over there.
*vidēri, passive of videō means seem.
quocumque, whatever.
*meum est, is mine, belongs to me.
*retrahō, -ere, -tractum, drag back.
dantem, acc. (modifying Ajax or him), when he was running away (lit., giving his back).

33e  sis licet, although you may be angry with . . . or granted that . . . licet is impersonal: it is permitted 
     that you may be, granted that you may be . . .

dūre Philoctēte, vocative sing.
licet exsecrēre, although you may curse me and pile curses on my head without end (exsecrēre is 
     a first conj. deponent verb, second person sing., alternate form, exsecror, -āris, -ātus sum, 
     curse; subjv. following licet). (33e continues overleaf)
te tamen adgrediar mecumque reducere nitar
tamque tuis potiar (faveat Fortuna) sagittis,
quam sum Dardanio, quem cepi, vate potitus,
quam responsa deum Troianaque fata retexi,
quam rapui Phrygiae signum penetrable Minervae
hostibus e mediis. Et se mihi comparat Ajax?
Nempe capi Troiam prohibebant fata sine illo:
fortis ubi est Ajax? Ubi sunt ingentia magni
verba viri: cur hic metuis? Cur audet Ulixes
ire per excubias et se committere nocti
perque feros enses non tantum moenia Troum,
verum etiam summas arces intrare suaque
eripere aede deam raptamque adferre per hostes?
Quae nisi fecissem, frustra Telamone creatus
gestasset laeva taurorum tergora septem.
Illa nocte mihi Troiae victoria parta est:
Pergama tunc vici, cum vinci posse coegi.”

Met. XIII.328–349

cupiāsque, and desire that I be given to you in your grief to drink my blood (cupiās, second per.
sing. subjv. followed by indirect statement).
tamen, nevertheless, conclusion from all the “although” clauses preceding.
agrediar, I will go to you.
nitar, I will strive.
potiar, I will get possession of (with abl.).
faveat, favor, let fortune favor me.
tamquam (tamque . . . quam), just as I got possession of the Dardanian (Trojan) seer; the reference
here is to Helenus who, having been captured, related the prophecy to Ulysses.
dēum = dēōrum.
quam, just as (I uncovered; retego, -ere, -texi, -tectum).
penetrālis, -e, inner.
Phrygius, -a, -um, Phrygian, Trojan.
comparō (1), compare.
nempe, truly, certainly, to be sure.
capi, pres. passive infinitive.
sinō illō, without the Palladium.
ingens, ingentis, huge, mighty.
hic, here (in this situation).
metuō, -ure, fear.
excubīās, sentinels, guards.
ferōs ensēs, wild swords.
Trōum, of the Trojans.
intrō (1), enter, go into.
suī aede, indirect reflexive. Obviously Ovid means that Ulysses is stealing the statue of the
goddess from her own shrine.
per hostēs, through enemy lines.
Telamōnīus creātus, the man created from Telamon, i.e., Ajax.
gestāsset = gestāvisset, the concluding verb in a contrary to fact condition, from gestō (1), wear,
carry.
(33e continues opposite)
Structure

178. Further uses of the accusative. The customary uses of the accusative case are as direct object and as object of certain prepositions:

a) Direct object

Raptui signum Minervae. I stole the statue of Minerva.

b) Object of preposition

Ad insulam navigavimus. We sailed to the island.

The latter usage is made even briefer in Latin by omitting the preposition ad with names of cities, small islands and with the words home (domum) and country (rūs), the accusative of place to which:

Quid decimō annō domum fertis?
Quid decimō annō Athēnās fertis?

What are you taking home in the tenth year?
What are you taking to Athens in the tenth year?

N.B.: Athens is plural in Latin.

c) The accusative is also used as the subject of an infinitive, both in indirect statement and in constructions with certain verbs such as iubeō and prohibeo:

Trōiāni sensērunt Graecōs appropinquāre.
Trōiāni iubēbant militēs suōs adstare.
Fāta prohibēbant Trōiam sine illō signō capī.

The Trojans realized that the Greeks were coming.
The Trojans ordered their soldiers to stand ready.
The fates forbade Troy to be captured without that statue.

d) Accusative of extent of space or duration of time:

Decem annōs bellum contrā Trōiam gessit.
For ten years he waged war against Troy.

e) The accusative is used in exclamations: mē miserum, wretched me.

laevā, on his left hand.
tergora, hides of leather.
parta est, was gained, from parīō, -ere, peperī, partum, bring forth, create.
Pergama, acc., the citadel of Troy.
vincī, present passive infinitive.
cum . . . coēgi, when I forced it (to be able) to be conquered.
The pronouns of Latin. The personal pronouns are *is*, *ea*, *id*. Frequently, the demonstrative adjectives *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* and *ille*, *illa*, *illud* are used as demonstrative pronouns. There is a group of adjective-pronouns which are declined much like *ille*, in that they have the genitive singular in -*ius* and the dative singular in -*i*.

- unus, -a, -um: one
- ullus, -a, -um: any
- nullus, -a, -um: no, none

*totus*, -a, -um: whole, all
*solus*, -a, -um: alone, the only, sole
*alius*, *alia*, *aliud*: other
*alter*, -*era*, -*erum*: the other, an other

These words are adjectives when they modify nouns which are expressed; they act as pronouns when they are substantives.

facta *unius*,
verba *ullius*,
Dat dōna *solī fēminae.*
Periculum tōtī urbī vidimus.

The words of one man
the words of no one
He gives gifts to only one woman.
We saw the danger to the whole city.

(The forms of *nēmō* are irregular in that *nullius* usually appears in place of the genitive *neminis*, and *nullō* in place of *nēmine* in the ablative. Thus the only usual forms are *nēmō*, *neminī*, and accusative *neminem*, *no one.*)

Frequently used in place of the personal pronouns are the more intensive forms *idem*, *eadem*, *idem* (*the same*). This pronoun is declined just like *is*, *ea*, *id* with the suffix -*dem*, except where -*m* changes to -*n* before -*d* and in the Nom. Masc. Sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>M.</em></th>
<th><em>F.</em></th>
<th><em>N.</em></th>
<th><em>M.</em></th>
<th><em>F.</em></th>
<th><em>N.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
<td></td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eārundem</td>
<td></td>
<td>eūrundem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eidem</td>
<td>eidem</td>
<td>eidem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
<td>idem</td>
<td>eōsdem</td>
<td>eāsdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
<td>eisdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another intensive pronoun, based on the forms of *is*, *ea*, *id*, is the pronoun *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, Gen.: *ipsius*, Dat.: *ipsī*, Acc.: *ipsum*, *ipsam*, Abl.: *ipsō*, *ipsā*, *ipsō*. The plural forms are completely regular. The meaning is *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, but many times the personal pronouns *he*, *she*, *it* may be used for a smoother translation.

*Ipse* respondit. *The man himself* replied, (or) *he* replied.
Facta ipsius sē dēmonstrāvit. The deeds of the man himself reveal him (his true character).

The demonstrative pronoun iste, ista, istud was used in a rather derogatory manner when the Romans wished to refer to “that man over there,” or “that sort of man” (or woman or thing). It is declined like the word ille (Gen.: istīus, Dat.: isti) and appears in situations where the speaker wishes to imply that “that man of yours” is doing something he should not do. See the Appendix for a complete paradigm.

180. Fio, an irregular verb. The verb faciō has no regular passive forms beyond the participle factus, and the passive conjugation is replaced by the verb fio which means be made, become, happen.

fio, fieri, factus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fio</td>
<td>fiō</td>
<td>fiēbam</td>
<td>fiām</td>
<td>factus</td>
<td>factus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td>fiēs</td>
<td>fiēbas</td>
<td>fiēs</td>
<td>factus</td>
<td>factus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fiēbat</td>
<td>fiēt</td>
<td>factus</td>
<td>est</td>
<td>erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīmus</td>
<td>fīēbāmus</td>
<td>fīēmus</td>
<td>factī</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fītis</td>
<td>fīēbātis</td>
<td>fīētis</td>
<td>factī</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīunt</td>
<td>fīēbant</td>
<td>fīent</td>
<td>factī</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fiam</td>
<td>fierem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiās</td>
<td>fierēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiat</td>
<td>fieret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīamus</td>
<td>fierēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīātis</td>
<td>fierētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīant</td>
<td>fierent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The forms frequently used are the subjunctive fiat, as in fiat lux, let there be light, and fieri, to happen, to become.

181. Review of impersonal verb, licet. The use of impersonal verbs is restricted to a few constructions in the third person singular followed by an infinitive or a subjunctive clause introduced by ut, or simply by the subjunctive. Licet means it is permitted, granted that, or although, depending on the context. (Cf. Sec. 159.)

Licet fūmare. It is permitted to smoke.
Licet sis infestus mihi, . . . Granted that you are angry with me, . . . (or) Although you may be angry with me . . .
Dum licet . . . While it is permitted . . .

The principal parts of the verb are licet, licēre, licuit. Other impersonal verbs used in a similar manner are libet, libēre, libuit, it is desirable, and decet, decēre, decuit, it is proper, it is fitting, placet, placēre, placuit, it is pleasing, pudet, pudēre, puduit, it shames, it is shameful.

Fac quod libet. Do what you wish (is desirable).
Fac quod decet. Do what is proper.
Vidi, puduitque vidēre. I saw it and I was ashamed to see it.

182. Questions; Nōnne and Num. Simple questions in Latin may begin with an interrogative word or by affixing -ne to the first word in the sentence (cf. Sec. 7, 104 and 105):

Rapuitne Plūto Prōserpinam? Did Pluto carry off Proserpina?

If, however, one wishes to suggest either an affirmative or negative response, one should use either Nōnne or Num as the first word. When a question is prefaced with Nōnne, the implied or suggested answer is “yes”:

Nōnne Cerēs est misera, Prōserpinā raptā?
Is not Ceres unhappy because Proserpina has been carried off?
Answer implied: Ita Cerēs misera est. Yes, Ceres is unhappy.

When Num introduces the question, a “no” answer is implied:

Num Iuppiter erat indignātus, cum Prōserpinā rapta esset?
Jupiter was not outraged, when Proserpina had been carried off, was he?
Answer implied: Nōn erat indignātus. No, he was not outraged.
Exercises

I. Respondete Latine:
   1. Nonne Ulixes mittitur orator ad arces Iliacas?
   2. Quem Ulixes accusat?
   3. Quid Ulixes reposcit?
   4. Qui voluerunt manus nefandas in Ulixem ponere?
   5. (In) quo anno demum pugnaverunt Graeci et Troiani?
   6. Num Aiax socios consolatur?
   7. Num voluit Ulixes domum redire, Troia non capta?
   8. Nonne voluit Aiax domum redire?
   9. Qua cingit munimina Ulixes?
  10. Quid Ulixes docuit sociis?

II. Change the following commands with iubeo into noun clauses of desire using ut (or ne) and the subjunctive: (Use impero and remember that it takes the dative case.)

   Agamemnon iussit milites domum redire.
   Agamemnon militibus imperavit ut domum redirent.
   1. Agamemnon iussit nautas classem parare.
   2. Priamus iussit Achillem corpus Hectoris reddere.
   3. Laocoon iussit Troianos equum ligneum in urbem non trahere.
   5. Hector iussit coniugem suam non lacrimare.
   6. Iuppiter iussit Agamemnonem bellum Troianum non gerere.
   7. Ulixes iussit Aiacem terga non dare.
   8. Ulixes iussit Philoctetem arma Herculis Troiam ferre.
   9. Agamemnon Achillem iussit servam (ancillam) tradere.
  10. Thetis iussit Hephaestum arma nova Achilli facere.

III. Change each personal pronoun to an intensive pronoun or a demonstrative pronoun. Translate each pronoun.

   Corpus 3. Achilles id Priamo dedit. idem, hoc, ipsum, istud.
   Equos 4. Achilles eos concutit. hos, eosdem, ipsos, istos.
   servus 5. Ab eo arma portantur. eodem, hoc, ipso, isto.

IV. Rephrase these English sentences into impersonal constructions and translate them into Latin:

   I am allowed to go home. It is permitted for me to go home.
   Licet mihi (or me) domum redire.
1. I am permitted to smoke. (fumare)
2. I like to read and write. (libet)
3. I do not like to wage war.
4. They are permitted to enter the citadel.
5. You are not permitted to touch the statue of the goddess.
6. Reply, please.

V. Scribite Latine, quaeso.

1. The leaders are not able to persuade Achilles to rejoin the battle.
2. The death of Patroclus persuades Achilles finally to fight again.
3. Ulysses entered the senate of Troy which was full of men.
4. He demanded that they return the booty and Helen to the Greeks.
5. Ajax fights with his body, Ulysses with his mind.
6. Finally in the tenth year of the war Agamemnon, at the command of Jove, ordered his troops to go home.
7. Ajax prepared to obey, but Ulysses warned his companions not to leave without Troy being captured (use an abl. abs.).
8. Ulysses persuaded Philoctetes to bring the weapons of Hercules to the war at Troy.
9. Ulysses entered the citadel of Troy at night and carried off the statue of Minerva, the Palladium.
10. Ulysses persuaded the leaders of the Greeks to give the arms of Achilles to him.

Etymology and Roman Life

ROMAN NAMES AND FAMILIES

In legendary times one name seems to have sufficed for people; even kings and the earliest heroes were known by one name alone—Aeneas, Romulus, Remus, Latinus, Evander. By the time of the monarchy described by Livy, however, two names are given for the early kings: Ancus Martius, Numa Pompilius, Tullus Hostilius, Tarquinius Priscus, Servius Tullius, and Tarquinius Superbus. The second of the names seemed to be a descriptive element in the names of the Tarquins, and perhaps that element was the origin of the added name. By the time of the Republic and the Empire, however, citizens usually had at least three names:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Praenomen</th>
<th>Nomen</th>
<th>Cognomen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gaius</td>
<td>Julius</td>
<td>Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publius</td>
<td>Ovidius</td>
<td>Naso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcus</td>
<td>Tullius</td>
<td>Cicero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Praenomen was given by the father to the son nine days after his birth, and it was usually the father’s own praenomen handed down to the first-born male. Originally these names had meaning: Lucius, related to lux, lucis, light; Gaius, from gaudere, to enjoy; Marcus, related to Mars. But these original meanings were later lost, as evidenced by Cicero’s only brother being given the name Quintus (fifth). There was not too great a variety in these praenomina, and they were usually indicated by an initial or abbreviation: Appius (App.); Aulus (A.); Decimus (D.); Gaius (C.); Gnaeus (Cn.); Lucius (L.); Marcus (M.); Publius (P.); Quintus (Q.); Servius (Ser.); Sextus (Sex.); Tiberius (Ti.) and Titus (T.). A man was called this praenomen by his friends.

The Nomen was the family generic name, the name of the clan, and it was equivalent to our “last name.” The Julian clan to which Caesar belonged was an old family claiming descent from Iulus, the son of Aeneas, the Trojan hero whose divine mother Venus had protected him on his trip from Asia Minor to Italy. On such slim evidence Caesar traced his ancestry back to the goddess Venus. When Caesar and the subsequent Caesars were deified, the justification for such elevation of status was conveniently obvious in the divine origin of the family.

The Cognomen was an added name given as a nickname, a descriptive appendage, or a conferred honor: Caesar, referring to the cutting (caesus) at birth to deliver the child safely, Naso (nose) referring to a prominent facial feature of a member of the family; Cicero (vetch) referring perhaps to an identifying mark on the face or body; Africanus, a name given to honor the general on the successful completion of a campaign. This inherited cognomen also indicated the branch of the gens or clan, the descriptive origin eventually becoming lost: Barbatus (Bearded), Cincinnatus (Curly), Longus (Long), Benignus (Kind), Severus (Severe), Sabinus (Sabine), Tuscus (Tuscan). Some freedmen added cognomina of their own, and sometimes additional names were acquired through adoption, since a man when adopted assumed the names of his adopted father as well as keeping his own as an adjective cognomen in -anus, the most famous example being that of Octavian who

---

1 An additional cognomen granted after the success of the African campaign in the Second Punic War.
2 The letter C was related to the Gamma, Γ, the third letter of the Greek alphabet, as evidenced in the abbreviation.
3 Even today we refer to a birth which involves cutting into the abdomen of the mother as a Caesarean section.
4 Almost as famous was Cicero’s friend M. Pomponius Atticus, who became Q. Caecilius Pomponianus Atticus when adopted by Caecilius.
became Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, and subsequently Augustus when he became emperor.

Women were sometimes given feminine (first declension) equivalents of the praenomen, but there was not great variety and often the name merely referred to number: Secunda (Second); Tertia (Third); Virginia (Maidenly); Caelia (Heavenly); Tarquinia (the Tarquin). Until marriage a woman many times was known by the feminine equivalent of her father's nomen: Augustus’ daughter was Julia; Cicero’s daughter was Tullia; Cornelius’ daughter Cornelia. In early times when a woman married she came under jurisdiction of her husband and assumed his nomen, but under the Empire this custom seemed not to have continued. A woman could add her mother’s nomen to that of her father’s.

Slaves originally had no names of their own and were called puer which became -por, an enclitic added to the master’s name and given to the young slave: Lucipor, Lucius’ boy; Quintipor, Quintus’ boy. This lamentable lack of identity existed until a need to refer to slaves as individuals caused names to be given, sometimes identifying places of origin (Britannicus) followed by the name of the master in the genitive case and the word servus following. Freedmen at manumission were given the Nomen of the master with an assigned praenomen and the man’s own name as a cognomen. A master frequently gave his own praenomen to a favorite or selected a name for him, but descendants of a freedman often dropped any name identifying the family as once slave. A naturalized Roman took his name, much as did a freedman, from the name of the Roman who sponsored his citizenship, adding a praenomen of his own choosing and his name as a cognomen.

The cognomen was generally used by patrician families, less frequently by plebeians. Consider the following genealogy:

M. Atius Balbus = Julia (sister of Julius Caesar)

Atia = Gaius Octavius

Octavia G. Octavius (Augustus)

Below are the meanings of some of the most common English names derived from Latin names or words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Augustus</td>
<td>majestic</td>
<td>Alma</td>
<td>nourishing,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cherishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christopher</td>
<td>bearer of Christ</td>
<td>Amanda</td>
<td>worthy to be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claudius</td>
<td>lame</td>
<td>Amy</td>
<td>beloved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constantine</td>
<td>firm, faithful</td>
<td>Angela</td>
<td>angel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexter</td>
<td>right-handed</td>
<td>Aurelia</td>
<td>golden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felix</td>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>Barbara</td>
<td>foreign, wild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilary</td>
<td>cheerful, merry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horace</td>
<td>name of a poet</td>
<td>Beata</td>
<td>blessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Julian</td>
<td>related to Julius</td>
<td>Beatrice</td>
<td>she that makes happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Justin</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>Belle</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leo</td>
<td>the lion</td>
<td>Clara</td>
<td>bright, shining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonard</td>
<td>strong as a Lion</td>
<td>Constance</td>
<td>firm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucius</td>
<td>shining</td>
<td>Diana</td>
<td>goddess of moon, hunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark</td>
<td>related to Mars</td>
<td>Estella</td>
<td>star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin</td>
<td>warlike</td>
<td>(Stella)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sylvester</td>
<td>woody</td>
<td>Felicia</td>
<td>happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban</td>
<td>citified</td>
<td>Flora</td>
<td>flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valentine</td>
<td>strong</td>
<td>Gloria</td>
<td>glory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrick</td>
<td>patrician</td>
<td>Grace</td>
<td>favor, grace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>little</td>
<td>Julia</td>
<td>related to Julius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pius</td>
<td>pious</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>related to Junius, a gens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quentin</td>
<td>fifth</td>
<td>Laura</td>
<td>laurel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rex (Roy)</td>
<td>king</td>
<td>Lucy</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rufus</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>Marcia</td>
<td>related to Mars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victor</td>
<td>conqueror</td>
<td>Miranda</td>
<td>admirable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Vincent)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Norma</td>
<td>pattern, form, guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Octavia</td>
<td>eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Patience</td>
<td>patience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prudence</td>
<td>discretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Regina</td>
<td>queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rose</td>
<td>rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Silvia</td>
<td>forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Serena</td>
<td>calm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ursula</td>
<td>shebear (diminutive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>victor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Viola</td>
<td>violet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Virginia</td>
<td>virgin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* * * * *

The following words in the lesson supply English cognates and derived words:

- *curia* | The Roman Senate House, the Curia |
- *communis* | common, communal |
- *contineo* | continent, continence |
- *copia* | cornucopia (the horn of plenty) |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usus</td>
<td>use, usable, useful, usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factum</td>
<td>fact, factual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requiro</td>
<td>require, requirement, requisition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trepidus</td>
<td>trepidation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retraho</td>
<td>retract, retraction, retractable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>penetralis</td>
<td>penetrable, penetrate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sententiae
Silent leges inter arma. Cicero, Pro Milone
"Vae victis" vox intoleranda Romanis. Livy, Ab Urbe Condita

In time of wars, laws are silent.

"Woe to the vanquished," a cry intolerable to Romans.

Chapter XXXIV
BELLUM TROIANUM: TROIA CAPTA

After Troy had fallen, its ramparts breached, its buildings in ruins, and its leaders slain or fled, the Trojan women suffered either death or captivity. The epilogue of the fate of the women has been eloquently told by the playwright Euripides in the Trojan Women, Hecuba, and Helen. Ovid, as usual at his best when writing from the female point of view, also has an eloquent section in Book XIII as he describes the death of the youngest Trojan princess, Polyxena, and the transformation of Hecuba into a dog. The tragic Cassandra begins the section in her role as priestess.

34a [Cassandra] tracta atque comis antistita Phoebi non prefecturas tendebat ad aethera palmas. Dardanidas matres patriorum signa deorum dum licet amplexas succensaque templum tenentes invidiosa trahunt victores praemia Grai; mittitur Astyanax illis de turribus, unde pugnantem pro se proavitaque regna tuentem saepe videre patrem monstratum a matre solebat.

---

34a

*atque, and also, postpositive.
*Cassandra, -ae, f., Cassandra, daughter of Priam and Hecuba was beloved of Apollo, who gave her his gift of prophecy, but when she refused to bear him children, added that no one would ever believe her. Taken as a war prize by Agamemnon, she was later killed in Mycenae by Clytemnestra and Aegisthus.

*coma, -ae, f., hair (of the head).
*antistita, -ae, f., priestess.

nōn prōfectūrās pālmās, unavailing (lit., not about to be effective) hands; pālmās, pars pro toto.
aether, -eris, m., the upper air, heaven.

Dardanīdas, Dardanian = Trojan.
*patrius, -a, -um, paternal, ancestral.
*signum, -i, n., here, a figure, image, or statue.
*dum licet, while they could (lit., while it was permitted).

amplexās, participle of amplector, -pecti, -plexus sum, embrace.

succensa templum tenentēs, holding onto the burning temples. (34a continues overleaf)
34b "Troia, vale, rapimur" clamant; dant oscula terrae Troades et patriae fumantia tecta reliquunt. Ultima conscendit classem—miserabile visu!—in mediis Hecuba natorum inventa sepulcris: [eam] prensantem tumulos atque ossibus oscula dantem Graecorum traxere manus, tamen unius hausit inque sinu cineres secum tulit Hectoris haustos; Hectoris in tumulo crinem lacrimalaque reliquit.

Achilles’ Ghost

34c Est, ubi Troia fuit, Phrygiae contraria tellus; litore Threicio classem religarat Atrides dum mare pacatum dum ventus amicior esset: hic subito, quantus, cum viveret, esse solebat, exit humo late rupta similisque minanti temporis illius vultum referebat Achilles, quo ferus iniusto petiit Agamemnona ferro "immemores" que "mei disceditis" inquit "Achivi, obrutaque est mecum virtutis gratia nostrae? Ne facite! utque meum non sit sine honore sepulcrum, placet Achilleos mactata Polyxena manes!"

invidiosus, -a, -um, hate-producing, modifying praemia (booty) in apposition to mātrēs. Graē, the Greeks. Astyanax, Astyanax, son of Hector. mittitur (ad mortem). *turrīs, -is, f., tower. proavītus, -a, -um, ancestral. *soleōs, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed to.

Trōadēs, the Trojan women. fūmantia, smoking (from fūmō [I], smoke). *conscendō, -ere, -di, -sum, climb into, climb up, ascend, go aboard. miserābile visū, a pitiful sight, supine in -ū (Sec. 187, n. 3). Hecuba, -ae, f., Hecuba, queen of Troy. *sepulcrum, -i, n., grave. prensantem, alternate form of prehensantem, grasping. *tumulus, -i, m., grave, hill, mound. *os, ossis, n., bone. traxērē = traxērant (eam) (her). haurīō, -īre, hausī, haustum, drink up, take in. unius [filii], of one son (Hector). haustōs cinerēs, a handful of ashes. *crinis, crinis, m., hair: women cut their hair as a sign of grief and mourning for the dead. Hector, -oris, m., Hector, son of Priam.

Phrygia, -ae, f., the land of Phrygia in which Troy was a major city. contrārius, -a, -um, opposite. (34c continues opposite)
Dixit, et inmiti sociis parentibus umbrae, 
rapta sinu matris, . . .
fortis et infelix et plus quam femina virgo
ducitur ad tumulum. . . .
Utque Neoptoleumum stantem ferrumque tenentem [vidit],
[dixit:] "Conde meo iugulo vel pectore telum."
Nulla mora est. Iugulumque simul pectusque rexit.
scilicet haud ulli servire Polyxena vellet!
. . . . . . . . . . . . . . .
. . . "si quos tamen ultima nostri
verba movent oris (Priami vos filia regis,
non captiva rogat), genetrici corpus inemptum
reddite, neve auro redimat ius triste sepulcri,
sehl lacrimis! tunc, cum poterat, redimbebat et auro."
Dixerat, at populus lacrimas, quas illa tenebat,
non tenet; ipse etiam flens invitusque sacerdos
virginis ferrum in pectore condit.

34d sociis parentibus, abl. abs. his companions obeying the heartless shade (inmiti umbrae is dat. with
pareb).
Hecuba’s Lament

Troades [corpus] excipiunt deploratosque recensent
Priamidas et quot tulerit domus una cruores,
tequemum, virgo, teque, o modo regia coniunx
regia dicta parens, Asiae florentis imago;
haec mater maestas lacrimas in vulnera fundit
osculaque ore tegit consuetaque pectora plangit
canitiemque suam concreto in sanguine verrens
plura quidem, sed et haec laniato pectore, dixit:
“nata, tuae—quid enim superest?—dolor ultime matris,
nata, iaces, videoque tua domus una cruores,
teque gemunt, virgo, teque, o modo regia coniunx
regia dicta parens, Asiae florentis imago;
hac mater maestas lacrimas in vulnera fundit
osculaque ore tegit consuetaque pectora plangit
canitiemque suam concreto in sanguine verrens
plura quidem, sed et haec laniato pectore, dixit:
“nata, tuae—quid enim superest?—dolor ultime matris,
nata, iaces, videoque tua domus una cruores,
teque gemunt, virgo, teque, o modo regia coniunx
regia dicta parens, Asiae florentis imago;
hac mater maestas lacrimas in vulnera fundit
osculaque ore tegit consuetaque pectora plangit
canitiemque suam concreto in sanguine verrens
plura quidem, sed et haec laniato pectore, dixit:
“nata, tuae—quid enim superest?—dolor ultime matris,
nata, iaces, videoque tua domus una cruores,
teque gemunt, virgo, teque, o modo regia coniunx
regia dicta parens, Asiae florentis imago;
hac mater maestas lacrimas in vulnera fundit
osculaque ore tegit consuetaque pectora plangit
canitiemque suam concreto in sanguine verrens
plura quidem, sed et haec laniato pectore, dixit:
“nata, tuae—quid enim superest?—dolor ultime matris,
nata, iaces, videoque tua domus una cruores,
teque gemunt, virgo, teque, o modo regia coniunx
regia dicta parens, Asiae florentis imago;
hac mater maestas lacrimas in vulnera fundit
osculaque ore tegit consuetaque pectora plangit
canitiemque suam concreto in sanguine verrens
plura quidem, sed et haec laniato pectore, dixit:
“nata, tuae—quid enim superest?—dolor ultime matris,

Met. XIII.410–505 adapted passim

---

genetrici, to my mother.
inemptus, -a, -um, unbought.
redimō, -ere, -dēmi, -demptum, buy back, redeem.
nève, and... not.
flēns, from flēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ērum, weep.
invitus, -a, -um, unwilling, against his will.

---

*excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, take up.
recenseō, -ère, recount, retell.
dēplōrātōs, lamented (modifies Priamidēs).
Priamidēs, sons of Priam (Greek acc.).
quot cruōrēs, how many slaughters.
tulerit ūna domus, one house has suffered (indirect question).
*gemō, -ere, -ui, -itum, groan, mourn, weep, lament, bemoan.
*modo, just a while ago.
dicta, called, spoken of as, referred to as royal (tēgius, -a, -um).
imāgo Asiae florentis, the image of flowering Asia; the wealth and abundance of Asia may once
have been symbolized by the Queen of Troy.
consuēta, accustomed (to woes).
*plangō, -ere, planxi, planctum, beat, strike.
canitiemque suam concretō in sanguine verrēns, ... et laniātō pectore, dixit, sweeping her
white hair in the clotted (hardened) blood and tearing her breast, she cried this and more things,
indeed, but especially these (words); canitiēs, f., gray hair; verrō, -ere, sweep; concretus, -a, -um, hardened.
Structure

183. Review of participles. Participles may be either active or passive and appear in the present, perfect and future tenses, but only in the following four instances:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gerēns, -entis</strong> waging (declined like 3rd decl. adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gestūrus, -a, -um</strong> about to wage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cēna afferenda ā cocō parābātur.

Bella gerenda ab omnibus timēbantur.

The dinner about to be carried in was being prepared by the cook.
The wars about to be waged were feared by all.

184. Passive periphrastic with the gerundive. An even more common use of the gerundive is with a form of sum, a use called the passive periphrastic. Periphrastic means talking around or a roundabout way of expressing an idea. The Romans enjoyed many roundabout ways of expressing the idea of obligation or necessity.

They could say for *I ought to love you*

simply:  
passively:

---

et fēmina, even though you are a woman.
tot, so many.
perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, ruin, destroy, do away with.
orbātor, -ōris, m., a bereaver, one who deprives another of children or parents.
sepeliō, -ire, -ivi, sepultum, bury; sepulti, of the buried man.
saevit in genus hoc, rages against this race.
tumulus, even in the tomb (*tumulus, -i, m., a mound of earth, grave, tomb).
Aeacidae, the son (really grandson) of Aeacus, i.e., Achilles.
facunda, fruitful, productive.
lacet Ilion ingens, Mighty Troy (Ilion) lies (destroyed), lies low, has fallen.
or, also passively: 

**Tū amandus mihi es.**

This is a roundabout or periphrastic way of saying, *you ought to be loved by me.*

In other words, the gerundive used with a form of *sum,* gives the idea of obligation or necessity. We could also translate the sentence as, *You should be loved by me.*

The sophisticated Romans could also say:

**Necessē est mē tē amāre,** but the meaning is a bit more urgent:

*I have to love you.*  
*It is necessary that I love you.*

N.B. When the passive periphrastic is used, the agent by whom the action is performed is expressed by the dative of agent, *mihi,* not by the ablative of agent with a preposition (*ā mē*).

In the Lesson:

**Dixī: nōn mihi metuendus est** Achillēs.  
I said (to myself): *I don’t have to fear* Achilles; *or,* Achilles *doesn’t have to be feared* by me.

**Nunc quoque mi¹ metuendus erat.**  
And even now *he did have to be feared* by me; *or,* And even *now I still have to fear him.*

185. Review of numbers. Earlier you studied the numbers 1–100. Of these only *one,* *two,* and *three* are declined. All other numbers are indeclinable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>haec ūna domus</td>
<td>This <em>one</em> house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinis ūnius (ūnius)</td>
<td>The ashes of this <em>one</em> man (Hector)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūnus</td>
<td>ūndecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tredecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīnque</td>
<td>quīndecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sēdecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octō</td>
<td>duodēvigintī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem</td>
<td>ūndēvigintī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decem</td>
<td>vigintī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹mi is shortened form of mihi.
186. Review of ablative usage. Because of its blend of several case functions that existed in the parent Indo-European language, the ablative combines a variety of uses that can be profitably organized as follows (see Sec. 80):

A. True ablative

Separation—with prepositions: de, ex, ab, sub, etc.
- ab insulā from the island
- ex urbibus out of the cities
— with verbs: liberō
  Civēs (ē) terrōre He freed the citizens from fear.
  liberāvit.
— with adjectives: liber, nūdus, vacuus, orbus
  vacua periculō free from danger
  orba ventīs deprived of winds

Source—parentage or origin
- nātus deā born from a goddess
- ortus ā Germānīs descended from the Germans
— material
  equus (ē) lignō factus a horse made of wood.

Place from which
- Athēnīs from Athens
- ab urbe away from the city

Comparison: (without quam)
- maior frātre suō greater than his brother

B. Instrument

Means
- Cassandra ferrō necātā est. Cassandra was killed by a dagger.
Manner
  magnō (cum) gaudīō with great joy.
Accompaniment
  cum mātre with his mother.
Description
  multīs flōribus with many flowers.
Agent with passive voice
- Ab ursō necātus est. He was killed by a bear.

C. Locative—in place and time

In place: in Lydiā in Lydia
- omnibus casīs in all the houses
  Athēnīs in Athens
With names of cities and small islands the name in the ablative is sufficient and no preposition is required.

In time:  
- *paucis hōris*  
  *in a few hours*  
- *decimō annō*  
  *in the tenth year*  
- *tribus diēbus*  
  *in three days*

D. Ablative absolute: Two ablative words making up an independent construction which accompanies the main thought of the sentence, but which has its own subject and verbal or descriptive element both expressed in the ablative case.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *Nāve vastātā, bellum fīnitum est.* | *The ship having been destroyed, the war was finished.*  
*When the ship had been destroyed, the war was over.*  
*Because the ship had been destroyed, the war was over.*  
*With Caesar as leader, we are safe.* |

E. Ablative of specification (in what respect)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Virtūte praestat.</em></td>
<td><em>He excels in bravery.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F. With verbs *uctor, fungor, vescor, fruor,* and *potior*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Magnis viribus male ūsus est.</em></td>
<td><em>He used his great strength badly.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

1. Primo respondete Anglice, quaeso; deinde Latine, quaeso.

   1. Quot filios et quot filias Priamus habet?
   2. Quis erat sacerdos Apollonis?
   3. Cur Apollo fecit ut nemo verbis Cassandrae crederet?
   4. Qui Dardanidas matres trahunt?
   5. Quis de turribus Troiae mittitur? A quibus?
   6. In quo loco Hecuba inventa erat?
   7. Quae (*n. plu.*) Hecuba ossibus natorium dedit?
   8. In quo loco cineres Hectoris secum tulit?
   9. Cuius manes in terra Phrygiae subito humo exit?
  10. Quid placet manibus Achilli (*to Achilles’ ghost*)?
  11. Quis Polyxenam necavit?
  12. Sagittane aut ferro Polyxenam necavit?
  13. Achillesne metuendus est Hecubae? Cur?
14. Cur Achilles Hecubae metuendus est?
15. Quam ad finem adducta est urbs Troia?

II. Change each of these constructions of obligation or necessity into passive periphrastic expressions.
   1. Debo litteras scribere.
   2. Debet Hecuba Achillem non metuere.
   3. Neoptolemus debet Polyxenam non necare.
   4. Debes urbem condere in hoc loco. (condere — to establish)
   5. Populi verbis Cassandrae credere debent.

III. Form the participles for each of the following verbs:
    ago, agere, egi, actum
    do, dare, dedi, datum
    moneo, monere, monui, monitum
    incipio, incipere, incepi, inceptum

Sample:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>agēns, -entis doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>actūrus, -a, -um about to do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. Supply the proper forms in each of the following:

1. (one) equus
2. (with three) sagittis
3. (from five) urbibus
4. (by two) viris
5. (out of ten) domibus
6. (on one) insula
7. (with a hundred) militibus
8. (five hundred) urbes
9. (twelve) arbores
10. (Three blind) mures (mūs, mūris, mouse; blind = caecus, -a, -um)

V. Scribite Latine, quaeso.

1. Cassandra told the Trojans (ind. obj.) about the war, but they did not believe her.
2. Little Astyanax was thrown (mittō) from the towers of Troy by the Greeks.
3. Achilles had to be feared (passive periphrastic) by Hecuba, even from the grave.
TOMBSTONE LATIN

Ideas of afterlife are reflected in how the Romans buried their dead, either by cremation or inhumation or both. Burial was very necessary because the shades of the dead (Manes) had to be appeased in a satisfactory manner so that the dead could rest comfortably and not return to disturb the living. The shades went to the Underworld as so many bloodless shadows to be ferried across the River Styx by Charon: this concept of death was inherited from the Greeks. Burials, therefore, were usually outside the walls of towns or cities, many times separated by walls or running water. Tombs were more or less elaborate depending on the wealth and importance of the deceased and his family. The most extensive were those erected for the families of rulers; the tombs of Augustus and Hadrian with their distinctive circular architectural plans still may be seen in Rome. Since the tomb was considered the residence for the dead, great pains were taken by wealthy nobles to make the “residence” appropriate to one’s station in life. Elaborate sarcophagi were housed in temple-like structures whose façades lined the roads leading out of town. Extensive property going back into fields beyond the limited plot on the road might be developed into parks with formal gardens, sculptural decoration, sundials, and benches for mourners. Some tombs contained foods and utensils to make the afterlife more comfortable, but in many tombs mere sculptural representations of these objects sufficed.

The middle and lower classes in Rome, who could ill afford private residences in their earthly existence and lived in multiple dwellings or apartments (insulae), reflected this pattern in the afterlife, since they were usually buried in large common underground chambers (called columbaria, bird houses) with niches in the walls for corpses or ossuaries. Cooperative societies, craft guilds, or fraternal orders sponsored such burial projects so that the cost of funerals could be kept at a reasonable price when shared by members. The very poor, the unknown, and foreigners were dumped with little if any ceremony into common open pits without markers or identifying stones, but they too were buried.

The graves and the beautifully carved markers provide much evidence for our knowledge of the Roman concepts of death and afterlife. So that the shades might be properly appeased, most markers began with the phrase: DIS MANIBUS, to the shades of the dead abbreviated D.M. The Manes (pl.) were considered as an individual or group divinity later identified as Dī parentes, one’s ancestors whose shades must be reverenced. Portrait busts of the important ancestors stood in the alae of the atrium of the home,

---

2 An ossuary was a container for the bones (ossa) of the dead. Often it resembled a hut or a house, since it was the “house of the dead”; sometimes it was an urn.
indicating a respect for parents and ties with deceased members of the family, who remained in the home as guardian spirits or divinities. Next on the marker appeared the name of the deceased (in the dative case) with the names of those erecting the stone in the nominative. A marker at the Kelsey Museum in Ann Arbor, Michigan, has the following inscription under DIS MANI-BUS:

```
D M CORNELIAE D(IS) M(ANIBUS) "To the Shades of the Dead
HERMIONENI CORNELIAE To Cornelia Hermione,
CORNELIVS HERMIONENI their mother,
HERMOGENES CORNELIUS who well deserved it,
ETCORNELIVS HERMOGENES Cornelius Hermogenes and
AQUILINVS AQUILINUS Cornelius Aquilinus
MATRI B(M) F MATRI have erected (this stone)."
B(ENE) M(ERENTI)
F(ECIT)
```

Other Latin mottos include:

```
REQUIESCAT IN PACE! May he rest in peace!
SIT TIBI TERRA LEVIS! May the earth be light on you!
HIC IACET FULVIA. Here lies Fulvia.
FLOS IPSA JULIA SICUT Julia, herself a flower, has died
FLORES PERIIT just as the flowers die.
```

Petronius satirized the nouveau riche freedman Trimalchio giving directions for his tomb at the end of his elaborate dinner party. Trimalchio tells that he wants the following words inscribed:

```
C. POMPEIUS TRIMALCHIO MAECENATIANUS HIC REQUIESCIT. MAY he rest in peace!
HUIC SEVIRATUS ABSENTI DECRETUS EST. CUM May he rest in peace!
POSET IN OMNIBUS DECURIIS ROMAE ESSE, TAMPEN
NOLUIT. PIUS, FORTIS, FIDELIS, EX PARVO CREVIT; THREE
SERTIUM RELIQUIT TRECENTIES, NEC UMQUAM PHILO-
SOPHUM AUDIVIT. VALE, ET TU.3
```

```
```

Cena 71e

This inscription follows direction for the tomb he envisions for his remains: statues of his little dog, garlands of flowers, all the exploits of his favorite gladiator are to be depicted on the tomb a hundred feet wide along the road and extending two hundred feet into the field. He asks for all kinds

---

3Gaius Pompey Trimalchio Maecenatianus lies here. He was decreed a Sevir (Priest) in his absence. Although he could have held any office in Rome, nevertheless he didn't want any. Pious, brave, faithful, he grew from a small boy; he left thirty million sesterces, and never studied any philosophy. Farewell, and (farewell to) you too.
of fruit trees to surround the tomb and "lots of grapevines." A specific inscription should be added that the tomb not be allowed to be inherited outside the family: **Hoc monumentum heredem non sequitur** (which appeared on ancient tombs abbreviated H.M.H.N.S.). He directs one of his slave boys to have the permanent job of keeping trespassers, especially those who would use the tomb as a toilet, off the property. He further orders ships under full sail to be carved on the tomb, with himself represented as sitting on a dais wearing the purple bordered toga, distributing cash to the people out of a bag; and he wants all the people sitting in a dining room having a good time. Then he wants his wife depicted holding a dove and leading a little dog on a leash, and he directs that his pet slave boy also be sculpted along with sealed jars of wine, a broken urn with a weeping boy bending over it, and a sundial with his name so that anyone passing by will see whose tomb it is when he reads the time.

* * * * *

Answer the following questions using the vocabulary of the lesson as your etymological source:

1. Why did no one ever believe Cassandra's prophecies?
2. Why is a signal a sign?
3. The turret is what part of a castle?
4. Who is buried in Grant's sepulchre?
5. What is a tumulus?
6. What is an ossuary?
7. What is a cinerary urn?
8. What is made of rock, sand, clay, and humus?
9. What is the vein in the neck called?
10. Why is Hecuba called the imago Asiae florentis?
Chapter XXXV
FILMING THE ODYSSEY

The reading section of this lesson is a very abbreviated Latin version of Homer’s Odyssey, the ancient epic recounting the wanderings of the Greek hero-adventurer, Odysseus/Ulysses. It was written as a script to accompany a film of shadow puppets made by students in a junior-college art class, as part of a project exploring the forms of the ancient Greek vases and black-figure vase paintings.

The characters in the film are shadow puppets made from black cardboard and animated from below with rods attached to their moving parts. A vertical stage front, of heavy black cardboard, supported on the sides by wings, concealed the student puppeteers. This front panel, about ten feet long and seven feet high, was perforated by the outlines of six Greek vase shapes. The students’ careful research insured that the forms for each opening were accurate.

These openings were covered by layers of colored tissue paper which, when lighted from behind, would provide the transparent backgrounds against which the shadow puppets, also behind the stage, would move in the manner of figures on a vase painting.

From each student’s choice of a character from the Odyssey, one member of the class worked out the brief, somewhat choppy, but connected narrative which embraces several of the generally known parts of the story. Music was added in the form of a single-line flute, to suggest the music which may have accompanied the voice of an ancient bard recounting to his listeners the hero’s adventures. The Latin text was prepared for a special showing of the film at an all-Latin program, but can be read independently.

Latin Text for The Odyssey

Ecce urnae Graecae—crater, hydria, calix

Artifex coloribus urnas pingit; format picturas de deis et de hero Graeco, Ulixe.
Ecce dea Minerva
Ecce deus Mercurius
deus Iuppiter cum fulminibus
deus Neptunus, currum trans mare agens
Ecce classis Graecorum, biremis, triremis
servi remos ducentes
duces ventum secundum sperantes.


Laestrygones quoque barbari ceteras naves in fundum maris demittunt; navis Ulixis sola effugit. Nunc appropinquant Harpyiae—aves biformes, capite feminae; tum Ulixes iubet se ad navem ligari dum nautae, auribus clausis, Sirenes effugiunt. Nunc Scylla, monstrum maris sex capitibus nautam carpit; ecce Charybdis—cur tam vorax?—naves, undas, aves, vada, monstra devorat revomique.


Quae domus est in Ithaca; in regia Ithacae fida Penelope texit dum coniunx viginti annos errat. Tempus est longum; et multi proci desiderant Penelopam in matrimonium ducere. Sed Ulixes adest! Omnes hos viros sagittis necat et Penelopam coniugem fidam salutat.

Minerva signum facit: finis fabulae.
Artifex fabulam finit.
Spectate fabulas in urnis, discipuli.
Hae scenae moventes factae sunt a discipulis de Collegio Highland Park; magistra eorum, Cyril Miles et coniunx Arnold, picturam moventem fecerunt.

Musica Graeca in fistulam a Mary Johnson inflata est.
Si pictura vobis grata est, plaudite nunc!
Verba

**NOUNS**

Aeolus, -i, m.  
Aeolus, *king of winds*

*agnus, -i, m.  
lamb

*artifex, -icis, m.  
artist, painter

*barbarus, -i, m.  
a barbarian

*calix, -icis, m.  
wine cup

*Circē, -ae, f.  
Circe, *the sorceress*

*color, -ōris, m.  
color

*crātēr, -ēris, m.  
a large mixing bowl

*Cyclops, -is, m.  
Cyclops

*fulmen, -inis, n.  
lightning, thunderbolt

*fundus, -i, m.  
bottom

*Harpiae, -ārum, f.  
the Harpies, *half-woman, half-bird*

*historia, -ae, f.  
story

*hydria, -ae, f.  
*a large water jar*

*Ithaca, -ae, f.  
*a race of giants*

Laestrygōn, -onis, m.  
Laestrygonians

*maga, -ae, f.  
witch

*nauta, -ae, m.  
sailor

*Pēnelopē, -ae, f.  
Penelope, *wife of Ulysses*

*Polyphemus, -i, m.  
Polyphemus, *the Cyclops*

*porcus, -i, m.  
*pig, swine (in pl.)*

*potestās, -tātis, f.  
power

*rēmus, -i, m.  
oar

*saccus, -i, m.  
sack, bag

*Scylla, -ae, f.  
Scylla, *a monster with six dog heads*

*Sirēnēs, -um, f.  
Sirens

*tempestās, -ātis, f.  
storm, tempest

*Ulixēs, -is, m.  
Ulysses

*unda, -ae, f.  
wave, water, sea

*vadum, -i, n.  
shallows, bottom of the sea

**VERBS**

dēvorō (1)  
devour, swallow

finīō, -ire, -ivi, -itum  
finish, limit

fulgeō, -ère, fusi, -sum  
flash

*frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractum  
break

furō, -ere, furī  
rage
ligō (1)  
*tellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum: drive
*pingō, -ere, pinxī, pictum: paint, depict, draw
*plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum: applaud
*salūtō (1): greet
*texō, -ere, texui, textum: weave
transfodiō, -ere, -fodi, -fossum: stab, transfix
vomō, -ere, -ui, -itum: disgorge, vomit, spew

ADJECTIVES

birēmis, -e: two-oared, with two banks of oars
*cūriōsus, -a, -um: curious
*ignōtus, -a, -um: unknown, strange
sagax, -ācis: wily, shrewd
trirēmis, -e: three-oared
vorax, -ācis: hungry, gluttonous

Exercises

Respondete Latine, quaeso.

1. Quae sunt nomina urnarum Graecarum?
2. Quibus signis Iuppiter intrat?
3. Quis coloribus urnas pingit?
4. Quem ventum duces sperat?
5. Quos Polyphemus curat?
6. Quot oculos Polyphemus habet?
7. Quomodo Ulixes e spelunca Polyphemi effugit?
8. Quomodo socii Ulixis e spelunca Polyphemi effugiunt?
9. Quis Ulixem sacrum ventorum dedit?
10. A quibus saccus ventorum apertus est?
11. Quis e mari surgit dum tempestas furit?
12. Qui ceteras naves in fundum maris demittunt?
13. Suntne Harpyiae feminae?
14. Quomodo Ulixes Sirenes effugit?
15. Quot capita Scylla habet?
16. Quae Charybdis edit?
17. In quos Circe homines transformavit?
18. Quis Ulixem iuvat ut potestatem malam Circae evitaret?
19. Ubi est domus Ulixis?
20. Qui Penelopam in matrimonium ducere desiderabant?
Etymology and Roman Life

FOODS

The terraced hillsides and fertile valleys of Italy supplied the ancients with the staples of grain, fruits, and vegetables, just as they do today. The temperate climate and plentiful rainfall was and is conducive to all kinds of produce. Most of the same crops that were grown in antiquity still are brought to market in Italy today. Flocks of sheep and goats still graze the meadows; cows, pigs, poultry continue to be cared for on farms, and the “fruits of the sea” have changed little from the delicacies that were supplied to the tables of Rome.

The Romans usually ate three meals a day, as we do, but in the early Republic the midday meal was usually the heaviest, as it still is in some areas of Europe today, particularly in rural communities. Served about the time of our lunch, this meal, the cena, could be more or less elaborate, depending on the wealth of the family and the social situation. Breakfast (lentaculum) was served early in the morning, while supper (vesperna) was served as an evening meal. In classical and imperial Rome the cena was served later in the day, crowding out the vesperna, and a luncheon called the prandium took the place of the noon cena. This evening cena, as described by Roman authors, began with an appetizer (variously called an ante cenam or gustos or gustatio), consisting of eggs, shellfish, oysters, snails, vegetables (cooked or raw). Imagine the hors d’oeuvres cart at a restaurant in France or Italy today with its artistically arranged variety of appetizers and the display would be much the same. Obviously, in a private home the normal meal would have more limited choices.

For the cena proper, a main course (mensae primae) of roasted or stewed meat, poultry, game, or fish was followed by a dessert course (mensae secundae) of pastry, fruits (raw or cooked), and nuts. Each course was accompanied by an appropriate drink: a light mulsum (like a mead of wine and honey) with the gustatio; wine mixed with water so as not to dull the taste of the food for the main course and the dessert; unmixed wine served liberally after the dinner. Since meals frequently began with eggs and ended with apples, the phrase ab ovo ad mala is equivalent to English “from soup to nuts.”

Breakfasts and lunches were usually simple meals. Breakfast could be bread, dry or dipped in wine or honey, accompanied by raisins, salt, and cheese. A luncheon might have included bread, salad, olives, cheese, fruits, nuts, and cold meats left over from the cena of the previous night. Raw or

---

1 Except for tomatoes, potatoes, and American corn (maize), which were introduced much later.

2 The Romans used butter medicinally, but not as a food; olive oil was used in cooking wherever fat was needed.
cooked vegetables may have also been served, much as in a present-day luncheon, depending on the circumstances. A siesta generally followed luncheon, even as it does in most Mediterranean countries today. The austere life characteristic of early Republican times would have precluded such elaborate meals, whereas the difficulties of transporting and storing food also would have limited soldiers' fare to simple foods, such as porridge and bread.

In classical times, the late-afternoon or evening cena became an opportunity for social gathering and entertainment; the wealthy Roman gathered (in convivium) with friends and family around a central table (mensa) on couches, which replaced benches or stools. These couches, three in number, on which guests reclined (reclinare) in a fixed position of honor and courtesy, gave the name to the dining room (triclinium) in the Roman house. One propped himself on his elbow (discumbere) and partook of the same delightful variety of foods that would appear at a banquet in Italy today, with several interesting additions: all kinds of fish, as well as sea urchins, oysters, clams, mussels, jellyfish, octopus; meats including goat, pork, veal, boar's head, whole roast pig, sow's udder, duck, goose, chicken, hare, sausages, tiny birds, such as thrushes, stuffed dormice, all prepared by roasting or stewing in a variety of ways. Beef seems to have been more rare, since the size of the animal and the problems of keeping meat fresh demanded that it be used quickly. During the Republic the heart, liver, and lungs were given to the priests for prophecy and the flesh provided the subsequent banquet. A garlanded master of revels introduced the eating and drinking courses.

Food was cut by a server, but one generally ate with the fingers; servants supplied water and towels for rinsing the hands at the table. Food was served on a discus, any of many sizes of flat dishes or plates of circular shape; large platters, shallow bowls of silver, bronze or pewter, often incised with patterns or relief work were used. Bronze, silver, fine pottery bowls, cups, open drinking vessels, pitchers, glass jars of extraordinary sophistication in color and design, all attest the skill of the metal worker, the potter and the glass blower.

Sources for our knowledge of Roman cooking include many authors whose references to foods and their preparation and consumption are valuable, but probably no cena in history is as celebrated as the hilarious burlesque that the author Petronius described as having been served in the triclinium of the nouveau riche Trimalchio, during the Empire. This cena consisted of course after course of elaborately decorated trays of food in all disguises: hares done up to resemble Pegasus, fish swimming in sauces, whole pigs stuffed with sausages attacked by the carver dressed up in a hunting costume, all the courses interrupted by acrobatics, songs, dancing, and tricks played on the guests, even to a dropped ceiling that opened to sprinkle guests with small gifts. The book is a treasury of gastronomical information, even if one allows for deliberate exaggeration.

Another fine source of information about Roman foods is a cookbook
attributed to Apicius, a compilation of several works on various household subjects: a book on housekeeping, one on sauces, a farmer’s manual of household tips (e.g., one for liquefying honey which has sugared), and a medicinal guide for the use of herbs. The last section makes the work valuable to the medical world. A translation by Barbara Flower and Elisabeth Rosenbaum, *Apicius: The Roman Cookery Book* (London: Peter Nevill, 1958) makes the recipes for many exotic Roman dishes available to the average cook. The authors have tried out the recipes themselves, and in addition there is a fine introductory section on sauces, wine preparation, cheeses, and on Roman kitchens and cooking utensils. Latin and English appear on facing pages for the benefit of people with limited facility in Latin.

* * * *

Match the following etymological items from the lesson:

| 1. Christ, the lamb of God (Answer: a)                  | a. *agnus dei* |
| 2. A foreigner.                                        | b. *urn*      |
| 3. The bowl-shaped interior of a volcano.              | c. *siren*    |
| 4. A bowl for mixing wine and water.                   | d. *pork*     |
| 5. Half woman, half bird; a shrewish woman.            | e. *fractile* |
| 6. Men who sailed on the Argo.                         | f. *barbarian*|
| 7. Meat from a pig.                                    | g. *crater*   |
| 8. A bag.                                              | h. *sack*     |
| 9. An irresistible female.                             | i. *Argonauts*|
| 10. Shakespeare’s storm.                               | j. *picture*  |
| 11. A pot for holding food or ashes.                   | k. *Tempest*  |
| 12. Something depicted.                                | l. *finished* |
| 13. Something woven.                                   | m. *hydria*   |
| 14. Something broken.                                  | n. *textile*  |
| 15. Something ended.                                   | o. *Harpy*    |

---

3 Evidently there were several gourmets of this name, one in the first century A.D. who, having made a science of his skill as a cook, is referred to by Pliny, Seneca, and Juvenal. The book, *De Re Coquinaria*, however, is a later work compiled by Caelius Apicius, probably in the fourth century A.D.
Ovid does not try to compete with Virgil in recounting the voyages of the Trojan hero Aeneas, whose wanderings in the manner of Ulysses over the same areas of the Mediterranean occupy the twelve books of the Aeneid. Ovid uses the Aeneas episodes to shift the setting of his myth materials to the Italian scene, for he is much concerned with bringing his tale of the changes in all of existence to his own country and to his own times. He is especially anxious to flatter Augustus, whose deification occurs at the end of the work. On the way to this transformation are the earlier deifications of Aeneas, Romulus, and Caesar. The story of Aeneas' wanderings is choppy and uneven. Below are parts of the Ovid tale; for comparison we will read some of Virgil's epic, written in the same meter.

36a  Non tamen eversam Troiae cum moenibus esse
spem quoque fata sinunt: sacra et, sacra altera, patrem
fert umeris, venerabile onus, Cythereius heros.
De tantis opibus praedam pius eligit illam
Ascaniumque suum profugaque per aequora classe . . .
intrat Apollineam sociis comitantibus urbem.
Tunc Anius illum temploque domoque recepit
urbemque ostendit delubraque nota duasque
Latona quondam stirpes pariente retentas.
Ture dato flammis vinoque in tura profuso, . . .
regia tecta petunt, positisque tapetibus altis
munera cum liquido capiunt Cerealia Baccho.

36a

eversam (esse), to be overturned.
fata non sinunt, The fates do not allow . . .; sinō, -ere, sivi, situm, permit, allow.
umeris, on his shoulders.
venerābile, this is a pun, either intentional or accidental; a venerable burden reminds us of Anchises' relationship with Venus (Venus, Veneris, f.).
delubra, shrines, temples.
stirpes, roots, (here) trees.

(36a continues overleaf)
The giving of gifts upon the departure of the Trojan wanderers reflect the patterns of heroic society.

36b  
Talibus atque aliis postquam convivia dictis implerunt, mensa somnum petiere remota 
cumque die surgunt adeuntque oracula Phoebi, 
qui petere antiquam matrem cognataque iussit 
litora; prosequitur rex et dat munus ituris, 
Anchisae sceptrum, chlamydem pharetramque nepoti 
cratera Aeneae, quem quondam transtulit illi 
hospes ab Aoniis Therses Ismenius oris:
miserat hunc illi Therses, fabricaverat Alcon 
Hyleus et longo caelaverat argumento. 
Urbs erat, et septem posses ostendere portas:
hae pro nomine erant, et quae foret illa, docebant; 
ante urbem exequiae tumulique ignesque pyraeque 
effusaque comas et apertae pectora matres 
significant luctum.

Met. XIII.623–689 adapted passim

---

*onus, oneris, n., burden.
Cytheriāus hērōs, "Cytherian" is an epithet identifying Aphrodite (Venus) who, born from the 
genitals of castrated Uranus and the foam of the sea, floated by the island of Cytherea on her 
way to Cyprus. Aeneas is her son.
*ops, opis, f., might, power, resources, strength, help, wealth.
*pious, -a, -um, pious, devoted, the standard epithet of Aeneas.
*ēligō, -ere, -ēgī, -ēctum, pick out, choose.
profugū classe, ablative absolute.
Apollonineam urbēm is the island of Delos where Latona is said to have given birth to the twins 
Apollo and Diana by holding on to a palm tree (here two trees).
comitantibus, accompanying (him).
ostendē, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, show, display.
pariente, while giving birth.
rēgā tecta, royal palace.
tapetia, -iūm. n. pl., drapery, draped couch for dining.
mūnera Cereālia, the gifts of Ceres, that is, food.
liquidō Bacchō, the drink that Bacchus symbolizes, that is, wine (lit., the flowing Bacchus).

---

implērunt convīvia, they filled up the feast.
*petīre = petīverunt.
*surgū, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctum, rise, arise, get up.
cognāta lītora, kindred shores, a reference to Italy which is soon to be "related."
prosequitur, follows them out, escorts them out.
itūris, to them upon departure (lit., to those about to depart; future active participle used as a 
substantive).
Anchisēs, -ae, m., Anchises, father of Aeneas.
chlamydem, the chlamys, a garment of wool, worn by soldiers.
pharetra, -ae, f., a quiver of arrows.
nepōs, -ōtis, m., nephew, here grandson, i.e., to Ascanius. 

(36b continues opposite)
You can recognize the scene depicted here on the goblet as the city of Thebes with its seven gates.

The wanderers go on to Crete, but leave soon for a trip up along the western shore of Greece, past Ithaca, past Epirus to the land of the Phaeacians, sometimes identified as Corfu. From here Ovid has Aeneas sail across to:

36c Siciliam: tribus haec excurrirt in aequora pennis.

Scylla latus dextrum, laevum inrequieta Charybdis infestat; vorat haec raptas revomitque carinas; illa feris canibus succingitur, illa etiam nunc virginis ora gerens, et, si non omnia vates ficta reliquerunt, aliquo quoque tempore virgo.

Met. XIII.724–734 adapted passim
Of the tale of Aeneas and Dido, Ovid tells a brief summary synopsis:

36d  Hunc ubi Troianae remis avidamque Charybdin evicere rates, cum iam prope litus adessent

36e  Ausonium, Libycas vento referuntur ad oras. Excipit Aenean illic animoque domoque non bene discidium Phrygii latura maritii Sidonis; inque pyra sacri sub imagine facta incubuit ferro deceptaque decipit omnes.

Met. XIV.75–81

Virgil begins his monumental epic, the Aeneid, with this description of Aeneas and his tribulations escaping the wrath of Juno.

36Va  Arma virumque cano, Troiae qui primus ab oris Italiam fato profugus Lavinaque venit litora; multum ille et terris iactatus et alto vi superum saevae memorem Iunonis ob iram multa quoque et bello passus, dum conderet urbem inferretque deos Latio, genus unde Latinum Albanique patres atque altae moenia Romae.

Virgil, Aen. 1.1–7

---

36d

Hunc, this man, Polyphemus.
Trōiānae rātēs, The Trojan ships.
*ēvicēre = évicērunt, overcome, escaped from.

36e

Ausonium, an old name for Italy, poetically, the Italian shore.
Libycas, Libyan; illic, in that place, refers to the Libyan shores, Carthage.
nōn bene lātūra discidium Phrygīl marītii, not about to bear well the departure of her Phrygian husband.
Sidonis, -idis, adj., f., Sidonian; here, Dido, queen of Carthage, who came from Phoenicia in Asia Minor, of which Sidon was a chief city.
*imāgo, -inis, f., image, copy, likeness, pretext.
incumbē, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, fall upon.
*ēdēcipīō, -ere, -ēcipī, -ceptum, deceive.

36Va

*Arma virumque, arms and the man, a phrase which G. B. Shaw adopted as the title of a play; it announces the theme of the epic: war and a hero’s adventures.
profugus, driven by fate (ffito).
Italiam, to Italy.
Lāvīna lītora, the Lavinian shores; Lavinia is the name of the Italian princess Aeneas is destined to marry.
iactātus (est) multum, he was much tossed about.
āltō, on the sea.
*superum = superōrum, the gods.

(36Va continues opposite)
Virgil tells in detail how Dido, queen of Carthage, received the Trojans and fell in love with Aeneas. The bare thread of the kindly reception (animo domoque) in Ovid's version had earlier been expanded by Virgil into an elaborate love story set against the bustling city being constructed on the shores of Africa by the Phoenician queen. Before Dido knows who her guests really are, they tell her that they are Trojans fleeing from the destroyed city of Troy and that Aeneas is their king. She answers:

36Vb “Quis genus Aeneadum, quis Troiae nesciat urbe
virtutesque virosque aut tanti incendia belli?
Non obtunsa adeo gestamus pectora Poeni,
nec tam aversus equos Tyria Sol iungit ab urbe.
Seu vos Hesperiam magnam Saturniaque arva
sive Erycis finis regemque optatis Acesten,
[vos] auxilio tutos dimittam opibusque iuvabo.
Vultis et his mecum pariter considere regnis?

36Vc Urbem quam statuo, vestra est; subducite navis;
Tros Tyriusque mihi nullo discrimine agetur.
Atque utinam rex ipse Noto compulsus eodem
adforet Aeneas: equidem per litora certos
dimittam et Libyae lustrare extrema iubebo,
si quibus eictus silvis aut urbibus errat.”

Virgil, Aen. 1.565-578

ob memorem iram, on account of the remembering wrath; note the interlocking word order.
*passus, having endured; the perfect passive participle of patior, pati, passus sum, endure, suffer.
dum conderet, until he might establish the city (Rome).
*inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illatum, carry in; Latiō (dat.) to Latium, the country in Italy where Aeneas landed.
genus Latinum, the Latin race.
Albānus, -a, -um, Alban, referring to an ancient city in Italy, Alba Longa.

36Vb
Quis . . . nesciat, what man doesn’t know . . .
genus Aeneadum, the Aeneid race.
*incendium, -ii, n., fire.
Nōn . . . Poeni, we Phoenicians do not have such hard hearts; obtunus, -a, -um, dull.
tam adversus, so far from the Tyrian city; that is, they are not so far off the beaten track.
magnam Hesperiam, Italy (the land to the west).
arva Sātūrnia, Saturnian fields, i.e., Italy.
seu . . . sive, whether . . . or perhaps.
regem Acesten, Acestes, king of Sicily.
Erycis finis (finés), the territory of Eryx.
opibus, with my wealth.
et vultis, and do you wish.
considere his régins, to settle in this kingdom.

36Vc
*statuō, -eere, -uí, -ītum, establish.
*subdūcō, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, beach, draw up on shore. (36Vc continues overleaf)
Now that Venus is sure of Aeneas' welcome, she discloses the identity of the handsome stranger and makes him seem almost like a god. Dido is overwhelmed and urges the visitors to stay in Carthage.

36Vd  "Quare agite, o tectis, iuvenes, succedite nostris: me quoque per multos similis fortuna labores iactatam hac demum voluit consistere terra: non ignara mali miseris succurrere disco."

Sic memorat; simul Aenean in regia ducit tecta.

Dido gives Aeneas gifts for himself and for his young son Ascanius, who is still on the ship. Aeneas sends swift Achates back to the ship to bring little Ascanius with gifts for the Carthaginian queen. But Venus has a better idea.

36Ve  Aeneas rapidum ad naves praemittit Achaten, [ut]
Ascanio ferat haec, ipsumque ad moenia ducat;
omnis in Ascanio cari stat cura parentis.

---

nāvis = nāvēs.
nūlōdiscrimine agētur, will be considered with no difference or discrimination.
*utinam, would that ...!
Notō compulsus ēōdem, driven by the same South Wind.
*adforet = adfutūrus esset.
certōs, trusty men.
*equidem, indeed.
lustrāre, to search.
*ēiciō, ōicere, ēicēi, ēiectum, cast out; ēiectus, if he, as an outcast . . .
*quibus, any, some.

---

36Vd

quārē, therefore.
*agite, come now, imperative pl.
succēdite, enter, imperative pl.
similis fortūna, a like fortūne, similar experience.
iactatam, tossed about.
voluit, caused me to (lit., wanted me to).
consistere hāc terrā, to settle in this land.
miseris succurrere, to help wretched ones; miseris is dat.
*memorō (1), recount, tell a tale.

---

36Ve

rapidum Achāten, swift Achates.
ut ferat haec, to tell these things.
ipsem, the boy himself.
Iliaicis ēiecta ruinis, snatched from Trojan ruins.
praetereā, besides, moreover, in addition.
Cytherēa, Venus.

(36Ve continues opposite)
At Cytherea novas artes, nova pectore versat consilia, ut faciem mutatus et ora Cupido pro dulci Ascanio veniat, donisque furentem incendat reginam atque ossibus implicet ignem.

Virgil, *Aen.* 1.627–660 passim

Aeneas tells the assembled guests at the court of Dido the story of the fall of Troy, how the Greek fleet pretended to leave and abandoned on the shore the wooden horse, which when brought inside the walls of Troy caused the ultimate ruin of the city. He tells in detail the words of the priest Laocoön, who had warned the Trojans not to bring the horse inside the walls.

36Vf


Virgil, *Aen.* 11.41–49

*versat*, *turn over in the mind, twist around, meditate over.*
*faciem et ora*, *changed in appearance and features, Greek acc. of respect.*
*dulcis, -e, sweet.*
*ut . . . veniat, incendat* (*enflame*); *implicet* (*enfold*); *three subjunctive verbs in three purpose clauses introduced by ut; ut . . . furentem incendat reginam, that he may fire the queen to mad passion*: the participle here anticipates the result of the action of the verb.
*os, ossis, n., bone.*

36Vf

*ardēns, -dentis, eager, spirited.*
*dēcurrērī, -ere, -curri, -cursum, run down.*
*procul, from a distance, said (supply ait).*
*quae tanta insānia, what great madness is this.*
*avectōs (esse), have been carried away (on their ships).*
*ūlla dōna Danaüm, any gifts of the Greeks (Danaüm, gen. pl.).*
*careō, -ere, carul + abl., be lacking, be free from (dolls, tricks or deceit).*
*nōtūs (est), famous for.*
*occultō (1), hide.*
*inclūsi, shut up.*
*lignum, -i, n., wood, here, wooden horse.*
*in nostrōs mūrōs (as a plot) against our walls.*
*inspectūra, about to overlook.*
*ventūraque, and about to come down.*
*dēsuper, from above.*
*error, here, deception.*
*lateō, -ēre, latui, lie hidden.*

(36Vf continues overleaf)
Structure

187. Supine to express purpose. The supine (formed like the perfect passive participle in -um) is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, but appears only in the accusative and ablative singular: \( \text{amātum, amātū; visum, visū; condītum, condītū.} \) The most common use of the supine is the accusative to express purpose, following a verb of motion.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Vēnit mē visum.} & \quad \text{He came to see me.} \\
\text{Aeneās vēnit rēginam visitātum.} & \quad \text{Aeneas came to visit the queen.}
\end{align*}
\]

The supine is generally used as the fourth principal part for intransitive verbs, although the future active participle occasionally replaces it in the vocabulary (e.g., sum, esse, fui, futūrum).

188. The many ways to express purpose. The Romans had a variety of ways to express purpose, that idea which in English we most easily express by an infinitive phrase:

\[
\text{He sent his son to see the queen.}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purpose Clause:</th>
<th>Filium misit ut rēginam vidēret.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Relative Purpose Clause:</td>
<td>Filium misit qui rēginam vidēret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund after \textit{ad}:</td>
<td>Filium misit \textit{ad} rēginam videndum. (^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerundive after \textit{ad}:</td>
<td>Filium misit \textit{ad} rēginam videndam. (^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{causā} + Gerundive:</td>
<td>Filium misit rēginæ videndae causā. (^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{gratiā} + Gerundive:</td>
<td>Filium misit rēginæ videndae gratiā. (^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine:</td>
<td>Filium misit rēginam visum.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises

1 A. Express this simple idea of purpose in the seven different ways suggested above.

The king sent soldiers to save the city.

1. Purpose Clause: Rex milites misit ut urbem servarent.
2. Relative Clause:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{nē crēdite, poetic imperative pl. in a negative command.} \\
\text{Teucri, Trojans, voc.} \\
\text{Danaōs, the Greeks, acc.} \\
\text{*et dōna ferentēs, even bearing gifts (ferentēs is a pres. act. part., acc. pl. modifying Danaōs); et = etiam.}
\end{align*}
\]

\(^1\) When a noun is required to complete the idea expressed by the gerund, it is more common to substitute the gerundive construction.

\(^2\) \textit{Causā} and \textit{gratiā} (for the sake of) are both in the ablative case, preceded by the genitive of the gerundive.

\(^3\) Ablative singular supine in -ū: miserābile visū (wretched to behold, a pitiful sight), mirābile dictū (amazing to relate).
3. Gerund after ad:
4. Gerundive after ad:
5. causa + Gerundive:
6. gratia + Gerundive:
7. Supine:

B. Express the purpose idea in each of the following sentences in the seven different ways. The sentence will be given in the purpose clause form. You will need to supply the other six.

1. Aeneas Achaten mittit ut Ascanium ducat. (ducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum)
2. Venus Cupidinem misit ut reginam incenderet. (incendō, -ere, -censi, censum)
3. Polyphemus saxum dimisit ut Graecos necaret. (necō [1])

Etymology and Roman Life

CLOTHING

Roman clothing was simple, graceful, and elegant. Men and boys wore a practical tunic (tunica) for everyday dress and a draped toga for formal or social occasions. The tunica, a long straight shirt, consisted of two lengths of fabric caught at each shoulder and attached down the sides with openings for head and arms. It extended to the calves and could be shortened by means of a belt (cingulum). Sleeves were achieved by extending the shoulder area of the cloth over and down the arm. In cloth of suitable weight for warm or cold weather and varied by being designed as an under-tunic or an over-tunic for the very old or very cold (who wore both), it was usually of white wool and served as the all-around practical garment for all occasions within the home. If any undergarment (subligaculum) was worn, it was a simple loin cloth tied around the groin or put on like shorts. Trousers (bracae) were copied from the barbari of the northern areas conquered by the Romans, and soldiers returning from these lands sometimes wore them as riding breeches, but they were out of style and a sign of a foreigner in Rome.

The toga for formal occasions was the characteristic clothing for a Roman all during the history of the country. Falling to the feet, it was made of heavy white wool and was wound or draped about the body, instead of being put on over the head, as was the tunica. It was worn wherever social and state occasions demanded—in the forum, the senate, the court, the market place, at public games, to and from the baths. It was the Roman’s symbol of citizenship (he assumed it once he reached manhood at seventeen years of age), and the Roman boy of a wealthy family wore the toga praetexta from the age of thirteen until manhood four years later. Only citizens were permitted to wear the toga, and if exiled, one had to leave his toga behind.
Slaves wore only the tunica and added a rough cloak for severe weather, as probably did the poor also. Soldiers later adopted the cloak, and then the rich also in imitation of the soldier.

The toga had to be carefully draped by a slave who adjusted the complex folds over shoulders and under arms so that the fold in the front (sinus) could serve as a sort of carry-all purse. Sometimes the ends were weighted with lead to cause the drape to fall more securely. An ordinary citizen wore a natural-colored wool toga (toga pura or virilis). Fuller’s chalk could give a bright whiteness to the toga, and such a whitened toga was called candida. Those running for office wore such a toga and were called candidati. A crimson (purple) border edged the toga praetexta worn by government officials and young boys, and a fancy toga picta, crimson with gold embroidery, was worn by emperors or those in triumphs.

The cloak first worn by soldiers (lacerna) and held together by a pin (fibula) became popular with the wealthy and was sometimes worn in place of the toga. The fibula, first developed by the Etruscans, was the ancestor of the modern safety pin, its spring and clasp working on the same principle. The upper portion of the pin was bowed into a high gentle curve and was decorated with precious woods and metals. Samples of these beautifully designed fibulae appear in museums all over Europe and America.

Footgear consisted of sandals (soleae) and shoes (calcei). Sandals were soles with straps and were worn indoors with the tunica. Calcei or outdoor shoes were generally of leather with sturdy uppers and straps. Senators wore calcei with an ivory crescent on the outside of the ankle holding together thongs wound around the legs and tied twice in front. No stockings were ever worn. The soldier’s boot (caliga) was of very sturdy material, and the diminutive of the word, caligula, gave the name to the Emperor Gaius who, raised in his brother’s army barracks, was given the nickname “Little Boots,” a name which he retained when he became emperor.

Women’s wear was not greatly different from men’s. Women also wore a tunic which differed little from that of the men, save that it might be woven of finer fabric, but they generally wore a subligaculum or undergarment. In addition, women wore a stola, a long full garment fastened by a girdle or belt, indoors. For outdoor wear there was added a palla, a woolen shawl which could cover the upper portion of the body or go over the head when needed. Men and women wore rings (anuli) both for decoration and for sealing, as a signature. Boys wore a ceramic or stone central bead on a thong of leather. This single decoration, called the bulla, was worn by the sons of nobles and freedmen until they reached maturity, at which time it was consecrated to the Lares, the household gods.
Give the etymological source for these underlined words from the vocabulary:

1. a pious man
2. a general insurrection
3. laws of hospitality
4. fabricate a lie
5. infest the area with disease
6. came to (de)vour us
7. a large funeral pyre
8. image of his father
9. deceptive means
10. infer that you will be here
11. incendiary bomb
12. a statute of the constitution
13. eject the capsule on the flight
14. ardent admirer
15. occult practices
16. inspect the walls for sabotage
Chapter XXXVII

ACHAEMENIDES

Near Aetna off the coast of Sicily, Aeneas took aboard a Greek named Achaemenides who had been left behind when Ulysses escaped from the Cyclops Polyphemus. Achaemenides later tells a Greek friend what happened on the island after Ulysses sailed away and then he is told about the subsequent adventures of Ulysses with the bag of winds given by Aeolus, the sinking of the ships by the Laestrygonians and the adventure with Circe. The friend wondered why a Greek had traveled on a Trojan ship.

37a Dixit Achaemenides: “iterum Polyphemom et illos adspiciam fluidos humano sanguine rictus, hac mihi si carior domus est Ithacaque carina, si minus Aenean veneror genitore, nec umquam esse satis potero, non si dedero omnia, gratus. Quod loquor et spiro caelumque et sidera solis respicio, possimne ingratus et immemor esse? Ille dedit, quod non anima haec Cyclopis in ora venit, et ut iam nunc lumen vitale relinquam, aut tumulo aut certe non illa condar in alvo.

Achaemenides, m., Achaemenides.
*Polyphēmon, Greek acc.
*adspiciam, subjunctive, may I look upon.
illūs rictūs fluidōs, those jaws dripping; rictus, -ūs, m., jaw.
*cārior, comparative + abl., dearer than (hāc carinī).
* veneror, -ēri, -ēritus sum, respect, revere, honor, worship.
genitore = parente.
*sprō (1), breathe.
sidera, constellations of the sun, stars.
quod, the fact that I . . . .
immemor, forgetful, unmindful.
ille dedit quod, it is due to him that . . . (lit., he gave it that . . .)
ut iam nunc relinquam, when I now shall leave the light of life; i.e., when I die.
nōn līlā condar in alvō, and I shall not be buried in that stomach (alvus, -i, f.).
37b Quid mihi tunc animi ( nisi si timor abstulit omnem sensum animumque) fuit, cum vos petere alta relictus aequora conspexi? volui in clamare, sed hosti prodere me timui; vidi, cum monte revulsum immane scopulum medias permissit in undas; vidi iterum veluti tormenti viribus acta [eum] vasta Giganteo iaculantem saxa lacerto.

37c Ille quidem totam gemebundus obambulat Aetnam praetemptaque manu silvas et luminis orbus rupibus incursat foedataque bracchia tabo in mare pretended gentem exsecratur Achivam atque ait: 'o si quis referat mihi casus Ulixen, aut aliquem e sociis, in quem mea saeviat ira, viscera cuius edam, cuius viventia dextra membra mea laniem, cuius mihi sanguis inundet guttur, et elisi trepident sub dentibus artus.'

---

37b

quid mihi animi fuit, what was my state of mind.
nisi si, except that.
vos, you (Ulysses and his men).
aequora, the deep sea, with petere, sailing on (lit., seeking).
conspexi, I caught sight of.
* inclāmāō (1), shout out.
prōdēre, to hand myself over.
revulsus, -a, -um, m., torn away.
* immānis, -e, huge.
scopulus, -I, m., rock.
veluti tormenti viribus acta, just as if driven by the force of a catapult.
vastus, -a, -um, huge.
Gigantēō lacērint, with his giant arm.
iaculantem, pres. part. of iaculō (1), throw, hurl.

37c

gemebundus, -a, -um, groaning, moaning, sighing.
* obambulāō (1), wander over, stumble over, prowl about.
* Aetna, -ae, f., Mt. Aetna.
* praetemptāō (1), feel, try out.
orbus, -a, -um + gen., deprived of; luminis, light (of the eye).
* rūpēs, rūpis, m., rock.
incursāō (1) + dat., stumble against, bump into.
foedāta, perf. pass. part., fouled, stained with.
tābum, -ī, n., gore.
* prōtendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum or -sum, stretch out.
exsecror, -āri, -āitus sum, curse.
* Achivus, -a, -um, Greek.
* cāsus, -ūs, m., chance, accident; quis = aliquis.
saevīō, -fre, -īī, -itum, rage, be violent.
viscera, -um, n. pl., inner organs, heart, entrails.
* edō, -ere, ēdi, ēsum, eat, devour.

(37c continues opposite)
Mors erat ante oculos, me luridus occupat horror.

Perque dies multos latitans omnemque tremiscens
ad strepitum mortemque timens cupidusque moriri,
glande famem pellens et mixta frondibus herba
hanc procul adspexi longo post tempore navem
oravique fugam gestu ad litusque cucurri,
et movi: Graiumque ratis Troiana recepit.”

Aeolon ille dixit Italico regnare profundo
Aeolon regem omnes cohibentem carcere ventos;
quos bovis inclusos tergo, memorabile munus,
Dulichium sumpsisse ducem flatuque secundo
lucibus isse novem et terram aspexisse petitam;
proxima post nonam cum sese aurora moveret,
invidia socios praedaeque cupidine victos
esse; ratos aurum dempsisse ligamina ventis;
cum quibus isse retro, per quas modo venerat undas,
Aeolique ratem portus repetisse tyranni.

Met. XIV.167–232 adapted passim

---

*ianni* (1), tear to pieces.
*inundō* (1), overflow, inundate.
*ēlisī artūs, mangled limbs, torn-out limbs.*
*glumēs, glandis, f., acorn, chestnut.*
*famēs, famīs, m., hunger.*
*adspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, catch sight of.*
*gestūs, -ūs, m., gesture.*
*mōvi, I moved (them to compassion).*

---

ille, *that man*: Achaemenides’ Greek friend, who now tells him a story.
Aeolon, *Aeolus*, king of the winds, Greek accusative, subject of *regnāre*.
dixit, *say, tell*, introducing a series of infinitives in indirect statement to tell the whole story of Aeolus.
*Latīcō profundō, the Italian sea (deep).*
*regnō* (1), rule over.
Structure

189. Ablative of comparison. After a word of comparison the “than” idea may be expressed by *quam* or by the *ablativus of comparison*. With *quam* the two words compared are in the same case.

Honor est grātior opibus. Honor is more pleasing than wealth.

or

Honor est grātior quam opēs. Honor is more pleasing than wealth.

Hāc mihi sī cārior domus est Ithacaque carinā. . . if my home and Ithaca are dearer to me than this ship.

Caesar minor est quam Cicero. Caesar is younger than Cicero.

or

Caesar minor est Cicerōne. Caesar is younger than Cicero.

The ablative of comparison is regularly used in negative sentences.

Nihil est pēior servītūte. Nothing is worse than slavery.

190. Verbs of remembering and forgetting with the genitive case. The verbs of remembering and forgetting—*memini, obliviscor*—usually take an objective genitive, but may also take the accusative in poetry.

Vivōrum memini. I remember the living. (am mindful of . . .)

Virtūtis militum meminit. He remembered the courage of the soldiers.

---

*cohībeō, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, hold together, confine.*
*carcer, -eris, m., prison (originally the barrier or starting gate of the race course).*
*bōs, bovis, c., ox, cow.*
*includō, -ere, -si, -sum, shut up, confine, imprison.*
*tergum, -i, n., skin, hide.*
*mūnus, -eris, n., gift.*
*Dūlīchius, -a, -um, Dulichian leader, Ulysses, from the name of an island near Ithaca in his kingdom.*
*sūmō, -ere, -psi, -ptum, take.*
*flūtus, -ūs, m., blowing wind, breeze.*
*lūcībus novem, nine days.*
*aspexisse, had caught sight of.*
*nūnus, -a, -um, ninth.*
*sūrōra, -ae, f., the dawn.*
*invidia, -ae, f., envy; ablative here.*
*rear, rēri, ratus sum, think.*
*dempiisse ligamina, had untied the bonds (unloosing the winds from the bag).*
*retro, backward.*
*tyrannus, -i, m., king.*
*portus, -ūs, m., harbor.*
XXXVII Achaemenides 379

He was forgetful of the flames.

occasionally

The verb memini, meminisse is defective, having no present system.
The verb obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum is deponent.

191. Aids in translation. Now that the format of the reading provides the vocabulary and notes immediately below the section to be translated, the pleasure of being able to read the Latin fluently and get the ideas quickly is within your grasp. The following suggestions may implement the process. First read the Latin once or twice, either a portion or an entire passage, to hear the sound of the words and to feel the meter. You may understand only a few words here and there, but get into the habit of reading the Latin first. Then begin your translation by letting your eye travel along the line until the verb or verb phrase appears. If it is in first or second person, then translate it accordingly and assume that the other nouns in the sentence will be objects or modifiers. If the verb is third person, then possibly the subject will be along the line somewhere before the verb. Know the possible endings for subjects, direct objects, objects of prepositions, possessives, indirect objects, in all genders, and be prepared, especially in poetry for words which ordinarily stand together to be separated for the sake of meter, chiasmus, or interlocking word order. It is assumed that you will be able to translate any tense of the verb and any voice that occurs. Look for words that introduce subordination, and be prepared for indirect statement after verbs of saying, thinking, feeling and the like. It may help to read through the notes first, so that you have a general idea of the material that is to appear.

Exercises

1. Quaestiones

1. Ubi olim habitabat Achaemenides? Ubi erat domus ei?
2. Quales rictus Polyphemus habet? (What kind of jaws . . .)
3. Quem Achaemenides veneratus est?
4. Cum Achaemenides navem Troianam videret, quid voluit facere?
5. Cur non inclamavit?
6. Quid Polyphemus faciebat eo tempore?
7. Quibus Achaemenides famem pellit dum latet?
8. Quale munus Aeolus Ulixi dedit?
9. Qui donum Aeoli aperuerunt?
10. Cur aperuerunt hoc donum?
II A. Supply the correct form of the ablative of comparison.

1. Sanguis est densior ___________.  (water)
2. Amici sunt meliores ___________.  (relatives: cognatus, -i, m.)
3. Consilia tua sunt clariora ___________.  (light)
4. Nemo est laetior ___________.  (I)
5. Quis est crudelior __________?  (you)
6. Quis est clarior __________?  (Ulysses)
7. Quid est carius __________?  (gold)
8. Exegi monumentum perennius __________.  (bronze)
   Actually the word order of Horace’s rather immodest summary
   of his creative work goes as follows, Exegi monumentum aere
   perennius. . . .
   I have created a monument more lasting than bronze. ¹
9. Verba eius dulcipla __________ erant.  (honey: mel, mellis, n.)
10. Estne patria carior __________?  (life)

B. Now change each of the above to a “quam” idea.

III. Supply the infinitive subjects for these impersonal verbs and translate
    each sentence.

1. Mihi (to speak) libet.
2. Mihi (to ask) licet?
3. ‘Amicos (to forget) non oportet.
   One should not forget friends.
4. (To be away) non mihi placebat.
5. (To wage war) mihi paenitet.

IV. Supply the correct form of the objective genitive for each of these verbs:

1. (Friends) meminit semper.
2. (Enemies) numquam oblitus est.
3. (Greeks) meminerat.
4. (Food and wine) oblitii sunt.
5. (Fatherland) oblitii erant. (patria, -ae, f.)

V. Translate into Latin.

1. “I remember Polyphemus and his jaws flowing with human
   blood,” said Achaemenides.
2. When I saw your ship, I wanted to shout out, but I was afraid.
3. I saw Polyphemus hurling rocks with giant arms.

¹Ovid concludes his last book of the Metamorphoses, lines 871–879, with much the same
image: “Iamque opus exegi, quod nec lovis ira nec ignis nec poterit ferrum nec edax abolere
vetustas.”
4. I ran down to the shore and begged you to accept me, a Greek, in your Trojan ship.
5. Aeolus had given the winds enclosed in the skin of a cow to Ulysses.

Etymology and Roman Life

AN INSULA IS NOT A DOMUS

To generalize about an average Roman house (domus) would be as misleading as to postulate floor plans for an average American house, since individual houses differed according to climate and social function; but there were distinctive features which made the construction of Roman houses unique. First was the lack of frontal space or landscape architecture, because houses or apartments fronted directly on the street or sidewalk with no area between the road and the front door, just as in European city architecture today. One entered immediately into an entrance hall (vestibulum or ostium) flanked in a larger home or apartment by alcoves (fauces, jaws) where the janitor or butler might watch the people who came to the door (janua), much in the manner of the French concierge. The floor of the entrance hall many times was decorated with beautiful mosaics, perhaps of a fierce dog who might be the vestigial remains of his real counterpart who once guarded the entrance. One such floor in Pompeii bears the warning, Cave canem! Such embellishments of mosaic decoration, usually designed and executed by Greek artists, attested the wealth and taste of the owner.

Beyond the entrance was the atrium, the most characteristic feature of the Roman house. In early times this name applied to the single important room of the house when the society was simple and the family gathered about the central hearth for all of its activities. The name atrium was later given to the large interior reception room which still was the focus for family gathering when the house had become more elaborate with separate rooms designed for serving functions of eating, sleeping, and food preparation. This atrium in the more elaborate house contained the central pool (impluvium) filled through a rectangular opening (compluvium) in the roof through which the rain (pluvium) came to fill the pool beneath. The pool could be unadorned or, in the homes of the wealthy, decorated with pillars of wood or marble extending up to and helping support the roof. Wings (alae) led off the atrium in the form of alcoves, and in these were the ancestral portrait busts. Rooms led off to the sides and the rear: the tablinum or study of the master which might hold the account books (tabulae), the family treasure chest and books for study; the triclinium (dining room) for formal meals, with its three couches grouped around the central table (mensa); bedrooms (cubicula); the kitchen (culina); possibly a library; the toilet (latrina); storerooms; and servant quarters.
Beyond these rooms, the house opened out into a peristyle or garden court with a portico for outdoor activities including dining, possibly a small fountain or pool in the center, with formal gardens and, in the rear, a small vegetable and herb garden with fruit trees and perhaps even a pool for fresh fish for the table. All this was surrounded by a high wall to screen it from the street or from other adjacent garden areas. Along the street, on either side of the entrance hall, shops could be rented out. These did not connect with the interior of the house, unless they belonged to the owner and were part of his business. Other rooms along the street might be rented out as separate apartments, and the upper floors that did not contain bedrooms for the main house were frequently rented out as apartments.

As crowding forced people into congested living patterns, the insula or apartment house provided a solution to multiple dwelling. Soaring to four, five, six, even seven stories, these wood, brick, or stone² structures sometimes occupied a whole city block, with a central court in the interior to provide light. Built flush to the street with shop stalls facing the road, they probably resembled their dreary counterparts in France or Italy today with narrow stairs in dimly lit corridors leading to upper floors with smaller and less desirable apartments. Built cheaply for investment, these insulae were often fire-traps, and many times they collapsed because of poor construction. Unscrupulous men often appeared at moments of fire or collapse to buy up the apartment for very little and then put their own men to work to reconstruct the building for small investment and great return.

In contrast, as wealth and luxury spread in the late Republic and the Empire, homes of the rich reflected the desire for splendor in marble veneer and fluted columns, elaborately painted walls resembling stage sets with panels depicting scenes that seemed to retreat into trompe-l'oeil vistas, cleverly enlarging the size of the room. Walls sometimes had panels painted with scenes of the outdoors, as if a window opened onto a country scene. Floors were constructed of marble or mosaic tile; ceilings and walls were decorated with ivory and gold. Furniture became elaborate and expensive with precious woods and fine fabrics imported from colonies abroad designed into couches for sleeping and entertaining.

Even in the relatively mild climate of Italy, the houses needed heat in the winter, and although the poor moved with the sun into warmer areas of the house and added cloaks to keep warm, or huddled about a central hearth, the very rich could enjoy the comforts of heat supplied beneath the floors by an arrangement called the hypocaust. The steam rooms of the great public baths were heated by this same device. Heated air was channeled into an area of squat brick pillars on which the floor rested. The warm air circulated

²A durable type of wall construction called opus incertum ("random" work), named from the random fill of stone or rubble in cement, was popular in the building trade.
through tile pipes or in hollow walls to provide a comfortable temperature for the room above, as well as heating the floor directly. Examples of these hypocausts have been excavated in Italy and throughout all areas of Europe, Britain and the Near East where Romans built. Such sophisticated devices as running water which, coming from aqueducts, was piped under the roads and into the houses, made plumbing and sewers part of Roman life for the wealthy. As engineers, builders of structures in stone, concrete, marble, wood, and tile, the Romans were unexcelled in the ancient world.

* * * * * *

What English words are derived from the following words from the lesson?

- veneror
- spiro
- Giganteo
- damno
- inundo
- vastus
- viscera

- trepido
- occupo
- cupidus
- fames
- gestus
- bovis
- retro
Chapter XXXVIII

CIRCE

A Greek is still telling the story of the adventures of Ulysses. He continues with the adventure at the city of the Laestrygonians:

38a "Inde autem veterem Laestrygonis" inquit "in urbem venimus: Antiphates terra regnabat in illa. Missus ad hunc ego sum, numero comitante duorum vixque fuga quaesita salus comitique mihi [et], tertius e nobis Laestrygonis impia tinxit ora cruore suo. Fugientibus instat et agmen concitat Antiphates; coeunt et saxa trabesque coniciunt merguntque viros merguntque carinas. Una tamen, quae nos ipsumque vehebat Ulixen, effugit.

---

38a

*inde, from there, thence.
*vetus, -eris, old, ancient.
Laestrygōn, -goals, m., the Laestrygonians, a race of giants and cannibals
Antiphathēs, -ae, m., Antiphates, king of the Laestrygonians.
numerus, -i, number.
*comitō (1), join as a companion, accompany.
*salus, -ūlis, f., safety, health.
*impiosk, -a, -um, impious, godless.
*tingō, -ere, -nxl, -nctum, wet, dye.
*instō, -āre, -stītī, -stātum, pursue, follow eagerly, + dat.
*agmen, -inls, n., army, troop, band.
*concitō (1), incite.
*coeō, -dre, -ivi or -iī, -ltum, come together, converge (on us).
trabs on trabes, -is, f., timber, beam; tree.
*concīō, -ere, -lēctī, -lectum, throw together, hurl (upon us).
mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, sink.
ūna (supply carina).
*vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey.
A Warning about Circe

Amissa sociorum parte dolentes multaque conquesti terras advenimus illas, quas procul hinc spectas (procul est, mihi crede, videnda insula visa mihi!) tuque o iustissime Troum, nate dea, (neque enim finito Marte vocandus hostis es, Aenea) moneo, fuge litora Circes! Nos quoque Circaeo religata in litore nave, Antiphatae memores tum crudelisque Cyclopis, ire negabamus; sed tecta ignota subire sorte sumus lecti:

Circe's Palace

...sors me fidumque Politen
Eurylochumque simul nimioque Elpenora vino bisque novem socios Circaea ad moenia misit. Quae simul attigimus stetimusque in limine tecti, mille lupi mixtaeque lupis ursaeque leaeque occursu fecere metum, sed nulla timenda nullaque erat nostro factura in corpore vulnus;

38b
*doles, -ere, -ul, dolitum, suffer pain, grieve, bewail.
multa conquesti, complaining of many things; conqueror, -i, -questus sum, complain of.
*videnda est, the passive periphrastic, which has the force of "ought to" (see Sec. 184).
Trōum, of the Trojans, gen. pl.
*nāte dea, vocative of *nātus, -i, m., born from, son of; dea is abl. sing.; "goddess born" is a usual term for Aeneas; the Trojan hero here is being warned by a Greek who knows Circe.
*Mars, Martis, m., Mars, god of war, here standing for war itself; Marte finito, abl. abs.: the war now over, now that the war has ended.
neque vocandus es, passive periphrastic, implying obligation.
Aenēa, voc. sing.
Circeae, gen. sing.
Circaeus, -a, -um, of Circe.
*legō, -ere, legi, lectum, pick, choose; read.

38c
fidum Politen, the faithful Polites.
Eurylochum, Eurylochus, one of the Greek comrades of Ulysses.
Elpenora, Elpenor, another companion; form is a Greek acc.
*nimius, -a, -um, very much, excessive; too much (supply who drank . . .).
sors . . . misit, the lot sent. . . .
Quae, refers to moenia, there.
*limen, -inis, n., threshold.
*lupus, -i, m., wolf.
*leæ, -ae, f., lioness.
38d quin etiam laetas movere per aëra caudas
nostraque adulantes comitant vestigia, donec
[nos] excipiant famulae parce atrae marmore tecta
ad dominam ducunt: pulchro sedet illa recessu
sollemni solio, pallamque induta nitentem
insuper aurato circumvelatam amictu.
Nereides nymphaeque simul, quae vellera motis
nulla trahunt digitis nec fila sequentia ducunt,
herbas disponunt sparsosque sine ordine flores
secernunt calathis variasque coloribus herbas;
ipsa, quod hae faciunt, opus exigat, ipsa, quis usus
quove sit in folio, quae sit concordia mixtis,
novit et advertens pensas examinat herbas.

Met. XIV.233–270 adapted passim

*occursus, -ūs, m., meeting, running up (to us).
*metus, -īs, m., fear, horror.
*nulnus, -a, -um, none, not one of them.
*timenda (erat), passive periphrastic implying obligation.
*factūra (erat), active periphrastic, implying futurity.
The Men Changed Into Swine

38e Haec ubi nos vidit, dicta acceptaque salute, nec mora tum accipimus sacra data pocula dextra. Quae simul arenti sitientes hausimus ore, et tetigit summos virga dea dira capillos, (et pudet et referam) saeitis horrescere coepi nec iam posse loqui, pro verbis edere raecum murmur et in terram toto procumbere vultu, osque meum sensi tum magno crescere rostro, colla tumere toris, et qua modo pocula parte sumpta mihi fuerant, illa vestigia feci;

38f cumque eadem passis (tantum medicamina possunt!) claudor hara, solumque suis caruisse figura vidimus Eurylochum: solus data pocula fugit; quae nisi vitasset, pecoris pars una manerem nunc quoque saetis, nec tantae cladis ab illo certior ad Circen ultiur venisset Ulixes.

---

haec (rēgīna), this queen Circe.

*salīs, -ītis, f., health, safety; greeting, good wish.

nec mora: supply est, there is no delay.

*pōculum, -i, n., drinking goblet, a drink, cup.

sacrī dextrā (manū), abl. of means; note interlocking word order.

ārentī ōre, with thirsty mouth.

sitiēnsa, parched, dry, modifying uōs understood.

*haurīs, -āre, hausī, haustum, drink, swallow, absorb.

*dīrus, -a, -urn, cruel, horrible.

virga, -ae, f., magic wand, rod.

*pudet, impersonal verb, it shames (me) (to speak of it), and (yet); et ... et, both . . . and.

*referī, -ferre, -tuli, -litum, carry back, tell a tale.

saeta, -ae, f., bristle, stiff hair.

horrescō, -ere, horrul, grow rough.

raucus, -a, -urn, rough, harsh.

murmur, -ursis, n., murmur, growl.

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubul, -cubitum, bend forward.

*rostrum, -i, n., beak.

collum, -i, n., neck (colla, my neck).

tumeō, -ēre, swell (with muscles: torus, -i, m., muscle, knot).

quā parte, with that part of me (my hands) with which drinking cups had been taken.

*sūnī, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum, take, pick up.

---

passiīs, perf. part. of patiōr, suffer; with those who had suffered the same things.

tantum medicamina possunt, so great was the power of her drugs (or magic potions).

hara, -ae, f., pig-pen, sty.

careō, -ēre, -ul + abl., be lacking + ēgūrā, the figure.

suis, from sīs, suis, c., a pig.

fugīt, avoid, shun, escape.

*vitūō (1), avoid, escape; vitāssit = vitāvisset, if he had not avoided, contrary-to-fact condition.

(38f continues opposite)
Ulysses to the Rescue

38g  Pacifer huic dederat florem Mercurius album: moly vocant superi, nigra radice tenetur; tutus eo monitisque simul caelestibus intrat ille domum Circes et ad insidiosa vocatus poca conantem virga mulcere capillos reppulit et stricto pavidam deterruit ense.

38h  Inde fides dextraeque datae thalamoque receptus coniugii dotem sociorum corpora poscit. Spargimur ignotae sucis melioribus herbae percutimurque caput conversae verbere virgae, verbaque dicuntur dictis contraria verbis. Quo magis illa canit, magis hoc tellure levati erigimur, saetaeque cadunt, bifidosque relinquit rima pedes, redeunt umeri et subiecta lacertis bracchia sunt; fientem fientes amplectimur ipsi haeremusque ducis collo, nec verba locuti ulla priora sumus quam nos testantia gratos. Annua nos illic tenuit mora, multaque praesens tempore tam longo vidi, multa auribus hausi.

Met. XIV.271–309 adapted passim

---

pecus, pecoris, n., herd; modified by saetiger, -era, -erum, bristly.
*ūna, together, in one, a part, modifies pars.
clādēs, -is, f., damage, disaster, ruin.
sāb illīs, by that man (Eurylochus).
certior, made aware, modifying Ulixes.
Bitor, -ōris, m., (as an) avenger.

---

Pacifer Mercurius, peace-bringing Mercury.
huic, i.e., Ulixi.
moly, moly, the name of the plant.
*superi, -orum, m., the gods, the heavenly ones.
*nigrum, -gra, -gram, black.
*rādīx, -īcis, f., root.
monitis caelestibus, heavenly warnings.
*insidiosus, -a, -um, treacherous, deceitful.
vocātus, here invited (to drink).
conantem (supply cam) her attempting, a present participle of a deponent verb.
mulcēō, -ēre, stroke, touch lightly.
*strictus, -a, -um, drawn.
pavidus, -a, -um, frightened.
*deterreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, thoroughly terrify.

---

*fīdēs, -ei, f., pledge, promise, faith, assurance.
*dextrae datae (sunt), right hands were given (to bind the pledge).

(38h continues overleaf)
Structure

192. Gerund and gerundive. Considering the gerund as a verbal noun and the gerundive as a verbal adjective greatly helps to clarify the difference between them. The gerund, as noun, occurs only in the neuter singular, but without a nominative, since the infinitive serves that function (for forms, see Sec. 162). The gerundive, as adjective, is fully declined (like bonus, -a, -um) in all three genders (see Secs. 183-84). The following examples illustrate usages of the gerund:

Gen.: Gaudium audiendi dēsiderāmus. We desire the pleasure of listening.

Dat.: Docendō sē dedit. He devoted himself to teaching.

Acc.: Sē exercuit ad dūcendum. He trained himself for leading.

Abl.: Amāre discit amandō. He learns to love by loving.

Notice that in each case the gerund is an active verbal noun, although the gerund appears without an object like an intransitive verb. When the gerund would require a direct object, the Romans preferred to change the phrasing of the idea into a noun in the case of the gerund with the gerundive modifying the noun. The following examples are an expansion of the previous examples to include the idea of the gerund with an object, but they are therefore recast in the gerundive construction:

Gen.: Gaudium tui audiendi dēsiderāmus. We desire the pleasure of hearing you. (of you being heard)

---

thalamus, -i, m., marriage couch.
*coniugium, -i, n., marriage, wedding.
dōs, dōtis, f., dowry.
sūcus, -i, m., juice.
percutimur caput . . . verbere, we are struck on the head by a blow.
virgae conversae, of her wand turned around.
*canō, -ere, cecini, cantum, sing.
*magis . . . magis, the more . . . the more.
*levō (1), lift, free, make light.
ērigō, -ere, -ēxi, -rectum, raise up, lift.
rīma, -ae, f., crack, cleft (+ pedēs bīfidōs = cloven hoof); bīfidus, -a, -um, split in two.
*umerus, -i, m., shoulder.
subicīō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, attach, append (to upper arms: lacertus, -i, m.).
*fleō, -ere, flēvi, flētum, weep.
amplector, -plecti, -plexus sum, embrace.
haereō, -ere, -stei, -stum + dat. or abl., cling to, hang on.
prīora quam . . . gratos, before (words) declaring that we were grateful.
annus, -a, -um, of a year's duration.
praesēns, -entis, being present.
Remember that the gerundive is a passive verbal adjective.

193. Review of the passive periphrastic. A common use of the gerundive is in the passive periphrastic (see Sec. 184), that round-about manner of expressing obligation or necessity by combining the future passive participle with a form of sum. The reading contains several examples:

Procul est, mihi crēde, videnda insula visa mihi!

Despite the problems posed by the poetic word order, the meaning here is quite clear:

Believe me, the island already seen ought to be seen by me from a distance.

Neque finitō Marte vocandus hostis es, Aenēa. Now that the war is over, you should not be called an enemy, Aeneas.

Exercises

I. Respondete latine, quaeso:

1. Quis in terra Laestrygonis regnabat?
2. Quot Graecorum ad Antiphatem missi sunt?
3. Quae navis Laestrygones effugit?
4. Quae terra procul videnda est?
5. Qui occursu metum fecerunt?
6. Ubi sedit illa regina?
7. Quomodo Graeci in sues transformati sunt?
8. Cur Eurylochus non mutatus est in suem?
9. Quis Ulixis florem album dedit?
10. Quomodo Graeci iterum in homines transformati sunt?

II. Make each of these debeo constructions into their equivalent passive periphrastic ideas. Remember to use the dative of agent.

1N.B. the name Amanda in English, formed from the feminine singular.
392 Latin via Ovid

1. Navem aedificare debo. 1. Navis aedificanda est mihi.
2. Ulixes amicos servare debet.
3. Graeci vinum Circes bibere non debent.
4. Troiani terram Circes evitare debent.
5. Regina sues in homines iterum mutare debet.

III A. Decline the gerund forms of each of these verbs:

\[ \text{levo} \quad \text{doceo} \quad \text{sequor} \quad \text{conor} \quad \text{ago} \]

|------|------|------|------|

B. Supply the correct form of the gerund in the following sentences:

1. Se dedit (to singing). canto (1)
2. Discimus (by reading). lego
3. Venit ad (to give aid). iuvo (1)
4. Nuntium misimus ad (to deliberate). consulto (1)
5. Causa (of listening) in aulum venimus. audio, -ire
6. Semper habet metum (of flying). volo (1)
7. Librum scripsit de (cooking). coquo, -ere
8. Romam venimus ad (to visit). visito (1)
9. Odi movere gratia (of moving). moveo, -ere
10. In scholam Latinam ad (to learn) venimus. disco, -ere

IV. Change each active gerund construction into the passive gerundive modifying the noun object; then translate the sentence.

   He devoted himself to making money (to money about to be made).
2. Discimus libros legendo.
3. Venit ad homines iuvandum.
4. Nuntium misimus ad pacem petendum.
5. Causa musicam bonam audiendi in aulum venimus.
7. Librum scripsit de bonam vitam vivendo.
8. Romam venimus ad ludos Romanos videndum. (ludos—games)
9. Romam venimus ad pacem faciendum.
10. In scholam Latinam, linguam ad discendum venimus.

\[^2\text{Odi, I hate.}\]
V. Translate into Latin:

1. Antiphates dyed his wicked mouth with the blood of my friend.
2. The Laestrygonians sunk our ships, and only the ship that carried Ulysses escaped.
3. I warn you, Aeneas, stay far away from the land of Circe because she has drugs which can turn men into pigs.

**Etymology**

**LATIN IN MATHEMATICS AND GEOMETRY**

Few words in the English language so clearly show their Indo-European roots as the word *mathematics*. Its source is Latin *mathematicus* (a mathematician or astrologer), which in turn is derived from Greek *mathematikos*, coming from *manthanein*, *to learn*. The word is related to Gothic *mundon*, *to pay attention* and Sanscrit *medha*, *intelligence*. Geometry is from two Greek words, *ge*, *earth* and *metrein*, *to measure*. Most of the words used in the system of computing numbers come from Latin roots, and many of them originate in Greek roots, just as did the concepts they embrace.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add (addition)</td>
<td><em>addere</em> (to add) or <em>additio</em> (addition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angle</td>
<td><em>angulus</em> (corner)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc</td>
<td><em>arcus</em> (bow, curved as an arc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculate, calculus,</td>
<td><em>calculus</em> (a stone used in reckoning, <em>from</em> calx, calcis, limestone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calculator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td><em>circus</em> (circle, ring)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumference</td>
<td><em>circumferre</em> (to carry around)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cube</td>
<td><em>cubus</em> (from Gr. kybos, cube, vertebra)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>curve</td>
<td><em>curvare</em> (to curve)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decimal</td>
<td><em>decem</em> (ten)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denominator</td>
<td><em>denominare</em> (to name or designate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference (differential)</td>
<td><em>differre</em> (to carry down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diameter</td>
<td><em>diametres</em> (from Gr. dia + metron, measure through)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>digit</td>
<td><em>digitus</em> (finger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divide, division</td>
<td><em>dividere</em> (divide, separate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equal, equation</td>
<td><em>aequus</em> (equal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exponent</td>
<td><em>exponere</em> (to put or place out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factor</td>
<td><em>facere</em> (to make or do) or <em>factum</em> (made)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figure</td>
<td><em>figura</em> (figure, image)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fraction</td>
<td><em>fractum</em> (broken)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>integer, integral</td>
<td><em>integer</em> (whole)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
<td><em>linum</em> (flax, thread)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin Word</td>
<td>English Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximum</td>
<td>maximum (greatest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minimum</td>
<td>minimum (least)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minus (less)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiply</td>
<td>multiplicare (to fold many times)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number, numerator</td>
<td>per + centum (by a hundred)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plus</td>
<td>plus (more)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proportion</td>
<td>pro (before) + portio (share, portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotient</td>
<td>quotiens (how many)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radius</td>
<td>radius (staff, rod, ray)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratio</td>
<td>ratio (rational thought, reasoning)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>segment</td>
<td>segmentum (a cutting, from secare, to cut)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>square</td>
<td>ex + quadrare (to make four-sided)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subtract</td>
<td>subtractum (dragged under, from subtrahere)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>summus (highest, total)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tangent</td>
<td>tangere (to touch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triangle</td>
<td>tri (three) + angulus (corner)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What Latin word is the source for the underlined words in the following phrases? Give the English meaning and the Latin source, as in the example:

- a fugitive from justice: fuga, -ae, f. flight or fugito (1), flee
- salutary exercise: vulnerable place on his body
- impious act: vestigial remains
- tincture of iodine: sedentary work
- merge to the right: solemn procession
- (in)vective against my opponent: disposition of the goods
- hear dolorous complaints: dire outcome or event
- martial music of the band: (ex)hausting work
- lupine gait: the rostrum in the Forum at Rome
- ursine tracks: pecuniary laws
- leonine appetite: floral arrangements
- radical surgery: insidious remarks
- nullify that law: succulent plant
INTERIM READING V:

CEYX ET ALCYONE

Ceyx, rex Thracius, ad oraculum ire parat ut sortes sacras consulat. Antequam tamen relinquit, uxori fidissimae Alcyoni de consilio suo itineris narrat. Cui statim frigus ossa receperunt pallorque ora transit lacrimisque profusis genae maduerunt. Ter loqui conata est; ter querellas pias lacrimae prohibuerunt.


Talibus dictis lacrimisque coniunx movetur, neque enim minor ignis amoris in illo est. Sed neque cursus propositos dimittere vult, nec vult Alcyonem in periculum ducere; itaque multa solantia respondit. "Longa quidem est nobis omnis mora, sed tibi iuro per ignes patrios, si me modo fata remittant, me reversurum esse antequam luna bis orbem impleat." Protinus

---

1 Thrācius, -a, -um, Thracian, of Thracis; Ceyx, Ceycis, m., Ceyx, king of Thracis.
2 Consulō (1), consult, ask advice of.
3 Frīgus, -oris, n., coldness; here acc.
4 Her cheeks became wet.
5 Pontus, -i, n., the deep sea.
6 Quo magis ... magis, the more ... the more.
7 Reor, rērī, ratus sum, think, reckon, judge.
8 Sententia, -ae, f., way of thinking, opinion, sentence, thought.
9 Tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātum, take up, take away or along.
10 Ūna, in one, together.
11 Sōlor, -āri, -ātus sum, comfort, console. Solantia is neut. pl. substantive.
12 Prōtīnus, adv., forward; (of time) continuously, immediately.
Ceyx navem eductam aequore tingi iubet et navalibus armamentis aptari.\(^{13}\) Qua visa, Alcyone horruit lacrimasque emisit amplexusque\(^{14}\) dedit tristique miserrima tandem ore "vale" dixit et conlapsa\(^{15}\) corpore toto est. Deinde illa oculos sustulit videtque maritum stantem in nave recurva\(^{16}\) dantemque sibi signa manu. Ut nec vela videt, vacuum lectum petit seque toro\(^{17}\) ponit. Lectus locusque lacrimas eius renovat.

Interim magna tempestas nocte prima navem egit. Mare undis tumidis\(^{18}\) albescere\(^{19}\) coeptit. Ex omni parte feroces venti bella gerunt. Nautae navem frigilem servare temptaverunt, sed frustra. Tota nocte sonant clamore viri, undarum vi gravis unda, tonitribus aether.\(^{20}\) Credas totum caelum descendere inque regiones caeli tumefactum ascendere pontum.\(^{21}\) Navis fracta est; Ceyx in mare iactatus est. In ore Ceycis nulla nisi Alcyone est et cum desideret unam, tamen abesse gaudet. Quoque ad oras patriae vellet respicere inque domum supremos vultus vertere, verum, ubi sit, nescit. Tenet ipse manu, qua sceptrum teneri solebat, fragmina navigii\(^{22}\) Ceyx socerumque\(^{23}\) patremque invocat heu, frustra; sed plurima in ore eius Alcyone coniunx est. Nominat Alcyonen ipsisse immurmurat undis ut unda magna caput Ceycis mersum obruit.

Interea filia Aeoli, ignara tantorum malorum noctes numerat et iam vestes quas ille induat texit, iam quas, ubi ille venerit, ipsa gerat. Illa pia omnibus superis tura ferebat, tamen ante omnes Iunonis templum colebat proque viro (qui nullus erat) ad aras veniebat.

At dea non iam sustinet pro morte rogari et Morpheum\(^{24}\) ad Alcyonen infeliciem imagine Ceycis misit ut veros casus in somno narraret. In faciem Ceycis venit exanimi similis, sine vestibus ullis ante torum coniugis miserae stetit et haec ait: "Cognoscis Ceyca,\(^{25}\) miserrima coniunx, an mea facies necem mutata est? Respice; nosces inveniesque tuo pro coniuge coniugis umbram. Nil opis mihi,\(^{26}\) Alcyone, tua vota tulerunt. Occidi!"

Alcyone gemit, lacrimas movet atque per somnum corpus petens amplexitutur auras exclamatque: "Mane! Quo tu abis? Ibimus una." Alcyone...

Mane\(^{29}\) erat; egreditur tectis ad litus, et maesta illum locum repetit, de quo euntem spectarat. Dumque moratur ibi dumque "hic valida retinacula\(^{30}\) solvit, hoc litore mihi discedens dedit oscula’’ dicit, spectat spatio distante in unda nescioquid corpus, naufragum. "Heu, miser,’’ inquit, "quisquis es, et si qua est coniunx tibi.’’ Iamque propinquae admotum terrae, iam quod cognoscere posset, recognovit: erat coniunx! ‘‘Ille est!’ exclaimat et una ora, comas, vestem lacerat tendensque trementes manus ad Ceyca. "Sic, o carissime coniunx, sic ad me, miser, redis?’ ait. Alcyone se iacit in undas. Volabat per aera pennis natis.\(^{31}\) Ut corpus sine sanguine tetigit, artus\(^{32}\) aplexa recentibus alis, oscula frigida duro rostro dedit. Hoc Ceyx sensit et tandem deis miserantibus,\(^{33}\) ambo in aves mutantur. Coeunt et fiunt parentes perque septem dies placidos hiberno tempore incubat Alcyone pendentibus aequore nidis.\(^{34}\) Tunc mare est placidum nam Aeolus ventos custodit praestatque nepotibus aequor.\(^{35}\)
Having left the unfortunate Dido to her dramatic suicide in Carthage, Aeneas then visited Sicily where he paid honors at his father’s tomb. He then sailed past the lands of Aeolus and escaped the dangers of Circe to arrive finally in Italy. At Cumae, the setting for his descent to the Underworld, his guide is the Sibyl, that aged prophetess whose powers of divination and oracular vision are a gift of Apollo. Ovid has her tell her own story, as well as prophesying Aeneas’ adventures. The marshy land around Cumae with its sacred grove is the background for Aeneas’ entrance into Hades, the Underworld. The Sibyl bids Aeneas strip from a tree in the grove a “golden bough” which will act as a magic talisman of entrance and safe conduct in the trip down to the Underworld. (Frazer, in naming his gigantic work of initiation into the myths of all peoples, uses this name as the talisman “induction” into the realm of myth materials from all over the world. His twelve-volume compendium has now been republished in a single abridged volume called *The New Golden Bough*.)
Sententiae
Facilis descensus Averno. *The descent to Avernus is easy.*

Virgil, *Aen.* VI.126

Invia virtuti nulla est via.

Ovid, *Met.* XIV.113

Chapter XXXIX
SIBYLLA CUMAEA

The Grotto of the Sibyl

39a

[Aeneas] . . . loca feta palustribus undis, litora Cumarum vivacisque antra Sibyllae intrat, et [ut] ad manes veniat per Averna paternos orat. At illa diu vultum tellure moratum erexit tandemque deo furibunda recepto “magna petis,” dixit, “vir factis maxime, cuius dextera per ferrum, pietas spectata per ignes. Pone tamen, Troiane, metum: potiere petitis Elysiasque domos et regna novissima mundi me duce cognoscas simulacraque cara parentis. invia virtutis nulla est via.”

39a

CUMAEUS, -a, -um, Cumaean.
*FETUS, -a, -um + abl., full of, teeming with, pregnant.
*PALUSTRE, -TRIS, -TRE, marshy.
*CUMAE, -ARUM, f., Cumaeae, ancient city in Italy, famous for the Sibyl.
*ANTRUM, -I, N., cave.
*VIVAX, -ACIS, long-lived, lively.
SIBYLLA, -AE, F., the sibyl, a wise prophetess.
MANES, mod. by paternos.
*PATERNUS, -A, -UM, paternal, of a father.
AVERNA, -ORUM, N. PL., region or cave of Avernus, legendary entrance to the Underworld.
*MOROR, -ARII, MORATUS SUM, delay.
*TELLUS, -ÆRIS, F., the earth.
EREXIT, raised (her face).
FURIBUNDA, inspired in mad divination.
*VIR MAXIME, vocative, although the maxime more logically goes with factis, O man of greatest deeds or mighty deeds.
SPECTATA (EST), with a double subject of hand (DEXTERA) and piety (PIETAS).
*PONEO, -ERE, POSUI, POSITUM, lay down, put aside.
POTIÆRE (-ÆRIS) PETITIS, you will have your wish; lit., you will gain the things sought; potior takes the abl.

(39a continues overleaf)
**Latin via Ovid**

39b
dicit et auro
fulgentem ramum silva Iunonis Avernae
monstravit iussitque suo divellere trunco.
Paruit Aeneas et formidabilis Orci
vidit opes atavosque suos umbramque senilem
magnanimi Anchisae; didicit quoque iura locorum,
quaeque novis essent adeunda pericula bellis.

The wars referred to are the ones Aeneas is destined to fight in Italy with Turnus for the hand of Lavinia, the daughter of Latinus, king of Latium. Turnus, king of the neighboring Rutulians, had been promised the hand of this princess in marriage long before Aeneas’ arrival in Italy, and this valiant local chief contends for her hand in a long bloody war against Aeneas and his followers. King Latinus favors Aeneas, but Queen Amata, Latinus’ wife, favors the local man. Virgil describes the climax of this war, a battle of champions, in his Twelfth Book of the *Aeneid*, and the epic poem closes with the defeat of Turnus and the departure of his angry shade to the underworld.

Before all this strife in Italy, however, the Sibyl conducts Aeneas through Hades, and on the way out she tells the hero her story:

---

*domos Élysiās, Elysian abodes.*
*mundus, -i, m., the universe, world.*
*cognoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum, recognize, see.*
*simulacrum, -i, n., likeness, image.*
*invius, -a, -um, impassable.*

*fulgō, -ēre, fulsi, shine, gleam, glitter.*
*sīlva = in sīlva.*
*Iūnōnis Avernae, Avernal Juno.*
*divellere, with eum as subject, him to remove it from its trunk.*
*truncus, -i, m., trunk.*
*pāreō, -ēre, -ui + dat., obey.*
*formidābilis, -e, terrible, fearful.*
*Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the Underworld.*
*atavus, -i, m., ancestor.*
*senilis, -e, old, aged.*
*magnanimus, -a, -um, greathearted.*
*Anchīsēs, -ae, m., Anchises, the father of Aeneas.*
*quae . . . bellis, what dangers he must undergo in new wars (lit., what dangers would have to be undergone).*
XXXIX Sibylla Cúmaea 401

39c "Nec dea sum," dixit, "nec sacri turis honore
dignum caput; neu nescius erres,
lux aeterna mihi carituraque fine dabatur,
si mea virginitas Phoebo patuisset amanti.

A Foolish Request

39d "Dum tamen hanc sperat, dum praecorrumpere donis
me cupit, 'elige,' ait 'virgo Cumae, quid optes:
opotiere tuis.' Ego pulveris hausti
ostendi cumulum: quot haberet corpora pulvis,
tot mihi natales contingere vana rogavi;
excidit, ut peterem iuvenes quoque protinus annos.
Hos tamen ille mihi dabat aeternamque iuventam,
si Venerem paterer: contempto munere Phoebi,
inuna permaneo; sed iam felicior aetas
terga dedit, tremuloque gradu venit aegra senectus,
quaefatienda die est.

39c
dignor, -āri, dignātus sum, consider worthy; nec dignāre is a mild imperative, do not
consider a human head worthy.
neu or nève, adv., and not, nor.
tūs, tūris, n., incense.
*nescius, -a, -um, not knowing, here unknowing, ignorant.
*erris, subjunctive of *errō (1), lest you err, so that you not err.
*virginitās, -ātis, f., virginity.
Phoebī amantī, to Phoebus as a lover.

39d
sperat, understand Phoebus as subject.
praecorrumpere, bribe, persuade.
optās, subjunctive in indirect question.
*pulvis, -érīs, m., dust, sand.
haustī, perf. pass. part. of haurīō, modifying pulveris, collected, drawn up.
*ostendīō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūm, point out, show.
cumulus, -ī, m., pile, heap.
*corpus, -oris, n., body; grains (of sand).
nātūla, -ās, m., birthday; here with contingere, to reach as many birthdays.
*vīnas, -a, -um, silly, idle, vain.
excidit, ut peterem = oblita sum petere.
prōtūnus, continuous; adv., continually.
*juvenis, -e, young, youthful.
quot . . . tot, as many . . . so many.
*Venus, -érīs, f., Venus, but here love, and probably his love.
contemptō munere Phoebī, abl. abs., having scorned the gift of Phoebus.
inubus, -a, -um, unwed.
*aetās, aetātis, f., age, time of life.
*aeger, -gra, -grum, weak, sick.
tremulō gradō, with trembling step.
Only a Voice Remains

Tempus erit, cum de tanto me corpore parvam
longa dies faciet, consumptaque membra senecta
ad minimum redigentur onus: nec amata videbor
nec placuisse deo, Phoebus quoque forsitans ipse
vel non cognosces, vel dilexisse negabit:
usque adeo mutata ferar nullique videnda,
voce tamen noscar; vocem mihi fata relinquent.”

Met. XIV.103–153 passim

Thus the Sibyl ends her tale with the grim reminder that in the world of change even one who has been touched by a divinity is subject to decay and dissolution. The whole idea of prophetic voices which speak the words of prophecy at sacred spots in the ancient world (at Delphi, at Samos, in Libya, and here at Cumae) still poses a question of wonder and mystery. How does the voice of a prophet speak—through an inspired book, through a chosen individual, through a dedicated scholar, or as here, through one beloved of a god?

Cassandra, princess of Troy, also had been given the gift of prophecy by Apollo, but when she refused to bear him children he added that no one would ever believe her. In both instances, the recipient of the gift is a mortal beloved of the god. We still speak of an inspired person as one whom a god loves, although we no longer explain the love as the profane or personal kind of possession described in these myths, nor do we associate the inspired words with the maddened intoxication or drugged state that the inhaling of fumes would produce, a trance into which the prophet entered. But there are seemingly magic areas of the world—caves, grottos, crevices, places where the underworld and its secrets bubble up and spill out into the upper world, places of magic smell and color and atmosphere—where it is easy to believe a divine spirit could emerge to conduct a hero into the mysteries of the unknown world beneath the earth.

\[
\textit{longa dies, length of days, i.e., old age.}
\]
\[
*\textit{senectus, -a, -um, old, aged.}
\]
\[
*\textit{consumpsit, -ire, -sumptum, consume, destroy, waste.}
\]
\[
*\textit{redigit, -ere, -egi, -actum, bring back, reduce.}
\]
\[
*\textit{forsitan, perhaps.}
\]
\[
\textit{dilexisse, that he loved me, indirect statement after negabit.}
\]
\[
*\textit{vel . . . vel, either . . . or.}
\]
\[
\textit{usque adeo, all the way to that point.}
\]
\[
\textit{videnda nullo, though visible to no one; lit., about to be seen by no one.}
\]
\[
\textit{noscit, -ere, nòvi, nòtum, know.}
\]
Structure

194. Review of the vocative. The case of direct speech, direct address, where a person is directly spoken to is the vocative case, the endings of which are identical with those of the nominative case, except for masculine singular of the second declension: -us becomes -e.

vir maxime factis—o greatest man in deeds

Also irregular is the form for words in -ius, which ends in -ī:

Gāius becomes Gai
Vergilius becomes Vergili

All other forms are regular and identical with the nominative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
<th>V</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>puella</td>
<td>amīce</td>
<td>filī</td>
<td>māter</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pl.</td>
<td>puellae</td>
<td>amīcī</td>
<td>filī</td>
<td>mātrēs</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

195. Effective repetition: seu . . . seu; nec . . . nec; vel . . . vel; et . . . et. Latin frequently employs repeated conjunctions to introduce parallel ideas, either words, phrases or clauses with the same effective balance as would occur from the same use in English: either . . . or; neither . . . nor; both . . . and.

196. Review of passive forms and deponent verbs. It is important to be able to recognize passive forms, both for their regular use with verbs in the passive voice and also for their use in deponent verbs. Especially the alternate form for the second person singular should be mastered so as not to be a stumbling block in translating. The forms for the deponent verbs will serve to review the passive endings:

1st Conj.: miror, mirāri, mirātus sum admire

2nd Conj.: vereor, verēri, veritus sum fear

3rd Conj.: loquor, loqui, locūtus sum speak

4th Conj.: potior, potīri, potitus sum get, obtain

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>1st pers. sing.</th>
<th>2nd pers. sing.</th>
<th>3rd pers. sing.</th>
<th>1st pers. plur.</th>
<th>2nd pers. plur.</th>
<th>3rd pers. plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miror</td>
<td>miror</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>loquor</td>
<td>potior</td>
<td>potīris</td>
<td>potiuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirāris (-re)</td>
<td>vereis (-re)</td>
<td>loqueris (-re)</td>
<td>potīris</td>
<td>potiuntur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirātur</td>
<td>verētur</td>
<td>loquitur</td>
<td></td>
<td>potitur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirāmur</td>
<td>verēmur</td>
<td>loquimur</td>
<td></td>
<td>potimur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirāmini</td>
<td>verēmini</td>
<td>loquimini</td>
<td></td>
<td>potimini</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirantur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
<td>loquuntur</td>
<td></td>
<td>potiuntur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Imperfect (add -ba-)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mirābar</th>
<th>verēbar</th>
<th>loquēbar</th>
<th>potiēbar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mirābāris (-re)</td>
<td>verēbāris (-re)</td>
<td>loquēbāris (-re)</td>
<td>potiēbāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mirābor</th>
<th>verēbor</th>
<th>loquar</th>
<th>potiar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mirāberis (-re)</td>
<td>verēberis (-re)</td>
<td>loquēris (-re)</td>
<td>potiēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirābitur</td>
<td>verēbitur</td>
<td>loquētur</td>
<td>potiētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirābimur</td>
<td>verēbimur</td>
<td>loquēmur</td>
<td>potiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirābimini</td>
<td>verēbimini</td>
<td>loquēmini</td>
<td>potiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirābuntur</td>
<td>verēbuntur</td>
<td>loquentur</td>
<td>potientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Perfect System is regular

Perfect: mirātus, veritus, locūtus, potitus sum, es, est, mirātī, -ae, -a, etc. sumus, estis, sunt

Pluperf.: mirātus, veritus, locūtus, potitus eram, erās, erat, mirātī, -ae, -a, etc. erāmus, erātis, erant

Fut. Perf.: mirātus, veritus, locūtus, potitus erō, erīs, erit, mirātī, -ae, -a, etc. erimus, eritis, erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mīrer</th>
<th>verear</th>
<th>loquar</th>
<th>potiar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīreris (-re)</td>
<td>vereāris (-re)</td>
<td>loquāris (-re)</td>
<td>potiāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīretur</td>
<td>vereātur</td>
<td>loquātur</td>
<td>potiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīremur</td>
<td>vereāmur</td>
<td>loquāmur</td>
<td>potiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīremīni</td>
<td>vereāmini</td>
<td>loquāmini</td>
<td>potiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrentur</td>
<td>vereantur</td>
<td>loquantur</td>
<td>potiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mīrārer</th>
<th>verērer</th>
<th>loquerer</th>
<th>potirērer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrāreris (-re)</td>
<td>verēreris (-re)</td>
<td>loquerēris (-re)</td>
<td>potirēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrāretur</td>
<td>verēretur</td>
<td>loquerētur</td>
<td>potirētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrāremur</td>
<td>verēremur</td>
<td>loquerēmur</td>
<td>potirēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrāremīni</td>
<td>verēremīni</td>
<td>loquerēmini</td>
<td>potirēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrārentur</td>
<td>verērentur</td>
<td>loquentur</td>
<td>potientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect: mirātus, veritus, locūtus, potitus sim, sis, sit, mirātī, -ae, -a, etc. simus, sitis, sint

Pluperf.: mirātus, veritus, locūtus, potitus essem, essēs, esset, mirātī, -ae, -a, etc. essēmus, essētis, essent
### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mirans</th>
<th>Verens</th>
<th>Loquens</th>
<th>Potiens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Miratus</td>
<td>Veritus</td>
<td>Locitus</td>
<td>Potitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miraturus</td>
<td>Veriturus</td>
<td>Lociturus</td>
<td>Potiturus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirandus</td>
<td>Verendus</td>
<td>Loquendus</td>
<td>Potiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVES

**Pres.** mirari, to admire

**Perf.** miratus esse, to have admired

**Fut.** miraturus esse, to be about to admire

Consult Appendix for forms in other conjugations.

### Exercises

**I. Respondete Latine, quaeso:**

1. Ubi est antrum Sibyllae?
2. Quid orat Aeneas ut Sibylla faciat?
3. Quid Sibylla monstravit in silva Avernae Iunonis?
4. Cuius umbram Aeneas vidit in Orco?
5. Estne Sibylla dea?
6. Quis Sibyllam amavit?
7. Quid rogavit Sibylla ut Apollo daret?
8. Quid Sibylla rogare oblita est?
9. Ducitne Apollo Sibyllam in matrimonium?
10. Cum Sibylla minima fuerit, quid permanebit?

**II. Give a synopsis of hortor, indicative and subjunctive, 3rd per. sing. sequor, indicative and subjunctive, 2nd per. sing.**

(Use the -re forms)

**III. Translate into Latin:**

1. I was trying
2. he followed
3. they spoke
4. he tried
5. we will get possession of
6. he has suffered
7. we will urge
8. we will follow
9. you (pl.) have feared
10. you (pl.) were suffering

**IV. Fill in the vocative forms, in the following sentences:**

1. (Boys), venite ad me.
2. (Marcus), mane in schola.
3. (Vergilius), carmina tua sunt dulcissima.
4. (Mothers), audite mea verba.
5. (Night), veni celeriter.
Translate into Latin:

1. Aeneas entered the cave of the Sibyl on the shores of Cumae.
2. The Trojan hero sought to visit his father's shade in Orcus.
3. With the Sibyl as his guide (abl. abs.), Aeneas was able to recognize the likeness of his father.
4. No road is impassable for a good man.
5. The Sibyl ordered Aeneas to take the bough gleaming with gold from the trunk of the tree.
6. Phoebus loved the Sibyl and wanted to give her eternal life (lux), if she would open herself to his love.
7. The Sibyl asked for as many years as were in a pile of sand, but she forgot to ask also for young years.
8. The Sibyl grew older and older and smaller and smaller.
9. Even Phoebus Apollo himself no longer loved her.
10. Only her voice remained.

**Etymology**

**Latin Abbreviations in English**

**Medical**

NPO (nihil per os) nothing by mouth  
h.s. (hora somni) at bedtime (hour of sleep)  
bid (bis in die) two times daily  
c (cum) with  
R (recipe) take  
a.c. (ante cenam) before meals  
p.c. (post cenam) after meals  
up ad lib (ad libidinem) patient may get up when he wishes

**Chemical**

Au (Aurum) gold  
Cu (Cuprum) copper  
Fe (Ferrum) iron  
Pb (Plumbum) lead  
Aq (Aqua) water  
Ag (Argentum) silver  
K (Kalium) potassium  
Te (Tellurium) tellurium

**Temporal**

A.M. (ante meridiem) before noon  
P.M. (post meridiem) after noon  
pro tem (pro tempore) for the time being  
A.D. (Anno Domini) in the year of our Lord  
ad. inf. (ad infinitum) to infinity  
c. (circa) about  
fl. (floruit) he flourished, lived

**Religious**

INRI (Iesus Nazarenus, Rex Iudaeorum) Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews  
DV (Deo volente) God willing
LITERARY
P.S. (*post scriptum*) written after etc. (*et cetera*) and the rest
* e.g. (*exempli gratia*) for example
* i.e. (*id est*) that is
* ibid. (*ibidem*) in the same place
* viz. (*videlicet*) you may see, namely
* cf. (*confer*) compare
* ex lib. (*ex libris*) from the books
* of . . .
* loc. cit. (*loco citato*) in the place cited
* non seq. (*non sequitur*) it does not follow
* N.B. (*nota bene*) note well
* sc., scil. (*scilicet, scire licet*) namely, it is permitted to know

MISCELLANEOUS
* QED (*quod erat demonstrandum*) that which was to be demonstrated or proved
* RSVP (*Répondez, s'il vous plaît* from *Respondete, si vobis placet*) Reply, if you please
* Vox pop. (*vox populi*) voice of the people
* Verb sap (*verbum sapienti satis est*) a word to the wise is sufficient
* v.v. (*vice versa*) turned to the opposite position
* SPQR (*Senatus Populusque Romanus*) the senate and the people of Rome

Define the following English words and tell what their etymology is, basing your choice of source words on the vocabulary of the lesson:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Etymology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vivacious</td>
<td>lively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paternal</td>
<td>position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mundane</td>
<td>cognition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunk</td>
<td>formidable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senile</td>
<td>magnanimous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dignify</td>
<td>lucifer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virginity</td>
<td>patent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)spirations</td>
<td>elect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostentatious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(ac)cumulate
vain
juvenile
contemptuous
permanent
temporal
cognition
Chapter XL
AENEAS IN ITALIA


Met. XIV.449–573 adapted passim

40a

*nāta, -ae, f., daughter, i.e., Lavinia, daughter of Latinus, king of Latium.
pacta, agreed upon, promised.
furīs, -ere, -uli (rare), rage, be furious.
*concurrō, -ere, -curre, -curremur, rush to battle with or against (with dat. Latīnō).
Tyrrenia, -ae, f., Etruria.
sollicitus, -a, -um, anxious.
augēs, -ēre, auxī, auxītum, increase.
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each side, each (of two).
externus, -a, -um, outside, external, foreign.
rōbur, -oris, n., strength.
vīs, acc. vim, abl. vi, pl. virīs, strength.
Rutulōs, the Rutulians, a tribe in Italy of which Turnus is chief.
tueor, -ēri, tutūs sum, aid, protect.
neque . . . frustrā, and Aeneas did not go in vain to the city of Evander; moenia are city walls or fortifications. Evander is king of a nearby city who sends his son Pallas to fight for the Trojans.
*perstūs, -are, -stītus, -stātus, stand firm, continue. (40a continues overleaf)
The following description of the end of the battle between Aeneas and Turnus is taken from the conclusion of the *Aeneid*, an episode which Virgil describes most vividly. The two heroes have come out to meet in single combat, and the Rutulians with a groan watch their leader, who has fallen to the ground, beg for mercy.

40Vb  
Ille humilis supplexque oculos dextramque precantem
pretendens “equidem merui, nec deprecor” inquit;
“utere sorte tua. Miseri te si qua parentis
tangere cura potest, oro (fuit et tibi talis
ANCHISES genitor), Dauni miserere senectae,
et me, seu corpus spoliatum lumine mavis,
redde meis.

40Vc  
Vicisti et [me] victum tendere palmas
AUSONII videre; tua est Lavinia coniunx.”
Aeneas, volvens oculos, dextramque repressit;
et iam iamque magis cunctantem flectere sermo
cooperat, infelix umero cum apparuit alto
balteus et notis fulserunt cingula bullis
PALLANTIS pueri, victum quem vulnere Turnus
straverat atque umeris inimicum insigne gerebat.

---

*instar + gen., equivalent to.
tandem, at length, at last, finally.
victoria, conquering, victorious, modifying arma.

---

40Vb  
humilis supplexque, humble and suppliant.
precantem, pleading (hand).
merui, I have deserved (death).
deprecor, dep. (1), nor do I beg for mercy.
*utere sorte tua, press (use) your luck; utere is imperative singular of *solver.
genitor, -oris, m., parent.
Dauni . . . senectae, pity the old age of Daunus (father of Turnus); miserere is imperative
singular of miseror, -eris, -eri, + gen., pity.
et . . . meis, and return me or my body, deprived of life, if you wish, to my family.

---

40Vc  
palma, -ae, f., hand, palm of the hand.
videre = vidēreunt.
AUSONII, the Ausonians, another name for the early Italians.
volvē, -ere, volvi, volūtum, roll.
repressit, restrained, held back.
iam iamque magis, and every moment more and more.
sermō, -onis, m., words, talk, speech (of Turnus).
*flectē, -ere, flexī, flexum, influence, bend, change; supply eum; eum cunctantem, as he hesitated;
it., him hesitating.
umerō altō, high on his shoulder.

(40Vc continues opposite)
[Tum dixit Aeneas,] "Pallas te hoc vulnere, Pallas immolat et poenam scelerato ex sanguine sumit."
Hoc dicens ferrum adverso sub pectore condit fervidus. Ast illi solvuntur frigore membra, vitaque cum gemitu fugit indignata sub umbras.

Virgil, Aen. XII.930–952 adapted passim

Ovid concludes his episode with Aeneas being made divine, a transformation which Ovid will extend to other famous Romans—Romulus, Caesar, Augustus, and finally himself—in the final books of the Metamorphoses.

40d

Iamque deos omnes ipsamque Aeneia virtus
Iunonem veteres finire coegerat iras,
cum, bene fundatis opibus crescentis Iuli,
tempestivus erat caelo Cythereius heros.
Ambieratque Venus superos colloque parentis
circumfusa sui, "numquam mihi" dixerat, "ullo
tempore dure pater, nunc sis mitissimus, opto,

balteus inflīxī, the unfortunate baldric.
*appārēs, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, appear, become visible.
cingula, -brum, n. pl., belt, sword-belt, girdle.
nōtīs . . . puērt, and the belt of the boy Pallas gleamed with its well-known ornaments; Turnus had killed Pallas in battle and had taken this emblem of his victory. Because he is wearing this belt now, Aeneas in anger does not spare his life. Compare the similar slaying of Hector by Achilles. Obviously Virgil is imitating Homer in having the young Pallas, son of Evander, correspond to Patroclus.
*victum quem, repeat Pallas whom, overcome by a wound, Turnus had destroyed.
sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, spread out, flatten, level, destroy.
*insignē, -nis, n., badge, insignia.
*inimicus, -a, -um, enemy's, unfriendly.
immolō (1), slay.
poenam sūmit, exacts punishment.
*sclerātus, -a, -um, wicked.
sūmō, -ere, sumpsi, summptum, take, exact.
condit ferrum, buries his sword.
adversō sub pectore, beneath his breast which was opposite him.
ast = at, used before words beginning with a vowel: but, but meanwhile, and.
illī . . . membra, his limbs were (dissolved) weakened with the cold of death; illī is dat. of reference:
frigore is abl. of means.
*gemitus, -ūs, m., groan.
*indignātus, -a, -um, angry, indignant.

40d

Aeneīa, of Aeneas, an adjective modifying virtus (f.).
fundō (1), found, establish, confirm.
cum . . . hēros, an inverted cum clause.
bene . . . iūli, now that the fortunes of the maturing Iulus were well established.
tempestivus, -a, -um, timely, ripe, mature, ready.
Cytherēīus hēros, Aeneas, the Cytherian hero; Cytherea is a name for Venus.

(40Vd continues overleaf)
Aeneaeque meo, qui te de sanguine nostro
fecit avum, quamvis parvum des, optime, numen,
dummodo des aliquod! . . .
Tum pater "estis" ait, "caelesti munere digni,
quiaque petis pro quoque petis: cape, nata, quod optas!"

Quicquid in Aenea fuerat mortale, repurgat
et respersit aquis; pars optima restitit illi.
lustratum genetrix divino corpus odore
unxit et ambrosia cum dulci nectare mixta
contigit os fecitque deum.

Met. XIV.581–607 passim

Structure

197. The many uses of the dative case.

(1) The dative case is primarily the case of the *indirect object*, the person
to or for whom the action of the verb occurs:

- Puer libros *mātrī* misit. The boy sent books *to* his *mother*.
- Militēs pontem *Caesari* aedificāvērunt. The soldiers built a bridge *for*
  Caesar.

---

*ambiō, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum, approach, go around, entreat.*
*superus, -i, m., god.*
circumfusa collō *parentis sui*, throwing her arms around the neck of her father.*
dūre, harsh, vocative with *pater*, "never-at-any-time-harsh-to-me-father."
*avus, -i, grandfather; Aeneas has made Jupiter a *grandfather* by being the son of Venus; Venus
is sometimes said to be the daughter of Jupiter.*
quamvis . . . nūmen, may you give some *little measure of divinity, whatever you wish.*
dummodo, provided *that*.
*aliquod, something.*
caelesti numine digni, worthy of *heavenly favor or divine majesty.*
prō (quō), also *for whom you seek.*

---

*mortālis, -e, mortal.*
repurgat et respersit, *she washed away and dissolved.*
*restō, -stare, -stītī, remain, survive, be left over.*
ilīti, dative of reference.
unxit, anointed.
corpus lustrātum, *his purified body.*
*ambrosia, -ae, f., ambrosia; here ablative.*
cum dulci nectare, *with sweet nectar.*
*contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactum, touch.*
(2) Familiar also is the use of the dative with certain adjectives:

cārus, grātus, benignus — dear (to), pleasing (to), kind (to)
Nympha est deō cara. 
The nymph is dear to the god.

(3) Equally familiar is the dative of possession with the verb sum:

Filia rēgī erat. 
The king had a daughter. (A daughter was to the king.)
Erat ei cōnsilium. 
He had a plan.
Frondēs arborī erant. 
The tree had leaves.

(4) In the passive periphrastic constructions the agent by whom the action is done is expressed by a dative of agent:

Pax tibi quaerenda est. 
Peace ought to be sought by you.

(5) The dative is used with certain verbs whose meanings end in a “to” or “for” idea:

credō + dat., trust, believe (in) (give trust to)
ignōscō + dat., forgive, pardon (give pardon to)
imperō + dat., command (give orders to)
noceō + dat., harm, injure (do harm to)
parcō + dat., spare (be lenient to)
pāreō + dat., obey (be obedient to)
persuādeō + dat., persuade (be persuasive to)
placeō + dat., please (be pleasing to)
servīō + dat., serve (be servant to)
studeō + dat., study (be eager for)

Deō crēdunt. 
They believe in God.
Inimicīs ignōscunt. 
They forgive their enemies.
Militibus imperant. 
They command the soldiers.
Amīcis suis nocent. 
They harm their own friends.
Hostibus parcunt. 
They spare the enemy.
Mātri pārent. 
They obey their mother.
Patri persuāsit. 
He persuaded his father.
Respondēte, sī vōbis placet. 
If it pleases you, reply.
Caesari servit. 
He was in service to Caesar.
Libris studet. 
He is eager for books.

(6) The dative is used to denote the person in whose interest the action of the verb occurs, the dative of reference.

Erit ille mīhi semper deus. 
He will always be a god to me.
Quod mīhi est fortūna? 
What is fortune, as far as I am concerned?
Pars optima restitit illī. 
The best part of him remained.
(7) The dative is used twice in the sentence as the so-called *double dative.*

   Hoc dōnum erit auxiliō mihi. This gift will be (for) an aid to me.

(8) Another use of the dative occurs with certain verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad, ante, circum, con-* de, *in, inter, ob, post, prae,* *sub,* and *super,* *the dative of Compound Verbs:*

   Caesar exercitū praerat. Caesar was in charge of the army.
   Finitimis bellum inferēbant. They made war on their neighbors.
   Omnibus rēbus amor antevenit. Love comes before all things.

Not all verbs compounded with these prepositions listed above take the dative case:

   Hostem interfēcit. He killed the enemy.
   Urbem circumstetit. He surrounded the city.

Exercises

I. Respondete Latine, quaeso.

   1. Cuius filia in Italia Aeneas potitur?
   2. Potiturne Aeneas ea sine Marte?
   3. Quis pro coniuge pacta pugnat?
   4. Quis ad bellum pugnandum missus est?
   5. Quis erat victor belli inter Rutulos et Trojanos? Quis cecidit?
   6. Cuius cingula Aeneas in umeris Turni vidit?
   7. Quid Aeneas sub pectore Turni condit?
   8. Quis oravit patrem filio vitam aeternam dare?
   9. Quae dea iras veteres finivit?
  10. Quae pars heroi restitit?

II. Make up two sentences demonstrating each use of the dative:

   1) Indirect object:
   2) With certain adjectives:
   3) Dative of possession:
   4) Dative of agent:
   5) Dative with certain verbs:
   6) Dative of reference:
   7) Double Dative:
   8) Dative of Compound Verbs:

Translate each sentence into English.
III. Translate into Latin:

1. Forgive me.  
2. Believe me.  
3. Trust me.  
4. Spare me.  
5. Serve me.  
6. I forgive you.  
7. I believe you.  
8. I trust you.  
9. I will spare you.  
10. I will serve you.

IV. Supply the correct form of the dative:

1. Servus (to his master) carus est.  
2. Puer (to his teacher) gratus est.  
3. Eurydice (to Orpheus) cara est.

V. Translate into Latin:

Aeneas killed Turnus who was wearing (gerō) the belt of Pallas on his shoulder. Turnus had killed this friend of the Trojan hero in battle and had taken the belt as a mark of victory. Because Turnus was wearing this belt, Aeneas did not spare him. You ought to read this story in Virgil (apud Vergilium). (Use the passive periphrastic.)

Etymology

LATIN MOTTOS, WORDS, AND PHRASES IN ENGLISH

ab urbe condita (AUC) from the founding of the city
addendum to be added
ad hoc to (or for) this
ad extremum to the extreme
ad nauseam to the point of nausea
advocatus diaboli devil's advocate
agenda things to be done
alter ego another I
anguis in herba snake in the grass
annuit coeptis he has smiled on our undertakings (motto on the dollar bill of U.S. currency)
ante bellum before the war
ars est celare artem the skill is to conceal the art
ars longa vita brevis art is long; life is short
ars poetica the art of poetry
aut Caesar aut nihil either Caesar or nothing
ave atque vale hail and farewell
bis dat qui cito dat he gives twice who gives quickly
carpe diem seize the day
causa belli the cause of war
cave canem beware the dog
There is no quarrelling about taste.

Speak only well of the dead.

God (let down) from a machine

Characters in a play

All leave (the stage is empty)

From the books (of a certain person); bookplate device

Eternally

In memory

Slip of the tongue

Method of operation

Here and there, throughout, at random

Peace be with you

By or for each person (head count)

By the day

In or of itself

After the war

(Examination) after death

For the time being

Reduced to the absurd

Things accomplished

Thus (it was in the original)

Without which not

(necessary ingredient)

The greatest good

Time flies

As below

As above

Word for word

---

Fill in the blank with the derived word from the Latin source at the left:

My salary

Cause of his misfortune

A play running with ours

Work

Causes of recession

The re- of the earth on its axis

A act

On the Mount
flecto (de) ________________ the arrow
inimicus ________________ to our interests
indignatus ________________ at your behavior
mortalis all that was ________________ in him
unguo (ungo) a jar for ________________
contingo send a ________________ of marines
ambrosia the gods feast on nectar and ________________
Parts of Speech

There are eight parts of speech in Latin, as in English: noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, conjunction, preposition, interjection.

A noun is a word used to express the name of a person, place, thing, or idea.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regina</td>
<td>queen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabula</td>
<td>story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carta</td>
<td>paper, map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insula</td>
<td>island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europa</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapientia</td>
<td>wisdom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns have gender: Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter
number: Singular or Plural
case: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative

A pronoun is a word used in the place of a noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eam</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eum</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>you (sing.)</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vos</td>
<td>you (pl.)</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An adjective is a word used to describe a noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amicus</td>
<td>a good friend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>a beautiful girl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puella</td>
<td>a beautiful girl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>a beautiful girl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnum</td>
<td>a large temple</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An verb is a word used to express action or state of being.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amant</td>
<td>they love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>they are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocamus</td>
<td>we call</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs have tense: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect
voice: Active or Passive
mood: Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, Infinitive

An adverb is a word used to describe a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ita</td>
<td>thus</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeriter</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satis</td>
<td>enough</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plius</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primum</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tum</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A preposition introduces a phrase which consists of the preposition and its object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>in the forest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum</td>
<td>with friends</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>to the island</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A conjunction is a connecting word used to join words, phrases, clauses or sentences.

A conjunction can connect equal ideas (coordinate): puert et puellae
boys and girls

A conjunction can connect unequal parts (subordinate):
Dum lacrimat, Tröla ardet. While she weeps, Troy burns.

An interjection is a word showing strong feeling or emotion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interjection</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ēhē!</td>
<td>oh</td>
<td>emotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eheu!</td>
<td>alas</td>
<td>emotion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mehercule!</td>
<td>by Hercules</td>
<td>emotion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nouns

FIRST DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puella, f.,</td>
<td>puellae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animus, m.,</td>
<td>animi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puer, m.,</td>
<td>pueri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ager, m.,</td>
<td>agrur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir, m.,</td>
<td>viri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum, n.,</td>
<td>oppidum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECOND DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puella</td>
<td>puellae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animus</td>
<td>animi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>pueri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ager</td>
<td>agrur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vir</td>
<td>viri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum</td>
<td>oppidum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First declension nouns are feminine, except for a few that refer to males like nauta, pirata, poet, and agricola. Second declension nouns are masculine or neuter, except for a few referring to trees or cities. Third declension nouns exist in all three genders, and numerically this is the largest declension. Fourth declension nouns are mostly masculine (except for manus and domus) with a few neuters, and fifth declension is limited to feminine nouns, with the exception of diēs.

The vocative forms of nouns in all declensions are identical to the nominative singular and plural (puella, O girl, puellae, O girls), except in the -us form of masculines in second declension which ends in -e (anime, O soul; Marce, O Marcus). Nouns ending in -us form their vocative in -i (alli, O son; Vergili, O Virgil).

THIRD DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>māter, f.,</td>
<td>mātress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homō, m.,</td>
<td>hominis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victor, m.,</td>
<td>victōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps, m.,</td>
<td>principis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus, n.,</td>
<td>temporis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>māter</td>
<td>mātris</td>
<td>mātrī</td>
<td>mātrem</td>
<td>mātre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homō</td>
<td>hominis</td>
<td>homini</td>
<td>hominem</td>
<td>homine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victor</td>
<td>victōris</td>
<td>victōri</td>
<td>victōrem</td>
<td>victōre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>principis</td>
<td>principi</td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>principec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>temporus</td>
<td>tempore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mātress</td>
<td>mātrum</td>
<td>mātribus</td>
<td>mātres</td>
<td>mātribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hominis</td>
<td>hominum</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victōris</td>
<td>victōrum</td>
<td>victōribus</td>
<td>victōrēs</td>
<td>victōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principis</td>
<td>principi</td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>principēs</td>
<td>principem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>temporus</td>
<td>temporē</td>
<td>tempore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mātress</td>
<td>mātrum</td>
<td>mātribus</td>
<td>mātres</td>
<td>mātribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hominis</td>
<td>hominum</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>victōris</td>
<td>victōrum</td>
<td>victōribus</td>
<td>victōrēs</td>
<td>victōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principis</td>
<td>principi</td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>principēs</td>
<td>principem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>temporus</td>
<td>temporē</td>
<td>tempore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### THIRD DECLENSION I-STEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>cives, m.</th>
<th>urbs, f.</th>
<th>nox, f.</th>
<th>mare, n.</th>
<th>animal, n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>cives</td>
<td>urbs</td>
<td>nox</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>civis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>noctis</td>
<td>maris</td>
<td>animalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>civi</td>
<td>urbī</td>
<td>notī</td>
<td>mari</td>
<td>animāli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>civem</td>
<td>urbem</td>
<td>noctem</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>animāli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>cive</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>notae</td>
<td>mari</td>
<td>animāli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEUTERS IN -e, al, -r**

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td>cives</td>
<td>urbes</td>
<td>noctes</td>
<td>maria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td>cives</td>
<td>urbes</td>
<td>noctes</td>
<td>maria</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FOURTH DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>exercitus, m., army</th>
<th>cornū, n., horn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>exercitūs</td>
<td>exercituum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>exercitui</td>
<td>exercitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>exercitum</td>
<td>exercitūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>exercitū</td>
<td>exercitibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIFTH DECLENSION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>diēs, m. &amp; f., day</th>
<th>rēs, f., thing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>diērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR NOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>vis, f., force</th>
<th>dea, f., goddess</th>
<th>domus, f., house</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>virēs</td>
<td>dea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>deae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>deae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>virēs (-is)</td>
<td>deam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>deā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Loc. domi**

*Filia* is declined like *dea.* *Domus* has forms of both the second and fourth declensions.
## Adjectives

### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

#### bonus, good

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>bonus, m.</th>
<th>bona, f.</th>
<th>bonum, n.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonāe</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonām</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonān</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives in -er, -era, -eram

#### miser, wretched

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>miser, m.</th>
<th>misera, f.</th>
<th>miserum, n.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>miseri</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miseri</td>
<td>pulcher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

Endings like the plural of **bonus**, retaining the -e-

### THIRD DECLENSION

#### ingēns, huge

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>ingēns, m., f.</th>
<th>ingēns, n.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ingentis</td>
<td>ingentis</td>
<td>acer, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
<td>acris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ingentem</td>
<td>ingentia</td>
<td>acrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
<td>ingentia</td>
<td>acri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Two Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>gravīs, m., f.</th>
<th>grave, n.</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>gravis</td>
<td>gravis</td>
<td>acris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>gravi</td>
<td>gravi</td>
<td>acri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>gravem</td>
<td>grave</td>
<td>acrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>gravi</td>
<td>gravi</td>
<td>acri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Three Terminations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>acer, acris,acre, shu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>acer, acris,acre, shu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>acer, acris,acre, shu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>acer, acris,acre, shu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>acer, acris,acre, shu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

In the vocabulary adjectives of one termination appear with the genitive singular following (ingēns, -entis); adjectives of two terminations appear with the combined masculine and feminine singular followed by the neuter ending (omnis, -e); adjectives of three terminations are listed with all three endings (acer, acris, acre).

The present active participle is declined like an adjective of one termination: amāns, amantis; tenēns, tenentis; dūcēns, dūcentis; capiēns, capientis; audiēns, audientis. The ablative singular ends in -e when it is used as a participle; in -i when used as an adjective (lūliā eum amante, since Julia loves him; but cum coniuge amanti, with a loving spouse).
### DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE OF ADJECTIVES

#### gratior, grātius, more pleasing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>gratior, m., f.</td>
<td>grātius, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>grātiōris</td>
<td>grātiōris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>grātiōri</td>
<td>grātiōri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>grātiōrem</td>
<td>grātiōre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>grātiōrem</td>
<td>grātiōre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Comparison of Adjectives

#### POSITIVE

- **Regular**
  - clārōs, -a, -um, clear
  - gravis, -e, heavy
  - fēlix, gen. fēlicis, happy
  - amāns, gen. amantis, loving
  - celer, -eris, -ere, swift
  - pulcher, -ra, -rum, beautiful
  - acer, acris, acre, sharp
  - facilis, -e, easy

- **Irregular**
  - bonus, -a, -um, good
  - magnus, -a, -um, large
  - malus, -a, -um, bad
  - multus, -a, -um, much
  - parvus, -a, -um, small
  - superus, -a, -um, that above

#### COMPARATIVE

- clārior, clārius
- gravior, gravius
- fēlicior, -ius
- amantior, amantius
- celerior, celerius
- pulchrior, pulchrius
- acrior, acrius
- facilior, facilius

#### SUPERLATIVE

- clārissimus, -a, -um
- gravissimus, -a, -um
- fēlicissimus, -a, -um
- amantissimus, -a, -um
- celerimum, -a, -um
- pulcherrimus, -a, -um
- acerrimus, -a, -um
- facillimus, -a, -um

### DECLENSION OF PLUS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>plūs, n.</td>
<td>plūrēs, m., f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>plūris</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>plūre</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

These adjectives are irregular in that the genitive singular ends in -lus and the dative singular in -i. Otherwise they are declined like bonus, miser, and pulcher.

- alius, alia, aliud, other, another
- alter, altera, alterum, the other
- ullus, -a, -um, any
- nūlus, -a, -um, not any, no
- sólus, -a, -um, alone
- totus, -a, -um, all, the whole
- unus, -a, -um, one
- uter, -tra, -trum, which (of two)
- uterque, -traque, -trumque, each, both
- neuter, -tra, -trum, neither

A mnemonic device for remembering this list is the phrase unus nauta, each letter standing...
### Numerals

**Declension of *duo, tres, and mille***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>M.</em></th>
<th><em>F.</em></th>
<th><em>N.</em></th>
<th><em>M. &amp; F.</em></th>
<th><em>N.</em></th>
<th><em>M., F., &amp; N.</em></th>
<th><em>N.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>duōs (duo)</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres (tris)</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td>milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Comparison of Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clārē, clearly</td>
<td>clārius</td>
<td>clāriissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graviter, heavily</td>
<td>gravius</td>
<td>gravissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēliciter, happily</td>
<td>fēlicius</td>
<td>fēlicissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeriter, swiftly</td>
<td>celerius</td>
<td>celerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchřē, beautifully</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acriter, keenly</td>
<td>acrius</td>
<td>acerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile, easily</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Irregular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene, well</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere, greatly</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>maximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malē, badly</td>
<td>peius</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum, much</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum, little</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pronouns

**PERSONAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>I</em></th>
<th><em>you</em></th>
<th><em>he</em></th>
<th><em>she</em></th>
<th><em>it</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>tū</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>mei</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>mihi</td>
<td>tibi</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>cō</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th><em>we</em></th>
<th><em>you</em></th>
<th><em>they</em></th>
<th><em>they</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>eae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>nostrum</td>
<td>vestrum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>nōbis</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
<td>eis</td>
<td>eis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>vōs</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>nōbis</td>
<td>vōbis</td>
<td>eis</td>
<td>eis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFLEXIVE

For first and second person the forms are the same as the personal pronoun, without a nominative case. For third person the forms below are used:

*Singular and Plural* (himself, herself, itself, themselves)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sui</td>
<td>ipsae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sibi</td>
<td>ipsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>se (sēsē)</td>
<td>ipsōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>se (sēsē)</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INTENSIVE

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse, m.</td>
<td>ipsa, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, haec, hoc, *this*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic, m.</td>
<td>haec, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ille, illa, illud, *that*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille, m.</td>
<td>illa, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iste, ista, istud, *that of yours*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iste, m.</td>
<td>ista, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>istius</td>
<td>istius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

idem, eadem, idem, *same*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem, m.</td>
<td>eadem, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
<td>eiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eidem</td>
<td>eidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eundem</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eödem</td>
<td>eödem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the dative and ablative plural *isdem* is an alternate form for eisdem.
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

**quis, quid, who, what**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>quis, m. f.</td>
<td>quid, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RELATIVE PRONOUN

**qui, quae, quod, who, which, that**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>qui, m.</td>
<td>quae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

The interrogative adjective is the same as the relative pronoun (see above), except that the nominative singular masculine form may be either *quis* or *qui*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**aliquis, someone, some**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>aliquis, m. &amp; f.</strong></td>
<td>aliquid, n.</td>
<td>aliqui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>alicuius</strong></td>
<td>alicuius</td>
<td>aliquōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>alicui</strong></td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>aliquem</strong></td>
<td>aliquid</td>
<td>aliquōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>aliquō</strong></td>
<td>aliquō</td>
<td>aliquibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The forms *aliqui, aliqua, aliquod* are used as adjectives.

quidam, *a certain one, a certain*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>quidam, m.</strong></td>
<td>quaedam, f.</td>
<td>quiddam (quoddam), n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cuiusdam</strong></td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
<td>cuiusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cuidam</strong></td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quendam</strong></td>
<td>quandum</td>
<td>quiddam (quoddam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>quōdam</strong></td>
<td>quādam</td>
<td>quōdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>quiddam, m.</strong></td>
<td>quaedam, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quōrundam</td>
<td>quārundam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quibusdam</td>
<td>quibusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quōsdam</td>
<td>quāsdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quibusdam</td>
<td>quibusdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The forms in parentheses are used as adjectives.
quisque, each

**Pronoun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quisque, <em>m., f.</em></td>
<td>quidque, <em>n.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuiusque</td>
<td>cuiusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quemque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quōque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Possessives**

**SINGULAR POSSESSOR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>3rd person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meus, -a, -um</td>
<td>tuus, -a, -um</td>
<td>suus, -a, -um (reflexive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>his, her, its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eius (gen. sing. of is)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his, her, its</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL POSSESSOR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st person</th>
<th>2nd person</th>
<th>3rd person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>noster, -tra, -trum</td>
<td>vester, -tra, -trum</td>
<td>suus, -a, -um (reflexive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. pl. of is)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Numerals**

**ROMAN NUMERALS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINALS</th>
<th>ORDINALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>unus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo, duae, duo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>trēs, tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIII; IV</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>quīnque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII; IX</td>
<td>novem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI</td>
<td>undecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>trēdecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primus, -a, -um</td>
<td>secundus, alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertius</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīntus</td>
<td>sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnus</td>
<td>decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinal</th>
<th>Roman Numeral</th>
<th>English Numeral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>XIII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>XIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>sedecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>duodéviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>undéviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>viginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXII</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>viginti et unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>trigintä</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>tricipité</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXII</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>quadráviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>quintáviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>sextáviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>septemviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVI</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>octoviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVII</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>novemviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXVIII</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>duodécim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIX</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>unviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>duodéviginti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXL</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>unviginti et un</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLI</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>viginti unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>quinquagintā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LX</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>sexagintā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>septuagintā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXX</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>octogintā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXXX</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>nonagintā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>centum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>centum unus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>ducenti, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>trescenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCCC</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>quadringenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>quingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>sescenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>septingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCCC</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>octingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCCCC</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>nonagenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>mille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>duo milia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Verbs**

### Regular Verbs

#### Principal Parts

1st Conjugation: vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum, call
2nd Conjugation: teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, hold
3rd Conjugation: dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, lead
3-io Conjugation: capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, take
4th Conjugation: audiō, audire, audivi, auditum, hear

#### Indicative Active

**Present**

| vocō | teneō | dūcō | capiō | audiō |
| vocās | tenēs | dūcis | capis | audis |
| vocat | tenet | dūcit | capit | audit |
| vocāmus | tenēmus | dūcimus | capimus | audimus |
| vocātis | tenētis | dūcitis | capitis | auditis |
| vocant | tenent | dūcunt | capiant | auditunt |

---

1 All of the ordinals from vicēsimus, tricēsimus, quadrāgēsimus, etc., through centēsimus and millēsimus are also spelled vicēsimus, tricēsimus, quadrāgēsimus, centēsimus, millēsimus, etc.
Latin via Ovid

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocēbam</th>
<th>tenēbam</th>
<th>dūcēbam</th>
<th>capiēbam</th>
<th>audiēbam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocēbās</td>
<td>tenēbās</td>
<td>dūcēbās</td>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbat</td>
<td>tenēbat</td>
<td>dūcēbat</td>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbāmus</td>
<td>tenēbāmus</td>
<td>dūcēbāmus</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbātis</td>
<td>tenēbātis</td>
<td>dūcēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbant</td>
<td>tenēbant</td>
<td>dūcēbant</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocēbō</th>
<th>tenēbō</th>
<th>dūcam</th>
<th>capiam</th>
<th>audiam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocēbis</td>
<td>tenēbis</td>
<td>dūcēs</td>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>audiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbit</td>
<td>tenēbit</td>
<td>dūcet</td>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>audiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbimus</td>
<td>tenēbimus</td>
<td>dūcēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbitis</td>
<td>tenēbitis</td>
<td>dūcētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēbant</td>
<td>tenēbant</td>
<td>dūcent</td>
<td>capient</td>
<td>audient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocāvī</th>
<th>tenui</th>
<th>dūxi</th>
<th>cēpī</th>
<th>audivī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāvisti</td>
<td>tenuistī</td>
<td>dūxistī</td>
<td>cēpistī</td>
<td>audivistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvit</td>
<td>tenuit</td>
<td>dūxit</td>
<td>cēpit</td>
<td>audivit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvīmus</td>
<td>tenuimīsus</td>
<td>dūximus</td>
<td>cēpimīsus</td>
<td>audivimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvīstis</td>
<td>tenuistīsus</td>
<td>dūxistīsus</td>
<td>cēpistīsus</td>
<td>audivīstīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvērunt</td>
<td>tenuērunt</td>
<td>dūxērunt</td>
<td>cēpērunt</td>
<td>audivērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocāveram</th>
<th>tenueram</th>
<th>dūxeram</th>
<th>cēperam</th>
<th>audiveram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāverās</td>
<td>tenuerās</td>
<td>dūxerās</td>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td>audiverās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverat</td>
<td>tenuerat</td>
<td>dūxerat</td>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>audiverat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverāmus</td>
<td>tenuerāmus</td>
<td>dūxerāmus</td>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
<td>audiverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverātis</td>
<td>tenuerātis</td>
<td>dūxerātis</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
<td>audiverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverant</td>
<td>tenuerant</td>
<td>dūxerant</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
<td>audiverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocāverō</th>
<th>tenuerō</th>
<th>dūxerō</th>
<th>cēperō</th>
<th>audiverō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāverēs</td>
<td>tenuerēs</td>
<td>dūxerēs</td>
<td>cēperēs</td>
<td>audiverēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverit</td>
<td>tenuerit</td>
<td>dūxerit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>audiverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverēmus</td>
<td>tenuerēmus</td>
<td>dūxerēmus</td>
<td>cēperēmus</td>
<td>audiverēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverētis</td>
<td>tenuerētis</td>
<td>dūxerētis</td>
<td>cēperētis</td>
<td>audiverētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverint</td>
<td>tenuerint</td>
<td>dūxerint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>audiverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Imperative Active**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocā</th>
<th>tenē</th>
<th>dūc³</th>
<th>capē</th>
<th>audi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāte</td>
<td>tenēte</td>
<td>dūcēte</td>
<td>capite</td>
<td>audite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

2 Present imperative passive forms also exist, identical to the present passive alternate second person singular and the regular second person plural: vocēre, vocēmini, be called, etc., but the usage is generally limited to deponent verbs: conāre, conāmini, try; verēre, verēmini, fear; etc. Future imperative forms are usually poetic: vocātōre, vocātōste, in the future, call; tenētōre, tenētōste, in the future, hold; dūctōre, dūctōste, in the future, lead; capītōre, capītōste, in the future, take; audītōre, audītōste, in the future, hear.

3 Regular imperative singular in third conjugation ends in -e (pete, seek; lege, read), but the very commonly used verbs dic, dūc, and fac (say, lead, make) drop the -e.
### Indicative Passive

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocor</th>
<th>teneor</th>
<th>ducor</th>
<th>capior</th>
<th>audior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocarís (-re)</td>
<td>tenebris (-re)</td>
<td>ducerís (-re)</td>
<td>caperís (-re)</td>
<td>auderís (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātur</td>
<td>tenētur</td>
<td>ducitūr</td>
<td>capitūr</td>
<td>auditūr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāmur</td>
<td>tenēmur</td>
<td>ducimur</td>
<td>capimur</td>
<td>auditur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāmini</td>
<td>tenēmini</td>
<td>ducimini</td>
<td>capimini</td>
<td>auditmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocantur</td>
<td>tenentur</td>
<td>ducuntur</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
<td>audituntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

| vocābar | tenēbar | ducēbar | capiēbar | audiēbar |
| vocābaris (-re) | tenebaris (-re) | ducēbaris (-re) | capiēbaris (-re) | audiēbaris (-re) |
| vocābātur | tenēbātur | ducēbātur | capiēbātur | audiēbātur |
| vocābāmur | tenēbāmur | ducēbāmur | capiēbāmur | audiēbāmur |
| vocābāmini | tenēbāmini | ducēbāmini | capiēbāmini | audiēbāmini |
| vocābantur | tenēbantur | ducēbantur | capiēbantur | audiēbantur |

#### Future

| vocābor | tenēbor | ducar | capiar | audiar |
| vocāberis (-re) | teneberis (-re) | duceris (-re) | capieris (-re) | audieris (-re) |
| vocābitur | tenēbitur | ducerit | capierit | auditur |
| vocābimur | tenēbimur | ducemur | capiēmur | audiēmur |
| vocābimini | tenēbimini | ducēmini | capiēmini | audiēmini |
| vocābantur | tenēbantur | ducēbantur | capiēbantur | audiēbantur |

#### Perfect

| vocātus sum | tentus sum | ducitus sum | captitus sum | auditus sum |
| vocātus es | tentus es | ducitus es | captitus es | auditus es |
| vocātus est | tentus est | ducitus est | captitus est | auditus est |
| vocātī sumus | tentī sumus | ducitī sumus | captī sumus | audiī sumus |
| vocātī estis | tentī estis | ductī estis | captī estis | audiī estis |
| vocātī sunt | tentī sunt | ductī sunt | captī sunt | audiī sunt |

#### Pluperfect

| vocātus eram | tentus eram | ducitus eram | captitus eram | auditus eram |
| vocātus erās | tentus erās | ducitus erās | captitus erās | auditus erās |
| vocātus erat | tentus erat | ducitus erat | captitus erat | auditus erat |
| vocātī erāmus | tentī erāmus | ductī erāmus | captī erāmus | audiī erāmus |
| vocātī erātis | tentī erātis | ductī erātis | captī erātis | audiī erātis |
| vocātī erant | tentī erant | ductī erant | captī erant | audiī erant |

#### Future Perfect

| vocātus erō | tentus erō | ducitus erō | captitus erō | auditus erō |
| vocātus eris | tentus eris | ducitus eris | captitus eris | auditus eris |
| vocātus erit | tentus erit | ducitus erit | captitus erit | auditus erit |
| vocātī erimus | tentī erimus | ductī erimus | captī erimus | audiī erimus |
| vocātī eritis | tentī eritis | ductī eritis | captī eritis | audiī eritis |
| vocātī erunt | tentī erunt | ductī erunt | captī erunt | audiī erunt |

---

Note: The indicative asserts a world of fact and actuality. Even in subordinate constructions introduced by dum, while; postquam, after; antequam, before; quamquam, although; ut, as; cum, when; quod, because, the indicative is used if the action referred to is real, possible, or understandable as the occasion for the action expressed by the verb in the main clause.
### Subjunctive Active

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocem</th>
<th>teneam</th>
<th>ducam</th>
<th>capiam</th>
<th>audiam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocés</td>
<td>teneás</td>
<td>dúcás</td>
<td>capiás</td>
<td>audiás</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocet</td>
<td>teneat</td>
<td>ducat</td>
<td>capiat</td>
<td>audiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēmus</td>
<td>teneāmus</td>
<td>dúcāmus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocētis</td>
<td>teneātis</td>
<td>dúcātis</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocent</td>
<td>teneant</td>
<td>ducant</td>
<td>capiant</td>
<td>audiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocārem</th>
<th>tenērem</th>
<th>ducerem</th>
<th>caperem</th>
<th>audirem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocārés</td>
<td>tenērés</td>
<td>ducerēs</td>
<td>caperēs</td>
<td>audirēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāret</td>
<td>tenēret</td>
<td>duceret</td>
<td>caperet</td>
<td>audiret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārēmus</td>
<td>tenērēmus</td>
<td>ducerēmus</td>
<td>caperēmus</td>
<td>audirēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārētis</td>
<td>tenērētis</td>
<td>ducerētis</td>
<td>caperētis</td>
<td>audirētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārent</td>
<td>tenērent</td>
<td>ducerent</td>
<td>caperent</td>
<td>audirent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocāverim</th>
<th>tenuerim</th>
<th>duxerim</th>
<th>cēperim</th>
<th>audiverim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāveris</td>
<td>tenueris</td>
<td>duxeris</td>
<td>cēperis</td>
<td>audiveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverit</td>
<td>tenuerit</td>
<td>duxerit</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>audiverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverimus</td>
<td>tenuerimus</td>
<td>duxerīmus</td>
<td>cēperimus</td>
<td>audiverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāveritis</td>
<td>tenueritis</td>
<td>duxerītis</td>
<td>cēperitis</td>
<td>audiveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāverint</td>
<td>tenuerint</td>
<td>duxerint</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
<td>audiverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocāvissem</th>
<th>tenuissem</th>
<th>duxissēm</th>
<th>cēpissem</th>
<th>audīvissem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissēs</td>
<td>tenuissēs</td>
<td>duxissēs</td>
<td>cēpisēs</td>
<td>audīvisēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvisset</td>
<td>tenuisset</td>
<td>duxisset</td>
<td>cēpisset</td>
<td>audīvisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissēmus</td>
<td>tenuissēmus</td>
<td>duxissēmus</td>
<td>cēpisēmus</td>
<td>audīvisēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissētis</td>
<td>tenuissētis</td>
<td>duxissētis</td>
<td>cēpisētis</td>
<td>audīvisētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāvissent</td>
<td>tenuissent</td>
<td>duxissent</td>
<td>cēpisent</td>
<td>audīvisent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive Passive

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocer</th>
<th>tenear</th>
<th>ducar</th>
<th>capiar</th>
<th>audiar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocēris (-re)</td>
<td>teneāris (-re)</td>
<td>ducāris (-re)</td>
<td>capiāris (-re)</td>
<td>audiāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocētur</td>
<td>teneātur</td>
<td>ducātur</td>
<td>capiātur</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēmur</td>
<td>teneāmur</td>
<td>ducāmur</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocēmini</td>
<td>teneāmini</td>
<td>ducāmini</td>
<td>capiāmini</td>
<td>audiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocentur</td>
<td>teneantur</td>
<td>ducantur</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
<td>audiaurant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocārer</th>
<th>tenērer</th>
<th>ducērer</th>
<th>caperērer</th>
<th>audirērer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocārēris (-re)</td>
<td>tenērēris (-re)</td>
<td>ducērēris (-re)</td>
<td>caperēris (-re)</td>
<td>audirēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārētur</td>
<td>tenērētur</td>
<td>ducērētur</td>
<td>caperētur</td>
<td>audirētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārēmur</td>
<td>tenērēmur</td>
<td>ducērēmur</td>
<td>caperēmur</td>
<td>audirēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārēmini</td>
<td>tenērēmini</td>
<td>ducērēmini</td>
<td>caperēmini</td>
<td>audirēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocārentur</td>
<td>tenērentur</td>
<td>ducērentur</td>
<td>caperentur</td>
<td>audirentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocātus sim</th>
<th>tentus sim</th>
<th>ductus sim</th>
<th>captus sim</th>
<th>auditus sim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocātus sis</td>
<td>tentus sis</td>
<td>ductus sīs</td>
<td>captus sīs</td>
<td>auditus sīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātus sit</td>
<td>tentus sit</td>
<td>ductus sit</td>
<td>captus sit</td>
<td>auditus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātī simus</td>
<td>tenti simus</td>
<td>ductī simus</td>
<td>captī simus</td>
<td>audītī simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātī sitis</td>
<td>tenti sitis</td>
<td>ductī sitis</td>
<td>captī sitis</td>
<td>audītī sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātī sint</td>
<td>tenti sint</td>
<td>ductī sint</td>
<td>captī sint</td>
<td>audītī sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A 431</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>vocātus essem</th>
<th>tentus essem</th>
<th>ductus essem</th>
<th>captus essem</th>
<th>auditus essem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vocātus essēs</td>
<td>tentus essēs</td>
<td>ductus essēs</td>
<td>captus essēs</td>
<td>auditus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātus esset</td>
<td>tentus esset</td>
<td>ductus esset</td>
<td>captus esset</td>
<td>auditus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāti essēmus</td>
<td>tenti essēmus</td>
<td>ductī essēmus</td>
<td>captī essēmus</td>
<td>auditī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāti essētis</td>
<td>tenti essētis</td>
<td>ductī essētis</td>
<td>captī essētis</td>
<td>auditī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāti essent</td>
<td>tenti essent</td>
<td>ductī essent</td>
<td>captī essent</td>
<td>auditī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tentus essem</th>
<th>tentus essēs</th>
<th>tentus esset</th>
<th>tenti essem</th>
<th>tenti essēs</th>
<th>tenti essent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocāns</td>
<td>tenēns</td>
<td>dūcēns</td>
<td>capiēns</td>
<td>audiēns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātūrus</td>
<td>tentūrus</td>
<td>ductūrus</td>
<td>captūrus</td>
<td>auditūrus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocātus</td>
<td>tentus</td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>captus</td>
<td>auditus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocandus</td>
<td>tenendus</td>
<td>dūcendus</td>
<td>capiendus</td>
<td>audiendus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indicatives</th>
<th>participles</th>
<th>infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Participles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indicatives</th>
<th>participles</th>
<th>infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Infinitives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indicatives</th>
<th>participles</th>
<th>infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**DEPONENT VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Principal parts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1st Conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2nd Conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3rd Conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3-io Conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4th Conjugation</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indicatives</th>
<th>participles</th>
<th>infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indicatives</th>
<th>participles</th>
<th>infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indicatives</th>
<th>participles</th>
<th>infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquar</td>
<td>loquēris (-re)</td>
<td>locūtus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patiar</td>
<td>patiēris (-re)</td>
<td>passus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oriar</td>
<td>oriēris (-re)</td>
<td>ortus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conēbor</td>
<td>conēberis (-re)</td>
<td>conēbitur</td>
<td>conēbimus</td>
<td>conēbimini</td>
<td>conēbimur</td>
<td>conēbimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conēberis (-re)</td>
<td>conēberis (-re)</td>
<td>conēbitur</td>
<td>conēbimur</td>
<td>conēbimini</td>
<td>conēbimur</td>
<td>conēbimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquar</td>
<td>loquēris (-re)</td>
<td>loquētur</td>
<td>loquēmur</td>
<td>loquēmini</td>
<td>loquentur</td>
<td>patientur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patiar</td>
<td>patiēris (-re)</td>
<td>patiētur</td>
<td>patiēmur</td>
<td>patiēmini</td>
<td>patiētur</td>
<td>orietur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oriar</td>
<td>oriēris (-re)</td>
<td>orietur</td>
<td>orietur</td>
<td>orietur</td>
<td>orietur</td>
<td>orietur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conātus sum</td>
<td>conātus es</td>
<td>conātus est</td>
<td>conātus sumus</td>
<td>conātis estis</td>
<td>conātis sunt</td>
<td>conātis sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritus sum</td>
<td>veritus es</td>
<td>veritus est</td>
<td>veri sumus</td>
<td>veri estis</td>
<td>veri sunt</td>
<td>veri sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus sum</td>
<td>passus es</td>
<td>passus est</td>
<td>passi sumus</td>
<td>passi estis</td>
<td>passi sunt</td>
<td>passi sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conātus erō</td>
<td>conātus eris</td>
<td>conātus erat</td>
<td>conātis erāmus</td>
<td>conātis erātis</td>
<td>conātis erunt</td>
<td>conātus erum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritus erō</td>
<td>veritus eris</td>
<td>veritus erat</td>
<td>veri erāmus</td>
<td>veri erātis</td>
<td>veri erunt</td>
<td>veri erum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus erō</td>
<td>passus eris</td>
<td>passus erat</td>
<td>passi erāmus</td>
<td>passi erātis</td>
<td>passi erunt</td>
<td>passi erum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coner</td>
<td>conēris (-re)</td>
<td>conētur</td>
<td>conēmur</td>
<td>conēmīnī</td>
<td>conentur</td>
<td>conērēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verear</td>
<td>vereāris (-re)</td>
<td>vereātur</td>
<td>vereāmur</td>
<td>vereāmini</td>
<td>vereantur</td>
<td>verērer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquar</td>
<td>loquāris (-re)</td>
<td>loquātur</td>
<td>loquāmur</td>
<td>loquāmini</td>
<td>loquantur</td>
<td>loquerer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patiar</td>
<td>patiāris (-re)</td>
<td>patiātur</td>
<td>patiāmur</td>
<td>patiāmini</td>
<td>patientur</td>
<td>paterer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oriar</td>
<td>oriāris (-re)</td>
<td>oriātur</td>
<td>oriāmur</td>
<td>oriāmini</td>
<td>oriantur</td>
<td>orirer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conātus sim</td>
<td>conātus sis</td>
<td>conātus sit</td>
<td>conātis simus</td>
<td>conātis situs</td>
<td>conātis sint</td>
<td>conātus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>veritus sis</td>
<td>veritus sit</td>
<td>veri simus</td>
<td>veri situs</td>
<td>veri sint</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus sim</td>
<td>passus sis</td>
<td>passus sit</td>
<td>passi simus</td>
<td>passi situs</td>
<td>passi sint</td>
<td>passus sim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conārēr</td>
<td>conārēris (-re)</td>
<td>conārētur</td>
<td>conārēmur</td>
<td>conārēmīnī</td>
<td>conārērentur</td>
<td>conārēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verērer</td>
<td>verērēris (-re)</td>
<td>verērētur</td>
<td>verērēmur</td>
<td>verērēmini</td>
<td>verērentur</td>
<td>verērer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquerer</td>
<td>loquerēris (-re)</td>
<td>loquerētur</td>
<td>loquerēmur</td>
<td>loquerēmini</td>
<td>loquentur</td>
<td>paterer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paterer</td>
<td>paterēris (-re)</td>
<td>paterētur</td>
<td>paterēmur</td>
<td>paterēmini</td>
<td>paterentur</td>
<td>orirer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orirēris (-re)</td>
<td>orirētur</td>
<td>orirēmur</td>
<td>orirēmini</td>
<td>orirēntur</td>
<td>orirēris (-re)</td>
<td>orirētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conātus sim</td>
<td>conātus sis</td>
<td>conātus sit</td>
<td>conātis simus</td>
<td>conātis situs</td>
<td>conātis sint</td>
<td>conātus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>veritus sis</td>
<td>veritus sit</td>
<td>veri simus</td>
<td>veri situs</td>
<td>veri sint</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus sim</td>
<td>passus sis</td>
<td>passus sit</td>
<td>passi simus</td>
<td>passi situs</td>
<td>passi sint</td>
<td>passus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ortus sim</td>
<td>ortus sis</td>
<td>ortus sit</td>
<td>ortus sim</td>
<td>ortus sit</td>
<td>ortus sint</td>
<td>ortus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conati essem</td>
<td>Veritus essem</td>
<td>Locutus essem</td>
<td>Passus essem</td>
<td>Ortu essem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conati esses</td>
<td>Veritus esses</td>
<td>Locutus esses</td>
<td>Passus esses</td>
<td>Ortu esses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conati esset</td>
<td>Veritus esset</td>
<td>Locutus esset</td>
<td>Passus esset</td>
<td>Ortu esset</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conati essēmus</td>
<td>Veriti essēmus</td>
<td>Locuti essēmus</td>
<td>Pasi essēmus</td>
<td>Orti essēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conati essētis</td>
<td>Veriti essētis</td>
<td>Locuti essētis</td>
<td>Pasi essētis</td>
<td>Orti essētis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conati essent</td>
<td>Veriti essent</td>
<td>Locuti essent</td>
<td>Pasi essent</td>
<td>Orti essent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>IRREGULAR VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conāre</td>
<td>verēre</td>
<td>loquere</td>
<td>patere</td>
<td>orire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conāmini</td>
<td>verēmini</td>
<td>loquimini</td>
<td>patimini</td>
<td>orimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conāns</td>
<td>verēns</td>
<td>conātūrus</td>
<td>conandus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>locūtus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquēns</td>
<td>patiēns</td>
<td>locūtus esse</td>
<td>loquendus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patiēns</td>
<td>oriēns</td>
<td>passūrus</td>
<td>patiendus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oriēns</td>
<td>ortūrus</td>
<td>ortūrus esse</td>
<td>oriendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conāri</td>
<td>verēri</td>
<td>conātūrus esse</td>
<td>conātūrus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loqui</td>
<td>pati</td>
<td>locūtus esse</td>
<td>locūtus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pati</td>
<td>oriri</td>
<td>passūrus esse</td>
<td>passūrus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oriri</td>
<td>ortūrus esse</td>
<td>ortūrus esse</td>
<td>ortūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRREGULAR VERBS

#### Principal Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to be</th>
<th>to be able</th>
<th>to go</th>
<th>to want</th>
<th>not to want</th>
<th>to prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esse</td>
<td>posse</td>
<td>ire</td>
<td>velle</td>
<td>nōlle</td>
<td>mālle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fui</td>
<td>potui</td>
<td>ii or ivi</td>
<td>volui</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td>mālui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>futūrus</td>
<td>itum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>potes</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>potest</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>possumus</td>
<td>imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>estis</td>
<td>potestis</td>
<td>itis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>eunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| eram | poteram | ibam | volēbam | nōlēbam | mālēbam |
| erās | poterās | ibās | volēbās | nōlēbas | mālēbas |
| erat | poterat | ibat | volēbat | nōlēbat | mālēbat |
| erāmus | poterāmus | ibāmus | volēbāmus | nōlēbāmus | mālēbāmus |
| erātis | poterātis | ibātis | volēbātis | nōlēbātis | mālēbātis |
| erant | poterant | ibant | volēbant | nōlēbant | mālēbant |

| erō | poterō | ibō | volam | nōlam | mālam |
| eris | poteris | ibis | volēs | nōlēs | mālēs |
| erit | poterit | ibit | volet | nōlet | mālet |
| erimus | poterimus | ibimus | volēmus | nōlēmus | mālēmus |
| eritis | poteritis | ibitis | volētis | nōlētis | mālētis |
| erunt | poterunt | ibunt | volent | nōlent | mālent |
Latin via Ovid

Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fui potui</td>
<td>ii volui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistī potuistī</td>
<td>ištī voluistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit potuit</td>
<td>iit voluit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuimus potuimus</td>
<td>iimus voluimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuistik potuistis</td>
<td>iistī voluisitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuērunt potuērunt</td>
<td>iērunt voluerunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fueram potueram</td>
<td>ieram volueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerās potuerās</td>
<td>ierās voluerās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat potuerat</td>
<td>ierat voluerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerāmus potuerāmus</td>
<td>ierāmus voluerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerātis potuerātis</td>
<td>ierātis voluerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerant potuerant</td>
<td>ierant voluerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim possim</td>
<td>eam velim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis possis</td>
<td>eās vellis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit possit</td>
<td>eat velit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simus possimus</td>
<td>eāmus velimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitis possitis</td>
<td>eātis velitims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sint possint</td>
<td>eant velit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>essem possem</td>
<td>irem vellem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs possēs</td>
<td>iřēs vellēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset posset</td>
<td>iret vellet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēmus possēmus</td>
<td>iřēmus vellēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essētis possētis</td>
<td>iřētis vellētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essent possent</td>
<td>irent veltent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim potuerim</td>
<td>ierim voluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris potueris</td>
<td>ieris volueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit potuerit</td>
<td>ierit voluerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerimus potuerimus</td>
<td>ierimus voluerimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueritis potueritis</td>
<td>ieritis volueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerint potuerint</td>
<td>ierint voluerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuissem potuissem</td>
<td>issem voluissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisēs potuisēs</td>
<td>issēs voluisēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisset potuisset</td>
<td>issēt voluisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisēmus potuisēmus</td>
<td>issēmus voluisēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisētis potuisētis</td>
<td>issētis voluisētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisent potuisent</td>
<td>issent voluisent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>este</td>
<td>iute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Pres. act. | potëns   | iëns, volëns | nölëns |
| perf. pass. | itum     | itûrus       |
| fut. act.  | futûrus  | eundus      |
| fut. pass. (ger.) |         |             |

### Particles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pres. esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf. fuisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut. futûrus esse or forn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tuli, lâtum, bear

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>fero</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td>ferēbāris (-re)</td>
<td>ferēs</td>
<td>ferēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferris (-re)</td>
<td>ferēbās</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td>ferēs</td>
<td>ferēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>fertur</td>
<td>ferēbat</td>
<td>ferēbâtur</td>
<td>feret</td>
<td>ferētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
<td>ferēbāmus</td>
<td>ferēbātur</td>
<td>ferēmus</td>
<td>ferēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
<td>ferēbātis</td>
<td>ferēbāmini</td>
<td>ferētis</td>
<td>ferēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
<td>ferēbant</td>
<td>ferēbantur</td>
<td>ferent</td>
<td>ferentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Future Perf.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>lātus sum</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulisti</td>
<td>lātus es</td>
<td>tulerās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulit</td>
<td>lātus est</td>
<td>tulerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulimus</td>
<td>lāti sumus</td>
<td>tulerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulistis</td>
<td>lāti estis</td>
<td>tulerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulērant</td>
<td>lāti sunt</td>
<td>tulerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferás</td>
<td>ferāris (-re)</td>
<td>ferrēs</td>
<td>ferrēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferat</td>
<td>ferātur</td>
<td>ferret</td>
<td>ferrētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferāmus</td>
<td>ferāmur</td>
<td>ferrēmus</td>
<td>ferrēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferātis</td>
<td>ferāmini</td>
<td>ferrētis</td>
<td>ferrēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>ferantur</td>
<td>ferrent</td>
<td>ferrentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>lātus sim</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
<td>lātus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuleris</td>
<td>lātus sis</td>
<td>tulissēs</td>
<td>lātus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulerit</td>
<td>lātus sit</td>
<td>tulisset</td>
<td>lātus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulerimus</td>
<td>lātī simus</td>
<td>tulissēmus</td>
<td>lātī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuleritis</td>
<td>lātī sitis</td>
<td>tulissētis</td>
<td>lātī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tulerint</td>
<td>lātī sint</td>
<td>tulissent</td>
<td>lātī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pres. Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Act. fer</th>
<th>Pres. ferēns</th>
<th>Fut. lātūrus</th>
<th>Ferendus</th>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>Act. ferre</th>
<th>Fut. ferri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferte</td>
<td></td>
<td>lātus</td>
<td></td>
<td>lātus esse</td>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>lātus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRINCIPAL PARTS:** fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made, be done, become

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fiō</td>
<td>fiēbam</td>
<td>fiām</td>
<td>factus sum</td>
<td>factus eram</td>
<td>factus erō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td>fiēbās</td>
<td>fiēs</td>
<td>factus es</td>
<td>factus erās</td>
<td>factus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fiēbat</td>
<td>fiēt</td>
<td>factus est</td>
<td>factus erat</td>
<td>factus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīmus</td>
<td>fiēbāmus</td>
<td>fiēmus</td>
<td>factus sumus</td>
<td>facti erāmus</td>
<td>factī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fītis</td>
<td>fiēbātis</td>
<td>fiētis</td>
<td>factus estis</td>
<td>factī erātis</td>
<td>factī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td>fiēbant</td>
<td>fiēnt</td>
<td>factus sunt</td>
<td>factī erant</td>
<td>factī erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fiam</td>
<td>fierem</td>
<td>factus sim</td>
<td>factus essem</td>
<td>fere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiās</td>
<td>fierēs</td>
<td>factus sīs</td>
<td>factus essēs</td>
<td>fere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiat</td>
<td>fieret</td>
<td>factus sit</td>
<td>factus esset</td>
<td>faciendus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīāmus</td>
<td>fierēmus</td>
<td>facti simus</td>
<td>facti essēmus</td>
<td>factum ĭri</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīātis</td>
<td>fierētis</td>
<td>facti sītis</td>
<td>facti essētis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiānt</td>
<td>fierent</td>
<td>facti sint</td>
<td>facti essent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Resume of the Subjunctive**

Your ability to interpret the uses of the subjunctive will greatly facilitate your reading of Latin. Unlike the indicative, which assumes a world of fact and actuality, the subjunctive supposes an unreal or hypothetical situation. Used in both independent (main) clauses and in dependent (subordinate) clauses, it expresses ideas or actions that are circumstantial, invitational, resultant, unreal, indirect, or downright contrary-to-fact.

Remember that there are only four tenses in the subjunctive. There are no future tenses because all subjunctive tenses may imply futurity.
Appendix A 437

Independent

1. Jussive or hortatory (let . . .)
   Vivamus, mea, Lesbia, atque amemus.
   Miser Catulle, desinas ineptire (only in poetry; in prose use imperative for second person).
   Requiescat in pace.

2. Deliberative (surprise, indignation, perplexity).
   Quid faciam? Quid agam? Quid dicam?

3. Optative (wish) (would that . . . !)
   Utinam auxilio tibi sit!
   Utinam di auxilium ferant!
   Ne vivam, captiva misera.

4. Potential (possibility) (may, might, can, could, would)
   Nemo dicat me esse latro.

Dependent

1. Purpose (neg, ne)
   Ulixes socios misit ut naturam terrae cognoscarent.

2. Result (neg. non)
   Tanta tempestas coorta est ut nulla navium cursum tenere posset.

3. Conditions (should-would: Less Vivid)
   Si Ulixes Polyphemum necet, socii effugiant.
   Conditions (Contrary-to-fact)
   Si Ulixes Polyphemum necaret (necavisset), socii effugere possent (potuissent).

4. Cum clauses
   Circumstantial
   Cibum novum cum Graeci gustavissent, patriae suae obliti sunt.
   Causal
   Quae cum ita essent, nuntii redierunt.
   Concessive
   Cum nulla facultas effugiendi maneat, tamen Ulixes spem non deponit.

5. Noun clause of desire (after rogo, peto, quaero, persuadeo, oro, etc.)
   Oravit ut abire liceret.

6. Indirect question (after interrogative word)
   Polyphemus quaesivit ubi esset navis.

7. Relative clauses
   Purpose: Ulixes socios misit qui aquam referrent.
   Characteristic: Hi erant homines qui patriae oblii essent.

8. After verbs of fearing (vereor and metuo).
   Ulixes veritus est ne Polyphemus dolum cognosceret.

9. Subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse
   Populus scivit Theseum esse ducem quem exspectaret.
I. The Roman Calendar

Our present calendar is a descendant of the Roman calendar as revised by Julius Caesar in 45 B.C. and further amended by Pope Gregory in 1582 A.D. According to Ovid in his *Fasti*, an almanac-like work on the Roman festivals, the calendar of Romulus, who founded the city of Rome in 753 B.C., was divided originally into ten months beginning with *Martius* (March). Numa, one of the subsequent kings, is said to have inserted at the beginning of the year the months of *Ianuarius* (January) and *Februarius* (February), which like the other months were based on the lunar cycle from one new moon to the next. Thus, centuries later, Caesar inherited a twelve-month year based on the lunar year of 355 days, which unfortunately did not correspond to the solar year, so that by Caesar's time *Ianuarius* was occurring several months out of season. Adding to the complexity of the situation was the fact that the calendar had become a tool for power to be used by one class against another because the priests had in their power the appointing of days lawful (*fas*) or unlawful (*nefas*) for business or legal and political activity. The resulting confusion and abuses influenced Caesar, as Pontifex Maximus, to effect a calendar reform which established the same twelve months in a solar year of 365½ days, the extra day being added every fourth year.

The months of Caesar's calendar were *Ianuarius*, *Februarius*, *Martius*, *Aprilis*, *Maius*, *Iunius*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, *October*, *November*, and *December*.¹ *Ianuarius* was appropriately named for the double-faced god of doorways, *Ianus* (Janus), who looked backward to the old and forward to the new. *Februarius* contained the *februa*, the feast of purification, and took its name from that holiday. *Martius* was named for the god Mars, who had sired the twins Romulus and Remus, and according to Ovid, *Aprilis* was named for Venus, being a corruption of the Greek name Aphrodite. Ovid further tells us that *Maius* was named for the “elders” (*maiores*), and that *Iunius* was named for the “younger ones” (*juniors*), a most interesting etymology, unfortunately not further substantiated.² The remaining months were named for their original numerical position; *quintus* (fifth), *sextus* (sixth), *septem* (seven), *octo* (eight), *novem* (nine), *decem* (ten). *Quintilis* subsequently was renamed *Iulius* (July) in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Augustus* (August) replaced *Sextilis* in honor of the deified Emperor Augustus. Thus our present month names have had continuous use for about two thousand years.

Since dates in the pre-Christian era obviously could not have been reckoned relative to the birth of Christ, another significant event was used as the date point from which to calculate events: dates were reckoned from the traditional date of the founding of the city of Rome, 753 B.C., in Latin *ab urbe condita*, abbreviated AUC. Thus AUC 54 was 53 years after the founding of the city or 700 B.C.³ Another way the Romans expressed the year was in terms of the consuls who served during a particular year—thus an event was said to have occurred “in the consulship of Piso and Gabinius.”⁴

---

¹ The months in Latin are considered either as adjectives or as substantives: the ones in -ius are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; the others are third declension (*Aprilis*, -e) or (*September*, -bris).

² Other sources list *Aprilis* as derived from *aperire* (to open), the month opening to spring, or from *apero* (second), since originally it was the second month. Most dictionaries give the goddess Maia as the derivation of *Maius* and call *Iunius* a Roman family name, the Junius gens.

³ The extra year is added since the Romans counted the founding year and the indicated year, so that one must consider the number 754 when converting B.C. or A.D. dates to AUC or vice versa.

⁴ Given as an ablative absolute construction: *Pisone et Gabinio consulis*. 

439
The dates within the month were reckoned by counting backwards from three points of time in each month—the Nones, the Ides, and the Kalends of the following month. These three names of days divided the Roman month into sections, with the date being counted either as on or as so many days before each point of time. The Kalends fell on the first day of the month. Thus the phrase Kalendae Apriles (abbreviated Kal. Apr.) indicates the first day of April. The Ides and Nones are separated by eight days (or nine Roman days) and can best be remembered by the following rhymed verse:

In March, July, October, May
The Ides come on the 15th day,
The Nones the 7th, and all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

To these three names of days, the names of the months were attached as adjectives: Idibus Martis (Id. Mar.), on the 15th of March.

To convert a Roman date with its inclusive and backward reckoning one must apply the following principles: add 1 to the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, then subtract the number of the given day; when converting Kalends, add 2 to the number of days in the preceding month, then subtract the number of the given day. Note the following examples:

1) ante diem III Non. Iun., the 3rd day before the Nones of June. In June the Nones are on the 5th. Add 1 to 5: 5 + 1 = 6. Subtract 3 from 6: 6 − 3 = 3. Hence, the date is June 3.
2) a.d. VI Id. Mar., the 6th day before the Ides of March. In March the Ides are on the 15th. Add 1 to 15: 15 + 1 = 16. Subtract 6 from 16: 16 − 6 = 10. Hence, the date is March 10.
3) a.d. VIII Kal. Mai., the 8th day before the Kalends of May. Since the Kalends are the 1st day of the month, this date will be in April. April has 30 days. Add 2 to 30: 30 + 2 = 32. Subtract 8 from 32: 32 − 8 = 24. Hence, the date is April 24.

The day before each point of reference was called pridie. Thus, pr. Non. Iun. would be June 4, pr. Id. Mar. would be March 14, and pr. Kal. Mai. would be April 30. Notice also that the day before the day designated as pridie is always a.d. III (as in ex. 1).

There are actually several ways to express a date such as June 3 in the first example:

a) ante diem tertium Nonas Iunias, shortened to a.d. III Non. Iun. Ante diem came to be treated as an indeclinable noun which could be used with other prepositions and thus ad a.d. III Non. Iun. means up to the 3rd of June. Cicero and Livy commonly use this expression.

b) by the ablative of time:
   tertio die ante Nonas Iunias

c) omitting die ante from the above example in b):
   tertio Nonas Iunias

Convert the following Roman dates to present dates:6


5Nones; Idus, Iduum, f.; and Kalendae, the last being the source of our English word calendar.
6The answers are given below:

1. June 1 4. Mar. 14
2. Feb. 5 5. Jan. 2
7. Apr. 30
Time during the day was divided from sunrise to sunset into twelve parts or horae. The length of these horae varied with the season. One can approximate the Roman hour by adding our six hours from midnight to sunrise to the given Roman hour. Thus the third hour (Roman time) would be about 9:00 AM. The night from sunset to sunrise was divided into four watches of three horae each.

II. The Olympians

Jupiter, Jove (Zeus)—god the father, god of sky and weather, cloud gatherer, god of sky phenomena, rain, thunder, lightning, but also of open, clear sky.

Attributes and/or symbols:

- eagle, oak tree, thunderbolt, lightning, scepter, aegis, bull

Neptune (Poseidon)—Earth-shaker, god of all waters, seas, ocean, god of horses, earthquakes

- trident, bull, horse, dolphin

Pluto, Dis (Hades)—the Unseen, god of the Underworld (Tartarus), receiver of many guests; carried off Proserpina, daughter of Ceres.

- dark chariot, wife Proserpina

Juno (Hera)—ox-eyed, goddess of marriage, childbirth, fertility in marriage, bonds of wedlock; wife of Jupiter

- peacock, cow, lily, fleur-de-lys

Vesta (Hestia)—goddess of the hearth

- sacred fire

Ceres (Demeter)—earth mother, goddess of grain, corn, vegetation, harvest, fertility of the soil, sorrow over a lost child, joy at annual rebirth; seasonal change

- shaft of wheat, vegetation

Venus (Aphrodite)—Cyprian, Cytherean goddess of love, beauty, marriage, protectress of sailors; birth from sea foam and genitalia of Uranus; also identified as daughter of Jupiter and Dione

- swan, cosmetics, mirror, dove, apple

Minerva (Pallas, Athena)—gray-eyed goddess of wisdom, war, justice, goddess of the city, crafts, skills, patron of Athens, unmarried girls, born fully grown and clothed from head of Zeus; gave olive tree, horse taming; goddess of weaving

- Aegis with Medusa head, owl, tree, Nike, spindle, snake, helmet

Mercury (Hermes)—slayer of Argos, messenger of the gods, conductor of souls of the dead, guide and protector of travelers, bringer of good luck to merchants; commerce, thieves, shepherd

- winged sandals, caduceus, broad-brimmed hat
Vulcan, Mulciber (Hephaestus)—god of fire and the forge, artisan god of smiths; lame god, neglected husband of Venus

metalcraft, hammer, anvil, bellows, fire, limp

Mars (Ares)—originally an Italian god of agriculture; bloody god of wars and weapons; lover of Venus

vulture, helmet, shield, arms

Apollo (Phoebus)—Pythian god of sun, identified with earlier Helios and Hyperion, god of prophecy, medicine, fine arts, flocks, herds, rational thought, courage, order, but also capable of the irrational act

tripod, omphalos (navel stone placed at Delphi), lyre, bow and arrows, laurel wreath, palm tree, wolf, crow

Diana (Artemis)—goddess of hunt, patron of small animals, wild beasts, virginity, the moon and monthly cycles in women; twin of Apollo

bow, quiver of arrows, torch, hunting dress, stag, palm tree

Bacchus, Liber (Dionysus)—the liquid principle, god of wine, the vine, cultivation of vine, excesses from wine; song, dance, poetry, fertility, drama, excesses, mysticism, Silenus and the satyrs

ivy, grapes, vines, deer, thyrsos, drinking cup, leopard, Maenads and satyrs

* * * * *

In his long, colorful career, Jupiter (Zeus) had many consorts to produce the younger Olympians, minor divinities, and the heroes:

ZEUS'S CONSORTS AND THEIR PROGENY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metis</th>
<th>Minerva (Athena), born from the head of Zeus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Themis</td>
<td>Justice, Hours, Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eurynome</td>
<td>The Three Graces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceres (Demeter)</td>
<td>Proserpina (Kore, Persephone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemosyne</td>
<td>The Nine Muses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latona (Leto)</td>
<td>Apollo and Diana (Artemis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juno (Hera)</td>
<td>Vulcan (Hephaestus), Mars (Ares), Hebe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maia</td>
<td>Mercury (Hermes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semele</td>
<td>Dionysus (Bacchus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcmena</td>
<td>Hercules (Heracles)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callisto</td>
<td>Arcas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danaë</td>
<td>Perseus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dione</td>
<td>Venus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. The Lesser Deities

1. The *Muses*, the mythological embodiment of the cultural arts, were nine in number, the daughters of Zeus and Mnemosyne (Memory). They provide the inspiration for the arts they represent: Clio is the Muse of history; Calliope, of epic poetry; Terpsichore, of the dance; Thalia, of comedy; Urania, of astronomy; Melpomene, of tragedy; Euterpe, of lyric poetry; Polymnia, of sacred song; and Erato, of profane love poetry. Their mountain haunts were Helicon, Pierus, and Parnassus in Greece, and of course, Olympus.

2. The *Graces* were three—Aglaia (Splendor), Euphrosyne (Mirth), and Thalia (Good Cheer). They were the daughters of Jupiter and Eurynome, an Oceanid. Not usually separately identified, they were the embodiment of grace and beauty.

3. The *Fates* (Parcae or Moirae) were also three in number: Clotho spins the thread of life; Lachesis, the disposer of lots, weaves it; and Atropos cuts the thread of each man’s existence.

4. The *Furies* (Erinys) were the ministers of justice, the punishers of evil. They were Tisiphone, Megaera, and Allecto.

5. The *Hesperides*, called variously the daughters of Night or of Atlas, guarded the golden apples; the eleventh labor of Hercules was to obtain these apples.

6. The *Oceanids* were the daughters of Oceanus and Tethys. The Nereids were the children of Nereus, son of the sea (Pontus). Only one Nereid (Thetis) is listed by name and she is important since it is from her marriage with King Peleus that the hero Achilles was born.

7. The *Gorgons* were earth creatures, sometimes represented as female with snakey locks, sometimes as dragon-like with wings. Their look turned men to stone. The hero Perseus slew Medusa, the Gorgon, using his polished shield as a mirror to avoid being turned to stone. From the drops of blood which fell into the sea the winged horse, Pegasus, is said to have sprung.

8. The *Winds*, headed by King Aeolus, lived on earth. The four Winds represent the directions: Boreas (Latin, Aquilo) was the North Wind; Zephyr (Latin, Favonius) was the West Wind; Notus (Latin, Auster) was the South Wind; and Eurus was the East Wind.

9. The *Satyrs* or *Sileni* were the spirits of the wild life of the woodlands and the hills. They are bestial in their nature and desires, usually represented in art as male creatures with goat hoofs, pointed ears, and a horse’s tail emerging from the center of the back. They follow in the procession of Bacchus in vase paintings and sculptural relief, many times playing the aulos or flute-like “pipes of Pan.”

10. The *Nymphs* represent the female divine spirits of natural phenomena: woods, rivers and streams, mountain regions, trees, caves, towns, and cities. They are considered as young, fair, unwed, and usually reside in the locality which they represent. Pursued by gods, men, and satyrs, they many times are considered the female counterpart of the Satyrs, roaming the woods in the band of Diana’s followers.
IV. Genealogy of the Gods

(Olympians in Bold face Type)

Chaos (Void)

Night = Darkness Eros (Desire) Tartarus Earth

Light Day Uranus (Sky) Sea Mountains

Earth = Uranus ——— Aphrodite

12 Titans Cyclopes 100-Handed Creatures

(Titans include Iapetus, Mnemosyne, Coeus, Phoebe, Cronus, Rhea)

Iapetus = Clymene

Prometheus Atlas Epimetheus = Pandora

Zeus = Maia Dione = Zeus

Hermes Aphrodite

Mnemosyne = Zeus Coeus = Phoebe

9 Muses Leto = Zeus

Apollo Artemis

Cronus¹ = Rhea

Hestia Demeter Hera = Zeus Hades Poseidon

= (Metis) Athena

Ares Hebe Hephaestus

Source: Hesiod, *Theogony*

¹In Italy Cronus was called Saturn; one of the chief gods of ancient Rome, he was worshiped in one of the oldest temples in the Forum and in homes at the Saturnalia.
V. Bibliography on Mythology

The following titles offer a starting place for the student who wishes to explore in greater depth the stories told by Ovid or to investigate the general subject of mythology. For further suggestions, consult the bibliographies in these books or consult the bibliography by Peradotto listed below.


For examples of the retelling of ancient myths by modern writers, see:


For an annotated bibliography of mythology, see:

## VI. Roman Chronology

### HISTORY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C. 753–509</th>
<th>THE KINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>753</td>
<td>Foundation of Rome (tradition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>Cumae founded by Greeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750–509</td>
<td>Etruscans establish hill-top City-States; expansion in Latium, Campania, and Po area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>509</td>
<td>Tarquinius Superbus expelled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C. 509–264</th>
<th>EARLY REPUBLIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>493</td>
<td>Battle of Lake Regillus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>466</td>
<td>Tribunate established</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444–442</td>
<td>Decemvirate; Codification of the Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>390</td>
<td>Rome sacked by the Gauls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>326–290</td>
<td>Samnite Wars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>281–275</td>
<td>Wars with Pyrrhus of Epirus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C. 264–134</th>
<th>MIDDLE REPUBLIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>264–241</td>
<td>First Punic War with Carthage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234–149</td>
<td>Cato, conservative senator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218–202</td>
<td>Second Punic War: Scipio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149–146</td>
<td>Third Punic War: Carthage destroyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>Corinth destroyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C. 133–27</th>
<th>LATE REPUBLIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>133</td>
<td>Tiberius Gracchus, Tribune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Gaius Gracchus, Tribune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111–105</td>
<td>War with Jugurtha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104–100</td>
<td>Consulships of Marius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82–81</td>
<td>Sulla dictator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Consulate of Pompey &amp; Crassus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66–62</td>
<td>Pompey in the East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Cicero Consul: Catiline conspiracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>First Triumvirate: Pompey Crassus, Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Caesar Consul; Gallic Wars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49–45</td>
<td>Civil Wars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44–27</td>
<td>Wars of Octavian to establish Empire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Battle of Actium: Anthony and Cleopatra defeated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LITERATURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B.C. 451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270–201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>239–169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250–150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>254–184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220–132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200–117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185–150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170–85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOLDEN AGE: LATE REPUBLIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B.C. 106–43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102–44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116–27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99–24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86–34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86–34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VII. Reading Roman Poetry

Roman poets regularly wrote their verses\(^7\) in formal patterns which they felt suited the nature of the ideas being expressed. The most familiar of these patterns is probably the hexameter of epic literature, and indeed the proper reading of Roman epic literature has the effect of waves of repeated action, like the beat of marching feet, the roll of the drum, the coming of invading armies, or the waves of the sea; and since heroic, epic literature dealt with such subjects, the meter did indeed aptly suit the ideas being expressed.

\(^7\)A *verse* is a single line of poetry (*versum, turned*); a *stanza* is a group of verses.
Another popular verse form, elegy or elegiac couplet, consists of alternating lines of hexameter and pentameter. This meter was early used by poets to express many different moods and ideas when epic hexameter proved too heavy or formal. Elegiac couplet was used as a vehicle for personal reflection on a great variety of subjects, both serious and gay. Ovid, in his monumental accumulation of legends and seasonal calendar events, *The Fasti*, employs this meter, perhaps because of its alternations, to emphasize the contrast of one day against the next, for he would like to communicate in all his works the changes in life—in seasons, in ages, in people, in the gods themselves.

It is difficult to read into the meter of the various patterns of lyric poetry a reflection of the meaning of the poems; rather an association of the meter with a certain kind of verse (e.g., the use of Sapphics with love poetry) in imitation of Greek meters in use by Roman poets has resulted in certain meters being identified with certain types of poetic expression. Whether the psychological effect of such meter is the result of the meter itself or of the poems already written in the meter and quite familiar to poets is a difficult subject to discuss with certainty. However, the clever, tight fit of the hendecasyllabic line seems most appropriate for the love poem that Catullus chose to cast in its form, for with all its limitations it still allows Catullus to express a most delightful invitation to love in a kind of voluntary surrender to the meter with the compensating fulfillment of idea:

**Da mi basia mille, dein de centum!**

Of the many other lyric forms, the scanzon, also called limping iambics, provides another verse form that seems to reflect its meaning. A line contains six feet, all iambic except for the last one which changes to a trochee. This abrupt change acts as a sort of brake pedal to the line and slows the otherwise repetitious flow of rhythm:

**Miser Catulle, desinas ineptire**

To read the poems properly, you should read aloud, delighting in the alternation of long and short vowels producing in turn the long and short syllables. Relax into the rhythm of the poem, and the sense, the emphasis of words, and the meaning will develop naturally. The poet planned it that way, choosing his words and his word order to fit his ideas and the meter he had selected. Pronounce the words carefully, giving the proper quantity to the long and short vowels, and you will emerge with a compromise of beat and accent that is neither tedious nor exaggerated. But of course you must be able to identify long and short syllables and to read them properly in the meter. The following rules may help:

**Long and Short Vowels.** A vowel is either long or short.

Study the paradigms in your grammar to remind yourself of the stem vowels and ending vowels that are usually long. All the others are short. A diphthong is always long.

**Long and Short Syllables.** A syllable is long:

1) if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. Such a syllable is called *long by nature*.

```
a·mæ·mus  laudæ·re  a·mi·cō·rum
```

---

8 Hexameter is a verse with six beats to the line; pentameter with five.
9 Sapphics are described on p. 00.
10 A hendecasyllabic line is one containing eleven syllables.
11 An iamb is a — foot; a trochee is the opposite — .
12 Consult the introductory material on pronunciation for rules about how to divide a word into syllables.
2) if it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants or x (ks). \(^{13}\) Such a syllable is called long by position.

\[
\text{a-gun·tur se-cun·da pu·el·la Les·bi·a}
\]

All other syllables are short.

**Elision.** There is elision or cutting off of a final vowel (or diphthong) before a word beginning with a vowel (or diphthong) or h. Also, final -m is elided along with its preceding vowel before a word beginning with a vowel (or diphthong) or h.

\[
\text{Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atque amemus}
\]

**Meters.** Once you have identified the long and short syllables, you can mark a verse into its units of measure, called feet. The most commonly used feet in Latin poetry are as follows:

- **Iamb (or iambus)**: \( \bigcirc \) —
- **Dactyl**: \( — \bigcirc \bigcirc \)
- **Trochee**: \( \bigcirc — \)
- **Anapest**: \( \bigcirc \bigcirc — \)
- **Spondee**: \( — — \)

The adjectives from these terms are **iambic**, **trochaic**, **dactylic**, **anapestic**, and **spondaic**. The beat (ictus) usually falls on the long syllable, and sometimes differs from the normal prose accent of the word, which is determined by the antepenultimate rule. \(^{14}\) Your reading should be a compromise of beat and accent.

The number of measures or feet in the line usually identifies the meter:

- **Trimeter**: three feet to a line (or six iambic or trochaic feet) \(^{15}\)
- **Tetrameter**: four feet to a line
- **Pentameter**: five feet to a line
- **Hexameter**: six feet to a line

**HENDECASYLLABLES**

As the name implies (\textit{hendeca} means \textit{eleven} in Greek), \textit{hendecasyllable} means a line of eleven syllables repeated until the thought is completed. The poems vary in length. Catullus' famous love poem to Lesbia is in this meter, and each line is marked as follows:

\[
\text{Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atque amemus}
\]

\[
\text{rumoresque senum severiorum}
\]

\[
\text{omnes unius aestimemus assis?}
\]

\[
\text{spondee dactyl trochee trochee trochee}
\]

---

\(^{13}\) A mute (p, b, d, t, k, s) followed by a liquid (l or r) counts as a single consonant and the syllable that contains a short vowel followed by such a combination can be either long or short to suit the meter.

\(^{14}\) Antepenultimate Rule: A word of two syllables is accented on the first syllable (the penult); a word of three or more syllables is accented on the penult \textit{if it is long}, on the antepenult if the penult is short.

\(^{15}\) Iambic and trochaic verses are measured, not by single feet, but by pairs: for example, six iambic feet make a trimeter. This doubling occurs because two longs were needed to make up a full measure.
The poet must surrender much to so limiting a form, but his gains are rewardingly great. Notice that the eleven syllables can be grouped into a pentameter line of feet: spondee, dactyl, and three trochees following. Notice also that there is elision between words according to the rules for elision. It is a good idea to mark elisions before trying to read a line. Ignore punctuation within a line when eliding. Practice reading each line with its elisions until you understand how elisions work. The Romans probably sounded each vowel ever so slightly to fit the meter, but it is easier to drop the final syllable of the first word and fuse the two words together as one, pronouncing only the initial vowel of the second word. Elisions occur in all meters, but you can practice them first in Catullus' love poem:

```
-----1 —uu| — u |- u |-------
soles occidere et redire possunt:

nobilis cum semel occidit brevis lux
nox est perpetua una dormienda.
da mi basia mille, deinde centum,
den mille altera, dein secunda centum,
deinde usque alter mille, deinde centum,
dein, cum milia multa fecerimus,
conturbabimus illa, ne sciamus,
aut ne quis malus invidere possit,
cum tantum sciat esse basiorum.
```

**SAPPHICS**

The meter Sapphics, so named because it copies the meter of Sappho, the seventh-century Greek poetess of the island of Lesbos, is easily learned once you are familiar with hendecasyllables, for the meter consists of a four-verse stanza, the first three lines of which are a variety of hendecasyllables and the last short verse a two-foot dactyl-and-spondee combination.

```
-|----------|--
Ille mi par esse deo videtur,
-|--|--|---
ille, si fas est, superare divos,
--|--|--|--|---
qui sedens adversus identidem te
    --|--|--|--
spectat et audit

dulce ridentem, misero quod omnes
eripit sensus mihi; nam simul te,
Lesbia, aspexi, nihil est super mi
vocis in ore,
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artus
flamma demanat, sonitu suopte
tintinant aures, gemina teguntur
lumina nocte.
```

This poem is a translation of an original poem by Sappho in Greek.
HEXAMETER

The Latin hexameter consists of six feet arranged as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{— } & \\
\end{array}
\]

The first four feet may be either dactyls or spondees, the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl, and the sixth a spondee (like the last two-foot line in the Sapphic stanza). The roll of the hexameter is beautifully used by Lucretius in his De Rerum Natura and by Virgil in the Aeneid. Ovid too uses the hexameter for the Metamorphoses. Below are the opening lines of the Aeneid. Once you have mastered them you will be able to read any hexameter line with ease. If the line does not seem to scan easily, mark the last two feet first and then the first four will be easier to read.

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{— } & \\
\end{array}
\]

Arma virumque cano, Troiae qui primus ab oris
Italiam fato || profugus || Lavinaque venit
litora multum ille et terris || iactatus et alto
vi superum, || saevae memorem || Iunonis ob iram,
multa quoque et bello || passus, dum conderet urbem
ingeretque deos || Latio; genus unde Latinum
Albanique patres || atque altae moenia Romae.

Somewhere along the hexameter line the poet paused for a breath, usually at the end of a word within a foot where the meaning required a cutting of the verse into parts. This pause is called the caesura (from caedo, cut) and it may occur within the second, third, or fourth foot, but most often in the third. It is marked by a double line written vertically (||). Note the pauses as marked in these opening lines of the Aeneid.

Ending a word at the end of a foot, rather than within a foot, is called diaeresis (dividing). Thus, diaeresis can be considered the opposite of caesura. It, too, is a pause in the line, and is marked like a sharp in music (#).

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{— } & \\
\end{array}
\]

ELEGIAC COUPLET

Elegiac couplet contains two alternating lines, one hexameter followed by one pentameter consisting of two sections, each with two and a half feet.

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{— } & \text{u} & \text{u} & | & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \text{— } & \\
\end{array}
\]

Forsitan et quaeras, cur sit locus ille Lupercal
quaee diem tali nomine causa notet.
Silvia Vestalis caelestia semina partu
ediderat, patruo || regna tenente suo.
SCAZONS (LIMPING IAMBS)

The true iambic trimeter (six iambic feet) was the favorite verse of the playwrights; their lines are all variations on this type of rhythm, for it most nearly duplicated human speech. The scazon added the variety of reversing the last foot of the trimeter to act as a brake in the rush of the line, as in this poem of Catullus:

```
| U — | U — | U — | U — | U — |
Miser Catulle, desinas ineptire
et quid vides perisse perditum ducas
fulsere quondam candidi tibi soles,
cum ventitabas quo puella ducebat
amata nobis quantum amabitur nulla.
```

Enjoy reading the meters; you will be able to do so only after you are so familiar with the beat that you stop marking the long and short syllables and start responding with your body to the rhythm, as you would to a samba or a rumba. After all, they are Latin (American) rhythms.
Gaudeamus Igitur  
(FOR MIXED VOICES)

Anonymous, c. 1710  
Old German Melody

1. Gaudamus igitur, juvenes dum sumus;  
2. Ubisunt, qui antea nos In mundo fure?  
3. Vitanastra brevis est, Brevi finetur;  
4. Vivatacaemia, Vivant professores,

Post iucundam juventem, Post molestam senectutem  
Vadite ad superos, Transite ad inferos,  
Venitmors velociter, Rapit nos atrociter;  
Vivatmembrum quodlibet, Vivantmembra quaelibet;

Nos habebit humus, Nos habebit humus.  
Ubiam fure, Ubiam fure.  
Nemini parceetur, Nemini parceetur.  
Semper sint in flore, Semper sint in flore.

5 Vivat et respublica  
Et qui illum regit,  
Vivatnosta civitas,  
Maecenatum caritas,  
Quae nos hic protegit.

6 Vivant omnes virgines,  
Faciles, formosae,  
Vivantet mulieres,  
Tenerae, amabiles.  
Bonae, laboriosae.

7 Pereat tristitia,  
Pereant osores,  
Pereat diabolus  
Quivis antis moins,  
Atque irrisores.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Parts of speech are indicated in the following manner: only adverbs, conjunctions, and interjections are specifically identified; nouns are listed in the nominative case, followed by the genitive singular ending and the gender; verbs appear with their principal parts, with first conjugation forms summarized by the symbol (1); adjectives appear in masculine, feminine, and neuter singular forms, as do pronouns; and prepositions are followed by the case they govern (+acc., or +abl.).

a, interj., ah
i (ab) + abl. from, away from
aedi, ire, -i or -ivi, -itum, go away, depart
abici, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, throw away, aside
absum, -esse, iful, ifuturus, be absent, be away
ac. See atque
accendi, -ere, -cendi, -censum, kindle, set on fire
accidit, -ere, -cidi, fall down, happen
accipit, -ere, -cepis, -ceptum, receive
accidit (1), accuse
acer, -cris, -cre, bitter, hard, harsh, rough
Acestes, -ae, m., Acestes, king in Sicily
Achaemenidés, Achaemenides, a Greek companion of Ulysses
Achilles, -ae, m., Achates, faithful friend of Aeneas
Achilles, -is, m., Achilles, Greek hero
Achivus, -a, -um, Greek
acetus, -et, f., keenness, edge, a line of battle, the battle itself
Acis, -idis, m., Acis, the lover of Galatea
acolatum, -i, n., aconite, a poisonous herb
aculitum, -a, -um, sharp
ad + acc. with verbs of movement, to, toward; with verbs of rest, near
add, -ere, -didi, ditum, place upon, join, attach, add
addicisc, ere, dixi, - ductum, bring to, draw to, lead to, induce
ade, adv., to this point, thus far
ade, -ire, -i or -ivi, -itum, go near, approach
adfero, -erre, attuli, allitum, bring, carry in (alternate spelling: affero)
adict, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, affect, afflict, weaken
adfigo, -ere, -fixi, -fixum + dat., pin to, affix, fasten to
adforet = adfuturum esset

adgredi, -redi, -gressus sum, go to, approach
adhibe, adv., up to this time, to this point in time or space, here
aditus, -ins, m., approach, access
adiuvo (1), -iüvi, -iütum, help, bring help to, aid
admittó, -ere, -misit, missum, send to, admit
adôr (1), worship
adquiró, -ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, acquire
adspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, look upon
adsum, -esse, adful, adfuturum, be present, be at hand, be here
adultera, -ae, f., adulteress
adulterium, -ii, n., adultery
adulterius, -a, -um, adulterous
advena, -ae, c., stranger
adventó (1), arrive, approach
adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable
advert, -ere, -eti, -utum, turn to
Acacidés, -ae, m., the son (really grandson) of Aecacus, i.e., Achilles
adcedes, -is, f., building, shrine
adscisc (1), build, construct
aeger, -gra, -grum, weak, sick
Aegidés, -ei, m., Aegidés, King of Athens
Aegides, -ae, m., son of Aegus
Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt
Aeneas, -ae, m., Aeneas
aeneus, -a, -um, brass, bronze, brazen
aesus, -i, m., brass pot
Aeolus, -I, m., Aeolus, king of the winds
aequor, -oris, n., flat or level surface of land or sea; poetically, the sea itself (from aequus, -a, -um)
aequus, -a, -um, equal, level, fair, just
aéris, -arius, m., the air, the atmosphere; aëra, Greek accusative
Aeson, -onis, m., Aeson, father of Jason
Aesonides, the son of Aeson, Jason

455
aeûtis, aeûtis, f., age, life, time
aeternô, aeternum, adv., eternally, forever
aether, -eris, m., the upper air, heaven
Aethiopía, -ae, f., Ethiopia
Aethra, -ae, f., Aethra, princess of Troezen
Aetna, -ae, f., Mt. Aetna in Sicily
aë̄r or aë̄r, -eris, m., the upper air, heaven
Aetnô, -is, adv., eternally, forever
Aethiopia, -ae, f., Ethiopia
Aethra, -ae, f., Aethra, princess of Troezen
Aetna, -ae, f., Mt. Aetna in Sicily
affert, -ferre, attuli, allitum, carry to, bring to, bring in
affirmô (1), affirm
Aìfrica, -ae, f., Africa
Agamemnôn, -onis, m., Agamemnon, King of Mycenae; Agamemnôna is Greek acc.
ager, -gri, m., held
agere, -gri, m., held
agmen, -inis, n., battle line, column of troops, army ranks, band of men
agnus, -i, m., lamb
agô, agere, -gri, -gitis, actum, do, drive, spend time, live, discuss
agricola, -ae, m., farmer
ait; pi. aiunt, say, tell, assert; defective verb used mainly in the present and imperfect indicative
Aìax, -cís, m., Ajax, Greek warrior, son of Telamon
àla, -ae, f., wing
AÈbanus, -a, -um, Alban—referring to an ancient city in Italy
albès, ëre, be white; albescô, ëre, become white
alisus, -a, -um, white
Alcyone, -ês, f., Alcyone, wife of Ceyx, daughter of Aeolus
aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some
aliquis, aliquid, someone, somebody, something
aliter, adv., otherwise; nôn aliter, not otherwise, just like
alisus, -a, -iud, other, another; allî ... allî, some ... others
aë̄l, -ere, -ui, ultum, feed, nourish
alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second
alûs, -a, -um, high, tall, lofty, deep, old; altî, on the deep sea
alvus, -I, f., belly
amenô, amantis, c., lover
Amàzon, -onis, f., Amazon, woman warrior
ambiguus, -a, -um, moving from side to side, uncertain, doubtful
ambô, -ae, -ô, both, two together
ambrosia, -ae, f., ambrosia
ambulô (1), walk
amîca, -ae, f., friend
amicitia, -ae, f., friendship
amicus, -i, m., friend
amîttô, -ere, -mit, -missum, lose
amo (1), love, like
amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant
amor, amôris, m., love
amplector, -i, -plexus sum, embrace
amplexô, -eri, -rtum, embrace
amplexus, -i, m., embrace
amplius, adv., more
an, conj., whether, or, perhaps
Anchôsês, -ae, m., Anchises, father of Aeneas
ancilla, -ae, f., servant girl
angulus, -i, m., corner
anima, -ae, f., spirit, soul
animal, -ilis, n., animal
animus, -i, m., mind, soul; pl., courage
annus, -i, m., year; annuus, -a, -um, of a year’s duration
anser, -eris, m., goose
ante + acc., before, in front of
antea, adv., beforehand
antequam, conj., before, sooner than
antiquus, -a, -um, ancient, olden
Antênôr, -oris, m., Antenor, a Trojan
Antiphâtês, -ae, m., Antiphates, king of the Laestrygonians
antrum, -i, n., cave
înulus, -i, m., ring
aperius, -ere, -ui, apertum, open
apertus, -a, -um, open
Apollineus, -a, -um, pertaining to Apollo
Apollo, Apollinis, m., Apollo, god of music and the arts
Apollônus, -i, m., Apollonius, a writer from Rhodes
appâreô, -ere, -ui, -itum, appear, become visible
appellâtus, -a, -um, called
appellô (1), call, name
appropriquô (1) + dat., approach, draw near to
aptô (1) + dat., fit to, adapt to
aptus, -a, -um, suitable, fitting
spud + acc., among
daqua, -ae, f., water
ëra, -ae, f., altar
Arabia, -ae, f., Arabia
Archne, -ês, f., Arachne
arîne, -ae, f., spider
arîtrum, -i, n., plough
arbitor, -iri, -ritum, sum, think, judge
arbó, oris, f., tree
Ardacia, ae, f., Aragadia, land in the center of the Peloponnesus
Arcas, -adis, m., Arcas, son of Jupiter and Callisto
arcus, -üs, m., bow
ardēs, -dentis, eager, hot, burning
ardēs, -ère, -arsi, arsum, burn, be on fire
ardor, ōris, m., burning heat, eagerness
arduus, -a, -urn, hard, difficult
area, ere, be dry, thirsty
argentēus, -a, -urn, made of silver, silver
argentum, -i, n., silver
Argonautae, -ārum, m. pl., sailors on the Argo, Argonauts
ārīmentum, -i, n., proof, subject matter, tale
Argus, -i, m., Argus, the builder of the Argo
Ariadne, -ae, f., Ariadne, daughter of Minos
ārīdis, -a, -um, dry, barren
ārīs, āritis, m., a ram
arma, ōrum, n., weapons, arms
ārmaētus, -a, -um, armed
Armenia, -ae, f., Armenia, a country in Asia Minor
ārō (1), plough, cultivate
ars, artis, f., art, skill
artifex, -icis, m., artist, painter
artus, -ūs, m., joints, limbs
ārsum, -i, n., ploughed land, a field
ārxi, ōris, f., building; pl. ōres, citadel
ascendēs, -ere, ascendi, ascendēsum, ascend
Asia, -ae, f., Asia
Asia Minor, Asia Minor
āstūtus, -a, -um, clever, cunning; astūtē, cunningly
Astyanax, -actis, m., Astyanax, son of Hector
at, conj., introd. contrary idea, but, yet, but meanwhile
ātavus, -i, m., ancestor
ātēr, ātrum, black, dark, gloomy, sad
Atēnēae, -ārum, f., Athens, a city in Attica
Atēnēaeus, -a, -um, Athenian
Atēnēeus, -i, m., an Athenian
ātque (ac), conj. and, and also
ātrium, -i, n., the atrium, main hall or room of the house
Atrīdēs, m., the son(s) of Atreus; Agamemnon (and Menelaus), pl., Atrīdae
āttingō, -ère, -tigi, -tactum, touch, come in contact with
āuctor, -ōris, m., author, causer, originator, doer
āudācia, -ae, f., boldness, daring
āudax, ēcis, bold, daring
āudeō, -ère, ausus sum, semi-deponent, dare
āudīō, -ivre, -ivī, -itum, hear
aufero, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum, carry away, carry off
āugeō, -ère, auxī, auctum, increase
āugur, -uris, c., the augur or fortune teller or prophet
aula, -ae, f., hall
Aulis, -īdis, f., Aulis
aura, -ae, f., breeze, air
āurātus, -a, -um, golden
āurus, -a, -um, golden
āurīs, -is, f., ear
Aurōra, -ae, f., Aurora, goddess of the dawn
aurum, -i, n., gold
Ausonius, -a, -um, subst. Ausonii, the Ausonians, an old name for the Italians
auspicium, -i, n., guidance, divination
aut, conj., or; aut... aut, either... or
autem, post, pos. but, however
auxilium, -ii, n., aid
āvehō, -ere, -vexi, vectum, carry off
Avernus, -a, -um, Avernus
Avernus, -i, m., Avernus, the cave of the Underworld
avertō, -ère, -verti, -versum, turn away
avidus, -a, -um, eager
avis, avis, f., bird
avis, -i, m., grandfather
axis, -is, m., axle, chariot, car, wagon; axis of the earth, the heavens
Bacchā, -ae, f., (also Bacchantes), a Bacchante, a follower of Bacchus
Bacchus, -i, m., Bacchus
bālītus, -ūs, m., bleating
barba, -ae, f., beard
barbarus, -a, -um, rough, rude, foreign
barbarus, -i, m., a barbarian
Baucis, -īdis, f., Baucis, wife of Philemon
beātus, -a, -um, happy
bellum, -i, n., war
bene, adv. well
benignus, -a, -um + dat. kind
bibō, -ère, bibi, bibitum, drink
bibīdus, -a, -um, split in two
biformis, -e, two-formed
bimarīs, -e, lying on two seas
bīrēmis, -e, having two banks of oars
bis, adv., twice
bonus, -a, -um, good
bōs, bovis, c., ox, cow
brāchium, -ii, n., arm
brevi, -e, short
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain

Cadmus, -i, m., Cadmus, founder of Thebes
cadē, -ere, cecidi, cāsum, fall, fall down
cāducifer, -i, m., Caducifer, carrier of caduceus,

Mercury
caecus, -a, -urn, blind
caelum, -i, n., sky
calceus, calcei, m., shoe
callidus, -a, -um, clever, skillful, cunning
callītis, -e, -urn, bright, shining, famous
callus, -a, -um, chance, accident
camina, -ae, f., map, piece of paper; charta geographica, map
Cāmēus, -a, -um, blind
Caelum, -i, m., field
Camīs, canis, c., dog; gen. pi. canum
Canis, -a, -um, a dog
Canis, -a, -um, a dog
Capitālis, -e, relating to Ceres
Cāpitis, capitis, n., head
Cāpiti, -i, pl., head
Carna, -ae, f., keel, ship, vessel
Carmen, -inis, n., song, chant, incantation, charm
Cāro, carnis, f., flesh, meat
Caspō, -ere, -psi, -ptum, pick, pluck
Carta, -ae, f., piece of paper; carta geographica, map; also charta
Cārthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city on the coast of North Africa
Cārus, -a, -um + dat., dear (to)
Castra, -ae, f., small house, cottage, hut
Cassandra, -ae, f., Cassandra, daughter of Priam and Hecuba
Cassis, -idis, f., helmet of metal
Castus, -a, -um, pure, innocent
Casus, īs, m., chance, accident
Cauda, -ae, f., tail
Causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, case (in law court);
causā, for the sake of; causam accīsō, accuse, plead a case
Celer, -bris, -bre, celebrated, crowded, filled, famous
Cēlō, -ae, f., wax
Cērberus, -i, m., Cerberus, three-headed dog of the Underworld
Cērēlis, -e, relating to Ceres
Cērēs, Cereris, f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture
Certamen, -inis, n., contest
certē, adv., surely
certō, (1), contend, fight, struggle
certus, -a, -um, trustworthy, certain, sure
cērō, -ae, f., a hind, a deer
cērus, -i, m., stag
Cētērus, -a, -um, other, the rest (of)
Ceyx, Ceycis, m., Ceyx, king of Thrace
Charta, -ae, f., map, piece of paper; charta
Cīborīs, -ae, f., whirlpool
Chimmys, -ydīs, f., garment of wool, worn by soldiers
cibus, -i, m., food
cingō, -ere, cingō, cinctum, surround, encircle
Cinēs, -eri, m., ashes
Circē, -ae, f., Circe
Circēaeus, -a, -um, Circean
Circum + acc., around, about
circumēmus, -ere, -ī or īvi, -ītum, go around, encircle
circumspectō (1), look about, cast a glance
circumvīlō (1), envelop
Clādēs, -is, f., damage, disaster, ruin
Clāmō (1), shout, exclaim, cry
Clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, clamor, noise
Clārus, -a, -um, bright, shining, famous
Classis, classis, f., fleet of ships
Claudō, -ere, clausi, -sum, close, shut, shut up
Clausus, -a, -um, closed
Clāva, -ae, f., club
Coeō, -ire, -ī or īvi, -ītum, come together, go together, assemble
Coepi, coepisse, in perfect system only, began
Cōgitātiō, -inis, f., thinking, reasoning, idea
Cognātus, -a, -um, related
Cognoscō, -ere, -novī, -ītum, recognize, see, get to know, become acquainted with, learn; in perfect tenses, know
Cōgō, -ere, coeggī, coactum, force, compel
Cohibē, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, confine
Colchis, -idis, f., Colchis on the Black Sea
Collectus, -a, -um, gathered, collected
collum, -i, n., neck
colō, -ere, colui, cultum, till, honor, cultivate
color, -ōris, m., color
coma, -ae, f., generally pl., hair
comes, comitis, m., companion
comitō (1), accompany
comitor, -āri, -ātus sum, accompany
committō, -ere, -misi, -missum, commit (as a
crime), undertake, entrust, unite, begin
commodum, -i, n., opportunity, advantage, suitable
time
commoveō, -ere, -mövi, mōtum, shake, move,
disturb
commūnis, -e, shared, common, general, public; hence, the state (here, the Greek
state)
comparō (1), compare
compellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive, compel
complexus, -ūs, m., embrace
concilium, -ii, n., union, coming together
concīnō, -ere, -ui, sound in chorus
concipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, conceive, hold
together
concitō (1), stir up, rouse, excite
concordia, -ae, f., agreement, union
concrescō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, grow; become stiff, harden; collect, increase
concūstus, -a, -urn, thickened, hardened, congealed
concurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum + dat., meet, come up against, rush to battle
concussō, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, shake violently, agitate
condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, build, establish; hide, bury (a weapon in someone)
conferō, -ferre, -tuli, -collitum, bring together, collect, take oneself to
confiteor, -bris, -fessus sum, confess
congelō (1), freeze, stiffen, congeal
coniciō, -ere, -iSci, -iectum, throw together, unite, collect, draw together
coniugium, -ii, n., marriage
coniungō, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum, join together
coniungō, -iugis, c., husband, wife, spouse
conjurō (1), swear an oath together
conlapsus, -i, n., collapse, sink down
conligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, gather, collect
conlor, -āri, -ātus sum, try, attempt
conqueror, -queri, -questus sum, complain of, bewail, lament
consensō (1), keep, preserve
considō, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, settle
consilium, ii, n., plan, advice
consistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, agree, stay, halt, stop
consōlor, -āri, -ātus sum, comfort, encourage, console
conspectō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, catch sight of
constitū, -ere, -i, -stitum, decide, determine, appoint, establish
constrō, -ere, -struxi, -structum, heap together, construct, build
consuecō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, accustom
consuetus, -a, -um, accustomed to
consultō (1), consult, ask advice of
consuō, -suere, -suī, -sūtum, sew, mend
contentō, -ere, -psi, -temptum, value little, disdain
contemptor, -ōris, m., a despiser
contendō, -ere, -di, -tum, struggle, vie
contentus, -a, -um, satisfied, happy, contented, held together
contineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum, keep together, hold together
contingō, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, touch
contrā + acc., against
contrarius, -a, -um + dat., against
conveniō, -ere, -vēni, -ventum, meet, come together, convene, assemble
convertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, turn around, alter, change, turn
convivium, -ii, n., banquet, party
convocō (1), call together, summon
copia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance, means, opportunity, pl., troops
Corinth, -i, f., Corinth, a city at the isthmus
Corinthiacus, -a, -um, Corinthian
cornu, -ūs, n., horn
corōna, -ae, f., crown
corōnō (1), crown
corpus, corporis, n., body
corripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, snatch, seize violently
Corsica, -ae, f., Corsica
cras, adv., tomorrow
crātēr, -ēris, m., bowl
crātera, -ae, f., cup
crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum + dat., believe, trust
crēdō (1), make, create, produce
crescō, -ere, crēvi, crētum, grow large, increase, arise
Crēta, -ae, f., Crete
crimen, criminis, n., sin, crime, fault, accusation
digitus, -I, m., finger
dignor, -ī, -ītus sum, consider worthy
dignus, -a, -um + abl. or gen., worthy
dilectō, -ēbas, f., choosing love, loving
diligē, -ere, -lexī, -lectum, love, esteem
dimittō, -ere, -miscī, -missum, send forth, send away, disband, give up, abandon
Dionysus, -I, m., Dionysus, god of wine
dirigō, -rigere, -revi, -rectum, direct
diūripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, snatch apart, tear away
dimısı, -a, -um, cruel, horrible, frightful
dūctō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, depart, go away
domus, -is, or -i, n., house; domīs Elysiis, Elysian abodes
dōnōsc, conj., until
dōnō (1) give, present
dōnōsum, -i, n., gift
dormiō, -ēre, -ii or -iīl, -itum, sleep
draco, -ōnis, m., dragon, serpent
dubtō (1), doubt, hesitate
dīcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum, lead
dulcis, -e, sweet
dum, conj., while; dum licet, while they may, lit., while it is permitted
dummodo, conj., provided that
duo, duae, duo, two
duodecim, indecl., twelve
duodevigintī, indecl., eighteen
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rough, harsh
dux, ducis, m., leader
Évander, -drī, m., Evander, an Arcadian king
ěvelliō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, pluck out
ěvenīō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, turn out, come about
ěvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, eject, overturn
ěvino, -ire, -vōnī, -ventum, turn out, come about
ěvītō (1), avoid
ěvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volvūtum, roll out
exanimis, -e or examinus, -a, -um, lifeless, dead;
dead with fear, terrified
excīdō, -ere, -cidi, -cidentem, fall out, slip out, escape,
forget, lose, fail to obtain
excubiae, -ārūm, /., sentinels, guards
excurrō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum, run out, project
exemplī gratiā, for example
exexīō, -Ire, -Ivi, -iitum, go out, depart
ex(s)equiae, -ārum, /., funeral procession
exercitor, -ōri, -hortitus sum, urge, exhort
exigō, -ere, -āgī, -actum, direct, demand,
complete, examine
existimō(l), think
exitus, -ūs, m., end, exit, finish, outcome, conclusion
exspentus, -a, -um, furthest, last
fabricō (1), make, depict, design, form, forge
fibula, -ae, f., pin
fēdēls, -e + dat., faithful (to)
faes, -el, f., pledge, trust, confidence, faith, belief
fidus, -a, -um, true, faithful
figō, -ere, fixī, fictum, pierce, transfix, fasten
figūra, -ae, f., form, shape
 firma, -ae, f., daughter; dat. and abl. pl., filius
flīs, -el, m., son
filum, -i, n., string
fingō, -ere, fixī, fictum, shape, form, invent
finīō, -īvi, -ītum, finish, limit, end
finis, finis, m. & f., end, boundary, territory
fōs, fōris, -um, fixed
flamen, -īnis, n., blowing, blast
flamma, -ae, f., flame
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, influence, bend, change
flēs, -ēre, flēvi, flētum, weep
flexus, -ūs, m., bending, turning
flōrens, -entis, blooming, flourishing
flōres, -ēre, -ul, bloom, flower
flōs, flōris, m., flower, plant
fluidus, -a, -um, flowing, dripping
flumen, flūmlinis, n., river
flōs, -ere, flūxi, flūsum, flow
foedus, -a, -um, abhorrent, abominable
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>foedus, -eris, n.</td>
<td>covenant, agreement, treaty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for, -ārī, ātus sum</td>
<td>speak, say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forēt = funērum esset, would be</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrma, -ae, f.</td>
<td>shape, appearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrmābōlis, -e</td>
<td>terrible, fearful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrmosus, -a, -um</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōror, adv.</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrte, adv.</td>
<td>by chance; abl. of fōr, luck, chance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrtis, -e</td>
<td>strong, brave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrtūtō, -inis, f.</td>
<td>strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fōrtūnā, -ae, f.</td>
<td>fortune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fossa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>ditch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragilis, -e</td>
<td>fragile, weak, easily broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fregnāmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>broken piece, fragment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fregō, -ere, fregāl, fractum</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frētēr, -tris, m.</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frēna, -orum, n. pl.</td>
<td>reins, bridle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frigidus, -a, -um</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frigus, -oris, n.</td>
<td>cold, coldness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frondēs, -āre, frondeīa, -e, -a</td>
<td>grow leafy, put out leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frons, frondis, f.</td>
<td>leaf, foliage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frons, -ntis, f.</td>
<td>forehead, brow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frustrā, adv.</td>
<td>in vain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frūtum, -i, m.</td>
<td>fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugā, -ae, f.</td>
<td>flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugītum, fée</td>
<td>flee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugītō (1)</td>
<td>flee, shun, avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĩugō (1)</td>
<td>put to flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūgēō, -ere, fūbāl, flash, shine, glow, gleam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>thunderbolt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēmō (1)</td>
<td>smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmus, -i, m.</td>
<td>smoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundō (1)</td>
<td>found, establish, confirm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundus, -i, m., bottom, ground</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fungōr, -i, functus sum + abl.</td>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmus, eris, n.</td>
<td>funeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furībundus, -ae, -um</td>
<td>raging, inspired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ērē, -ere, rage, rave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>madness, insanity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gālea, -ae, f.</td>
<td>helmet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Gaul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaudēō, -ere, ēgīvīsīs sum, semi-deponent verb</td>
<td>rejoice, enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēmebundus, -ae, -um</td>
<td>groaning, sighing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēminus, -a, -um</td>
<td>twin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēmitus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>groan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gemēba, -ae, f.</td>
<td>gem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gemō, -ere, -ui, -itum</td>
<td>groan, mourn, weep, lament, bemoan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēna, -ae/f.</td>
<td>cheek, eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genetrix, -trīcis, f.</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>parent, father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gens, gentis, f.</td>
<td>family, nation, people, tribe, clan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genus, -eris, n.</td>
<td>race, kind, family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>germāna, -ae, f.</td>
<td>sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, do, make, experience, wear, carry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gestō (1)</td>
<td>carry, wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gestus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>gesture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gigantēs, -ae, -um</td>
<td>giant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gigās, -antis, m.</td>
<td>giant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gladius, -il, m.</td>
<td>sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glans, -ndis, f.</td>
<td>chestnut, acorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glomerō (1)</td>
<td>wind into a ball</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaussus, -ī, f.</td>
<td>Knossos, the city; the palace of Minos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graecia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Greece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grāius, -ae, -um, Greek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grāius, -il, m.</td>
<td>a Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātus, -a, um + dat., pleasing (to)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravēs, -e, heavy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravō (1), load, burden, weigh down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guttur, -uris, n.</td>
<td>throat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habēō, -ère, habuī, habitum, have, hold, consider</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habēor, -ōrī, habitus sum, be regarded, be considered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>habitō (1), live, dwell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haereō, -ère, haēsī, haēsum</td>
<td>cling to, hang on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hara, -ae, f.</td>
<td>pig sty, pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harēna, -ae, f.</td>
<td>sand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harpyīae, -ārum, f.</td>
<td>Harpies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haste, -ae, f.</td>
<td>spear, javelin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haud, adv.</td>
<td>not, not at all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haurīō, -i, hausiō, haustum, drink, swallow, absorb, draw up</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haustus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>a drinking, a draught, inhaling (of air), a handful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrus, -brī, m.</td>
<td>Hebrus, a river in Thrace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hecatē, -ēs, f.</td>
<td>Hecate, a goddess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hector, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>Hector, son of Priam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hecuba, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Hecuba, queen of Troy, wife of Priam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helen, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Helen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herba, -ae, f.</td>
<td>grass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herbōsus, -a, -um</td>
<td>grassy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hercules, -īs, m.</td>
<td>Hercules, the hero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
herē, adv., yesterday
hērōs, -ōs, m., hero
Hesperia, -ae, f., Spain
heu, interj., alas!
hic, haec, hoc, this; this man, woman, thing, the latter
hic, adv., here
hinc, adv., here, on this side, hence
Hippolyta, -ae, f., Hippolyta, queen of Amazons
Hippolytus, -i, m., Hippolytus
hīris, -Ms, m., hero
Hisplnia, -ae, f., Spain
historia, -ae, f., story
histe, -ere, open, gape, open the mouth
Hippolytus, -I, m., Hippolytus
hīscī, -ere, open, gape, open the mouth
hiscī, -ere, -ul, open, gape, open the mouth
Hisplnia, -ae, f., Spain
hora, -ae, f., hour
horrēndus, -a, -um, horrible, terrible
hori(l), honor
hīra, -ae, f., hour
hōrrentus, -a, -um, horrible, terrible
horrēscī, -ere, -ul, grow, rough; also horreō, -ēre, -ul, stand on end, bristle, be rough;
shiver, shudder with fright
 Hortor, -āri, Hortōtus sum, urge, incite
hospe(s), -itis, c., a guest, host
hospitalitās, -ae, f., hospitality
hostis, hostis, c., foe, enemy
hostis, hostis, c., foe, enemy
ho, adv., here, on this side, hence
hūc modē, adv., in this way, in this manner, thus
hodie, adv., today
hōra, -ae, f., hour
horsē, -ere, iicl, iactum, throw, hurl, cast
hīscī, -ere, iicl, iactum, throw, hurl, cast
hīculīm, -i, n., javelin
iam, adv., now, already
ilia, -ae, f., door
iliō, -onis, m., Jason
ilī, adv., there
Ilcus, -i, m., Icarus, son of Daedalus
ictus, -us, m., blow
idcirco, adv., for that reason
idem, eadem, idem, same
idōneus, -a, -um, + dat., suitable, fitting
igitur, adv., therefore
ignītus, -a, -um + gen., unaware, unknowing; + dat., unknown to
ignis, ignis, m., fire
ignoscī, -ere, -ōvi, -ōtum + dat., forgive, grant pardon to, overlook
ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown, strange
Iliacus, -a, -um, Trojan
Illiōn, Troy
illa, illa, illud, that; that man, woman, thing, the former
illum, adv., on that side, thence, from that place; illōc, to that place
imāgō, -inis, f., image, reflection
immensus, -a, -um, immense
immolās (1), slay, sacrifice
immortalis, -e, immortal
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoving
immumurārō (1), whisper into, murmur
imperā + dat. (1), command
impius, -a, -um, wicked, impious
impleo, -ēre, -plēvi, plētum, fill, fill up
implēō (1), enwrap, enfold
implātō (1), implore
imprimis, adv., especially, first of all
in, -a, -um, lowest, bottom of
in + acc., into, toward, against; + abl., in, on
incandescēs, -ere, -candui, begin to whiten, esp. with heat or fire
incendium, -ill, n., fire, conflagration
incendēs, -ere, -cendi, -cessum, inflame
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain
inclīpiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, begin
inclāmō (1), shout out
inclinaō (1), bend, incline
inclībō, -ere, -clīsi, -clīsum, shut up, block, enclose, obstruct
incella, -ae, c., inhabitant
incumbēs, -ere, -cubulum, -cubitum, fall down
incursus, -us, m., attack, influx
inde, adv., from there, thence
indestrīctus, -a, -um, untouched, unhurt
indignātus, -a, -um, offended, indignant
induō, -ere, dul-, -ditum, put on, wear
inempētus, -a, -um, unbought
inexspectātus, -a, -um, unexpected, unwaited
infelix, -is, unhappy, unfortunate, miserable, wretched, ill-fated
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -litum, carry in, place on, bear in
infestō (1), infest, attack
ingenium, -īl, n., talent, skill, natural ability
ingenīs, -entis, huge, mighty
ingrātus, -a, -um, unpleasant, unpleasing
inanōs, -a, -um, dishonored, disgraceful
inimicus, -a, -um, enemy, unfriendly, hostile
iniquus, -a, -um, uneven, unfair
inflēxīa, -ae, f., injury, hurt
injustus, -a, -um, unjust, unfair
in- or inimīnis, -e, huge
in- or immemor, -oris, unmindful, forgetful
in- or immitterus, -a, -um, undeserving of
punishment, innocent
in or immittis, -e, harsh, cruel, stern
innocens, -entis, innocent, harmless
innuba, -ae, f., unmarried woman, unwed
woman, without a husband
in- or impellit, -pelle, -pull, -pulsum, strike
upon, urge, impel
inquit, he or she says or said; inquiunt, they
say, reply, respond, answer, affirm
inquiruttus, -a, -um, never resting, restless,
troubled
insima, -ae, /, unmarried woman, unwed
woman, without a husband
in- or impellit, -pelle, -pull, -pulsum, strike
upon, urge, impel
inquit, he or she says or said; inquiunt, they
say, reply, respond, answer, affirm
insequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, follow after,
follow on
insidior (1), lay snares for
insididsus, -a, -urn, treacherous, deceitful
insigne, -nis, n., badge, insignia, mark, token
inspicius, -ere, -spectum, examine, look
into
instar + gen., equivalent to, corresponding to,
like
insto, -stare, -stifi + dat., stand in, follow
closely, press on, pursue
insula, -ae, f., island
insuper, adv., from above
inter + acc., between, among
intererea, adv., meanwhile
interit, -ire, -il or -ivl, -itum, die, perish
interficius, -ere, -feci, -fectum, kill
interim, adv., meanwhile
interitus, -a, -um, untired
intr, adv., inside; also + acc., within
intr (1), enter
inundus (1), overflow, pour into
invenit, -vre, -ventum, find, discover
invidiusus, -a, -um, hate-producing, causing
envy
invidus, -a, -um, envious, unfavorable
invito (1), invite
invitus, -a, -um, unwilling
invisus, -a, -um, impassable
invocus (1), invoke
love, by Jupiter
Iphigenla, -ae, f., Iphigenia, daughter of
Agamemnon
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self
ira, -ae, f., wrath
iracundus, -a, -um, angry
irascor, -i, -iratus sum, be angry
iratus, -a, -um, angry
is, ea, id, he, she, it; el, eae, ea, they
iste, -a, -ud, spoken in a derogatory manner,
that fellow of yours
Isthmus, -i, m., the Isthmus of Corinth
its, adv., so, thus
Italia, -ae, f., Italy
Italus, -a, -um, Italicus, -a, -um, Italian
itque, adv., and so, therefore
iter, itineris, n., road, path, way, journey,
search
iterum, adv., again
Ithaca, -ae, f., the island of Ithaca
iturus, -a, -um, fut. act. part. of e0
iube, -ere, iussi, iussum, order, command, bid
iudex, -icis, m., judge
iudicium, -ii, n., judgment
iugulus (1), to cut the throat of, butcher
iugulum, -i, n., throat
iugum, -i, n., yoke
iungo, -ere, illius, iunctum, join
Iuno, -onis, f., Juno, queen of the gods
Iuppiter, Jovis, m., Jupiter, Jove, king of
the gods
Iur (1), swear, take an oath
iis, illis, n., law, justice, right
iussum, -i, n., command, order
justus, -a, -um, just, true, fair
juvenis, -e, young, youthful
juvenis, iuvenis, c., youth, maiden, young
person; gen. pl., iuvenum
iumenta, -ae, f., age of youth, youth
iumentus, -itis, f., youth
iuentus, -itis, f., youth
iuvus, -are, iivi, iitum, help, aid
luxti + acc., beside, next to; adv., close by
Kalendae, -arum, f., the Kalends, first day of
the month
labr (1), work
labyrinthus, -i, m., labyrinth
lac, lactis, n., milk
lacerus (1), tear to pieces, maim
lacertus, -i, m., upper arm, shoulder
lacrima, -ae, f., tear
lacrimus (1), cry, weep
Laestrygon, -onis, m., Laestrygonians, a race
of giants
laetitia, -ae, f., joy
laetus, -a, -um, joyful, happy
laeva, -ae, f., the left hand, the left
laevum, -i, adv., on the left
Latin–English Vocabulary 467

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mitrēnum, -if, n.,</td>
<td>marriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mauritīnia, -ae, f.,</td>
<td>Mauritania, a country in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximē, adv., very much</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, very great; superl. of magnus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mē, me, acc. and abl. sing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mēđēa, -ae, f., Medea, princess of Colchis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicīmen, -inis, n., drug, medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicīna, -ae, f., medicine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mediterrānēus, -a, -um, Mediterranean, lands and the Sea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medius, -a, -um, middle (of)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Megarōs, -s, m., Megareus, son of Neptune; father of Hippomenes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meleagrus, -I, m., Meleager, King of Calydon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melior, -ius, adv., better</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melius quam, adv., better than</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membrīna, -ae, f., membrane, skin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membrum, -I, n., leg (of a table), limb of the body, part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memini, -isse + gen., remember, be mindful of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memor, -oris + gen., mindful, remembering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memoria, -ae, f., memory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meminī (1), recount, tell a tale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menelāus, -I, m., Menelaus, brother of Agamemnon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mens, mentis, f., mind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mensa, -ae, f., table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercurius, -0, m., Mercury</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mergē, -ere, mersi, mersum, sink, overwhelm, submerge, immerse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mesopotamia, -ae, f., Mesopotamia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mēta, -ae, f., goal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metō, -ere, ui, -itum, fear, be afraid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metus, -Ius, m., fear, apprehension</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meum est, is mine, belongs to me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meus, -a, -um, my</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micē, -ēre, -ul, glitter, twinkle, flicker, vibrate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīhi, to me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miles, militis, m., soldier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mille; milli, millium; thousand, indeclinable in singular; abbrev. M in Roman numerals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minime, adv., least, not at all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minus, -a, -um, smallest, least, very little; superl. of parvus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minister, -tri, m., attendant, official</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, minus, smaller; comparative of parvus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, -āri, -ātus sum, threaten, menace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minōs, -ōs, m., Minos, king of Crete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minōtaurus, -I, m., the Minotaur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miraculum, -I, n., miracle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miror, -āri, -ātus sum, admire, wonder at</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirus, -a, -um, wonderful, amazing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miscē, -ēre, miscui, mixtum, mix, mingle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unhappy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserēbilis, -e, wretched, pitiful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misericordia, -ae, f., pity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mitis, -e, mild, soft, kind, gentle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittē, -ere, mīsī, mīsum, send</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modo, adv., just now, only now</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modus, -I, m., manner, style; quōmodo, in what manner, how</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moenia, moenum, n. pl., walls, ramparts, fortification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mollē, -īre, -ī or -Iū, -ītum, soften, make soft, make pliant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mollis, -e, soft</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōly, -yos, n., moly, the name of a plant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneō, -ēre, monul, monitus, warn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōns, montis, -ium, m., mountain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōnstrō (1), point out, show</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōnstrum, -I, n., monster</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monumentum, -I, n., memorial, reminder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mora, -ae, f., delay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mordeo, -ēre, momordi, morsum, bite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morīrī = morī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morior, -eris, n., mortus sum, die</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moror, -iri, -itus sum, delay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morpheus, el, m., Morpheus, god of sleep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mors, mortis, f., death</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortālis, -e, mortal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortuus, -a, -um, dead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mos, mōris, m., custom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mōtus, -a, -um, moved, stirred, influenced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moveō, -ēre, movi, mōtum, move</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mox, adv., soon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulceō, -ēre, mūlsi, mulsum, stroke, touch lightly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulciber, -eris or erī, m., Mulciber, another name for Vulcan, god of the forge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiplex, -icis, multiple, with many turnings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much, pl., many</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mundus, -I, m., the universe, the world</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūnimen, -inis, n., fortification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūnis, -eris, n., gift</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murmur, -uris, n., murmur, roaring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūrmos (1), mūrmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>múrus, -i, m., wall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsa, -ae, f., Muse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mūsica, -ae, f., music</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mútē (1), change</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nam, conj., for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narcissus, -I, m., Narcissus, a youth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrē (1), tell, relate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāscor, -i, nātus sum</td>
<td>be born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāsus, -i, m.</td>
<td>nose; Nāso, cognomen of Ovid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātūlis, -ae, f.</td>
<td>of or relating to birth, natal; diēs nātūlis, birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātio, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>birth; race, tribe, people, nation; sort, kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātō (1),</td>
<td>swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātūra, -ae, f.</td>
<td>nature, property, quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nātus, -i, m.</td>
<td>son, offspring; nātē dei, voc., goddess born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naufragium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>shipwreck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nauta, -ae, m.</td>
<td>sailor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgātiō, -ōnis, f.</td>
<td>sailing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>sailing; vessel, ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīgō (1),</td>
<td>sail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāvīs, -is, f.</td>
<td>ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naxos, -i, m.</td>
<td>Naxos, the island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neptūnus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Neptune, god of the sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neptūnis, -i, m.</td>
<td>Neptunian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nērēis, -idis, f.</td>
<td>a Nereid, daughter of Nereus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nērēs, -i, m.</td>
<td>Nereus, a sea god</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesciō, -ire, -ivi, -itum</td>
<td>not know, be ignorant of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesciō quis, nesciō quid</td>
<td>I do not know who or what; somebody or something; nesciō quis adversa, some stranger or other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nescius, -a, -um</td>
<td>not knowing, ignorant, unaware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neu, néve, adv.</td>
<td>or not, and not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nex, necis, f.</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nīdus, -i, m.</td>
<td>nest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niger, nigra, nigrum</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nihil (nīl)</td>
<td>nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nimius, -a, -um</td>
<td>too much, very much, excessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nīnus, -i, m.</td>
<td>Ninus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niobē, -ēs, f.</td>
<td>Niobe, queen of Thebes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nisi, conj.</td>
<td>unless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitōr, nītī, nīsus sum</td>
<td>strive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noceō, -ēre, ēi + dat., harm, do harm to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlitē + inf., do not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlī, nōlle, nōlī, refuse, be unwilling, wish not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōmisō (1),</td>
<td>name, call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs, adv.</td>
<td>not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōnāe, -ārum, f.</td>
<td>the Nones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnāgitā, indecl.</td>
<td>ninety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn aliter, adv.</td>
<td>not otherwise, i.e. just as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn dum, adv.</td>
<td>not yet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn iam, adv.</td>
<td>no longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnnullus, -a, -um</td>
<td>some, several</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn procul, adv.</td>
<td>nearby (not a distance away)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnāsum . . . sed etiam</td>
<td>not only . . . but also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōs, us (acc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōscō, -ere, nōvi</td>
<td>come to know, know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noster, -tra, -trum, our</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōstī, contraction for nōvisti, perf. of cognoscō,</td>
<td>an inceptive verb, learn or begin to know; perf. know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>well-known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notus, -i, m.</td>
<td>south wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novem, indecl.</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>novus, -a, -um</td>
<td>new, strange, novel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōx, noctīs, f.</td>
<td>night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūbēs, nūbis, f.</td>
<td>cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūdus, -a, -um</td>
<td>naked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūllus, -a, -um</td>
<td>no one, none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num, interr. adv.</td>
<td>asks a question implying a “no” reply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numerō (1),</td>
<td>count, recount, relate, number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūmen, -inis, n.</td>
<td>divine power, divine will, divinity, god</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numerus, -i, m.</td>
<td>number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numidia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Numidia, country in Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numquam, adv.</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nunc, adv.</td>
<td>now, at present, at this time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntiō (1), announce, report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūntius, -i, m.</td>
<td>messenger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūper, adv.</td>
<td>recently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nupta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>bride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nympha, -ae, f.</td>
<td>nymph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ō, interj., oh
ob + acc., on account of
obambulō (1), walk up and down, stumble over
obiciō, -ere, -isci, -iectum + dat., cast before oblique, adv., to the side
obliviscor, -i, oblivus sum + gen., forget, be forgetful of
obramō, -ere, -ruit, -rūtum, cover over, bury
obscirius, -a, -urn, dark
obstō, -stare, -steti, -stitum, block, stand against, oppose, obstruct
obtineō, -i, -ire, -iui, -tūrum, obtain, get
obtensus, -a, -um, dull
obvius, -a, -um, to meet, in the way, against, exposed to
occido, -ere, occisum, kill, strike down, beat down
occīsus, -is, m., meeting, coming together
occō, indecl., eight
octō, indecl., eighty
oculus, -i, m., eye
ōdī, odiosa, defective, hate
odium, -i, n., hatred, hating
odor, -obris, m., odor, smell
Oedipus, -podis or -i, m., Oedipus, king
offereō, -ferre, obtesti, obtestum, offer, present
officium, -ii, n., ceremonial action, duties, job, business, position
ōlim, adv., once upon a time, formerly, here after, at a future time
ōlva, -ae, f., olive
ōmen, -inis, n., omen, portent
omnis, -e, every, each, all (pl.)
onus, oneris, n., burden, weight
onustus, -a, -um, laden
opertet, -ere, -uīt, it is necessary, one must, it is proper
oppidum, -i, n., town
opprobrium, -i, n., scandal, disgrace
oppīgnō (1), fight against, attack
ops, opis, -is, aid; pl., abundance, wealth, power
optō (1), ask, hope for, wish for, desire
opus, operis, n., work; opus est mihi, I have to, there is need to, it is necessary
ōra, -ae, f., rim, boundary; ōra maritima, shore, seashore
ōrculum, -i, n., oracle
ōrator, -ōris, m., orator, speaker
orbātor, -ōris, m., one who deprives another of children or parents
orbis, -is, m., ring, circle, wheel, the world
Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the Infernal Regions, the Underworld
ōrdō, -inis, m., order, rank, class
ōrēns, -entis, m., rising sun, East
ōrior, -īri, ortus sum, rise, arise, spring from
ōrō (1), furnish, decorate, equip
ōrō (1), beg for, ask for, pray to, implore
Orphēus, -ī, m., Orpheus, the bard
ortus, -is, m., source, origin
ōs, ōris, n., face, mouth; any opening, such as the harbor of a river or the opening of a cave
ōtium, -ī, n., rest, leisure
ōs, ossis, n., bone
ōsculum, -i, n., kiss
ostendō, -ere, -tendi, -tērum, show, point out
Ovidius, -ii, m., Ovid
ovis, ovīs, -is, m., sheep
ōvum, -i, n., egg
pācō (1), make peaceful
pactus, -a, -um, perf. pass. part. of pangō, fastened, fixed, driven in, agreed on
paene, adv., almost
paeninsula, -ae, f., peninsula
pāgina, -ae, f., page
palla, -ae, f., long, wide garment
palladium, -ii, n., palladium, image of Pallas Athena
palleō, -ēre, -uī, become pale
pallor, -ōris, m., pallor
palma, -ae, f., hand, palm of the hand
paluster, -tris, -tre, marshy
Pān, Pānos, m., Pan, god of flocks, woods, and shepherds
pangō, -ere, panxi, pactum, agree, settle, promise
pānis, pānis, m., bread
papyrus, -i, f., papyrus
parco, -ere, pepercī, parsūm + dat., spare
parēns, -entis, c., parent
pāreō, -ere, -uī + dat., obey
parrēs, -iēris, m., wall
parīō, -ere, peperi, partum, give birth to
Paris, Paridis, m., Paris, son of King Priam
pariter, adv., in like manner
Poeni, -drum, m. pl., Phoenicians
Polites, -ae, m., Polites, a common Greek name
Polyphemus, -i, m., Polyphemus, the Cyclops
pōsē, -ere, posui, positum, put, place, put aside
pōsē, pontis, -m., bridge
pontus, -i, m., the deep sea
populus, -i, m., people
porcus, -I, m., pig, pi., swine
porta, -ae, /, gate, door
porta (1), carry, bōgr, wear
portus, -Os, m., harbor
posē, -ere, posui, positum, put, place, put aside
possē, -dre, -sēdi, -sessum, have, hold, own, possess
possum, posse, potui, posse, can, be able (to do something)
post + acc., after, behind
posteit, adv., afterwards, after that
postquam, conj., after, as soon as, when
posterus, a, -um, next
postis, postis, m., doorpost
postulō (1), demand, request
potēns, -entis, powerful
potestia, -ae, /, power
pōtiō, -iūs, a, drink
potior, -Iri, potitus sum + abl., get possession of
praecīlīrūs, -a, -um, famous, outstanding, illustrious
praecorrumpō, -ere, -ruptum, bribe, persuade
praedā, -ae, /, booty
praemium, -ii, n., reward
praenoscō, -ere, get to know beforehand
praeūpō, -ere, -posui, -positum, place before, prefer
praesēns, -entis, being present
praesētiō, -are, -stīti, -stītum + dat., stand before, surpass
praetemptō (1), feel, try, test beforehand
praeter + acc., except, beyond
praetereit, in addition, further, besides, moreover
praetereit, iūs, -ii or -iūs, -itum, go past, pass by
premō, -ere, presi, pressum, press, push, pursue
precōr, -īri, precātus sum, pray, beg
prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum, catch, seize, grasp;
also presūsō (1), clutch at
pretētōsus, -a, -um, costly
pretium, -ii, n., price
prex, precēs, f., prayer
Priamidēs, -ae, m., son of Priam
Priamus, -i, m., King Priam of Troy
primō, primum, adv., at first, first in a series, in the first place
primum, -a, -um, first
prīnceps, -cipis, m., chief, leader, prince
prōior, prīus, adv., before, earlier
prīiusquām, adv., before
pro + abl., in front of, in place of, in behalf of, for
proāvitūs, -a, -um, ancestral
probō (1), approve
prōcreō (1), beget offspring
Procūstēs, -ae, m., Procrustes, a robber
procūs, adv., at a distance; mōn procūs, nearby
prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, bend forward
procūs, -i, m., suitor
prōdū, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum, hand over
profēntum, -ii, n., battle
profānus, -a, -um, profane, evil, wicked
prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -litum, bring forth, produce, offer, advance
proficiō, -scere, -feci, -fectum, help, advance, gain, assist, be of use
proficiōr, -isci, -fectus sum, set out
profugus, -a, -um, flying, fleeing
profusus, -a, -um, immoderate, diffuse
probēs, -ēre, -ui, -itum, prevent, hinder, restrain
probēs, -is, f., offspring, son
prōmissum, -i, n., promise
prōmitūs, -ere, -misi, -missum, promise
prōnus, -a, -um, bent over, stooping
prōpe + acc., near
properō (1), hurry, hasten
propior, adv., closer
prōpūsō, -ere, -posui, -positum, propose
propter + acc., because of, on account of
prosequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, accompany, follow
Proserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres
prūtantūs, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, stretch out
prōtēnus, adv., immediately, straightaway, directly
pubēicus, -a, -um, public
puōdē, pudĕre, puduit, it shames
puōr, -ōris, m., shame
puella, -ae, f., girl
puer, -erī, m., boy
puerilis, -e, boyish
pugna, -ae, f., battle
quadrāgentīs, indecl., forty
quaeō, -ere, -slīvī, -situm, seek, search for
quaestō, -ālis, -f., searching, question
quam, adv., or conj., how, as, than; quam (with superl.) as . . . as possible
quam ob rem, adv., why, for what reason, on what account
quamquam, indecl., although
quartus, -a, -um, fourth
quasi, adv., as if, just as
quattuor, indecl., four
quattuordecim, indecl., fourteen
-que, enclitic conj. attached to the second of two correlative words, and
querellas, ae, f., complaint
queror, querī, questus sum, complain
qua, quae, quod, rel. pron. or interrog. adj., who, which, what, what kind of
quid, quae, quod, indecl., anything
quidem, postpositive adv., certainly, in fact, indeed
quidēs, -ītēs, f., rest, quiet
quīnī (quīl + anī), conj., rather, why not; but indeed; nay; from doing; without being
quīndecim, indecl., fifteen
quīnquāntītās, indecl., fifty
quinque, indecl., five
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth
quis, quid, who, what
quis, quid, anyone, anything
quisquām, quaequām, quidquām, anybody, anyone, anything
quisquae, quaequae, quidquae, each, every, everyone, everything
quīs, quā, quod, who, what
quid, quae, quod, anyone, anything
quam, adv., in what place
quod, conj., because; the fact that
quo modo, adv., how
quondam, adv., formerly, once, at times
quoniam, conj., since, because, whereas
quoque, adv., also
quot, indecl., how many
quot . . . tot, as many . . . so many
quotiēns, adv., how often, how many times
rādix, -īcis, f., root, radish
rāmus, -ī, m., branch
rāpidus, -a, -um, swift, impetuous
rapina, -ae, f., carrying off
rāpō, -ere, rapui, raptum, carry off
ratiō, rātis, f., reason, order, account
ratis, ratis, f., ship, raft
raucus, -a, -um, hoarse
reddō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go back, draw back, recede, retreat
rectō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go back, draw back, recede, retreat
redēndō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go back, draw back, recede, retreat
redīctō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go back, draw back, recede, retreat
redīctus, -a, -um, received
recessus, -ūs, m., departure, retreat
recipīō, -ere, -cepit, -ceptum, receive, regain, draw back, recover
recognoscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -nītum, recognize, recall
referō, -erre, reffulī, relatum, carry back, take back, recount, tell again
reflō, -ere, -fluī, -fluxum, flow back
rēgilla, -e, royal
rēgia, -ae, f., palace
rēgina, -ae, f., queen
regio, -onis, f., region, land
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēgius, -a, -um</td>
<td>royal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgnō (1)</td>
<td>rule, rule over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgnum, -i, n.</td>
<td>kingdom, rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relevō (1)</td>
<td>lighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relictus, -a, -um</td>
<td>See relinquō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religō (1)</td>
<td>moor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum</td>
<td>leave, leave behind, leave unchanged, abandon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remittō, -ere, -missī, -missum</td>
<td>send back, let go back, drive away, relax, set free, loosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remorō, -āri, -ātus sum</td>
<td>delay, hinder, detain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removēs, ĕre, -mōvī, -mōtum</td>
<td>remove, take away, put off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remus, -i, m.</td>
<td>oar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>renovō (1)</td>
<td>renew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reor, ēre, ratus sum</td>
<td>think, suppose, judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repellō, -ere, -repullī, -pulsum</td>
<td>drive back, away, push away, spurn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repōnō, ĕre, -posuí, -positum</td>
<td>replace, put back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reportō (1)</td>
<td>carry back, report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reposcō, ĕre</td>
<td>demand back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repugnō (1)</td>
<td>fight back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requīēs, -ētīs, f., rest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requīō, -ere, -quīsī or -quīsvī, -quisītum, āsk</td>
<td>look for, inquire after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>res, resī, m.</td>
<td>thing, object, situation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resecō, ĕre, -secuī, -sectum</td>
<td>cut off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resonō (1)</td>
<td>resound, sound again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum</td>
<td>look back, look behind; see again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respondeō, ĕre, -spōndī, -sum</td>
<td>reply, answer back, respond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resī, -stare, -stītī</td>
<td>remain, survive, be left over, stand still, stay behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resupinus, -a, -um</td>
<td>bent backwards, on one's back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retegō, ĕre, -texī, -tectum</td>
<td>uncover, lay bare, reveal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum</td>
<td>retain, hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retrahō, -ere, -trāxi, tractum</td>
<td>drag back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retrō, adv., backwards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revelō, -ere, -veĭlī, -vulsum</td>
<td>tear up, pull, pluck back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revenīō, -ère, -vēni, -ventum</td>
<td>come back again, return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revertor (revertō)</td>
<td>-i, -versus sum, return, come back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reviviscō, -ere, -vīxi</td>
<td>revive, come to life again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revocō (1)</td>
<td>call back, revoke, call again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revomō, ĕre, -vomūi</td>
<td>vomit forth again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēx, rēgis, m.</td>
<td>king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhodanus, -i, m.</td>
<td>the Rhone, a river in Gaul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rictus, -ūs, m.</td>
<td>open mouth, jaws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rideō, -ēre, -risī, risum</td>
<td>laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rimus, -ae, f.</td>
<td>a cleft, crack, fissure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ripa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōbor, -ōris, n.</td>
<td>oak, hardwood, strength, power, force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō (1)</td>
<td>beg for, ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōma, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rostrum, -i, n.</td>
<td>beak (of a bird or ship); rostra, -brum, speakers' platform in the Forum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rota, -ae, f.</td>
<td>wheel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubeō, ĕre</td>
<td>to be red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubescō, -ere, rubūi</td>
<td>grow red, become red, reddened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruina, -ae, f.</td>
<td>disaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūmor, -ōris, m.</td>
<td>rumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptum</td>
<td>break, shatter, split</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruō, -ere, -ui, -utum</td>
<td>fall with violence, rush, go to ruin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūrisus, adv.</td>
<td>backwards, in turn, on the other hand, again</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūs, rūris, n.</td>
<td>the country; rūri, loc., in the country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saccus, i, m.</td>
<td>sack, bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacer, -cra, -crum</td>
<td>sacred, holy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacerdōs, -dōtis, c.</td>
<td>priest (ess)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrificium, -ii, n.</td>
<td>sacrifice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrificō (1)</td>
<td>sacrifice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, adv.</td>
<td>often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saeta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>bristle, stiff hair; saetiger, -gera, -gerum, bristly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saevio, -ēre, -ii, -itum, rage, be furious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saevus, -a, -um</td>
<td>savage, fierce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sagax, -ācis</td>
<td>wily, shrewd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sagitta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>arrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saltō (1)</td>
<td>dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salus, -ētis, f.</td>
<td>safety, health, soundness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salūtō (1)</td>
<td>greet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salveō, -ēre, -ui, -itum</td>
<td>rage, be furious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salvēte, greetings, hello</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salvus, -a, -um</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanctus, -a, -um</td>
<td>holy, sacred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanguineus, -a, -um</td>
<td>bloody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanguis, -inis, m.</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānītās, -ātīs, f.</td>
<td>sanity, health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sānō (1)</td>
<td>heal, cure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapiēns, -entīs</td>
<td>wise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapientia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapīō, -ere, līvi or -ii, think, discern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sardinia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Sardinia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarmatia, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Sarmatia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
satis, adv., enough
Saturnus, -i, m., Saturn; Saturnius, -a, -um, referring to Saturn
Satyrus, -I, m., satyr
Saxum, -i, n., rock, stone
Sceleratus, -a, -um, wicked
Scellestem, -a, -um, wicked
Scelus, -eris, n., wicked deed
Sceptrum, -i, n., sceptre
Sceola, ae, f., school, class
Scilicet, adv., obviously, of course, certainly naturally
Scindo, -ere, scidi, scissum, cut, tear
Scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write
Scenius, -a, -um, referring to Saturn
Scita, ae, f., shield
Scylla, -ae, Scylla, a rock and a six-headed monster, originally a maiden
Se, -e, se, sedit, sesseum, sit
Sed, sedem, -inis, n., seed
Semper, adv., always
Senectus, -i, n., old age
Senex, senis, c., old man, old woman; gen. pl., senum
Senilis, -e, old, aged
Sensa, -arum, n., sense, perceptions, ideas
Sensus, -iis, m., sensation; perception, sense
Sententia, -ae, f., sentence, thought
Sentio, -ire, sensi, sessorum, feel, perceive, know, sense
Septem, indecl., seven
Septendecim, indecl., seventeen
Septimus, -a, -um, second, following, favorable
Sescustum, -a, -um, secure
Sed, sedimus, indecl., sixteen
Sedem, -e, sedi, sessum, sit
Sedi, sedis, f., seat, bench, chair; gen. pl., sedum or sedom
Semen, -inis, n., seed
Semper, adv., always
Senectus, -i, n., old age
Senex, senis, c., old man, old woman; gen. pl., senum
Senilis, -e, old, aged
Sensa, -arum, n., sense, perceptions, ideas
Sensus, -iis, m., sensation; perception, sense
Sententia, -ae, f., sentence, thought
Sentio, -ire, sensi, sessorum, feel, perceive, know, sense
Septem, indecl., seven
Septendecim, indecl., seventeen
Septimus, -a, -um, seventh
Septemginta, -eris, seventv
Sepulcrum, -i, n., grave
Sepultus, -a, -um, buried
Sequitur, sequi, secutus sum, follow
Sermos, -onis, m., words, talk, speech
Serpes, -entis, c., snake, serpent
Servatrix, -icis, f., savior (fem.)
Servio, -ire, -ivi, -itum + dat., be a slave to, serve
Servo (1), save
Servus, -i, m., slave, servant
Seu, -ere, coni, or; seu ... seu, whether ... or
Sexagensima, indecl., sixty
Sexus, -i, n., sex
Sic, adv., thus, so, in this manner, in this way
Sicilia, ae, f., Sicily
Sidus, -eris, n., constellation
Significo (1), notify, indicate, signify
Signum, -i, n., signal, sign; a figure, image, statue
Silva, -ae, forest
Sine + abl., without
Sинтер, -tra, -trum, left (hand), adverse
Sinistra, ae, f., the left hand
Sinus, -iis, m., fold, bend, breast, bosom
Sirens, -um, f., Sirens
Sittio, -ire, -ivi, be thirsty
Socer, -eri, m., father-in-law
Socius, -ii, m., companion, ally
Sola, -ae, f., sun
Solaemen, -inis, n., comfort, consolation
Solea, -ae, f., shoe, sandal
Solea, -ere, solitus sum, to be accustomed
Solium, -i, n., throne
Sollemnis, -e, solemn, festive, religious
Sollicitus, -a, -um, anxious
Solor, -iri, -stitum, comfort, console
Solum, adv., only, alone, merely
Soli, -olis, m., sun
Solamen, -inis, n., comfort, consolation
Solar, -olis, m., sun
Soleo, -ere, solvi, solitum, set sail, untie, release, free
Somnus, -i, m., sleep; in somno, asleep
Sonio, -are, -i, -itum, sound, make a sound
Sonus, -i, m., sound, noise
Soror, -or, m., sister
Sors, sortis, f., luck, chance, lot, lottery; sorte, by lot, by chance
Spargio, -ere, sparsi, sparsum, scatter, sprinkle
Sparsus, -a, -um, scattered
Spatiarius, -icis, f., a large field
spatium, -i, n., space, room, extent
spectator, -tris, m., spectator
specchio (1), look at, watch, see
spelunca, -ae, f., cave, cavern
spēro (1), hope
spēs, spei, f., hope
spirō (1), breathe
spoliūm, -i, n., booty, plunder, spoils
spōlum, -ae, f., foam, froth
stagnum, -i, n., pool
statis, adv., immediately
stata, -ae, f., statue
statūs, -e, -ātum, establish
stella, -ae, /., star
stē, stāre, steti, statum, stand
strepitus, -ōs, m., noise
strictus, -a, -urum, drawn (as a sword)
studēs, -ere, -ui + dat., be eager, strive after, study
stultus, -a, -urn, foolish
stupēs, -ere, -ui, be amazed
Styx, Stygis, /., Styx, a river, in the Underworld
subdeō, -ere, suāsi, suōsum + dat., persuade, be sweet to
sub + acc. or abl., under, beneath
subducēs, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, beach, draw up on shore
subeō, -ire, -ii or -ivi, itum, go under, pass under
subiiciō, -ere, -iici, -iectum, attach, append, put in place of, substitute
subtēs, adv., suddenly
submergo (summergō), -ere, -mersi, -mersum, submerge, plunge into, immerse
subveniō, -ere, -vendi, -ventum, come to the aid of, help, relieve
submittōs, -ere, -misi, -missum, let down, send under, lower
succedēs, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, enter, follow, ascend, come after, mount
succendo, -ere, -cedi, -cessum, set on fire from below, kindle, inflame
succingō, -ere, -cinxi, -cinctum, gird around
succurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, come to the aid
sēcūs, -i, m., juice
sē, sibi, sē, himself, herself, itself, themselves
sulfur, -uris, n., sulphur
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist
summus, -a, -um, top of, highest
simpō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum, take
super + acc. or + abl., over, above
superbia, -ae, f., pride
superbus, -a, -um, proud
superi, -ōrum, m. pl., the gods
superō (1), win, beat, conquer, overcome, surpass
supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrum, be left, remain
superus, -a, -um, highest, upper
supplex, -icis, suppliant
suppliūcum, -i, n., supplication
suppōnā, -ere, -posui, -posītum, put, put in place of
supīrēmus, -a, -um, highest, uppermost, last
surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctum, rise, arise, get up
sīs, suis, c., sow, swine, pig
suscipio, -ere, -cippi, -ceptum, undertake, offer
suspīro (1), breathe
sustineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum, bear, hold up
suus, -a, -um, her, his, its; their (own)
Syriae, -ae, f., Syria
Syriac, -ae, f., Syrinx
tabula, -ae, f., table, board, blackboard
tābum, -i, n., corrupt matter, plague, pestilence
taceō, -ere, -ui, -itum, be silent
taedium, -ii, n., disgust, boredom, weariness
tālis, -e, such (a)
Tālus, -i, m., Talux, the bronze man of Crete
tam, adv., so
tamen, adv., nevertheless, however, yet, still
tamquam, adv., as much as, just as, as if
tandem, adv., at length, at last, finally
tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactum, touch
tantus, -a, -um, so great, such great
tardus, -a, -um, late, slow; nōn tardius, not more slowly, just as fast as
taurus, -i, m., bull
tē, you, acc. of tū
tectum, -i, n., covered building, house, home
tegmen, -inis, n., cover, protection
tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum, cover, cover over; hide, conceal
tēs, -ae, f., loom
Telamōn, -ōnis, m., Telamon, son of Aeacus
Telamōn idēs, -ae, m., son of Telamon, i.e., Ajax
Telamōnius, -i, m., the son of Telamon (Ajax); grandson of Aeacus
tellūs, -ūris, f., earth, land
tēlum, -i, n., weapon, spear, javelin
temerārius, -a, -um, rash
temperō (1), rule, control, set bounds, govern
tempestās, -ātis, f., storm, tempest

tempestivus, -a, -um, timely, ripe, ready, mature, seasonable
templum, -i, n., temple
tempō (1), try, attempt
temps, -oris, n., time; tempore ab hoc, from this time on
tenō, -ere, tentēdi, tentum (tensum), stretch out, extend
tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., darkness, dark shadows
tened, -ōre, -ui, -turn, hold, keep, grasp
ter, adv., three times, thrice
tergum, -i, n., back; terga dare, give his back (in flight), turn his back, run away
terquēnque, indecl., three times five, fifteen
terra, -ae, f., land
terreō, -ōre, -ui, -itum, terrify, frighten
terribilis, -e, terrible
territus, -a, -um, terrified
tertius, -a, -um, third
testis, -is, c., witness
testor, -iri, -itus sum, bear witness, give evidence
Teucrī, -ōrum, m., Trojans
textile, -is, n., weaving
texō, -ere, texui, textum, weave

thalamus, -i, m., marriage couch, marriage, bedroom

Thēbae, -ārum, Thbe, a city of Boeotia
Thēbānum, -a, -um, Thban
Thesēus, -ei, m., Theseus, son of Aegeus
Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly, a region in northern Greece

Thisbē, -ēs, f., Thisbe
Threicīus, -a, -um, or Thrācīus, Thracian

tibi, to you
tībra, -ae, f., shin bone, flute


tigris, -idis, c., a tiger
timeō, -ère, -ui, fear, be afraid of

timidus, -a, -um, timid, fearful
timor, -ōris, m., fear
tingō, -ère, -xi, -ctum, dye, wet
tollō, -ère, sustuli, sublātum, raise, lift up, take along
tonitrus, -ūs, m., thunder


tormentum, -i, n., catapult, rack, windlass
torus, -i, m., muscle, knot; mattress, couch, bed
tot, indecl., so many
tōtus, -a, -um, whole

trabs (trabes), -is, f., timber, tree; ship, vessel

trōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, hand over, betray, hand down; trāditur, trādunt, it is handed down, the story goes

trābō, -ere, -trāxi, tractum, drag

trans + acc., across

transēō, -ère, -ii, -itum, go across, pass over, cross

transferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry across, transfer

transfodiō, -ere, -fōdi, -foassum, stab, transfix

transformō (1), transform, change

transmittō, -ere, -misī, -missum, transmit, send through, pass through, send over

transportō (1), carry across

tredecim, indecl., thirteen

tremō or tremescō, -ere, tremble, quake, shiver
tremulus, -a, -um, trembling
trepidō (1), be agitated, waver confusedly, quiver
trepidus, -a, -um, trembling

tēs, tria, three

tribútum, -i, n., tribute

triformis, -e, three-formed

triginti, indecl., thirty

trīrēmis, -e, having three banks of oars

tristis, -e, sad

Trōas, -ādos, f., Trojan woman

Trōes, -um, m. pl., Trojans

Trezenēs, -ēnīs, f., Troezen, a city of Argolis

Trōia, -ae, f., Troy, a city in Asia Minor

Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan

Trōs, Trōis, m., a Trojan

truncus, -i, m., trunk (of a tree)
tū, tui, tibi, tē, tē, you

tueor (tuor), -ēri, tūtus sum, aid, protect
tum, adv., then


tumulus, -i, m., mound, grave
turba, -ae, f., crowd
turbō (1), stir, disturb
turrīs, is, f., tower
turtur, -urīs, m., turtle

tūs, tūris, n., incense

tūtō, adv., safely, in safety

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

tuus, -a, -um, your (sing.)

tympanum, -i, n., tambourine, drum

tyrannus, -īs, m., tyrant, king
Tyrius, -a, -um, Tyrian
Tyrinìa, -ae, f., Etruria
Tyrus, -I, f., Tyre

ubi, adv., where, in what place; when, as soon as
Ulysses, -ls, m., Ulysses
Asia, -a, -um, any; nec illa, not any
ultimus, -a, -um, last
avtor, òris, m., avenger
umbra, -ae, f., shade, spirit, shadow
umbrosus, -a, -um, shady
umerus, -I, m., shoulder
numquam, adv., ever
ôstì, together, in one
unda, -ae, f., wave, water, river
unde, adv., whence, from where
undecim, indecl., eleven
undecimviginti, twenty-nine
undeviginti, nineteen
Ωuniversum, -I, n., the whole world
Ωnum, -a, -um, one; unus, genitive of Ωnum, of one man
urba, -bis, f., city
uram, -ae, f., urn, pot, vessel
urna, -ae, f., bear
Urba Major, Big Bear (Callisto), Big Dipper
Urba Minor, Little Bear (Arcas), Little Dipper
usquam, adv., ever
usa, adv., as far as; usque adeò, all the way to that point
usus, -îs, m., use, usefulness, service
ut, conj. + ind., when, as; + subjv. in purpose and result clauses, in order that, to, so that
uterque, utraque, utramque, each of two;
uterque, adv., on both sides
uterus, -I, m., uterus, womb
 útiliter, adv., usefully, for the common good
utinam, adv., would that ...!
ütor, öitl, öius sum + abl., use
uterique, adv., on each side, on both sides
uxor, öiris, f., wife
vadum, -I, n., shallows, bottom of the sea
vallus, -a, -um, strong
valva, -ae, f., usually pl., door, a folding door
vâinus, -a, -um, silly, idle, vain
varius, -a, -um, different, varied, various
vastus (1), destroy, lay waste
vates, -is, c., bard, singer, poet, seer
vebi, -ere, vesi, vectum, carry, convey
vel, conj., or; vel ... vel, either ... or
vâlinas, -îs, n., robe, garment, clothing, veil
vallus, -öris, n., fleece, wool
vâlum, -I, n., sail
velut (velutî), adv., just as, even as
vâlator, öiris, m., hunter
vâlutrix, -ricis, f., huntress
vâlensum, -I, n., poison
veneror, öirî, -itus sum, respect, revere, honor, worship
vena, -ae, f., favor, pardon
veniò, ire, vâñ, vectum, come
dvena, -I, m., wind
Venus, -erîs, f., Venus, goddess of love
verbûm, -I, n., word
vîrî, adv., truly, really, actually
veri, öiri, veritus sum, fear
Vergilius, -îl, m., P. Vergilius Maro, Virgil
verû, -ere, verlî, versum, drag, trail, sweep
vestris (1), twist around, meditate
vultû, -are, vertû, versum, turn, twirl, whirl
vârus, -a, -um, true
vessûr, -I + abl., feed on, eat
vâster, -îrâ, -rum, your (pl.)
vêstigium, -I, n., trace, track, footstep
vestimentum, -I, n., clothes, garment
vestis, -ls, f., clothing, clothes
vetò, -âre, vetû, forbid, prevent
vetus, veteris, old, ancient
via, -ae, f., street, roadway
vibrî (1), vibrate, quiver
victûs, -a, -um + dat., neighboring
victor, öiris, m., victor
victûris, -ae, f., victory
victus, -a, -um, conquered
videô, -ere, vidî, vîsum, see, observe, discern, look at, understand
videor, vidîrî, vîsum sum, seem; vidêtur, it seems
viginti, twenty
vîgor, öiris, m., vigor
vîlùsus, -a, -um, shaggy-haired, hairy
vîlus, -I, m., shaggy hair
vîncô, -ere, vici, vîctum, conquer
vîcûlum, -I, n., band, cord, chain
vîsum, -I, n., wine
vîr, vîrl, m., man, husband
vîrûs, -ae, f., green twig, magic wand
Virgil. See Vergilius
vîrîneus, -a, -um, maidenly, of the maiden
vîrginitàs, -âtli, f., virginity
vîrgô, -inis, f., maiden, young woman
viridis, -e, green
virtus, -tūtīs, f., courage, bravery, virtue
vis, vīs, f., power, force. pl. virēs, strength;
   vis aures, the golden touch
viscus, -eris, n., flesh, internal organs
visitō (1), visit
vīta, -ae, f., life
vītō (1), avoid, escape
vītā, -ae, f., fillet
vīvāx, -ācis, long-lived, lively
vīvēns, -entis, living, alive
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, live, be alive
vīvus, -a, -um, alive
vīx, adv., scarcely, hardly, with difficulty
vōbīs, to you
vōcō (1), call, summon

volō (1), fly
volō, velle, volū, wish, want
volucris, -is, f., bird; gen. pl. volucrum;
   volucrēr, -cre, winged, flying
voluntās, -tūtās, f., will, wish
voluptās, -tūtās, f., pleasure, delight
volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtum, roll
vōrax, -ācis, hungry, gluttonous
vōrō (1), suck down
vōs, nom. and acc. pl., you
vōtum, -i, n., prayer, offering
vox, vōcis, f., voice
vulnērō (1), wound
vulnus, -eris, n., wound
vultus, -ūs, m., expression of the face, the
countenance, face
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

abandon, relinquū, -ere, -līqui, -līctum
able, be, possum, posse, potui
about, de + abl.
accept, accipīō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum
Achaemenides, Achaemenīdēs, -is, m.
Achilles, Achillīs, -is, m.
Aeacus, Aeacus, -i, m.
Aeetēs, Aētēs, -ae, m.
Aegaeus, Aegaeōs, -ei, m.
Aeneas, Aeneas, -ae, m.
Aeson, Aesōn, -onis, m.
Aethra, Aethra, -ae, f.
afraid, be, vereor, verēri, veritus sum
after (prep.), post + acc.
after (conj.), postquam + ind.
again, iterum, rursus
against, contrā + acc.
Agamemnon, Agamemnōn, -onis, m.
age, aētēs, aētītis, f.; iuventus, -Otis, f.
aid, auxilium, -ii, n.
Ajax, Āiax, -ācis, m.
all, omnis, omnia, pl. of omnis, -e, each, every
allow, permittō, -ere, -misi, -missum; sinō, -ere, sīvi, sītum
almost, paene
already, iam
also, quoque
altar, Bāra, -ae, /.
always, semper
Amazon, Amāzon, -onis, f.
and, et
announce, nuntiō (1)
angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, -ālis, n.
answer, respondēō, -ere, -spondī, -sponsum
Antiphates, Antiphαtēs, -ae, m.
Apollo, Apollō, -inis, m.
apple, pōnum, -i, n.
approach, appropinquō (1) + dat.
Arachne, Arachnē, -ēs, f.
Arcadia, Arcadia, -ae, f.
Arcas, Arcas, -adīs, m.
Argonauts, Argonautae, -ārum, m. pl.
Ariadne, Ariadnē, -ae, f.
arm, lacertus, -i, m.: brachium, -il, n.
armed, armātus, -a, -um
arms, arma, -ōrum, n.pl.; tēla, -ōrum, n.pl.
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum
arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.
art, ars, -tis, f.
ash(es), cinis, -eris, n. (usually pl.)
ask (for), orō (1); rogō (1); petō, -ere, -i or -ivi,
-itum; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum
asleep, in somnō
as many . . . so many, quot . . . tot; quam . . .
tam
ass, asellus, -i, m.
Astyanax, Astyanax, -actis, m.
at, ad + acc.
Atalanta, Atalanta, -ae, f.
Athens, Athēnēs, -ārum, f. pl.
attempt, temptō (1)
Attica, Atticā, -ae, f.
avoid, ēvitō (1)
away, be, absūm, abesse, ēfui, ēfutūrum
Bacchus, Bacchus, -i, m.
bad, malus, -a, -um
bard, vātes, -is, m.
battle, pugna, -ae, f.; proelium, -ii, n.
Baucis, Baucis, Baucidiās, f.
be, sum, esse, fui, futūrum
be able (can), possum, posse, potui
be afraid, vereor, verēri, veritus sum
be away, absūm, abesse, ēfui, ēfutūrum
bear (noun), ursa, -ae, /; ursus, -i, m.
bear (verb), ferō, ferre, tuli; ērum
beat (conquer), vincō, -ere, vici, victum; superō
(1)
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
beauty, forma, -ae, f.; pulchritūdōs, -inis, f.
because, quod + ind.; cum + subjv.
because of, ob + acc.; propter + acc.; causā + gen.
become, fīō, fīerī, factus sum
bed, lectus, -i, m.
before, prō + abl.
beg, orō (1); rogō (1); precor, -āri, precātus
sum
behold, ecce
believe, crēdō, -ere, credidi, creditum + dat.
belt, baltēs, -ei, m.; cingulum, -i, n., usually pl.
beneath, sub + abl. or acc.
bend over, sē inclinō (1)
be present, adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrum
best, optimus, -a, -um
betray, traüdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum
better, melior, melius
bid, iubeō, -ère, iussi, iussum; imperō (1) + dat.
bind, retineō, -ère, -ui, -tentum
bind together, coniungō, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum
bite, mordō, -ère, momordi, morsum
blood, crōr, -ōris, m.; sanguis, -inis, m.
bloody, cruentus, -a, -um; sanguineus, -a, -um
body, corpus, -oris, n.
booty, praeda, -ae, /
born, nitus, -a, -um
both . . . and, et . . . et
bough, frōmus, -i, m.
bowl, crōsa, -ae, /
bow, arcus, -us, m.
brass, aes, aeris, n.
brave, fortis, -e
bravery, fortitudo, -inis, f.
breathe, suspirō (1)
breathe out, effüo (1)
bride, nūpta, -ae, f.
bright, clārus, -a, -um
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum
brass, aëris, n.
brave, fortis, -e
bring together, convocō (1)
Cadmus, Cadmus, -i, m.
call, vocō (1)
call together, convocō (1)
Callisto, Callistiō, -ūs, f.
Can, possum, posse, potui
capture, capio, -ere, cēpi, captum
careless, neglectus, -a, -um
carry, portō (1); ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum; gerō, -ere, -essi, gestum
carry off, auferō, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum;
rapiō, -ere, -ui, raptum
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, f.
Cassandra, Cassandra, -ae, f.
cause (verb), facere ut
cave, spēlunca, -ae, f.
chance, by, forte
change, transformō (1); mūtō (1)
chariot, currus, -ūs, m.
charm (verb), capio, -ere, cēpi, captum
charm (noun), carmen, -inis, n.
children, liberi, -ōrum, m., pl.
choose, legō, -ere, lēgi, lectum
Circe, Cirçē, -ae, f.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizen, civis, -is, m.
city, oppidum, -i, n.; urbs, urbis, f.
close, claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum
club, clavā, -ae, f.
Colchis, Colchis, -chidis, f.
color, color, colōris, m.
come, veniō, -ère, vēni, ventum
command, iussum, -i, n.
commit, committō, -ere, -misi, -missum
companion, comes, -itis, c.
complaint, querella, -ae, f.
conceal, tegō, -ere, texi, tectum
condemn, damnō (1)
condition, lex, lēgis, f.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victum
contend, certō (1)
contest, race, certāmen, -inis, n.
Corinth, Corinthus, -i, f.
costly, pretiosus, -a, -um
cottage, casa, -ae, f.
country, rūs, rūris, n.; in the country, rūri
country (fatherland), patria, -ae, f.
courage, animi, -ōrum, m.; virtus, virtūtis, f.
cover, tegō, -ere, texi, tectum
covered, tectus, -a, -um
Crete, Crēta, -ae, f.
crowd, turba, -ae, f.
cumae, Cūmæae, -ārum, f.
cup, poculum, -i, n.
cupid, Cupido, -inis, m.
custodian, custos, -ōdis, c.
cut (up), resecō (1), -ui, -tum
cygnus, Cygnus, -i, m.
Daedalus, Daedalus, -i, m.
danger, periculum, -i, n.
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um
Daphne, Daphnē, -ēs, f.
daughter, filia, -ae, f.; dat. and abl. pl. fillēbus
day, diēs, diē, m. & f.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um
dear (to), cārus, -a, -um + dat.
deceive, fallō, -ere, felfē, falsum
decide, constituō, -ere, -ui, -stitūtum
decorate, decorō (1); ornō (1)
deed, factum, -i, n.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
demand, imperō (1) + dat.; lūbeō, -ere, iussī, iussum; poscō, -ere, poposco
descend, descendō, -ere, descendī, -censum
desire, désiderō (1)
Dia, Dia, -ae, f.
Diana, Dīna, -ae, f.
die, morior, mori, mortuus sum
dig, effodiō, -ere, -fodi, -fossum
disembark, sūgressor, -gressus sum
disgrace, opprobrium, -i, n.
dragon, serpentis, c.; draco, -dnis, c.
drink (verb), bibō, -ere, bibi, bibitum
drown, submergm, -ere, -mersi, -mersum
drug, medicīmen, -inis, n.
dull, obtūsus, -a, -um
dye, tingō, -ere, tinxi, tinctum

ear, auris, -is, f.
earlier, prior, prius
earth, terra, -ae, f.; humus, -i, f.
eat, edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum
Echo, Æchō, -īs, f.
eight, octō
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
end, finis, -i, m. & f.
enemy, hostis, -is, m.
enough, satīs
enter, intrō (1)
Epidaurus, Epidaurus, -i, f.
ecape, fugiō, -ere, fugiō, -itum
especially, magnopere, maximē
eternal, aeternus, -a, -um
Europa, Europā, -ae, f.
Eurydice, Eurydicē, -ēs, f.
even, etiam
even if, etiam si
even now, etiam nunc, etiam hodiē
even today, etiam hodiē
ever watchful, pervigil, -ilis
evil, malus, -a, -um
evill deed, facinus, -oris, n.; evil deeds, facta mala, n.pl.
except, praeter + acc.
experience, experientia, -ae, f.
eye, oculus, -i, m.

faithful, fidus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -e
fall in love, amō (1)
false, falsus, -a, -um

famous, nōtus, -a, -um; clārus, -a, -um
far, longē
far away, procul
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
fatherland, patria, -ae, f.
favorable, secundus, -a, -um
fear (verb), timeō, -ere, -ui; metuō, -ere, -ui
fear (noun), timor, -oris, m.; metus, -ūs, m.
feed, pascō, -ere, pāvi, pastum
feel, sentiō, -ere, sensī, -sum
feelings, sensus, -ūs, m.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fifteen, ter quīnaque; quīndecim
fifty, quīnquā; quīdecim
fight, pugnō (1)
fillet, vitta, -ae, f.
finally, dēnique
find, invenīō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum
fire, ignis, -is, m.
first, primus, -a, -um; adv. primō, primūm
fish, piscis, -is, m.
fit, aptō (1) + dat.
five, quīnque
flee, fugīō (1); fugiō, -ere, fugiō, fugitum
fleece, vellus, -eris, n.
flow, flūō, -ere, fluxi, fluxum
flower, flōs, flōris, m.
follow, sequor, -i, secūtus sum
food, cibus, -i, m.
foolish, stultus, -a, -um
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
for (prep.), prō + abl.
for (adv.), enim
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forever, aeternō, aeternum
forget, obliviscor, -Ī, oblitus sum + gen.
forgive, ignoścō, -ere, -nōvi, -nōtum + dat.
former, the, ille, illa, illud
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
four, quattuor
free, liberō (1)
friend, amīcus, -i, m.; amīca, -ae, f.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
from, dē, ē (ex), ē (ab) + abl.
from a distance, procul
fruit, pōsum, -i, n.
full (of), plēnus, -a, -um + gen.
garment, vestimentum, -i, n.
gaze back, respiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum
get possession of, potior, -iri, potitus sum + abl.
Latin via Ovid

gift, dōnum, -i, n.
giant, gigantēus, -a, -um
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dō, dare, dedi, datum; dōnō (1)
give back, reddō, reddere, reddidī, rediditum

gleam, fulgēō, -ere, fulsi, fulsum
go, eō, ire, ili or 1vi, itum

go away, discīdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum; abeō, -ire, ili or 1vi, -itum
god, deus, -i, m.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.; dat. and abl. pi. deusbus
gold, aurum, -i, n.
golden, aureus, -a, -um

good, bonus, -a, -um
goose, anser, -eris, m.
grave, tumulus, -i, m.
great, magnus, -a, -um
greater, maior, maius

Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
Greek (noun), Graecus, -i, m.
green, viridis, -e
ground, terra, -ae, f., humus, -i, f.
grow, crescēō, -ere, crēvi, cretum
guest, hospes, -itis, m.
guardian, custos, -odis, c.
guide, dux, ducis, c.

hair, capillus, -i, m., usually pl.
hand, manus, -us, /
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum; formōsus,

hang, pendeō, -ere, pependī
harsh, dūrus, -a, -um; acer, -cris, -cre; sevērus,

have, habeō, -ere, -ui, -itum
have to, dēbeō, -ere, -ui, -itum; oportet, -ere,

he, is; or use personal ending -t
hear, audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum
heaven, caelum, -i, n.
Hecate, Hecatē, -ēs, f.
Helen, Helena, -ae, f.
help (noun), auxilium, -ii, n.
help (verb), iuvō, -āre, īvī, īvitum
her, eius
her (own), suus, -a, -um
Hercules, Hercules, -is, m.
here, hic; in hoc locō
hero, hērōs, -ōs, m.
herself, sui, sibi, sē, sē
hesitate, dubitō (1)
hide, cēlō (1)
himself, sul, sibi, sē, sē
Hippomenes, Hippomenēs, -ae, m.
his, eius
his (own), suus, -a, -um
hoarse, raucus, -a, -um
hold, habeō, -ere, -ui, -itum; teneō, -ere, -ui,
tentum
hold back, retineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum
hole (split, cleft), fissum, -i, n.
home, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domī; to go
dome, domum ire

hope (verb), spērō (1)
hope (noun), spēs, -ei, f.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, casa, -ae, f.; domus, -ūs, f.
how, quōmodo
however, autem, postpos.
human, humānus, -a, -um
hundred, centum
hunter, vēnātor, -ōris, m.
hurl, iactō, -ere, īcati, iactum
husband, vir, virī, m.; coniunx, coniugis, c.
Hymen, Hymēn, -enis, m.

I, ego (mei, mihi, mē, mē)
if, si
image, imagō, -inis, f.
immediately, statim
immortal, immortālis, -e
impassable, invius, -a, -um
in, in + abl.
inflame, incendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum
inhabitant, incola, -ae, c.
in like manner, pariter
in place of, prō + abl.
insane, insānus, -a, -um
into, in + acc.
is, est
is, are, was, were, sum, esse, fui, futurum
island, insula, -ae, f.
isthmus, isthmus, -i, m.
it, id
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
it is necessary, oportet, -ere, -uit (impers.);
necesse est; opus est
it is permitted, licet, -ere, -uit, (impers.)
it is pleasant, libet, -ere, libuit (impers.)
it is said, trāditur
its, eius; its own, suus, -a, -um

Jason, Hāsōn, -onis, m.
javelin, iaculum, -i, n.; hasta, -ae, f.; telum, -i, n.
jaw, rictus, -üs, m.
join, iungō, -ere, iunxi, iunnetum
journey, iter, itineris, n.
Jove, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
joyful, laetus, -a, -urn
judge, iudex, iudix, m.
judgment, iudicium, -i, n.
Juno, Iulna, -ae, /.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
kill, necō (1); interflcid, -ere, -fid, -fertum
kind, benignus, -a, -um
king, regis, m.
knight, equester, equester, n.
kingdom, regnum, -i, n.
know, sciō, -Ire, -ivi, -itum
labyrinth, labyrinthus, -I, m.
laden, onustus, -a, -um
Laestrygonians, Laestrygonis, -um, m.
lake, stagnum, -!, n.; lacus, -Os, m.
land, terra, -ae, /.
large, magnus, -a, -um
last, ultimus, -a, -um
later, post + acc.; tardius
later (after many days), post multās diēs
Latona, Lātōna, -ae, /.
latter, the, this, haec, hoc
law, lex, legis, /.
lead, dūcō, -ere, duxi, ductum
lead away, abducō, -ere, -ducit, -ductum
leader, dux, ducis, c.
leave, relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictum;
discédō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum
leg, membrum, -I, n.
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
let, permittō, -ere, -misi, -missum or use subjunctive
let it be, esto
level, plānus, -a, -um
lie asleep, iaceō, -ere, iacui, iactum (in somno)
life, vita, -ae, f.
light, lux, lūcis, f.
lkeness, imāgō, -inis, f.
lion, leō, leonis, m.
nl, parvus, -a, -um
live, habitō (1); vivō, -ere, vixi, victum
locks (of hair), capillī, -orum, m., usually pl.
long, longus, -a, -um
look about, spectō (1)
look back, respiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum
lose, amittō, -ere, -misi, -missum
love (verb), amō (1)
love (noun), amor, -ōris, m.
lover, amāns, -antis, c.
luckily, fēliciter
Lydia, Lydias, -ae, f.
lyre, lyra, -ae, /.
Maenad, Maenas, -adis, f.
magic, magicus, -a, -um
maiden, puella, -ae, f.; virgo, virginis, f.
make, faciō, -ere, fēci, factum
man, vir, virtus, m.; homō, -inis, m.
manner, modus, -i, m.
many, multi, -a, -a
Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.
mark, insigne, -is, n.
marrige, mātrimōnium, -ii, n.
marrige couch, thalamus, -i, m.
marry, in mātrimōnium dōcere; sē coniungere
master, magister, -tri, m.; dominus, -i, m.
matriicde, mātricdium, -ii, n.
may, use subjunctive
Medea, Mēdēa, -ae, f.
mnec, medicina, -ae, f.; medicāmen, -inis, n.
meet, conveniō, -ere, -veni, -ventum
Mercury, Mercurius, -ii, m.
messenger, nuntius, -ii, m.
Midas, Mīdās, -ae, m.
mind, mēns, mentis, f.
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, /.
mines, Minōs, -ōs, m.
Minotaur, Minōtaurus, -i, m.
miracle, mirāculum, -i, n.
mother, māter, -tris, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, -ium, m.
mouth, ōs, ōris, n.
move, moveō, -ere, mōvi, mōtum
mulberry (tree), mōrus, -i, f.
muse, mūsa, -ae, f.
music, musica, -ae, f.
my, meus, -a, -um
myself (intensive), ipse, -a, -um
myself (reflexive), mē
name (noun), nōmen, -inis, n.
name (verb), nōmineō (1); appellō (1)
Narcissus, Narcissus, -i, m.
nature, natura, -ae, f.
near, ad + acc.; propinquus, -a, -um + dat.;
nōn procul
necessary, it is, oportet, -ere, -uit; opus est; necesse est
neighboring, vicinus, -a, -um + dat.
neither ... nor, nec ... nec
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
night, nox, noctis, f.; at night, nocte
nine, novem
Ninus, Ninus, -i, m.
nec ... nec
Nile, Nilus, -i, m.
new, novus, -a, -um
no longer, nōn iam
no one, nōnus, -a, -um
not, nōn
not know, nesciō, -ere, -iturum
now, nunc
nymph, nympha, -ae, f.
obei, pareō, -ere, -ui + dat.
o, oh, ō
old (person), senex, senis, c.; gen. pl. senum;
vetus, veteris, usually pl.
old (thing), antiquus, -a, -um
omen, ēmen, -alis, n.
on, in + abl.
on each side, utrimque
on that side, illinc
on the left (hand, side), sinistrō (manu)
on the right (hand, side), dextrō (manu)
on this side, hic
once, once upon a time, ēnum
one, ēnus, -a, -um
only, sōlus, -a, -um; sōlum
open, aperiō, -ere, -ui, -pertum
open(ed), apertus, -a, -um
oracle, ērēculum, -i, n.
Orcus, Orcus, -i, m.
order, imperō (1) + dat.; iubeō, -ere, iussii,
issum
Orpheus, Orpheus, -i, m.
other, cēterus, -a, -um; alius, -a, -um
ought to, dēbeō, -ere, -ui, -itum
over, trāns + acc.
overcome, vincō, -ere, vicī, victum; superō (1)
overjoyed, laetissimus, -a, -um
owe, dēbeō, -ere, -ui, -itum
palace, rēgias, -ae, f.
palladium, palladium, -ii, n.
Pallas, son of Evander, Palliās; -antis, m.
Pān, Pāna, -os, m.
pardon, venia, -ae, f.
parents, parēns, -antis, c.
part, pars, partis, f.

Pasiphaē, Pāsipliās, -ae, f.; Pāsipliā, -ēs, f.
passion, amor, -ōris, m.
Patroclus, Patroclus, -i, m.
peace, pax, pācis, f.
Peleus, Pēlus, -el, m.
Pelia, Peliās, -ae, m.
penalty, poena, -ae, f.
people, populus, -i, m.
Periphetes, Periphetes, -is, m.
permitted, it is, licet, -ere, licuit (impers.)
persuade, persuādeō, -ere, -suium + dat.
Philemon, Philēmōn, -onis, m.
Philoctetes, Philoctētēs, -ae, m.
Phoeus, Phoeus, -i, m.
Phocid, Phoebēca, -ae, f.
Phrygia, Phrygias, -ae, f.
pick, carpō, -ere, carpel, carptum
picture, pictūra, -ae, f.
pig, suis, suis, c.; porcus, -i, m.
pile, cumulus, -i, m.
pin, fibula, -ae, f.
pipes (of Pan), flauta, -ae, f.
Pittheus, Pitthēus, -el, m.
place (noun), locus, -i, m.; loca, -orum, n.pl.
(place (verb), pōno, -ere, posui, positum
plan, coasilium, -i, n.
pleasant, grātus, -a, -um + dat.; amoenus,
-a, -um
pleasant, it is, libet, -ere, libuit (impers.)
please (verb), placeō, -ere, -ui, -itum + dat.
please (1 ask you), quaesō
pleasing (to), grātus, -a, -um + dat.
pledge, fidēs, -el, f.
plow, arō (1)
pour, infundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum
poet, poēta, -ae, c.
poison, aconitum, -i, n.; venēnum, -i, n.
Polyphemus, Polyphēmus, -el, m.
possess, potior, -iri, -itus sum + abl.
power, potentia, -ae, f.
praise, laudō (1)
pray, orō (1); precor, -elī, -ātus sum
prayer, prex, precis, f.; usually pl.
prepare, parō (1)
pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
prevent, prohibēō, -ere, -hibiū, -hibitum
price, pretium, -i, n.
priestess, sacerdōs, -dōtis, c.
prize, praemium, -i, n.
Procrustes, Procrustēs, -ae, m.
promise, prōmissō, -ere, -mīsī, -mīsum
proud, superbus, -a, -um
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
purple, purpureus, -a, -um
put, pōnō, -ere, posui, positum
put out leaves, frondeō, -ère
Pyramus, Pyramus, -i, m.

queen, régina, -ae, f.
race course, running, cursus, -ūs, m.
rash, temerarius, -a, -um
read, legō, -ere, legi, lēctum
realize, sentiō, -ire, sensi, sēnsum
reason, ratio, -ānis, f.
recall (remember), in memoriam tendere
received, receptus, -a, -um
recognize, recognōscō, -ere, -nōvi, -nītum
reed, papyrus, -i, m.
refuse, nēgō, -ere, nēgavi, nēgatum
rejoice, gaudō, -ere, gavius sum
rejoin, redeō, -ère, -ī or -īvi, -ītum; sē referre
(to take oneself back)
remain, manō, -ère, mānsī, mānsum
remind, memini, meminisse, defective verb
remove, moveō, -ère, movi, movitum
reply, respondō, -ère, -pondī, -spōnsum
report, reportō (1)
repulse, repellō, -ere, -pulsī, -pulsum
respond, respondō, -ère, -pondī, -spōnsum
rest, requīēs, -īsīs, f.; also acc. requiem
restore (give back), reddō, -ere, -dīdi, -dītum
restrain, retineō, -ère, -uī, -tentum
return (give back), reddō, -ere, -dīdi, -dītum
return (go back), redeō, -ère, -ū or -ūvi, -ūtum;
revenīō, -ère, -vēni, -ventum; sē referre
right, dexter, -tra, -trum
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, via, -ae, f.
rock, saxum, -i, n.
rule, régō (1)
run down, dēcurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum
rushes, harundō, -inis, f.
sand, harēna, -ae, f.; pulvis, -eris, n.
sandal, solea, -ae, f.; calceus, -ei, m. (= shoe)
satyr, satyrus, -i, m.
say, dicit, -ere, dīxi, dīctum
scatter, spargō, -ere, sparsi, -sum
Sciron, Sciron, -ōnis, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.; aequor, -oris, n.
secretly, sēcretō
see, videō, -ère, vidi, visum; spectō (1)
seek, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvi, quaesitum; petō,
-ere, -ī or -īvi, -ītum
seem, video, vidērī, visum sum; it seems, vidētur
senate, cūria, -ae, f.
send, mittō, -ere, misi, missum
serpent, sērπēns, -entis, c.
servant, servus, -i, m.
serve, serviō, -ère, -īvi, -ītum + dat.
set out, egredior, -di, -gressus sum; proficiscor,
-ī, -fectus sum
seven, septem
shade, umbra, -ae, f.; mānsēs, -ium, m. (shades of the dead)
shape, forma, -ae, f.
sharp, acutus, -a, -um
she, ea
shine, splendō, -ère; radiō (1)
ship, nāvis, -is, f.; ratis, -is, f.; puppis, -is, f.
shore, rīpa, -ae, f.; litus, -oris, n.
shoulder, umerus, -i, m.
shout, clamō (1)
shout, clamor, -ōris, m.
shout out, inclamō (1)
show, mōnstrō (1)
Sibyl, Sibylla, -ae, f.
Sicyl, Sicilia, -ae, f.
side, to the, obliquē
since, cum + subjv.; abl. abs.
sing, cantō (1); canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum
sink, mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
sit (down), sedēō, -ere, sēdi, sessum
situation, rēs, rei, f.
six, sex
sky, caelum, -i, n.
slave, servus, -i, m.
sleep (noun), somnus, -i, m.
sleep (verb), dormiō, -ere, -ūi, -ūtum
small, parvus, -a, -um
smaller, minor, minus
so, tam; ita
so great, tantus, -a, -um
some, aliquis, aliquid
so that, ut + subjv.
son, filius, -i, m.
song, carmen, -inis, n.
sound (noun), sonus, -i, m.
sound (verb), sonō (1)
sow, serō, -ere, sēvi, satum
spare, parcō, -ere, peperci, parsium + dat.
speak, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum; loquor, loqui, locutus sum
spectator, spectātor, -ōris, m.
spider, arīnea, -ae, f.
stand, stā, -ēre, stetis, statum
star, stella, -ae, f.
statue, imitā, -inis, f.
stay, manē, -ire, minis, minsum
stiffen, congelō (1)
still, etiam
stone, saxum, -i, n.
story, fābula, -ae, f.
strong, fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um
suffer, patiō, pati, passus sum
suitable, idoneus, -a, -um
suitor, procus, -i, m.
summon, convocō (1)
sun, sol, solis, m.
supper, edna, -ae, / (as a) suppliant, supplex, -icis
supposed to, be, debēō, -ere, -ul, -lutum
surrender (hand over), trīsō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum
surpass, superō (1); suppersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrum
swan, cygnus, -i, m.
sword, gladius, -ii, m.
Syrix, Syringa, -ae, f.
table, mēnsa, -ae, f.
tablet, tabula, -ae, f.
take, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum
take the form of, simulō (1)
task, opus, -eris, n.
teach, doceō, -ere, -ui, doctum
teacher, magister, -tri, m.; magistra, -ae, f.
tears, lacrima, -ae, f.
tell, narrō (1); dīcō, -ere, dixi, dictum
temple, templum, -i, n.
ten, decem
tenth, decimus, -a, -um
terrify, terreō, -ere, -ul, -lutum
terrified, territus, -a, -um
test, temptō (1); experior, -irī, -pertus sum
than, quām; abl. of comparison
that, ille, illa, illud; omit in indirect statement
Thebes, Thēbae, -ārum, f.
their, eōrum, eārum; suus, -a, -um (refl.)
them, eōs, eās, ea
themselves, ipsīs, ipsae, ipsa
then, deinde
Theseus, Thēseus, -ei, m.
Theon, Thētis, -idēs, f.
they, ei, eae, ea; hi, hae, haec; illi, illae, illa
think, potō (1); cogitō
third, tertius, -a, -um
thirty-five, trigintā quinque or quinque et
trigintā
this, hic, haec, hoc
Thisbe, Thēsbe, Thēsēs, f.
thousand, mille, indecl.; pl. milia, -orum, n.
thread, filum, -i, n.
three, trēs, tria
through, per + acc.
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēci, iactum
thus, īta; sic
time, tempus, -oris, n.
Tmolus, Tmolis, -i, m.
to, ad + acc.
tomb, tumulus, -i, m.
too + adj., use comparative of adj.
tooth, dentis, -is, f.
touch, tangō, -ere, tētigi, tactum
touch (golden), vis aurea, acc. vim, abl. vi; pl.
virēs
town, oppidum, -i, n.
tower, turris, -is, f.
transfix, transīōdō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum
transform, transīformō (1)
transport, transīportō (1)
traveller, peregrinātor, -ōris, m.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
Troezen, Troezēn, ēnis, f.
Trojan, Trōiānus, -a, -um; Trōiānus, -i, m.
troops, cōpiēs, -ārum, f.
Troy, Trōia, -ae, f.
true, verōs, -a, -um
truly, vērē
trunk, truncus, -i, m.
trust, crēdō, -ere, credidī, creditum + dat.
try, temptō (1); conor, -ari, -ātus sum
turn (into), mūtō (1); transīformō (1)
Turnus, Turnus, -i, m.
two, duo, duae, duo

tyrant, tyrannus, -i, m.

Ulysses, Ulīxēs, -īs, m.

under, sub + acc. or abl.

unfair, inlustus, -ā, -um

unfavorable, infēlīx, -īcis; adversus, -ā, -um

unfortunately, infēlīciter

unless, nisi

until, dōnec + ind.; ad + acc.; dum + subjv.

up to, usque

urge, hortor, -ōrī, -ōtus sum

us, nūs

utter, dicē, -ere, dixi, dictum; ēdō, ēdere, ēdīdī, ēditum

veil, vēlāmen, -inis, n.

Venus, Venūs, -ēris, f.

Vergil, Vergilius (Virgilius), -īi, m.

very much, maxīmē, valdē

very small, minīmē

victim, victima, -ae, f.

victor, victor, -ōris, m.

victory, viātria, -ae, /.

Virgil. See Vergil.

visit, visīō (1)

voice, vox, vōcis, f.

wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum

walk, ambulō (1)

wail, pārīs, -is, m.

wander, errō (1)

want, volō, velle, volui; dēsiderō (1)

war, bellum, -i, n.

warn, moneō, -ere, -ul, -itum

was, erat

wash, lauvō, -āre or -ere, lávi, lautum or lōtum

watch, spectō (1)

water, aqua, -ae, f.

wax, cēra, -ae, f.

way, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.

we, nōs

weapon, ōnum, -i, n.; ferrum, -i, n.

wear, induō, -ere, -ul, -itum; gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum; portō (1)

well-known, nōtus, -a, -um

weep, lacrimō (1); plōrō (1)

well, bene

were, erant; fuērunt

what? (interrog. pron.), quid?

when, cum + ind. or subjv.; ubi + ind.

where, ubi; in quō locō

whether, an

which, qui, quae, quod

while, dum + pres. ind.

whisper, murmūrō (1)

white, albus, -a, -um

who, qui, quae, quod; quis, quid

why, cūr

wicked, malus, -a, -um; impius, -a, -um

wife, coniunx, -iugis, c.; uxor, -ōris, f.

wild, ferus, -a, -um

will, voluāptūs, -ātis, f.

win, vincō, -ere, vici, victum; supremus, -esse,

-fui, -futūrum; superō (1)

wind, ventus, -i, m.

wine, vinum, -i, n.

winged, pennātus, -a, -um

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.

wish, dēsiderō (1); volō, velle, volui; optō (1)

with, cum + abl.; or abl. of means

witness, testis, -is, c.

woman, fēmina, -ae, f.

womb, uterus, -i, m.

wonder, miror, -ōrī, -ōtus sum

woods, silva, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -i, n.

work, lāborō (1)

worship, ōrō (1); colō, -ere, colui, cultum

wrath, ira, -ae, f.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum

write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum

year, annus, -i, m.

yoke, iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iūntum

you, sing.: tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē; pl.: vōs, vestri,

vōbis, vōs, vōbis

young, iuvenis, -is

young man or woman, iuvenis, -is, c.;

gen. pl. -um

your, sing.: tuus, -a, -um; pl.: vester, -tra, -trum

youth (young person), iuvenis, iuvenis, c.;

gen. pl. -um

youth (time of life), iuventus, iuventūtis, f.
Abbreviations (Latin) in English, 406-7

Ablative
- absolute, 161-62, 350
- of accompaniment, 108, 349
- of agent, 143, 349
- of comparison, 349, 378
- with deponent verbs, 350
- of description, 108, 349
- as locative, 108, 349-50
- of manner, 108, 349
- of means, 55, 108, 349
- of place where, 108, 349-50
- of place from which, 349
- with prepositions, 4, 22, 31, 175, 269, 349
- of separation, 108, 349
- of specification, 350
- of source, 1-8, 349
- of time, 109, 350
- review, 349-50

Accent, xxiii, 42, 58, 66, 75-76, 83, 449

Accompaniment, ablative of. See Ablative

Accusative
- as direct object, 13, 15, 22, 333
- in exclamations, 333
- of extent of time, 292-93, 333
- of place to which, 292, 333
- with prepositions, 15, 55-56, 175, 333
- as subject of infinitive, 99, 333
- review, 333

Achaemenides, 375-77

Achilles, 303, 308, 315-18, 327-28, 331, 344, 346

Active voice. See Voice

Adjectives
- agreement with noun, 23, 47-48, 91-92
- comparative declension of, 196, 422
- translation of, 195-96
- comparison of
  - regular, 107, 195-96, 422
  - irregular, 196, 271-72, 422
- with dative, 73, 271
- demonstrative (hic and ille), 132-33, 424

first declension. See Declension, adjectives

interrogative, 153, 425

irregular, 216-17

numeral, 89, 154, 216-17, 423, 426-27

participles as, 151-53

possessive, 13, 119, 426

predicate, 4

second declension. See Declension, adjectives

third declension. See Declension, adjectives

used as nouns (substantives), 100

word order with nouns, 3, 64

Adverbs, 38n, 39, 75

comparison of
  - regular, 196-97, 423
  - irregular, 197, 272, 423

lists of, 75

Aeneas, 363-69, 398-402, 409-12

Aeson, 208-12, 241-42, 251

Agent
- ablative of, 143, 349
- dative of, 348, 413

sit, aliquot, defective verb, 183

Alyone, 395-97

aliquis, aliquid, 425

Alphabet, xix-xxi

Anglo-Saxon, xvi-xviii

Antepenultimate rule, xxiii, 42, 66, 75-76, 94

Apollo, 53, 114-16, 203-7

Apposition, 8

Arachne, 18-19, 27, 37

Argonauts, 208-12

Article, omission of, 3

Assimilation, 113

Atalanta, 138-40, 149

Bacchae, Bacchantes, 191-92

Baucis, 86-87, 97

Calendar (Roman), 439-41

Callisto, 68-69, 79

Cardinal numbers. See Numbers, cardinal

Case, defined, 4, 22. See also Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative

causā, with genitive, 371

Ceyx, 395-97

Chronology, Roman, 446-47

Circe, 356, 385-89

Circumstantial clause. See cum, with subjunctive

Clauses. See specific clause

Clothing (Roman), 371-72

cœpi, defective verb, 168, 232

Commands. See Imperative

Common gender. See Gender

Comparison
- ablative of, 378
- of adjectives
  - regular, 195, 422
  - irregular, 127, 196, 271-72, 422
of adverbs
   regular, 196, 423
   irregular, 197, 423
   with quam, 378

Complementary infinitive. See Infinitive

Compound verbs, 246, 414

Concessive clause. See cum, conjunction, with subjunctive

Conditions
   real, 73, 109-10, 309
   unreal
   contrary-to-fact, 245-46, 310
   should-would, 310

Conjugation, defined, 21, 29
   first, 29n, 30, 71, 427-31
   irregular, 32n, 71n, 81
   second, 29n, 30, 72, 81-82, 427-31
   third, 29n, 99, 117-18, 427-31
   third -io, 29n, 118, 125-26, 427-31
   fourth, 29n, 125-26, 427-31
   deponent verbs, 171, 318-19, 403-5, 431-33
   irregular verbs, 433-36. See also each verb

Conjunctions
   coordinate, 63, 403
   subordinate, 73, 108, 271
   temporal, 271

Consonants, xxi-xxii, 15-16

Contrary-to-fact conditions. See Conditions
   cum, conjunction, 270
   with indicative, 270
   inverted cum clause, 292
   with subjunctive, 270-71
   cum, preposition with ablative accompaniment, 108, 269, 349
   with pronouns, 27n, 31, 63

Cygnus, 315-18

Daedalus, 177-79, 277
Daphne, 114-16
Dates, 139, 313, 439-40
Dative
   with adjectives, 73, 271, 413
   of agent, 348, 413
   with compound verbs, 246, 414
   double dative, 321, 414
   indirect object, 30-31, 412
   of interest or reference, 40, 413
   of possession, 40, 413
   with verbs, 246, 413
   review, 412-14

Days of the week, 294-95

Declension, defined, 22
   of adjectives
      first, 55, 421
      second
         ending in -er, 64, 421
         regular, 55, 421
      with genitive in -ius and dative in -i,
         216-17, 334, 422
      third
         of one termination, 184-85, 421
         of two terminations, 163, 421
         of three terminations, 184-85, 421
         of comparative, 422
   of nouns
      first, 22-23, 419
      irregular fillia and dea, 45n, 420
      second, 15, 47, 419
      in -er, 47, 64, 419
      third, 89-92, 419
      I-stem, 90-91, 109, 420
      neuters, 99, 420
      fourth, 144, 420
      fifth, 162-63, 420
      irregular
         domus, 127, 420
         vis, 420
   of participles. See Particles
   of pronouns. See Pronouns

Defective verbs. See each verb

Deities, lesser, 443

Deliberative subjunctive. See Subjunctive, independent uses of

Demonstrative adjectives. See Adjectives

Deponent verbs
   conjugation of, 171, 318-19, 403-5
   imperatives, 319, 405
   infinitives, 171, 403, 405
   meaning of, 171, 318-19
   participles, 186, 211n, 257n, 319, 405
   semi-deponent, 318-19
   special, governing ablative case, 262, 350
   review, 318-19, 403

Derivation of words. See Etymology

Description. See Ablative
die\s
   declension of, 162-63
   gender of, 162n, 420

Diphthongs, xxi

domus, declension of, 127

dum
   with indicative, 271
   with subjunctive, 271n

duo, declension of, 89

Echo, 104-5

ego, declension of, 119

elius and suus, distinguished, 73-74, 172

Enclitics
   -ne, 5
   -que, 32

ey
   compounds, 197
   conjugation of, 154, 433-35
   participles, 186
Etymology, defined, 7
automotive terms, 102-3
biological, botanical, zoological terms, 274-75
church Latin, 264-65
cognates in Romance languages, xvi, 35, 157
educational terms, 323-24
geographical terms, 7, 43, 219-20, 228
Latin mottos, words, phrases, 415-16
mathematical and geometrical terms, 393-94
musical terms, 188, 199-200
psychological terms, 285-86
signs of the Zodiac, 76-77
space age words, 136-37
Europa, 10-11
Eurydice, 180-82, 191-92
Expletive: there is, there are, 4

facere at, 282
Fearing, verbs of, 292
fer5
compounds, 184
conjugation of, 184, 435-36
Fifth declension. See Declension
Figures of speech
name and place allusions, 311
onomatopoeia, 172
pars pro toto (part for the whole), 365n
simile, 126-27
fit5, 335-36, 436
First conjugation. See Conjugation
First declension. See Declension
Foods (Roman), 359-61
Fourth declension. See Declension
Future active participle. See Participles, future active
Future imperative. See Imperative
Future perfect tense. See Tense
Future tense. See Tense

Gaudeamus igitur, 167, 453
Gemini, 137
Gender, 21-22
first declension, 22-23, 48
second declension, 22, 47, 48
third declension, 89-92, 99, 110, 166
fourth declension, 144
fifth declension, 162-63
agreement of adjectives in, 4, 15, 23, 47-48
common, 48, 99
grammatical and natural, 21-22, 48
Genitive
of description (adjectival), 14n
objective, 14n, 320
of possession, 14-15, 22, 320
of second declension nouns in -ii, 49n
with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 378-79
of the whole (partitive), 92, 320
Gerund
decension of, 282
distinguished from gerundive, 390-91
with genitive, 282-83
as verbal noun, 282-83, 390
Gerundive
decension of, 347-48
distinguished from gerund, 390-91
to express obligation or necessity, 347-48
passive periphrastic review, 391
as verbal adjective, 347-48, 390
gratii5, with genitive, 370-71

Hecate, 231n
hic
decension of, 132-33, 424
as pronoun and adjective, 133-34
Hippomenes, 138-40, 149
Hortatory subjunctive. See Subjunctive, independent uses of
House (Roman), 381-83

Icarus, 177-79
idem, declension of, 170-71
ille
decension of, 133, 424
as pronoun and adjective, 133-34
Imperative mood
of deponent verbs, 319
forms, 23, 31, 134, 319n
future imperative, 139n, 321
in greeting and farewell, 19, 23, 31, 134
negative commands, 99-100, 290, 345n
shortened forms, third conjugation, 134n
use of, 23, 31
Imperfect tense. See Tense
Impersonal verbs. See Verbs
in, preposition, 15, 22
Indefinite pronoun. See aliquis
Indicative mood
after some conjunctions, 271, 292
defined, 134-35
Indirect command. See Noun clause of desire
Indirect discourse. See Indirect statement
Indirect object. See Dative
Indirect question, 261-62
review, 319-20
Indirect statement
defined, 214-16
with negō, 216
with periphrastic constructions, 195
with reflexive pronouns, 215–16
structure of, 214–16
tense sequence in, 215
Indo-European languages, xv–xvii, 108
Infinitives
complementary, 29
in indirect statement, 214–15
stem formed from, 29
with subject in accusative, 99, 333
summary of forms, 144, 197
Inflection, xvii, 21
Intensive pronoun. See idem, ipse
Interrogative adjective. See Adjectives
Interrogative pronoun. See Pronouns
Iphigenia, 305–8
ipse, 334–35, 424
Irregular adjectives. See Adjectives, irregular
Irregular verbs. See Verbs, irregular
is, declension of, 119
iste, declension of, 335
Jason, 208–12, 221–22, 231–32, 241–42, 251–52
Juno, 68–69, 79, 104–5
Jupiter, 68–69, 79, 86–87, 97
Jussive noun clause. See Noun clause of desire
Latona, 44–45, 53
Linking verb. See sum
Locative, 127n, 262–63
Macrons, xix, 5, 177
mīlō, conjugation of, 289–90, 433–35
Manner, ablative of. See Ablative
Martial, Sabidius poem of, 273–74
maximē, 39–40
Means, ablative of. See Ablative
Medea, 208–12, 221–22, 231–32, 241–42, 251–52, 267
Meter, 311, 447–52
Midas, 158–59, 167–68
mille, milia, declension of, 89, 154
Minerva, 18–19, 27, 37
minimē. See maximē
Minos, 267–68
Months, 313, 439–40
Mood
imperative, 19, 23, 31, 134, 319, 321
indicative, 224
See also specific uses
Muses, the nine, 69, 443
Mythology, bibliography, 445
Name and place allusions, 311
Names and families (Roman), 338–41
Narcissus, 104–5
né, negative conjunction
in negative command, 345n
with negative noun clause of desire, 291
with negative purpose clause, 234–35
with verbs of fearing, 292
-ne, enclitic, 5, 336
Negative commands. See Imperative, negative commands
negō, introducing indirect statement, 216
nēmō, 334
Niobe, 44–45, 53
nōlō, conjugation of, 289–90, 433–35
Nominative
predicate, 4
as subject, 4, 22
nōnne, introducing questions, 336
Nouns. See Declension
Noun clause of desire, 290–91
nōlō, declension of, 216–17, 334, 422
num, to introduce questions, 336
Number, singular and plural, 3–4, 21
Numbers
cardinal, 45, 48, 61, 79, 81, 348, 426–27
duo, mille, 89, 423
très, milia, 154, 423
ordinal, 92, 426–27
Roman numerals, 48, 59, 426–27
review, 348, 426–27
Object
direct, 13, 15, 22, 333
indirect, 30–31, 412
obliviscor, with genitive, 378–79
ōdi, defective verb, 160, 392n
Odyssey, The (film), 355–56
Olympians, 441–42; genealogy of, 444
Omission
of article, 3
of possessive adjective, 13
of pronoun subject, 3, 119
Onomatopoeia, 172
Ordinal numbers. See Numbers, ordinal
Orpheus, 180–82, 191–92
Ovid, xxiv–xxvi
Pan, 60–61, 158, 167–68
Parasyllabic nouns, 91, 109
Participles
defined, 151, 185
future active, 185, 193–94, 347
future passive, 185, 193–94, 347
perfect passive, 151–53, 185, 347
present active, 185–86, 347, 421
Partitive genitive. See Genitive, of the whole
Index 493

Parts of the body, 115
Parts of speech, 21, 418
Passive voice. See Voice
Past perfect. See Tense
Pelias, 211, 251–52
Perfect passive system, 169–70
Perfect tense. See Tense
Periphrastic
active, 194–95
passive, 194n, 347–48, 391
Person and number, 14
Personal endings, 29–30, 71
Personal pronouns. See Pronouns
Phaethon, 203–7
Philemon, 86–87, 97
Phoebus. See Apollo
Pluperfect tense. See Tense, past perfect
Pluto, 183, 297–300
Poetic forms, 311
\textit{possum}, conjugation of, 108, 224, 236, 246, 433–35
Prefixes, 17, 35–36
Prepositions. See Accusative; Ablative, with prepositions; \textit{Piscis in mari}, 175
Primary sequence
in indirect question, 261, 319–20
in indirect statement, 215
in noun clause of desire, 290–91
in purpose and result clauses, 234, 35
Principal parts. See Verbs
Pronouns
indefinite, 216, 425–26
intensive, 170–71, 334–35, 424
interrogative, 110, 153, 425
irregular, 216–17, 334, 422
personal, 119, 423
possessive, 119, 426
reflexive, 110, 172, 424
relative, 110, 143–44, 281–82, 425
Pronunciation, xxi–xxiv, 5, 15–16, 42
Proserpina, 183, 297–300
Purpose clause, 234–35
Purpose, expressions of, 370–71
Pyramus, 122–23, 131

\textit{quamquam} \ldots \textit{tamen}, 62–63, 108

Questions
indirect, 261, 319–20
introduced by interrogative words, 153
introduced by -\textit{me}, 5, 336
introduced by \textit{nonne} or \textit{num}, 336
\textit{quil, quae, quod}
interrogative adjective, 153, 425
to introduce a sentence, 110
relative pronoun, 110, 143–44, 425
\textit{quidam, quaedam, quiddam}, 216, 425
\textit{quis, quid}, 153, 425

Reading Roman poetry, 310–11, 447–52
Relative clause
with indicative, 280
of purpose, 281
with subjunctive, 280–81
Relative pronouns. See Pronouns
Result clause, 235
Romance languages, xvi–xvii, 35, 157

Secondary sequence
in indirect statement, 215
Second conjugation. See Conjugation
Second declension. See Declension
Semi-deponent verbs, 318–19
Sequence of tenses
in indirect question, 261–62, 319–20
in indirect statement, 215
in noun clause of desire, 290–91
in purpose and result clauses, 234–35
Sibyl, Cumean, 398–402
Simile, 126–27
\textit{s\ddot{a}lus}, 216–17, 334, 422
Subjunctive, 224–26
by attraction, 291–92
conditions, unreal
contrary-to-fact, 245–46, 310
should-would, 310
forms, 224, 233–34, 244–45
independent uses of
deliberative, 226
hortatory, 225
optative, 225–26
potential, 226
indirect question, 261
noun clause of desire, 290–91
purpose clause, 234–35
relative clause of characteristic, 235
result clause, 235
after verbs of fearing, 292
review, 436–37
Subordinate clause
with indicative, 73, 108, 271
in indirect statement, 291–92
with subjunctive. See Subjunctive
Substantives, 100, 163
Suffixes, 35–36, 51, 67, 129, 156–57, 166
\textit{sum}, 30, 40, 64, 82, 224, 236, 246, 433–35
\textit{absum}, 82, 115
\textit{adsum}, 82, 115
Supine
to express purpose, 370–71
as fourth principal part, 151n, 194n

Superlative degree
of adjectives, 107, 195–96, 422
of adverbs, 196–97, 423
irregular, ending in \textit{-limus} and \textit{-rimus}, 127, 196, 271–72, 422–23
translation of, 195

Sutine
suus, distinguished from eius, 73–74
Synopsis of verbs
indicative, 126
subjunctive, 260
Syllables, xxii–xxiii, 448–49
Syrinx, 60–61
Temporal conjunctions, 271
Tense
present
indicative, 13–14, 117
subjunctive, 224
imperfect
indicative, 39, 72, 117
subjunctive, 233–34
future, 63, 126
perfect
indicative, 71–72, 118, 169–70
subjunctive, 244
past perfect (pluperfect)
indicative, 100, 118, 169–70
subjunctive, 245
future perfect, 109, 118, 169–70
sequence of. See Sequence of tenses
Third conjugation. See Conjugation
Third declension. See Declension
Thisbe, 122–23, 131
Time
extent of, 292–93, 333
hours of the day, 139, 441
when or within which, 109, 350
Tombstone Latin, 352–54
totus, 216–17, 334, 422
ti, 119
Trojan War, 302–8, 315–18
üllus, 216–17, 334, 422
Ulysses, 306–7, 327–32, 356
Ünus, 216–17, 334, 422
ut
with indicative, 271
with nouns, 127, 268n
with subjunctive, 234–35, 292
ütor, with the ablative, 262
Verbs
compound, 56
conjugation of. See Conjugation
deponent, 171, 318–19
of fearing, 292
governing dative, 246, 413
impersonal, 281, 336
irregular. See each verb
principal parts, defined, 32, 151–52, 162
of remembering and forgetting, 378–79
semi-deponent, 318–19
stem of, 29
videō
with accusative and infinitive, 99
passive of, 154
Virgil, 304, 363, 366–69
Vocative
forms of, 31, 403, 419
in second declension, in -e, 55, 403, 419
use of, 31, 403
of words in -ius, 403, 419
review, 403, 419
Voice
active, 141–42, 427–28
in deponents, 171, 318–19
passive, 141–43, 429–31
perfect passive system, 169–70
vocē, conjugation of, 289–90, 433–35
vowels, xxi, 15, 76
Word order, 3, 13, 64, 217, 272, 310–11, 379
Zodiac, signs of, 77
The book was designed by Richard Kinney. Illustrations were done by Bernard Goldman and Betty Hanson. The typeface for the text is Times Roman, designed under the supervision of Stanley Morison about 1931. The display face is Optima, designed by Hermann Zapf about 1958.

Manufactured in the United States of America.